



**US Army Corps
of Engineers®**
Wilmington District

Solicitation No. W912PM23R0002
Contract No. W912PM23XXXX

PN87447

SOF Supply Support Activity

FORT LIBERTY, NORTH CAROLINA

This project was designed by the Wilmington District of the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. The initials or signatures and registration designations of individuals appear on these project documents within the scope of their employment as required by ER 1110-1-8152.

RTA Specifications

Volume II

08-AUGUST-2023

RTA SPECIFICATIONS

USASOC SOF

Supply Support Activity (PN 87447)



Fort Liberty, NC

04 August 2023

Contract No. W912PM-19-D-0004

Delivery Order W912PM-20-F-0017


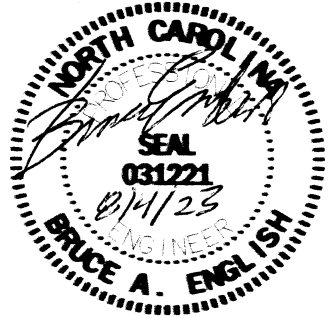








CAPE FEAR
ENGINEERING

White Raven
SECURITY

WRA

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

		
Civil	Structural	Architectural Interiors Equipment
		
Fire Protection	Plumbing/Mechanical	Electrical
		
Telecomm	ESS	

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PROJECT TABLE OF CONTENTS**DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

01 11 00	08/15, CHG 2: 08/21	SUMMARY OF WORK
01 14 00	11/11, CHG 14: 02/22	WORK RESTRICTIONS
01 30 00	11/20, CHG 1: 08/21	ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS
01 32 01.00 10	02/15	PROJECT SCHEDULE
01 33 00	08/18, CHG 4: 02/21	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
01 33 29	02/21	SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING
01 35 26	11/20, CHG 3: 02/22	GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS
01 42 00	02/19	SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS
01 45 00.00 10	11/16, CHG 2: 11/21	QUALITY CONTROL
01 45 00.15 10	11/16, CHG 2: 08/19	RESIDENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CONTRACTOR MODE (RMS CM)
01 45 35	11/20	SPECIAL INSPECTIONS
01 50 00	11/20, CHG 1: 08/21	TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
01 57 19	11/15, CHG 5: 08/21	TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS
01 58 00	08/19, CHG 3: 11/21	PROJECT IDENTIFICATION
01 74 19	02/19, CHG 3: 11/21	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
01 78 00	05/19, CHG 1: 08/21	CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
01 78 23	08/15, CHG 2: 08/21	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA
01 91 00.15 10	05/19, CHG 2: 08/20	TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

03 30 00	02/19, CHG 2: 05/21	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
----------	---------------------	------------------------

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

04 20 00	11/15, CHG 2: 05/19	UNIT MASONRY
----------	---------------------	--------------

DIVISION 05 - METALS

05 12 00	08/18, CHG 2: 05/21	STRUCTURAL STEEL
05 21 00	05/15, CHG 1: 08/18	STEEL JOIST FRAMING
05 30 00	05/15, CHG 2: 08/18	STEEL DECKS
05 40 00	05/15, CHG 1: 08/18	COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING
05 44 00	11/20	PRE-ENGINEERED, PRE-FABRICATED COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF TRUSSES
05 50 13	05/17, CHG 1: 08/18	MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS
05 52 00	02/18, CHG 1: 02/20	METAL RAILINGS

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

06 10 00	08/16, CHG 2: 11/18	ROUGH CARPENTRY
06 41 16.00 10	08/10, CHG 1: 11/18	PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS
06 61 16	08/20	SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 05 23	08/19	PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS
07 11 13	08/11, CHG 1: 05/17	BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING
07 21 16	11/11, CHG 4: 08/18	MINERAL FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

07 27 36	05/17, CHG 2: 08/20	SPRAY FOAM AIR BARRIERS
07 41 13	05/11, CHG 4: 02/21	METAL ROOF PANELS
07 42 13	05/11, CHG 2: 02/18	METAL WALL PANELS
07 60 00	05/17, CHG 2: 11/18	FLASHING AND SHEET METAL
07 84 00	05/10, CHG 1: 08/13	FIRESTOPPING
07 92 00	08/16, CHG 3: 11/18	JOINT SEALANTS

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

08 11 13	08/20	STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES
08 14 00	08/16, CHG 1: 08/18	WOOD DOORS
08 31 00	05/17, CHG 1: 08/18	ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS
08 33 23	08/20, CHG 1: 02/22	OVERHEAD COILING DOORS
08 34 59	08/08, CHG 1: 11/12	VAULT DOORS
08 39 53	02/15	BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT DOORS
08 51 13	05/19	ALUMINUM WINDOWS
08 56 53	08/20	PREFABRICATED TRANSACTION WINDOWS
08 71 00	02/16, CHG 4: 02/22	DOOR HARDWARE
08 81 00	05/19	GLAZING
08 88 56	02/15	BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT GLAZING SYSTEMS
08 91 00	08/20	METAL WALL LOUVERS

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

09 06 00	05/09, CHG 1: 11/13	SCHEDULES FOR FINISHES
09 29 00	08/16, CHG 4: 02/20	GYPSUM BOARD
09 30 10	08/20	CERAMIC, QUARRY, AND GLASS TILING
09 51 00	08/20	ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS
09 62 38	08/17, CHG 1: 08/18	STATIC-CONTROL FLOORING
09 65 00	08/10, CHG 3: 08/18	RESILIENT FLOORING
09 67 23.13	11/19	STANDARD RESINOUS FLOORING
09 90 00	02/21	PAINTS AND COATINGS
09 96 00	11/14	HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

10 14 00.10	08/17, CHG 1: 11/18	EXTERIOR SIGNAGE
10 14 00.20	08/20	INTERIOR SIGNAGE
10 21 13	08/20	TOILET COMPARTMENTS
10 26 00	08/20	WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION
10 28 13	08/20	TOILET ACCESSORIES
10 44 16	11/19	FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT

11 11 00	08/22	INDUSTRIAL EQUIPMENT
11 13 19.13	08/09, CHG 1: 05/19	LOADING DOCK LEVELERS

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

12 21 00	08/17, CHG 2: 11/18	WINDOW BLINDS
12 31 00	11/14, CHG 2: 11/16	MANUFACTURED METAL CASEWORK
12 36 00	08/16, CHG 2: 08/18	COUNTERTOPS
12 48 13	08/17	ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES
12 50 00.13 10	08/17, CHG 1: 11/18	FURNITURE AND FURNITURE INSTALLATION

DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

13 34 19 08/20, CHG 1: 02/21 METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS

DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION

21 13 13 08/20 WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS, FIRE PROTECTION

21 13 16 08/20 DRY PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS, FIRE PROTECTION

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

22 00 00 11/15, CHG 4: 05/21 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE

DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)

23 03 00.00 20 08/10, CHG 3: 08/18 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS
23 05 48.00 40 08/15 VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR

HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
23 05 93 11/15 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

23 07 00 02/13, CHG 7: 05/20 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

23 09 00 02/19, CHG 3: 05/21 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

23 09 13 11/15, CHG 2: 05/21 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC

23 09 23.01 02/19, CHG 1: 02/20 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS

23 11 20 05/20 FACILITY GAS PIPING

23 23 00 08/21 REFRIGERANT PIPING

23 30 00 05/20, CHG 1: 02/22 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION

23 81 00 05/18, CHG 1: 02/21 DECENTRALIZED UNITARY HVAC EQUIPMENT

23 82 00.00 20 02/16, CHG 1: 08/18 TERMINAL HEATING UNITS

DIVISION 25 - INTEGRATED AUTOMATION

25 05 11.01 05/21 CYBERSECURITY FOR LOW IMPACT DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS

25 05 11.02 05/21 CYBERSECURITY FOR MODERATE IMPACT FIRE ALARM/MASS NOTIFICATION (FA/MNS) FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS

25 05 11.03 05/21 CYBERSECURITY FOR ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEM (ESS) FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS

25 10 10 02/19, CHG 1: 05/21 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEM (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

26 05 00.00 40 11/20 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL
26 05 48.00 10 10/07 SEISMIC PROTECTION FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

26 08 00 11/21 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING

26 20 00 08/19, CHG 3: 11/21 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

26 28 01.00 10 08/21 COORDINATED POWER SYSTEM PROTECTION

26 29 23 02/20, CHG 1: 05/21 ADJUSTABLE SPEED DRIVE (ASD) SYSTEMS UNDER 600 VOLTS

26 41 00	11/13	LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM
26 51 00	05/20, CHG 2: 11/21	INTERIOR LIGHTING

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

27 10 00	08/11	BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM
27 40 00	05/18	INTEGRATED AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS & EQUIPMENT

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

28 10 05	05/16	ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEMS (ESS)
28 31 76	08/20	INTERIOR FIRE ALARM AND MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM, ADDRESSABLE

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

31 00 00	08/08	EARTHWORK
31 11 00	11/18	CLEARING AND GRUBBING
31 31 16.13	08/22	CHEMICAL TERMITE CONTROL

DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

32 11 23	08/17	AGGREGATE BASE COURSES
32 12 16	08/09	HOT-MIX ASPHALT (HMA) FOR ROADS
32 13 13.06	05/20	PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT FOR ROADS AND SITE FACILITIES
32 16 19	05/18	CONCRETE CURBS, GUTTERS AND SIDEWALKS
32 31 13.53	04/08	HIGH-SECURITY CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES
32 32 23.13	02/20	SEGMENTAL CONCRETE BLOCK RETAINING WALL
32 92 19	10/06	SEEDING

DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES

33 11 00	02/18	WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING
33 30 00	05/18	SANITARY SEWERAGE
33 40 00	02/10	STORM DRAINAGE UTILITIES
33 71 02	08/21	UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION
33 82 00	04/06	TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP)

-- End of Project Table of Contents --

SECTION 08 11 13

STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The requirements of Section 08 39 53, BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT DOORS, apply to the designated steel doors and frames provided for this project. See drawings for locations of designated blast resistant doors. The intent is that this section, 08 11 13, STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES, specifies the materials, size of components, moisture and air control properties, finish and appearance of the steel doors and frames, while Section 08 39 53 specifies the performance requirements for blast loading for the Steel Doors and Frames.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A653/A653M (2020) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A879/A879M (2012; R 2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, zinc Coated by the Electrolytic Process for Applications Requiring Designation of the Coating Mass on Each Surface

ASTM A924/A924M (2020) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM C578 (2019) Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation

ASTM C591 (2021) Standard Specification for Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation

ASTM C612 (2014; R 2019) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation

ASTM D2863 (2019) Standard Test Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-Like Combustion of Plastics (Oxygen Index)

ASTM E1300 (2016) Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings

ASTM F2247	(2018) Standard Test Method for Metal Doors Used in Blast Resistant Applications (Equivalent Static Load Method)
ASTM F2248	(2012) Standard Practice for Specifying an Equivalent 3-Second Duration Design Loading for Blast Resistant Glazing Fabricated with Laminated Glass
ASTM F2927	(2012) Standard Test Method for Door Systems Subject to Airblast Loadings

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.115	(2016) Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Steel Frames
--------------------	---

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM HMMA 810	(2009) Hollow Metal Doors
----------------	---------------------------

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 80	(2022) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
NFPA 252	(2022) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

STEEL DOOR INSTITUTE (SDI/DOOR)

SDI/DOOR 111	(2009) Recommended Details for Standard Steel Doors, Frames, and Accessories and Related Components
SDI/DOOR 113	(2013; R2018) Standard Practice for Determining the Steady-State Thermal Transmittance of Steel Door and Frame Assemblies
SDI/DOOR A250.3	(2019) Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Factory Applied Finish Coatings for Steel Doors and Frames
SDI/DOOR A250.4	(2018) Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Physical Endurance for Steel Doors, Frames and Frame Anchors
SDI/DOOR A250.6	(2015) Recommended Practice for Hardware Reinforcing on Standard Steel Doors and Frames
SDI/DOOR A250.8	(2017) Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames
SDI/DOOR A250.11	(2012) Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 4-010-01 (2018;with Change 1, 2020) DoD Minimum
Antiterrorism Standards for Buildings

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 10C (2016; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for
Safety Positive Pressure Fire Tests of
Door Assemblies

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Doors; G, AE

Frames; G, AE

Accessories

Schedule of Doors; G, AE

Schedule of Frames; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Doors; G, AE

Recycled Content for Steel Door Product; S

Frames; G, AE

Recycled Content for Steel Frame Product; S

Accessories

SD-04 Samples

Factory-applied Enamel Finish; G, AE

SD-05 Design Data

Blast Design Calculations; G, AE

See Section 08 39 53, BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT DOORS, for criteria for blast loading and design of steel doors and frames that are designated to be blast resistant.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver doors, frames, and accessories undamaged and with protective

wrappings or packaging. Strap knock-down frames in bundles. Provide temporary steel spreaders securely fastened to the bottom of each welded frame. Store doors and frames on platforms under cover in clean, dry, ventilated, and accessible locations, with 1/4 inch airspace between doors. Remove damp or wet packaging immediately and wipe affected surfaces dry. Replace damaged materials with new.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD STEEL DOORS

SDI/DOOR A250.8, except as specified otherwise. Prepare doors to receive door hardware as specified in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE. Undercut where indicated. Provide exterior doors with top edge closed flush and sealed to prevent water intrusion. Provide doors at 1-3/4 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated. Provide door material that uses a minimum of 25 percent recycled content. Provide data indicating percentage of recycled content for steel door product. Provide exterior glazing in accordance with ASTM F2248 and ASTM E1300. Exterior doors must be tested in accordance with ASTM F2247 or ASTM F2927 to meet requirements of UFC 4-010-01.

2.1.1 Classification - Level, Performance, Model

2.1.1.1 Heavy Duty Doors

SDI/DOOR A250.8, Level 2, physical performance Level B, Model 1, with core construction as required by the manufacturer for interior doors and for exterior doors, of size(s) and design(s) indicated. Where vertical stiffener cores are required, the space between the stiffeners must be filled with board insulation. Provide Level 2 where indicated.

2.1.1.2 Blast Resistant Single and Double Leaf Doors, Frames and Hardware

Provide blast resistant doors which conform to the door description as follows. Structural steel doors shall be flush mounted in frames. Door assembly shall include the door, frame, anchors, hardware, and accessories as a single unit, and shall be provided by a single manufacturer. Frames and anchors shall be capable of transferring blast and rebound reactions to the adjacent supporting structure. Resistance to blast shall be demonstrated by design calculations or by compliant testing on prototype door assemblies. Refer to specification section 08 39 53 for delegated design requirements for the performance of protective door assemblies that are designated to be blast resistant.

Provide Blast Design Calculations by an approved blast consultant that show the door can provide the required level of protection from the designated blast threat. Section 08 39 53, BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT DOORS for additional design requirements.

2.1.1.3 Sound Rated Steel Doors

Provide standard steel doors with a certified minimum sound transmission class (STC) rating as assigned per the project drawings. Refer to the architectural door schedule for assigned STC values. Prepare all hardware, accessories and frame components as required by the door manufacturer so that the STC value of the sound rated door is maintained. Frames for sound rated doors shall be of the welded type and must have cavities between the frame and partitioning packed with 40lb. mineral fiber insulation. Sound

rated doors, assigned an STC value shall receive acoustical frame seals by Pemko, model S44, length cut to fit. Color of acoustical seals shall be the best color match to that of the door frame.

2.2 CUSTOM HOLLOW METAL DOORS

Provide custom hollow metal doors where nonstandard steel doors are indicated. Provide custom steel doors in the door size(s), design(s), materials, construction, gages, and finish as specified for custom steel doors and complying with the requirements of NAAMM HMMA 810. Fill all spaces in exterior doors with insulation. Close top and bottom edges with steel channels not lighter than 16 gage. Close tops of exterior doors flush with an additional channel and seal to prevent water intrusion. Prepare doors to receive hardware specified in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE. Undercut doors where indicated. Provide doors at 1-3/4 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated. Provide exterior glazing in accordance with ASTM F2248 and ASTM E1300. Exterior doors must be tested in accordance with ASTM F2247 and ASTM F2927 to meet the requirements of UFC 4-010-01.

2.3 INSULATED STEEL DOOR SYSTEMS

Provide insulated steel doors and frames in accordance with SDI/DOOR 113 at entrances to dwelling units and where indicated. Meet energy requirements including Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC) and U-factor. Provide insulated steel doors with a core of polyurethane foam; face sheets, edges, and frames of galvanized steel not lighter than 23 gage, 16 gage, and 16 gage respectively; magnetic weatherstripping; nonremovable-pin hinges; thermal-break aluminum threshold; and vinyl door bottom. Provide to doors and frames a phosphate treatment, rust-inhibitive primer, and baked acrylic enamel finish. Test doors in accordance with SDI/DOOR A250.4 and meet the requirements for Level C. Prepare doors to receive specified hardware. Provide doors 1-3/4 inch thick.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

2.4.1 Louvers

2.4.1.1 Interior Louvers

SDI/DOOR 111. Where indicated, provide louvers of stationary type where scheduled. Detachable moldings on room or non security side of door; on security side of door, moldings to be integral part of louver. Form louver frames of 20 gage steel and louver blades of a minimum 24 gage.

2.4.2 Astragals

For pairs of exterior steel doors which will not have aluminum astragals or removable mullions, as specified in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE provide overlapping steel astragals with the doors.

2.4.3 Moldings

Provide moldings around glass of interior and exterior doors and louvers of interior doors. Provide nonremovable moldings on outside of exterior doors and on corridor side of interior doors. Other moldings may be stationary or removable. Secure inside moldings to stationary moldings, or provide snap-on moldings.

2.5 INSULATION CORES

Provide insulating cores at all exterior doors and other specific doors noted in the door schedule, and provide an apparent U-factor of .48 in accordance with SDI/DOOR 113 and conforming to:

- a. Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Foam: ASTM C591, Type I or II, foamed-in-place or in board form, with oxygen index of not less than 22 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D2863; or
- b. Rigid Polystyrene Foam Board: ASTM C578, Type I or II; or
- c. Mineral board: ASTM C612, Type I.

2.6 STANDARD STEEL FRAMES

SDI/DOOR A250.8, Level 4, except as otherwise specified. Form frames to sizes and shapes indicated, with welded corners. Provide steel frames for doors, mullions, cased openings, and interior glazed panels, unless otherwise indicated. Provide frame product that uses a minimum of 25 percent recycled content. Provide data indicating percentage of recycled content for steel frame product.

2.6.1 Welded Frames

Continuously weld frame faces at corner joints. Mechanically interlock or continuously weld stops and rabbets. Grind welds smooth.

Weld frames in accordance with the recommended practice of the Structural Welding Code Sections 1 through 6, AWS D1.1/D1.1M and in accordance with the practice specified by the producer of the metal being welded.

2.6.2 Knock-Down Frames

Design corners for simple field assembly by concealed tenons, splice plates, or interlocking joints that produce square, rigid corners and a tight fit and maintain the alignment of adjoining members. Provide locknuts for bolted connections.

2.6.3 Stops and Beads

Provide form and loose stops and beads from 20 gage steel. Provide for glazed and other openings in standard steel frames. Secure beads to frames with oval-head, countersunk Phillips self-tapping sheet metal screws or concealed clips and fasteners. Space fasteners approximately 12 to 16 inch on center. Miter molded shapes at corners. Butt or miter square or rectangular beads at corners.

2.6.4 Terminated Stops

Where indicated, terminate interior door frame stops 1 inch above floor.

2.6.5 Anchors

Provide anchors to secure the frame to adjoining construction. Provide steel anchors, zinc-coated not lighter than 18 gage.

2.6.5.1 Wall Anchors

Provide at least three anchors for each jamb. For frames which are more than 7.5 feet in height, provide one additional anchor for each jamb for each additional 2.5 feet or fraction thereof. Refer to Division section 08 39 53 BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT DOORS for additional requirements.

- a. Masonry: Provide anchors of corrugated or perforated steel straps or 3/16 inch diameter steel wire, adjustable or T-shaped;
- b. Stud partitions: Weld or otherwise securely fasten anchors to backs of frames. Design anchors to be fastened to closed steel studs with sheet metal screws, and to open steel studs by wiring or welding;
- c. Completed openings: Secure frames to previously placed concrete or masonry with expansion bolts in accordance with SDI/DOOR 111; and

2.6.5.2 Floor Anchors

Provide floor anchors drilled for 3/8 inch anchor bolts at bottom of each jamb member.

2.7 FIRE DOORS AND FRAMES

Provide fire doors and frames in accordance with NFPA 80 and this specification. Include insulated core materials in fire doors where indicated in the door schedule.

2.7.1 Labels

Provide fire doors and frames bearing the label of Underwriters Laboratories (UL), Factory Mutual Engineering and Research (FM), or Warnock Hersey International (WHI) attesting to the rating required. Testing must be in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C. Provide labels that are metal with raised letters, bearing the name or file number of the door and frame manufacturer. Labels must be permanently affixed at the factory to frames and to the hinge edge of the door. Do not paint door and labels.

2.8 EXTERIOR FRAMES

Provide thermal insulation in all exterior frames. Provide frames of a minimum Level 4, with frames of a minimum thickness of 0.067 inch, 14 gage.

2.9 HARDWARE PREPARATION

Drill and tap doors and frames to receive finish hardware. Prepare doors and frames for hardware in accordance with the applicable requirements of SDI/DOOR A250.8 and SDI/DOOR A250.6. For additional requirements refer to ANSI/BHMA A156.115. Drill and tap for surface-applied hardware at the project site. Build additional reinforcing for surface-applied hardware into the door at the factory. Punch door frames, with the exception of frames that will have weatherstripping or lightproof or soundproof gasketing, to receive a minimum of two rubber or vinyl door silencers on lock side of single doors and one silencer for each leaf at heads of double doors. Set lock strikes out to provide clearance for silencers.

2.10 FINISHES

2.10.1 Factory-Primed Finish

Thoroughly clean all surfaces of doors and frames then chemically treat and factory prime with a rust inhibiting coating as specified in SDI/DOOR A250.8.

2.10.2 Hot-Dip Zinc-Coated and Factory-Primed Finish

Fabricate exterior doors and frames from hot dipped zinc coated steel, alloyed type, that complies with ASTM A924/A924M and ASTM A653/A653M. The coating weight must meet or exceed the minimum requirements for coatings having 0.4 ounces per square foot, total both sides, i.e., A40. Repair damaged zinc-coated surfaces by the application of zinc dust paint. Thoroughly clean and chemically treat to insure maximum paint adhesion. Factory prime as specified in SDI/DOOR A250.8.

2.10.3 Electrolytic Zinc-Coated Anchors and Accessories

Provide electrolytically deposited zinc-coated steel in accordance with ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Quality, Coating Class A. Phosphate treat and factory prime zinc-coated surfaces as specified in SDI/DOOR A250.8.

2.10.4 Factory-Applied Enamel Finish

Provide coatings that meet test procedures and acceptance criteria in accordance with SDI/DOOR A250.3. After factory priming, apply two coats of medium-gloss enamel to exposed surfaces. Separately bake or oven dry each coat. Drying time and temperature requirements must be in accordance with the coating manufacturer's recommendations. Provide finish coat color(s) as indicated to match approved color sample(s).

2.11 FABRICATION AND WORKMANSHIP

Provide finished doors and frames that are strong and rigid, neat in appearance, and free from defects, waves, scratches, cuts, dents, ridges, holes, warp, and buckle. Provide molded members that are clean cut, straight, and true, with joints coped or mitered, well formed, and in true alignment. Dress exposed welded and soldered joints smooth. Design door frame sections for use with the wall construction indicated. Corner joints must be well formed and in true alignment. Conceal fastenings where practicable. On wraparound frames for masonry partitions, provide a throat opening 1/8 inch larger than the actual masonry thickness. Design other frames in exposed masonry walls or partitions to allow sufficient space between the inside back of trim and masonry to receive caulking compound.

2.12 PROVISIONS FOR GLAZING

Materials are specified in Section 08 81 00, GLAZING.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Frames

Set frames in accordance with SDI/DOOR A250.11. Plumb, align, and brace securely until permanent anchors are set. Anchor bottoms of frames with expansion bolts or powder-actuated fasteners. Build in or secure wall anchors to adjoining construction.

3.1.2 Doors

Hang doors in accordance with clearances specified in SDI/DOOR A250.8. After erection and glazing, clean and adjust hardware.

3.1.3 Fire Doors and Frames

Install fire doors and frames, including hardware, in accordance with NFPA 80. Install fire rated doors and frames in accordance with NFPA 80.

3.2 PROTECTION

Protect doors and frames from damage. Repair damaged doors and frames prior to completion and acceptance of the project or replace with new, as directed. Wire brush rusted frames until rust is removed. Clean thoroughly. Apply an all-over coat of rust-inhibitive paint of the same type used for shop coat.

3.3 CLEANING

Upon completion, clean exposed surfaces of doors and frames thoroughly. Remove mastic smears and other unsightly marks.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 14 00

WOOD DOORS

08/16, CHG 1: 08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN FOREST FOUNDATION (AFF)

ATFS STANDARDS (2015) American Tree Farm System Standards of Sustainability 2015-2020

CSA GROUP (CSA)

CSA Z809-08 (R2013) Sustainable Forest Management

FOREST STEWARDSHIP COUNCIL (FSC)

FSC STD 01 001 (2015) Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA LD 3 (2005) Standard for High-Pressure Decorative Laminates

PROGRAMME FOR ENDORSEMENT OF FOREST CERTIFICATION (PEFC)

PEFC ST 2002:2013 (2015) PEFC International Standard Chain of Custody of Forest Based Products Requirements

SUSTAINABLE FOREST INITIATIVE (SFI)

SFI 2015-2019 (2015) Standards, Rules for Label Use, Procedures and Guidance

WINDOW AND DOOR MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (WDMA)

ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A (2013) Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors

ANSI/WDMA I.S.6A (2013) Interior Architectural Stile and Rail Doors

WOODWORK INSTITUTE (WI)

NAAWS 3.1 (2017; 2018 Errata Edition) North American Architectural Woodwork Standards

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Doors; G, AE

Submit drawings or catalog data showing each type of door unit . Indicate within drawings and data the door types and construction, sizes, thickness, methods of assembly.

SD-03 Product Data

Doors; G, AE

Recycled Content for Door Cores; S

Accessories

Water-resistant Sealer

Sample Warranty

SD-04 Samples

Doors

Prior to the delivery of wood doors, submit a sample section of each type of door which shows the stile, rail, veneer, finish, and core construction.

Door Finish Colors; G, AE

Submit a minimum of three color selection samples , minimum 3 by 5 inches in size representing wood stain .

SD-06 Test Reports

Cycle-Slam

Hinge Loading Resistance

Submit cycle-slam test report for doors tested in accordance with ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A, and hinge loading resistance test report for doors tested in accordance with ANSI/WDMA I.S.6A.

SD-07 Certificates

Certified Sustainably Harvested Flush Wood Doors; S

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Certified Sustainably Harvested Wood

Provide wood certified as sustainably harvested by FSC STD 01 001, ATFS STANDARDS, CSA Z809-08, SFI 2015-2019, or other third party program certified by PEFC ST 2002:2013. Provide a letter of Certification of Sustainably Harvested Wood signed by the wood supplier. Identify certifying organization and their third party program name and indicate compliance with chain-of-custody program requirements. Submit sustainable wood certification data; identify each certified product on a line item basis. Submit copies of invoices bearing certification numbers.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver doors to the site in an undamaged condition and protect against damage and dampness. Stack doors flat under cover. Support on blocking, a minimum of 4 inch thick, located at each end and at the midpoint of the door. Store doors in a well-ventilated building so that they will not be exposed to excessive moisture, heat, dryness, direct sunlight, or extreme changes of temperature and humidity. Replace defective or damaged doors with new ones.

1.5 WARRANTY

Warrant doors free of defects as set forth in the door manufacturer's standard door warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DOORS

Provide doors of the types, sizes, and designs indicated free of urea-formaldehyde resins.

2.1.1 Flush Doors

Conform to ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A for flush doors. Provide hollow core doors with lock blocks and 1 inch minimum thickness hinge stile. Hardwood stile edge bands of doors receives a natural finish, compatible with face veneer. Provide mill option for stile edge of doors scheduled to be painted. No visible finger joints will be accepted in stile edge bands. When used, locate finger-joints under hardware. Provide certified sustainably harvested flush wood doors.

2.1.1.1 Interior Flush Doors

Provide staved lumber core, Type II flush doors conforming to ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A with faces of custom. Hardwood veneers must be rift cut. Door cores must have a minimum recycled content of 45 percent. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for door cores.

2.1.1.2 Sound Rated Doors

Provide interior flush, solid core wood doors with a certified minimum sound transmission class (STC) rating as assigned per the project drawings. Refer to the architectural door schedule for assigned STC values. Prepare all hardware, accessories and frame components as required

by the door manufacturer so that the STC value of the sound rated door is maintained. Frames for sound rated doors shall be of the welded type and must have cavities between the frame and partitioning packed with 40lb. mineral fiber insulation. Sound rated doors, assigned an STC value shall receive acoustical frame seals by Pemko, model S44, length cut to fit. Color of acoustical seals shall be the best color match to that of the door frame. Door faces shall be custom grade red oak, rift cut with clear finish. Door cores must have a minimum recycled content of 45 percent. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for door cores.

2.1.2 Prehung Doors

Frames for prehung interior doors to be for painted finish, with 3 piece adjustable jamb units with pins. Provide doors complete with frame, hinges, and prepared to receive finish hardware.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

2.2.1 Door Light Openings

Provide glazed openings with the manufacturer's standard wood moldings. Provide moldings for doors to receive natural finish of the same wood species and color as the wood face veneers. Provide moldings on the exterior doors with sloped surfaces. Lip type moldings for flush doors.

2.2.2 Additional Hardware Reinforcement

Provide the minimum lock blocks to secure the specified hardware. The measurement of top, bottom, and intermediate rail blocks are a minimum 125 mm 5 inch by full core width. Comply with the manufacturer's labeling requirements for reinforcement blocking, but not mineral material similar to the core.

2.3 FABRICATION

2.3.1 Marking

Stamp each door with a brand, stamp, or other identifying mark indicating quality and construction of the door.

2.3.2 Quality and Construction

Identify the standard on which the construction of the door was based, identify the standard under which preservative treatment was made, and identify doors having a Type I glue bond.

2.3.3 Preservative Treatment

Treat doors scheduled for restrooms, janitor closets and other possible wet locations including exterior doors with a water-repellent preservative treatment and so marketed at the manufacturer's plant.

2.3.4 Adhesives and Bonds

ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A. Use Type I bond for exterior doors and Type II bond for interior doors. Provide a nonstaining adhesive on doors with a natural finish.

2.3.5 Prefitting

Provide factory finished and factory prefitted doors for the specified hardware, door frame and door-swing indicated. Machine and size doors at the factory by the door manufacturer in accordance with the standards under which the doors are produced and manufactured. The work includes sizing, beveling edges, mortising, and drilling for hardware and providing necessary beaded openings for glass and louvers. Provide the door manufacturer with the necessary hardware samples, and frame and hardware schedules to coordinate the work.

2.3.6 Finishes

2.3.6.1 Field Painting

Factory prime or seal doors, and field paint.

2.3.6.2 Factory Finish

Provide doors finished at the factory by the door manufacturer as follows: WDMA System TR-8 (UV cured acrylated polyester/urethane) or TR-2 (catalyzed lacquer) or TR-4 (conversion varnish) factory finish systems that utilize water-based stains and finishes with ultraviolet UV protection. The coating is NAAWS 3.1 premium, medium rubbed sheen, open grain effect. Use stain when required to produce the finish specified for color. Seal edges, cutouts, trim, and wood accessories, and apply two coats of finish compatible with the door face finish. Touch-up finishes that are scratched or marred, or where exposed fastener holes are filled, in accordance with the door manufacturer's instructions. Match color and sheen of factory finish using materials compatible for field application.

2.3.6.3 Plastic Laminate Finish

Factory applied, ANSI/NEMA LD 3, General or Specific purpose type, 0.050 inch minimum thickness. Glue laminated plastic for hollow core doors to wood veneer, plywood, or hardboard backing to form door panel. Provide a combined thickness of laminate sheet and backing of 0.10 inch minimum.

2.3.6.4 Color

Provide door finish colors in accordance with Section 09 06 00 SCHEDULES FOR FINISHES.

2.3.7 Water-Resistant Sealer

Provide manufacturer's standard water-resistant sealer compatible with the specified finish.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

Meet or exceed the following minimum performance criteria of stiles of "B" and "C" label fire doors utilizing standard mortise leaf hinges:

- a. Cycle-slam: Standard Duty Doors: 250,000 cycles with no loose hinge screws or other visible signs of failure when tested in accordance with the requirements of ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A .
- b. Hinge loading resistance: Averages of ten test samples not less than Standard Duty doors: 400 pounds force when tested for direct screw

withdrawal in accordance with ANSI/WDMA I.S.6A using a No. 12, 1-1/4 inch long, steel, fully threaded wood screw. Drill 5/32 inch pilot hole, use 1-1/2 inch opening around screw for bearing surface, and engage screw full, except for last 1/8 inch. Do not use a steel plate to reinforce screw area.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

Before installation, seal top and bottom edges of doors with the approved water-resistant sealer. Seal cuts made on the job immediately after cutting using approved water-resistant sealer. Fit, trim, and hang doors with a 1/16 inch minimum, 1/8 inch maximum clearance at sides and top, and a 3/16 inch minimum, 1/4 inch maximum clearance over thresholds. Provide 3/8 inch minimum, 7/16 inch maximum clearance at bottom where no threshold occurs. Bevel edges of doors at the rate of 1/8 inch in 2 inch. Door warp must not exceed 1/4 inch when measured in accordance with ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A.

3.1.1 Prehung Doors

Install doors in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and details. Provide side and head jambs joined together with a dado or notch of 3/16 inch minimum depth.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 31 00

ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

05/17, CHG 1: 08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M (2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

ASTM A653/A653M (2020) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A666 (2015) Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate and Flat Bar

ASTM A1008/A1008M (2021a) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable

ASTM E119 (2020) Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 252 (2022) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 10B (2008; Reprint May 2020) Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

UL 263 (2011; Reprint Aug 2021) UL Standard for Safety Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Access Doors And Panels; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Access Doors And Panels; G, AE

Hardware Including Locks and Keys; G, AE

Accessories; G, AE

Recycled Content; S

SD-04 Samples

Finishes; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Fire-rating(s) of Assemblies; G, AE

1.3 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

For access doors and panels provide the following:

1.3.1 Shop Drawings

For field assembled access doors and panels, provide plans, elevations, sections, and details for each type of access door and panel assembly. Indicate frame, surface and edge construction, materials, and accessories. Indicate types of finished surfaces and details for panel edge conditions. Provide a door schedule with a unique number for each access door and panel, specific location in the project, location of hinges and hardware for each door. Indicate fire-rating(s) of assemblies.

1.3.2 Product Data

For shop assembled access doors and panels, provide literature indicating sizes, types, frame and edge construction, finishes, hardware, accessories such as gaskets, seals and weatherstripping, and location of each door and panel in the project. Indicate fire-ratings of assemblies,. Provide details of adjoining work for each condition indicated.

1.3.3 Finish Samples

Submit two color charts from manufacturer's standard color and finish options for each type of frame and panel assembly finish indicated.

1.3.4 Test Reports

Provide test reports for fire-rated assemblies when tested in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10B for fire-rated access door assemblies installed vertically.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.4.1 Structural Requirements

Provide floor access assemblies to support live loads indicated for floors. Deflection must not exceed 1/180 of span.

1.4.2 Fire-Rating Requirements

Provide access panels with a minimum fire-rating of as indicated on the Drawings.

1.4.3 Access Panels for Wet Areas

Provide panel assemblies that will be located in wet areas with corrosion resistant finishes and hardware and water resistant gasketing.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

Protect from corrosion, deformation, and other types of damage. Store items in an enclosed area free from contact with soil and weather. Remove and replace damaged items with new items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 RECYCLED CONTENT

Provide products with recycled content. Provide data for each product with recycled content, identifying percentage of recycled content.

2.2 MATERIALS

2.2.1 Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars

Provide in accordance with ASTM A36/A36M.

2.2.2 Sheet Steel

Provide cold rolled steel sheet substrate in accordance with ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.

2.2.3 Stainless Steel

Provide in accordance with ASTM A666, type 302 or 304.

2.2.4 Metallic Coated Steel Sheet

Provide in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.

2.2.5 Hardware

Provide automatic closing devices. Provide latch releases operable from

insides of doors. Provide anchors in accordance with applicable fire test parameters.

2.2.6 Hinges

Provide concealed spring hinges, 175 degrees of opening, with removable hinge pins to allow removal of door panel from frame. Provide hinges of same steel as door and frame or in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. If providing non-continuous hinges, provide in numbers required to maintain alignment of door panel with frame. Provide coatings as necessary to permanently protect dissimilar metals from contact with one another; see Part 3 herein for more information.

2.2.7 Locks

Unless otherwise indicated, provide flush screwdriver operated cam lock. Provide plastic sleeve or stainless steel bushings to protect holes in surface finishes for screwdriver to access lock. keyed lock Lock cylinders are specified in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE.

2.2.8 Accessories

Provide anchors in size, number and location on four sides to secure access door to substrate. Provide anchors in types as recommended by manufacturer's written installation instructions for each substrate indicated. Provide shims, bushings, clips, gaskets, and other devices as necessary for a complete installation.

2.3 FABRICATION

2.3.1 Thickness, Size, Edges

Fabricate frames for access doors of steel not lighter than 16 gage with welded joints and anchorage for securing to adjacent construction. Provide doors a minimum of 24 by 24 inches and of not lighter than 16 gage steel, with stiffened edges and welded attachments. Provide with eased (lightly rounded) edges, without burrs, snags or sharpness and exposed welds ground smooth.

2.3.2 Welding

Provide in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

2.4 ACCESS ASSEMBLY TYPES

Unless indicated otherwise, provide flush-face steel access doors and panels with steel frames and flanges.

2.4.1 Fire-rated Doors

2.4.1.1 Door Construction

Provide ceiling access door construction in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Provide wall access doors in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

2.4.1.2 Labels

Provide class B opening according to UL 10B or test by another nationally recognized laboratory, approved by the Contracting Officer. Provide

fire-rating as indicated herein, with a maximum temperature rise of 216 degrees F.

2.4.1.3 Door Panel and Frame

Steel sheet, with mineral fiber insulation core, insulated sandwich type construction.

2.5 FINISHES

Provide steel frames and panel surfaces with a baked enamel. Provide manufacturer's standard two coat finish system consisting of one coat primer and one thermoset topcoat. Provide dry film thickness in 2 mils minimum. Provide steel frame and panel surfaces with a shop applied prime coat. Field paint frames and panels to match wall and ceiling surfaces in which they occur. Provide exposed fastenings that approximately match the color and finish of the each material to which fastenings are applied.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Field verify all measurements prior to fabrication. Verify access door locations and sizes provide required maintenance access to installed building services components. Protect existing construction and completed work from damage during installation.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Install items at locations indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Include materials and parts as necessary for a complete installation of each item. Conceal fastenings where practicable. Poor matching of holes to fasteners is cause for rejection of the work.

3.3 ACCESS LOCATIONS

Provide door for access to "attic space" above the blast perimeter of the administration area. Access from warehouse side of the building.

3.4 ACCESS LOCATIONS IN WET AREAS

When possible, avoid locating access panels in wet areas. When such locations cannot be avoided, provide moisture resistant assemblies as indicated in Part I herein.

3.5 FIELD PAINTING

Field painting primed access doors in accordance with the requirements of Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.6 ADJUSTMENT

Adjust hardware so that door panel opens freely. Adjust door when closed center door panel in frame.

3.7 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Do not paint surfaces when damp or exposed to weather, when surface

temperature is below 45 degrees F or over 95 degrees F, unless approved by the Contracting Officer.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 33 23

OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

08/20, CHG 1: 02/22

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

ASCE 7-16 (2017; Errata 2018; Supp 1 2018) Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE FUN IP (2021) Fundamentals Handbook, I-P Edition

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B29.400 (2001; (R 2008) (R 2013) (R 2018)) Combination, "H" Type Mill Chains, and Sprockets

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M (2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

ASTM A47/A47M (1999; R 2018; E 2018) Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings

ASTM A48/A48M (2003; R 2021) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings

ASTM A53/A53M (2020) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless

ASTM A153/A153M (2016a) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

ASTM A307 (2021) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength

ASTM A653/A653M (2020) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A666	(2015) Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate and Flat Bar
ASTM A780/A780M	(2020) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
ASTM A924/A924M	(2020) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM B221	(2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
ASTM E84	(2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E330/E330M	(2014; R 2021) Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
ASTM F568M	(2007) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Externally Threaded Metric Fasteners

DOOR AND ACCESS SYSTEM MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (DASMA)

ANSI/DASMA 108	(2017) Standard Method for Testing Sectional Garage Doors, Rolling Doors and Flexible Doors: Determination of Structural Performance Under Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
----------------	---

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA ICS 1	(2000; R 2015) Standard for Industrial Control and Systems: General Requirements
NEMA ICS 2	(2000; R 2020) Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors, and Overload Relays Rated 600 V
NEMA ICS 6	(1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures
NEMA MG 1	(2016) Motors and Generators - Revision 1: 2018; Includes 2021 Updates to Parts 0, 1, 7, 12, 30, and 31
NEMA ST 1	(1988; R 1994; R 1997) Specialty Transformers (Except General Purpose Type)

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4)
National Electrical Code

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 325 (2017; Reprint Feb 2020) UL Standard for
Safety Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and
Window Operators and Systems

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Overhead Coiling Doors; G, AE
Counterbalancing Mechanism; G, AE
Electric Door Operators; G, AE
Bottom Bars; G, AE
Guides; G, AE
Mounting Brackets; G, AE
Hood; G, AE
Installation Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Overhead Coiling Doors; G, AE
Hardware; G, AE
Counterbalancing Mechanism; G, AE
Electric Door Operators; G, AE
Recycled content for steel curtain slats; S

SD-05 Design Data

Overhead Coiling Doors; G, AE
Hardware; G, AE
Counterbalancing Mechanism; G, AE

Electric Door Operators; G, AE

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals, Data Package 2; G, AE

Certification Of Compliance With UL 325

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty; G, AE

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

Provide oversized assemblies with a listing agency oversize label, or a certificate signed by an official of the manufacturing company certifying that the door and operator are designed to meet the specified requirements.

1.3.1 Warranty

Furnish a written guarantee that the helical spring and counterbalance mechanism are free from defects in material and workmanship for not less than two years after completion and acceptance of the project.

Warrant that upon notification by the Government, any defects in material, workmanship, and door operation are immediately correct within the same time period covered by the guarantee, at no cost to the Government.

1.3.2 Operation And Maintenance Submittals

Submit 6 copies of the operation and maintenance manuals 30 calendar days prior to testing the Overhead Coiling Door Assemblies. Update and resubmit data for final approval no later than 30 calendar days prior to cContract completion.

Submit Operation and Maintenance Manuals for Overhead Coiling Door Assemblies, including the following items:

Manual Door Operators

Electric Door Operators

Hood

Counterbalancing Mechanism

Painting

Provide operation and maintenance manuals which are consistent with manufacturer's standard brochures, schematics, printed instructions, operating procedures, and safety precautions.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver doors to the jobsite wrapped in a protective covering with the brands and names clearly marked thereon. Store doors in an adequately ventilated dry location that is free from dirt and dust, water, or other contaminants. Store in a manner that permits easy access for inspection and handling. Handle doors carefully to prevent damage. Remove damaged

items that cannot be restored to like-new condition and provide new items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide insulated coiling doors with interlocking slats, complete with anchoring and door hardware, guides, hood, and operating mechanisms, and designed for use on openings as indicated. Doors must be spring counterbalanced, rolling type, and designed for use on exterior openings, as indicated. Doors must be operated by electric-power with auxiliary hand chain operation. Doors to be surface-mounted type with guides at jambs set back a sufficient distance to provide a clear opening when door is in open position. Mount exterior doors as indicated.

2.1.1 Design Requirements

2.1.1.1 Door Detail Shop Drawings

Provide installation drawings for door assemblies which show: elevations of each door type, shape and thickness of materials, finishes, details of joints and connections, details of guides and fittings, rough opening dimensions, location and description of hardware, anchorage locations, and counterbalancing mechanism and door operator details. Show locations of wiring diagrams for power, signal and controls. For motor-operated doors include supporting brackets for motors, location, type, and ratings of motors, and safety devices. Include a schedule showing the location of each door with the drawings.

2.1.2 Performance Requirements

2.1.2.1 Wind Loading

Design and fabricate door assembly to withstand the wind loading pressure of at least 125 pounds per square foot in accordance with ANSI/DASMA 108. Provide test data showing compliance with ASTM E330/E330M. Sound engineering principles may be used to interpolate or extrapolate test results to door sizes not specifically tested. Ensure that the complete assembly meets or exceeds the requirements of ASCE 7-16.

2.1.2.2 Operational Cycle Life

Design all portions of the door, hardware and operating mechanism that are subject to movement, wear, or stress fatigue to operate through a minimum number of 10 cycles per day. One complete cycle of door operation is defined as when the door is in the closed position, moves to the fully open position, and returns to the closed position.

2.2 COMPONENTS

2.2.1 Overhead Coiling Doors

2.2.1.1 Curtain Materials and Construction

Provide curtain slats fabricated from Grade A steel sheets conforming to ASTM A653/A653M, with the additional requirement of a minimum yield point of 33,000 psi. Provide 12 gauge sheets, Grade 40 steel with galvanized steel zinc coating in conformance with ASTM A653/A653M and ASTM A924/A924M. Provide steel curtain slats containing a minimum of 20 percent recycled

content. Submit data identifying percentage of recycled content for steel curtain slats.

Fabricate doors from interlocking cold-rolled slats, with section profiles as specified, designed to withstand the specified wind loading. Ensure the provided slats are continuous without splices for the width of the door.

Provide slats filled with manufacturer's standard thermal insulation, complying with the maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, according to ASTM E84. Enclose the insulation completely within the slat faces on the interior surface of the slats.

2.2.1.2 Insulated Curtains

Form curtains from manufacturer's standard shapes of 2" interlocking slats. Supply a slat system with a minimum thermal value of R-12, when calculated in accordance with ASHRAE FUN IP. Slats to consist of a urethane core not less than 1 1/16 inch thick, completely enclosed within metal facings. Slat steel thickness as required by the size of the door to meet specified performance requirements. The insulated slat assembly requires a flame spread rating of not more than 25 and a smoke development factor of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.2.1.3 Curtain Bottom Bar

Install curtain bottom bars as pairs of angles or using extrusions from the manufacturer's standard steel, stainless and aluminum extrusions not less than 2.0 by 2.0 inches by 0.188 inch. Do not use aluminum on doors more than 16 feet wide. Ensure steel extrusions conform to ASTM A36/A36M. Stainless steel extrusions conforming to ASTM A666, Type 304. Aluminum extrusions conforming to ASTM B221. Galvanize angles and fasteners in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M and ASTM A924/A924M. Coat welds and abrasions with paint conforming to ASTM A780/A780M.

2.2.1.4 Endlocks (and Windlocks)

Provide endlocks of Grade B cast steel conforming to ASTM A47/A47M, galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M. Secure locks at every other curtain slat. Windlocks must prevent curtain from leaving guide because of deflection from wind pressure or other forces.

2.2.1.5 Weather Stripping

Provide a hood baffle inside the hood that is a minimum 1/16 inch thick sheet of vinyl, neoprene rubber or equivalent. Provide guide weather stripping that is a minimum 1/16 inch thick sheet of vinyl, neoprene rubber, or equivalent.

Provide bottom bar weather-stripping that is a minimum 1/16 inch thick sheet of vinyl, neoprene rubber, or equivalent.

2.2.1.6 Locking Devices

Ensure that the slide bolt engages through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on both left and right jamb sides, operable from coil side.

Provide a locking device assembly which includes cylinder lock, operating

handle, cam plate, and adjustable locking bars to engage through slots in tracks.

Provide a chain lock keeper suitable for a standard padlock.

2.2.1.7 Safety Interlock

Equip power-operated doors with a safety interlock switch to disengage power supply when the door is locked, or provide an operator with an internal lock sensing device to prevent the door opening when the door is locked.

2.2.2 Hardware

Ensure that all hardware conforms to ASTM A153/A153M, ASTM A307, and ASTM F568M.

2.2.2.1 Guides

Fabricate curtain jamb guides from the manufacturer's standard angles or channels of same material and finish as curtain slats unless otherwise indicated. Provide guides with sufficient depth or incorporate a steel locking bar to retain the curtain in place under the wind pressure specified. Ensure curtain operates smoothly. Slot bolt holes for track adjustment. Securely attach guides to adjoining construction with not less than 3/8 inch diameter bolts, spaced near each end and not over 30 inches apart.

Ensure guides are roll-formed steel channel bolted to angle or structural grade, three angle assembly of stainless steel to form a slot of sufficient depth to retain curtains in guides to achieve 125 psf windload standard. Guides may be provided with integral windlock bars and removable bottom bar stops.

Fabricate with structural steel angles. Provide windlock bars of same material when windlocks are required to meet specified wind load. Flare the top of inner and outer guide angles outwards to form bellmouth for smooth entry of curtain into guides. Provide removable guide stoppers to prevent over travel of curtain and bottom bar.

2.2.2.2 Hood

Provide a hood with a minimum-gauge B&S sheet metal, flanged at top for attachment to header and flanged at bottom to provide longitudinal stiffness. The hood encloses the curtain coil and counterbalance mechanism.

Hoods for openings more than 12 feet in width must have intermediate support brackets to prevent excessive sag. Provide a weather baffle at the lintel or inside the hood of each exterior door.

2.2.3 Counterbalancing Mechanism

Counterbalance doors by means of manufacturer's standard mechanism with an adjustable-tension, steel helical torsion spring mounted, around a steel shaft and contained in a spring barrel connected to top of curtain with barrel rings. Use grease-sealed or self-lubricating bearings for rotating members.

2.2.3.1 Brackets

Provide the manufacturer's standard mounting brackets with one located at each end of the counterbalance barrel conforming to ASTM A36/A36M. Provide brackets of hot-rolled steel.

Brackets will be of 1/4 inch minimum thick steel plates, with permanently sealed ball bearings. Designed to enclose ends of coil and provide support of counterbalance pipe at each end.

2.2.3.2 Counterbalance Barrels

Curtain must roll up on a barrel supported at head of opening on brackets and be balanced by a torsion spring system in the barrel. Fabricate spring barrel of manufacturer's standard hot-formed, structural-quality, welded or seamless carbon-steel pipe, conforming to ASTM A53/A53M or equivalent. Ensure the barrel is of sufficient diameter and wall thickness to support rolled-up curtain without distortion of slats. Limit barrel deflection to not more than 0.03 inch per foot of span under full load.

a. Barrel

Provide steel pipe capable of supporting curtain load with maximum deflection of 0.03 inches per foot of width.

b. Spring Balance

Provide an oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion spring assembly designed for proper balance of door. Ensure that effort to operate manually operated units does not exceed 25 lbs. At least 80 percent of the door weight must be counterbalanced at any position. Provide wheel for applying and adjusting spring torque.

2.2.3.3 Spring Balance

Install one or more oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion springs within the barrel, capable of producing sufficient torque to assure easy operation of the door curtain. Provide and size springs to counterbalance weight of curtain, with uniform adjustment accessible from outside barrel. Secure ends of springs to barrel and shaft with cast-steel barrel plugs.

2.2.3.4 Torsion Rod for Counter Balance

Fabricate rod from the manufacturer's standard cold-rolled steel, sized to hold fixed spring ends and carry torsional load.

2.2.3.5 Counterbalance Shaft Assembly

a. Barrel

Provide steel pipe capable of supporting the curtain load with maximum deflection of 0.03 inches per foot of width.

b. Spring Balance

Provide an oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion spring assembly designed for proper balance of door. Ensure that maximum effort

to operate does not exceed 25 pounds. Provide wheel for applying and adjusting spring torque.

2.2.4 Manual Chain-Hoist Door Operators

Provide door operators which consist of an endless steel hand chain, chain-pocket wheel, guard, and a geared reduction unit of at least a 3 to 1 ratio. Required pull for operation cannot exceed 35 pounds. Chain must extend to within 3 feet of floor.

Provide chain hoists with a mechanism allowing the curtain to be stopped at any point in its upward or downward travel and to remain in that position until moved to the fully open or closed position. Provide hand chains of galvanized steel. Ensure that the yield point of the chain is at least three times the required hand-chain pull.

Provide chain sprocket wheels of cast iron conforming to ASTM A48/A48M.

2.2.5 Electric Door Operators

Provide electrical wiring and door operating controls conforming to the applicable requirements of NFPA 70 and UL 325. The door manufacturer must furnish automatic control and safety devices, including extra flexible type SO cable and spring-loaded automatic takeup reel or equivalent device, as required for proper operation of the doors.

Electrical materials, equipment, and devices for installation in hazardous locations, as defined by NFPA 70, must be specifically approved by Underwriters Laboratories or an independent testing agency using equivalent standards, for the particular chemical group and the class and division of hazardous location involved.

Electric door-operator assemblies need to be the sizes and capacities recommended and provided by the door manufacturer for specified doors. Furnish complete assemblies with electric motors and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear reduction units, solenoid-operated brakes, clutch, remote-control stations, manual or automatic control devices, and accessories as required for proper operation of the doors.

Design the operators so that motors may be removed without disturbing the limit-switch adjustment and affecting the emergency auxiliary operators.

Provide a manual operator of chain-gear mechanisms with a release clutch to permit manual operation of doors in case of power failure. Arrange the emergency manual operator so that it may be put into and out of operation from floor level, and its use does not affect the adjustment of the limit switches. Provide an electrical or mechanical device that automatically disconnects the motor from the operating mechanism when the emergency manual operating mechanism is engaged.

2.2.5.1 Door-Operator Types

Provide an operator mounted to the inside front wall on the left or right side of door and connected to door drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Side room is required for this type of mounting. Wall mounted operator can also be mounted above or below shaft; if above shaft, headroom is required.

2.2.5.2 Electric Motors

Provide motors which are the high-starting-torque, reversible, constant-duty electrical type with overload protection of sufficient torque and horsepower to move the door in either direction from any position. Ensure they produce a door-travel speed of not less than 8 nor more than 12 inches per second without exceeding the horsepower rating.

Provide motors which conform to NEMA MG 1 designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency to the requirements specified. Motors must be suitable for operation on current of the characteristics indicated on the electrical drawings. Install motors in approved locations.

2.2.5.3 Motor Bearings

Select bearings with bronze-sleeve or heavy-duty ball or roller antifriction type with full provisions for the type of thrust imposed by the specific duty load.

Pre-lubricate and factory seal bearings in motors less than 1/2 horsepower.

Equip motors coupled to worm-gear reduction units with either ball or roller bearings.

Equip bearings in motors 1/2 horsepower or larger with lubrication service fittings. Fit lubrication fittings with color-coded plastic or metal dust caps.

In any motor, bearings that are lubricated at the factory for extended duty periods do not need to be lubricated for a given number of operating hours. Display this information on an appropriate tag or label on the motor with instructions for lubrication cycle maintenance.

2.2.5.4 Motor Starters, Controls, and Enclosures

Provide each door motor with: a factory-wired, unfused, disconnect switch; a reversing, across-the-line magnetic starter with thermal overload protection; 24-volt operating coils with a control transformer limit switch; and a safety interlock assembled in a NEMA ICS 6 type enclosure as specified herein. Ensure control equipment conforms to NEMA ICS 1 and NEMA ICS 2.

Provide adjustable switches, electrically interlocked with the motor controls and set to stop the door automatically at the fully open and fully closed position.

2.2.5.5 Control Enclosures

Provide control enclosures that conform to NEMA ICS 6 Group as indicated on the electrical drawings.

2.2.5.6 Transformer

Provide starters with 230/460 to 115 volt control transformers with one secondary fuse when required to reduce the voltage on control circuits to 24volts or less. Provide a transformer conforming to NEMA ST 1.

2.2.5.7 Sensing-Edge Device

Provide each door with a pneumatic or electric sensing device that meets UL 325, extends the full width of the door, and is located within a U-section neoprene or rubber astragal, mounted on the bottom rail of the bottom door section. Device needs to immediately stop and reverse the door upon contact with an obstruction in the door opening or upon failure of the device or any component of the control system and cause the door to return to its user-defined open position. Any momentary door-closing circuit must be automatically locked out and the door must be operable manually or with constant pressure controls until the failure or damage has been corrected. A sensing device is not a substitute for a limit switch.

Connect sensing device to the control circuit through a retracting cord and reel.

2.2.5.8 Remote-Control Stations

Remote control stations must be at least 5 feet above the floor line, and all switches must be located so that the operator will have complete visibility of the door at all times. Provide interior remote control stations that are full-guarded, momentary-contact three-button, heavy-duty, surface-mounted NEMA ICS 6 type enclosures as specified. Mark buttons "OPEN," "CLOSE," and "STOP." The "OPEN" and "STOP" buttons must be of the type requiring only momentary pressure to operate. The "CLOSE" button must be of the type either requiring constant pressure to maintain the closing motion of the door or momentary pressure when installed with a monitored entrapment detection device which, upon failure of the device or any component of the control system, cause the door to return to its full open position. When the door is in motion and the "STOP" button is pressed, ensure the door stops instantly and remains in the stopped position. From the stopped position, the door may then be operated in either direction by the "OPEN" or "CLOSE" buttons. When the door is in motion, and the "CLOSE" button of the constant pressure type is released, the door must stop and remain in the stop position or reverse to the user set up position; from the stop position, the door may then be operated in either direction by the "OPEN" or "CLOSE" buttons. Controls must be adjustable to automatically stop the doors at their fully open and closed positions. Open and closed positions must be readily adjustable.

2.2.5.9 Speed-Reduction Units

Provide speed-reduction units consisting of hardened-steel worm and bronze worm gear assemblies or planetary gear reducers running in oil or grease and inside a sealed casing, coupled to the motor through a flexible coupling. Drive shafts need to rotate on ball- or roller-bearing assemblies that are integral with the unit.

Provide minimum ratings of speed reduction units in accordance with AGMA provisions for class of service.

Ground worm gears to provide accurate thread form; machine teeth for all other types of gearing. Surface harden all gears.

Provide antifriction type bearings equipped with oil seals.

2.2.5.10 Chain Drives

Provide roller chains that are a power-transmission series steel roller type conforming to ASME B29.400, with a minimum safety factor of 10 times the design load.

Heat-treat or otherwise harden roller-chain side bars, rollers, pins, and bushings.

Provide high-carbon steel chain sprockets with machine-cut hardened teeth, finished bore and keyseat, and hollow-head setscrews.

2.2.5.11 Brakes

Provide 360-degree shoe brakes or shoe and drum brakes. Ensure the brakes are solenoid-operated and electrically interlocked to the control circuit to set automatically when power is interrupted.

2.2.5.12 Clutches

Ensure clutches are friction type or adjustable centrifugal type.

2.2.5.13 Weather/Smoke Seal Sensing Edge

Provide automatic stop control by an automatic sensing switch within neoprene astragal extending the full width of door bottom bar.

Provide an electric sensing edge device. Ensure the door immediately stops downward travel when contact occurs before door fully closes. Provide a self-monitoring sensing edge connection to the motor operator.

2.2.6 Surface Finishing

Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Noticeable variations in the same metal component are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.2.6.1 Powder-Coat Finish

Manufacturer's standard powder coat finish, color as selected by the Architect, consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with the coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install overhead coiling door assembly, anchors and inserts for guides, brackets, motors, switches, hardware, and other accessories in accordance with approved detail drawings and manufacturer's written instructions. Upon completion of installation, ensure doors are free from all distortion.

Install overhead coiling doors, motors, hoods, and operators at the mounting locations as indicated for each door in the Contract Documents and as required by the manufacturer.

Install overhead coiling doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility and as required by the manufacturer.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

Testing Government Representative to confirm compliance with UL 325.
Provide Government a Certification of Compliance with UL 325

3.2.1 Acceptance Provisions

After installation, adjust the hardware and moving parts. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer to provide smooth operating functions for ease movement, free of warping, twisting, or distortion of the door assembly.

Adjust seals to provide a weather-tight fit around entire perimeter.

Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service and checks according to the manufacturer's written instructions.

Test the door opening and closing operation when activated by controls system. Adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment. Reset the door-closing mechanism after a successful test.

Test and make final adjustment of new doors at no additional cost to the Government.

3.2.1.1 Maintenance and Adjustment

Not more than 90 calendar days after completion and acceptance of the project, examine, lubricate, test, and re-adjust doors as required for proper operation.

3.2.1.2 Cleaning

Clean doors in accordance with manufacturer's approved instructions.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 34 59

VAULT DOORS

08/08, CHG 1: 11/12

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

FS AA-D-600

(Rev D, Am 1; Am 4) Door, Vault, Security

U.S. GREEN BUILDING COUNCIL (USGBC)

LEED BD+C

(2009; R 2010) Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design(tm) Building Design and Construction (LEED-NC)

1.2 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING

Materials in this technical specification may contribute towards contract compliance with sustainability requirements. See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING for project LEED BD+C local/regional materials and recycled content and LEED documentation requirements.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Vault Double Door Unit; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Vault Door, Hardware, and Frame

SD-07 Certificates

Vault Door, Hardware, and Frame

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

LEED Documentation

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver door and frame assemblies to the jobsite in a protective covering with the brand and name clearly marked thereon. Inspect materials delivered to the jobsite for damage, and unload them with a minimum of handling. Store in a dry location with adequate ventilation, free from dust, water, and other contaminants, and allowing easy access for inspection and handling. Store door assemblies off the floor on nonabsorptive strips or wood platforms. Prevent damage to doors and frames during handling. Replace damaged items that cannot be restored to like-new condition.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The vault double door unit shall be a steel security-vault type door with frame, and ramp type threshold, which is a standard product of a manufacturer specializing in this type of fabrication. Submit drawings showing head, jamb, and sill sections, and elevations of the doors .

2.2 VAULT DOOR, HARDWARE, AND FRAME

Design and construct the double door and frame assembly in conformance with FS AA-D-600. Provide a double door which is Class 5-A , Type IIR - right opening swing without optical device, Style H - hand change combination lock, Submit manufacturer's catalog data including catalog cuts and brochures showing that the proposed vault door unit conforms with the requirements in FS AA-D-600, and has been tested and approved by the General Services Administration (GSA). Submit certification stating that the double vault-door units that do not bear the GSA label are constructed to Class 5-A standards. Manufacturer's hardware shall be included for a complete vault door operating system. Manufacturer's door, frame and hardware shall interface S & G Model 2937 UL Group 1 lock that meets the requirements of FF-L-2937.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install the double vault door assembly in strict compliance with the printed instructions and drawings provided by the manufacturer. After installation, adjust the door and the locking mechanism for proper operation. Submit printed instructions and drawings provided by the manufacturer.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 39 53

BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT DOORS
02/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM F2247	(2018) Standard Test Method for Metal Doors Used in Blast Resistant Applications (Equivalent Static Load Method)
ASTM F1642	(2012) Standard Test Method for Glazing and Glazing Systems Subject to Airblast Loadings
ASTM F2248	(2012) Standard Practice for Specifying an Equivalent 3-Second Duration Design Loading for Blast Resistant Glazing Fabricated with Laminated Glass

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

WinGARD P.E.	(2018) Version 6.1
--------------	--------------------

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 Design Requirements

Minimum performance requirements for designated blast resistant doors shall meet Low Level of Protection UFC 4-010-01 requirements.

In conjunction with meeting aesthetic and performance requirements, the Contractor may propose alternate detailing methods for consideration.

1.2.2 Performance Requirements

1.2.2.1 General

Provide design of designated doors to meet the minimum requirements of UFC 4-010-01, Appendix B, Sections B-3.1 and B-3.2 Exterior Doors.

1.2.2.2 Doors

Exterior and selected interior doors shall meet the minimum requirements of UFC 4-010-01, Appendix B, section B-3.1 and B-3.2.

1.2.2.2.1 Unglazed Doors

Provide doors that are tested to achieve the applicable performance in UFC 4-010-01 Table B-1 in accordance with ASTM F2247.

1.2.2.2.2 Glazed Doors

In addition to meeting the requirements for unglazed doors, glazing must meet the glazing and frame bite provisions of UFC 4-010-01 Appendix B Section B-3.1.

1.2.2.2.3 Alternate Door Design

As an alternative, doors may be designed dynamically to be shown through calculations that the door shall remain in its frame. Refer to 'Alternative Method of Design' below for loading requirements.

1.2.2.2.4 Vestibules or Foyers

Exterior doors and glazing systems of vestibules shall provide a medium level of protection through dynamic analysis.

1.2.2.3 Glazing Design for Glazed Doors

Glazing design for glazed doors meeting UFC 4-010-01, 01, Appendix B, Section B-3.21 & 3.2 shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1.2.2.3.1 Glazing Requirements

If a glazed door, provide laminated glazing with a minimum polyvinyl-butylal (PVB) interlayer thickness of 0.030-inch. For insulated glass units (IGUs), provide laminated glazing with a minimum polyvinyl-butylal (PVB) interlayer thickness of 0.030-inch at the inboard pane.

1.2.2.3.2 Glazing Frame Bite

Glazing must be adhered to the supporting frame with structural silicone sealant or adhesive glazing tape.

Refer to ASTM F2248 for glazing frame bite requirements for structurally or non-structurally glazed systems and glazed doors. At a minimum, the glazing shall have a frame bite of 3/8 inch for structurally glazed systems and 1 inch for non-structurally glazed systems. For structurally glazed applications, apply the structural silicone bead to both sides of the glass panel for single pane glazing, but only to the inboard side for insulating glass units.

1.2.2.4 Alternate Method of Design

Glazing may be designed using dynamic analysis to prove that the element of the door system shall perform equivalent to or better than the hazard rating associated with a low level of protection as defined below. Framing members, connections, and supporting structural elements shall be designed using dynamic analysis to prove that the element of the door system shall perform equivalent to or better than the hazard rating associated with a low level of protection as defined below.

1.2.2.4.1 Dynamic Design Loading

The dynamic design loading for analysis shall be the appropriate pressures and impulses from the applicable explosive weights at the actual standoff distances at which the door are sited. A summary of applicable dynamic

design loads and their locations specific to this building's site layout are as follows.

1.2.2.4.1.1 Typical

SOF SSA Exterior and Designated Interior Door Systems: Linearly decaying load with a peak pressure of 12.6 psi and an impulse of 78 psi-msec.

1.2.2.4.2 Application of Dynamic Load

All elements designed using dynamic analysis shall be analyzed for all applicable dynamic loads. This design load shall be applied over the areas tributary to the element being analyzed.

1.2.2.4.3 Glazing Design

If a glazed door, glazing shall meet the Very Low Hazard rating as defined in ASTM F1642 which is defined as the glazing is observed to fracture and is located within 1m (40 in.) of the original location. Also, there are three or less perforations caused by glazing slivers and no fragment indents anywhere in a vertical witness panel located 3 m (120 in.) from the interior face of the specimen and there are fragments with a sum total united dimension of 25 cm (10 in.) or less on the floor between 1 m (40 in.) and 3 m (120 in.) from the interior face of the specimen. Glazing dust and slivers are not accounted for in the rating. In WinGARD P.E. 5.5.1 this is equivalent to condition 3a.

Exterior glazing of vestibules shall be designed to crack but remain in the frame. In WINGARD 6.1, this is equivalent to Performance Condition 2.

1.2.2.4.4 Framing Elements Design

Design frame elements not to exceed the following response limits, associated with a Low Level of Protection.

For exterior vestibule door framing, design frame elements not to exceed the following response limits, associated with a Medium Level of Protection

a. Structural Steel Mullions and Frames

- 1) 6 degree rotation
- 2) Ductility of 7
- 3) Shear demand-to-capacity ratio of 1.0

b. Structural Steel Built-up door (composite plate and stiffeners)

- 1) 12 degree rotation
- 2) Ductility of 20
- 3) Shear demand-to-capacity ratio of 1.0

c. Structural Steel Solid Plate Door

- 1) 12 degree rotation
- 2) Ductility of 40
- 3) Shear demand-to-capacity ratio of 1.0

d. Structural Steel Mullions and Frames

- 1) 3 degree rotation
- 2) Ductility of 5
- 3) Shear demand-to-capacity ratio of 1.0

e. Structural Steel Built-up door (composite plate and stiffeners)

- 1) 6 degree rotation
- 2) Ductility of 10
- 3) Shear demand-to-capacity ratio of 1.0

f. Structural Steel Solid Plate Door

- 1) 6 degree rotation
- 2) Ductility of 20
- 3) Shear demand-to-capacity ratio of 1.0

1.2.2.5 Testing

As an alternative to these requirements, door systems may be dynamically tested to demonstrate performance equivalent to or better than the glazing hazard rating associated with a low level of protection. The design loading for a dynamic test shall be the appropriate pressure and impulse from the applicable explosive weight at the actual standoff distance at which the door is sited. Testing shall include the entire door system, including connections, and shall be in accordance with ASTM F1642. Test report shall include but not be limited to:

1.2.2.5.1 Specimens

Minimum of three (3) identical specimens shall be tested for the design blast load summarized in preceding paragraphs or a higher air-blast load. Those specimens shall be similar to the project door systems including potential glazing lay-up, framing type and sizes, anchor number and system, etc.

1.2.2.5.2 Supporting Structure

The structural supporting material used in the test for fastener attachment shall be representative of the field installed condition. Any deviations in field application of the connections or the connected elements from the test must be demonstrated by calculation to provide the required level of protection for the specific application.

1.2.2.5.3 Standoff Distance

Standoff distance for the blast test shall be computed and documented in accordance with ASTM F1642 for the design peak pressure and impulse.

1.2.2.5.4 Data Collection

Minimum of three (3) pressure transducers shall be installed in the frame and one (1) free-field pressure transducer shall be used in the test as specified in ASTM F1642.

1.2.2.5.5 Test Report

Test report shall be performed by an accredited laboratory or signed and sealed by a registered Professional Engineer whose qualifications meet or exceed Quality Assurance criteria.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Approach Description; G, AE

Blast Consultant Qualifications; G, AE

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Calculation Summary; G, AE

Mullions and Framing Members; G, AE

Anchorage; G, AE

Mechanical Anchors; G, AE

Supporting Structure; G, AE

Glass; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Calculation Summary; G, AE

Mullions and Framing Members; G, AE

Anchorage; G, AE

Mechanical Anchors; G, AE

Supporting Structure; G, AE

Glass; G, AE

SD-05 Design Data

Calculation Summary; G, AE

Mullions and Framing Members; G, AE

Anchorage; G, AE

Mechanical Anchors; G, AE

Supporting Structure; G, AE

Glass; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Test Report; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Engineer's Qualifications; G, AE

Letter Of Certification From Door Manufacturer That Components
Have Been Installed To Provide Low Level Of Protection

1.4 Calculations

1.4.1 Approach Description

Prior to performing engineering calculations submit a description of the technique(s) that shall be employed to calculate the response of the system to the defined loading.

1.4.2 Calculation Summary

Calculation package is to include a summary sheet briefly outlining the following:

- a. Evaluation criteria
- b. Calculation assumptions
- c. Table of results by door type/location
- d. Statement of conformance with specification requirements

1.4.3 Professional Engineer

Calculation submittal is to be stamped and signed by a registered Professional Engineer whose qualifications meet or exceed the of the Quality Assurance section of this specification. Submit Blast consultant qualifications for Government Review and Approval

1.4.4 General Calculation Requirements

Submit engineering calculations or experimental testing to show that door response meets specified prescriptive requirements under static or dynamic design methods.

1.4.5 Extent of Calculations

Calculations must include, but may not be limited to, analysis of the following:

1.4.5.1 Mullions and Framing Members

Provide a clear load path from the glass to the primary element and supporting analysis which illustrates each component's ability to transfer the design load to the primary element. Analysis of primary element shall illustrate flexural and shear capacity.

1.4.5.2 Anchorage

Analyze the strength of embedded anchor assembly, as well as pull-out and

reaction forces shared with the building structure. Analyze the door wall anchor clip inserts and fasteners and assemblies, including bolts and stiffeners. Include exact loadings to be transferred to the building structure in the analysis.

Safety Factors:

SF = 1 shall be allowed for connection elements that provide a ductile mode of failure (e.g. bolt bearing, tensile yielding, etc.).

SF = 1.5 shall be used for connection elements that provide a non-ductile mode of failure (e.g. weld fracture, concrete cone failure due to anchor bolt pull-out, etc.).

1.4.5.3 Mechanical Anchors

Mechanical anchor capacities shall be developed from dynamic testing. An International Code Council (ICC-ES) evaluation report showing testing for dynamic loading (i.e. seismic or blast) is to be submitted with calculations.

1.4.5.4 Supporting Structure

Coordination of the door/supporting structure interaction shall be the contractors' responsibility. The door contractor's engineer performing blast calculations for the door system shall coordinate loading scenarios with the cladding contractor's engineer providing design for the exterior cladding system.

1.3.1.5.5 Glass

If a glazed door, determine glass pane performance using an analysis program such as WINGARD 6.1 or later, developed by the General Service Administration. If a program other than WinGard is used, it must be approved by the design team prior to calculations. WinGard calculations provided in the calculation package are to include the complete text rather than the "concise" text printout. Probability of Failure. To determine the response of the glass and the anchorage loads, the probability of breakage for the glass is to be 500 breaks per 1000.

1.5 Testing

1.5.1 Test Doors

Test doors are required to be similar to the project doors. Identical framing shapes, glass lay-up, glass distribution and anchorage system are required between test doors and project doorss. Glass panes areas and mullion spans for the project doors are required to be with-in 10% of the test doors.

1.5.2 Test Report

Test report package is to include a summary sheet briefly outlining the following:

Brief description of the test performed

Table of test results by door type/location

Table of comparison between test doors and project doors

Statement of Conformance with ASTM F1642

In addition, test report must include all the information required by ASTM F1642 Section 12.

1.5.3 Professional Engineer

Test report is to be stamped and signed by a registered Professional Engineer, registered in North Carolina, whose qualifications meet or exceed Quality Assurance criteria and/or certified by an accredited ASTM testing laboratory.

1.6 Certificates

Engineer's qualifications must meet or exceed the Quality Assurance section of this specification. At a minimum, qualifications must list each project in which the Engineer performed analysis of door systems, the effective start and end dates of performance of the analysis and a reference.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7.1 Engineer

Engage an Engineering Professional to perform static or dynamic analysis of the Blast Resistant Doors. The Engineer shall have a minimum of 5 years experience in blast resistant design and demonstrable experience designing blast resistant door systems in the past 18 months.

1.7.2 Glazing Bite

The required glazing system bite must be verified in the field.

1.7.3 Installation Orientation

Doors delivered to the construction site are to be clearly labeled as to the proper installation orientation (i.e. laminated pane of glass to be installed as the interior pane.)

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Framing Members

Use extruded aluminum alloy sections or continuous structural steel sections.

2.1.1.1 Yield Strength

Provide supporting references that grade of steel or aluminum used is capable of achieving calculated ductility ratio.

2.1.1.2 Dynamic Increase Factors

If dynamic analysis is used, the yield strength of framing members may be increased to account for static increase factors and dynamic strain rate

effects as follows:

2.1.1.2.1 Structural Steel

For $f_y = 36$ ksi, the yield strength may be increased by a factor of 1.42.
For $f_y = 42$ ksi or greater, the yield strength may be increased by a factor of 1.31.

2.1.1.2.2 Aluminum

6063-T6 Alloy - $F_y = 25$ ksi, the yield strength may be increased by a factor of 1.14. 6061-T6 Alloy - $F_y = 35$ ksi, the yield strength may be increased by a factor of 1.09.

2.1.1.3 Section Modulus

The plastic section modulus may be used in dynamic design calculations.

2.1.1.4 Built-Up Sections

Design built-up sections using ultimate stress and strain compatibility approaches as defined by industry standards. If a built-up section is analyzed as one unit, full shear stress transfer along the line of contact between the individual sections must be illustrated.

2.1.2 Glass Units

2.1.2.1 Glass-to-Glass Interlayer

Clear polyvinyl butyral (PVB) laminating film/sheet shall be used on the inner lite of exterior door systems.

2.1.2.2 Glazing Bite

Glazing must be adhered to frame with structural silicone sealant or adhesive tape per ASTM F2248.

2.1.3 Structural Silicone Sealant

2.1.3.1 Ultimate Tensile Strength per ASTM C1135

Minimum 110 psi in tension.

Ultimate tensile strength may be increased by a factor of 1.18 to account for dynamic strain rate effects.

2.1.3.2 Safety Factors

Ultimate tension and shear capacities are to be used with a safety factor of 1.0.

2.1.3.3 Structural Silicone Placement

Apply the structural silicone bead to both sides of the glass panel for single pane glazing, but only to the inboard side for insulating glass units.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 Certification

After installation Contractor to provide a Letter of Certification from Door Manufacturer that Components have been installed to provide Low Level of Protection.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 51 13

ALUMINUM WINDOWS

05/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The requirements of Section 08 88 56, BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT GLAZING SYSTEMS, apply to all EXTERIOR aluminum windows provided for this project. The intent is that this section, 08 51 13, ALUMINUM WINDOWS, specifies the materials, size of components, moisture and air control properties, color and appearance of the window systems, while Section 08 88 56 specifies the performance for blast loading for the window assemblies.

See Section 08 56 53 for requirements for interior prefabricated transaction windows.

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

AAMA 701/702	(2011) Voluntary Specification for Pile Weatherstripping and Replaceable Fenestration Weatherseals
AAMA 907	(2015) Voluntary Specification for Corrosion Resistant Coatings on Carbon Steel Components Used in Windows, Doors and Skylights
AAMA 1503	(2009) Voluntary Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Condensation Resistance of Windows, Doors and Glazed Wall Sections
AAMA 2603	(2020) Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Pigmented Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels
AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440	(2017) North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors, and Skylights

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 169	(2013) Climate Data for Building Design Standards
------------	---

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E90	(2009; R2016) Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements
ASTM E413	(2016) Classification for Rating Sound

Insulation

ASTM E1332 (2016) Standard Classification for Rating
Outdoor-Indoor Sound Attenuation

NATIONAL FENESTRATION RATING COUNCIL (NFRC)

NFRC 100 (2020) Procedure for Determining
Fenestration Product U-Factors

NFRC 200 (2020) Procedure for Determining
Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain
Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at
Normal Incidence

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 101 (2021) Life Safety Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 4-010-01 (2018;with Change 1, 2020) DoD Minimum
Antiterrorism Standards for Buildings

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)

Energy Star (1992; R 2006) Energy Star Energy
Efficiency Labeling System (FEMP)

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Windows; G, AE

Fabrication Drawings

Submit for curtain window systems, accessories, and mock-up. Tentative approval of drawings shall be received before fabrication of mock-up. Final approval of drawings will be deferred pending approval of mock-up and accessories. Drawings shall indicate in detail all system parts including elevations, full-size sections, framing, jointing, panels, types and thickness of metal, flashing and coping details, field connections, weep and drainage system, finishes, sealing methods, glazing, glass sizes and details, firestopping insulation materials, and erection details.

SD-03 Product Data

Windows; G, AE

Include descriptive literature, detailed specifications, and available performance test data.

Recycled Content of Aluminum Windows; S

Fasteners; G, AE

Window Performance; G, AE

Thermal-Barrier Windows; G, AE

Mullions; G, AE

Thermal Performance; G, AE

Energy Star Label For Residential Aluminum Window Products; S

SD-04 Samples

Finish Sample

SD-05 Design Data

Structural Calculations; G, AE

Blast Calculations and Design Analysis; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Calculations and Minimum Condensation Resistance Factor

SD-07 Certificates

Engineer's Qualifications

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Windows, Data Package 1; G, AE

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Qualification of Manufacturer

Window manufacturer must specialize in designing and manufacturing the type of aluminum windows specified in this section, and have a minimum of 10 years of documented successful experience. Manufacturer must have the facilities capable of meeting contract requirements, single-source responsibility and warranty.

1.3.2 Shop Drawing Requirements

Take field measurements prior to preparation of drawings and fabrications. Provide drawings that indicate elevations of windows, full-size sections, thickness and gages of metal, fastenings, proposed method of anchoring, size and spacing of anchors, details of construction,

method of glazing, details of operating hardware, mullion details, material and method of attaching subframes, installation details, and other related items.

1.3.3 Engineer's Qualifications for Blast Design

All blast design calculations must be performed by or under the direct supervision of a registered engineer with a minimum of 5 years experience performing blast design. The engineer performing the blast design must be able to demonstrate experience on similar size projects using similar design methods to meet the requirements outlined in this specification.

Submit Engineer's resume and a list of at least 5 DoD projects which required blast design which were designed in the last 5 years. Approval of Blast engineer must be complete before calculations or shop drawings are reviewed. Coordinate with requirements in section 08 88 56 BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT GLAZING SYSTEMS

1.3.4 Sample Requirements

1.3.4.1 Finish Sample Requirements

Submit color chart of standard factory color coatings when factory-finish color coating is to be provided.

1.3.5 Design Data Requirements

Submit calculations to substantiate compliance with deflection requirements and Antiterrorism Requirements. A registered Professional Engineer must provide calculations.

Submit Blast Calculations and design analysis with calculations showing that the design of each different size and type of aluminum window unit and its anchorage to the structure meets the requirements of paragraph ANTITERRORISM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS. Calculations verifying the structural performance of each window proposed for use, under the given loads, must be prepared and signed by a registered professional engineer. Reflect the window components and anchorage devices to the structure, as determined by the design analysis, in the shop drawings.

Window systems will not be approved without accompanying compliant calculations.

1.3.6 Test Report Requirements

Submit test reports for each type of window attesting that identical windows have been tested and meet the requirements specified herein for conformance to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 including test size, and minimum condensation resistance factor (CRF).

1.3.7 Certification

Ensure that construction is performed with products that meet or exceed Energy Star criteria, and be current in their certification.

Each prime window unit must bear the AAMA Label warranting that the product complies with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440. Certified test reports attesting that the prime window units meet the requirements of AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440, including test size, will be acceptable in

lieu of product labeling.

1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Deliver windows to project site in an undamaged condition. Use care in handling and hoisting windows during transportation and at the jobsite. Store windows and components out of contact with the ground, under a weathertight covering, so as to prevent bending, warping, or otherwise damaging the windows. Repair damaged windows to an "as new" condition as approved. If windows can not be repaired, provide a new unit.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.5.1 Wind Loading Design Pressure

Design window components, including mullions, hardware, and anchors, to withstand a wind-loading design pressure in accordance with Components and Cladding Wind Load on Walls and Roof diagrams on S-003

1.6 DRAWINGS

Submit the Fabrication Drawings for aluminum window units showing complete window assembly including subframe assembly details.

1.7 WINDOW PERFORMANCE

Aluminum windows must meet the following performance requirements. Perform testing requirements by an independent testing laboratory or agency.

1.7.1 Structural Performance

Structural test pressures on window units must be for positive load (inward) and negative load (outward). After testing, there will be no glass breakage, permanent damage to fasteners, hardware parts, support arms or actuating mechanisms or any other damage which could cause window to be inoperable. There must be no permanent deformation of any main frame, sash or ventilator member in excess of the requirements established by AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for the window types and classification specified in this section.

1.7.2 Antiterrorism Performance Requirements

Exterior Windows must meet the antiterrorism performance criteria as specified in the paragraphs below in accordance with UFC 4-010-01 Appendix B as requirements, not recommendations. Conformance to the performance requirements must be validated by one of the following methods.

1.7.2.1 Computational Design Analysis Method

Design window assembly to the criteria listed herein. Include computational design analysis calculations verifying the structural performance of each window assembly proposed for use, under the given static equivalent loads.

Design window frames, mullions, sashes, and glazing to the criteria listed herein. Include computational design analysis calculations verifying the structural performance of each window system proposed for use, under the given static equivalent loads.

1.7.2.2 Dynamic Design Analysis Method

See Section 08 88 56, BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT GLAZING SYSTEMS, for criteria for Blast loading and design of window assemblies.

1.7.3 Air Infiltration

Air infiltration must not exceed the amount established by AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for each window type.

1.7.4 Water Penetration

Water penetration must not exceed the amount established by AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for each window type.

1.7.5 Thermal Performance

Windows (including frames and glass) will be independently tested and certified with a Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC) determined according to NFRC 200 procedures and a whole window U-factor determined in accordance with NFRC 100 within the ranges as indicated below according to the ASHRAE 169 Climate Zone of the project location. Windows used solely within the interior of a conditioned envelope are exempted from meeting U-Factor and SHGC requirements, unless otherwise noted. Provide visual Transmittance (VT) of 0.5 or greater. Submit documentation supporting compliance with Energy Star, FEMP designated, and Passive House qualifications as applicable. Provide proof of Energy Star label for residential aluminum window products.

1.7.6 Life Safety Criteria

Provide windows that conform to NFPA 101 Life Safety Code when rescue and/or second means of escape are indicated.

1.7.7 Sound Attenuation

When tested in accordance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 or the following below, provide a minimum Sound Transmission Class (STC) of 35 in accordance with ASTM E90 and as determined by ASTM E413 or Outside-Indoor Transmission Class (OITC) of 25 in accordance with ASTM E1332 and as determined by ASTM E413 with the window glazed with 1/2 inch air space between two pieces of 1/4 inch.

1.8 WARRANTY

Provide Manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties that extend beyond a 1 year period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 WINDOWS

Provide prime windows that comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 and the requirements specified herein. In addition to compliance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440, window framing members for each individual light of glass must not deflect to the extent that deflection perpendicular to the glass light exceeds L/175 of the glass edge length when subjected to uniform loads at specified design pressures. Provide

Structural calculations to substantiate compliance with deflection requirements. Provide windows of types, performance classes, performance grades, combinations, and sizes indicated or specified. Provide aluminum window frames with a minimum recycled content of 20 percent. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content of aluminum windows. Design windows to accommodate glass and accessories to be furnished. Each window must be a complete factory assembled unit with or without glass installed. Dimensions shown are minimum. Provide windows with insulating glass and thermal break necessary to achieve a minimum Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF) of 67 when tested in accordance with AAMA 1503. Provide manufacturer's standard hardware fabricated from aluminum, stainless steel, carbon steel complying with AAMA 907, or other corrosion-resistant material compatible with adjacent materials.

2.1.1 Fixed Windows (F)

Type F- AW40.

2.1.2 Glass and Glazing

Materials are specified in Section 08 81 00 GLAZING.

2.1.3 Caulking and Sealing

Are specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

2.1.4 Weatherstripping

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440. Provide for all ventilating (operable) sash for all windows. Provide woven wool pile weatherstripping 0.210 inch thick, conforming to AAMA 701/702, or polypropylene multifilament fiber weatherstripping installed in an integral weatherstripping groove in the sash or frame, and flexible polyvinylchloride weatherstripping installed in the sill member.

2.2 FABRICATION

Fabrication of window units must comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.

2.2.1 Provisions for Glazing

See section 08 81 00 GLAZING.

2.2.2 Fasteners

Use window manufacturer's standard for windows, trim, and accessories, which comply with blast requirements listed in Section 08 88 56.

2.2.3 Adhesives

Provide joint sealants as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS. For interior application of joint sealants, comply with applicable regulations regarding reduced VOC's, and as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

2.2.4 Drips and Weep Holes

Provide continuous drips over heads of top ventilators. Where fixed windows adjoin ventilators, drips must be continuous across tops of fixed

windows. Provide drips and weep holes as required to return water to the outside.

2.2.5 Combination Windows

Windows used in combination must be factory assembled of the same class and grade. Where factory assembly of individual windows into larger units is limited by transportation considerations, prefabricate, match mark, transport, and field assemble.

2.2.6 Mullions and Transom Bars

Provide mullions between multiple window units to comply with blast requirements listed in Section 08 88 56 and other structural criteria in this section. Provide mullions with a thermal break. Secure mullions and transom bars to adjoining construction and window units in such a manner as to permit expansion and contraction and to form a weathertight joint. Provide mullion covers on the interior and exterior to completely close exposed joints and recesses between window units and to present a neat appearance. Provide special covers over structural support at mullions as indicated.

2.2.7 Accessories

Provide windows complete with necessary hardware, fastenings, clips, fins, anchors, glazing beads, and other appurtenances necessary for complete installation and proper operation.

2.2.7.1 Fasteners

Provide concealed anchors of the type recommended by the window manufacturer for the specific type of construction. Anchors and fasteners must be compatible with the window and the adjoining construction. Provide a minimum of three anchors for each jamb located approximately 6 inches from each end and at midpoint. Fasteners must comply with blast requirements listed in Section 08 88 56.

2.2.8 Finishes

Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual" for applying and designating finishes. Exposed aluminum surfaces must be factory finished with an organic coating. Color must be as indicated. All windows must have the same finish.

2.2.8.1 Organic Coating

Clean and prime exposed aluminum surfaces. Provide a baked enamel finish in accordance with AAMA 2603 with total dry film thickness not less than 0.8 mil.

2.3 THERMAL-BARRIER WINDOWS

Provide thermal-barrier windows, complete with accessories and fittings, where indicated.

Specify material and construction except as follows:

- a. Aluminum alloy must be 6063-T6.
- b. Frame construction, including operable sash, must be factory-assembled

and factory-sealed inner and outer aluminum completely separated from metal-to-metal contact. Join assembly by a continuous, concealed, low conductance divider housed in an interlocking extrusion of the inner frame. Metal fasteners, straps, or anchors must not bridge the connection between the inner and outer frame.

- c. Operating hardware for each sash must consist of spring-loaded nylon cushion blocks and pin locks designed to lock in predetermined locations.
- d. Sash must be completely separated from metal-to-metal contact by means of woven-pile weatherstripping, plastic, or elastomeric separation members.
- e. Operating and storm sash must be factory-glazed with the type of glass indicated and of the quality specified in Section 08 81 00 GLAZING.

2.4 MULLIONS

Provide mullions between multiple-window units where indicated.

Provide profiles for mullions and mullion covers, reinforced as required for the specified wind loading, and securely anchored to the adjoining construction. Mullion extrusion will include serrations or pockets to receive weatherstripping, sealant, or tape at the point of contact with each window flange.

Mullion assembly must include aluminum window clamps or brackets screwed or bolted to the mullion and the mullion cover.

Mullion cover must be screw-fastened to the mullion unless otherwise indicated.

Mullion reinforcing members must be fabricated of the materials specified in AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 and meet the specified design loading.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Method of Installation

Install in accordance with the window manufacturer's printed instructions and details. Build in windows as the work progresses or install without forcing into prepared window openings. Set windows at proper elevation, location, and reveal; plumb, square, level, and in alignment; and brace, strut, and stay properly to prevent distortion and misalignment. Protect ventilators and operating parts against accumulation of dirt and building materials by keeping ventilators tightly closed and locked to frame. Bed screws or bolts in sill members, joints at mullions, contacts of windows with sills, built-in fins, and subframes in mastic sealant of a type recommended by the window manufacturer. Install and caulk windows in a manner that will prevent entrance of water and wind. Fasten insect screens securely in place.

Any materials that show visual evidence of biological growth due to the presence of moisture must not be installed on the building project.

3.1.2 Dissimilar Materials

Where aluminum surfaces are in contact with, or fastened to masonry, concrete, wood, or dissimilar metals, except stainless steel or zinc, protect the aluminum surface from dissimilar materials as recommended in the Appendix to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440. Do not coat surfaces in contact with sealants after installation with any type of protective material. Do not apply coatings or lacquers to surfaces to which caulking and glazing components must adhere.

3.1.3 Anchors and Fastenings

Make provision for securing units to each other, to masonry, and to other adjoining construction. Windows installed in masonry walls must have head and jamb members designed to recess into masonry wall not less than 7/16 inch.

3.1.4 Adjustments After Installation

After installation of windows and completion of glazing and field painting, adjust all ventilators and hardware to operate smoothly and to provide weathertight sealing when ventilators are closed and locked. Lubricate hardware and operating parts as necessary. Verify that products are properly installed, connected, and adjusted.

3.2 FIELD TESTING

3.2.1 Test Method: AAMA 502

3.2.1.1 Test Specimen

1. Include window assembly and construction. Affix test chamber to interior side of test specimen and the conduct testing using positive static air pressure (Test method A).
2. Test specimens to be selected by the Contracting Officer's Representative after windows have been installed according to the drawings and specification.

3.3 CLEANING

Clean interior and exterior surfaces of window units of mortar, plaster, paint spattering spots, and other foreign matter to present a neat appearance, to prevent fouling of weathering surfaces and weather-stripping, and to prevent interference with the operation of hardware. Replace all stained, discolored, or abraded windows that cannot be restored to their original condition with new windows.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 56 53

PREFABRICATED TRANSACTION WINDOWS

08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A307	(2021) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM B221	(2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
ASTM B221M	(2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric)

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Shop Drawings; G, AE

Indicate configuration, sizes, rough-in, mounting, construction and glazing details as well as installation clearances and finishes.

SD-03 Product Data

Concealed Bolts; G, AE

Sealants

Gaskets

Sliding Window Components; G, AE

Security Exchange Window Units; G, AE

Intercom And Talk Through; G, AE

Security Device Accessories; G, AE

Glazing; G, AE

SD-04 Samples

Clear Tempered Glass

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation; G, AE

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Qualification of Manufacturer

Manufacturer specializing in manufacturing Products specified in this section with minimum 10 years documented experience and participates in a Quality Assurance validation Program.

1.3.2 Qualification of Installer

Company specializing in installation of window systems specified with minimum three years documented experience.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- a. Requirements for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.
- b. Ordering: To avoid construction delays comply with ordering instructions and lead time requirements as set by window system manufacturer.
- c. Pack window units in manufacturer's standard shipping containers and protective packaging. Deliver units in manufacturer's original packaging and unopened containers with identification labels intact.
- d. Store window units and accessories on raised blocks to prevent moisture damage protected from exposure to weather and vandalism.

1.5 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

Verify field measurements from approved shop drawings prior to fabrication.

1.6 COORDINATION

- a. 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
- b. Coordinate work with adjacent materials specified in other Sections and as indicated on Drawings and approved shop drawings.
- c. Coordinate installation of anchorages for prefabricated transaction windows. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and

directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

Furnish manufacturer's standard warranty document in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace windows, drawers and air curtains that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of other rights Owner has under the contract.

1.7.1 Warranty Period

One year parts and labor from date of installation.

1.7.2 Failures

Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
- b. Structural failures including deflections exceeding 1/4 inch.
- c. Failure of welds.
- d. Faulty operation of sliding window hardware

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 ALUMINUM EXTRUSIONS

ASTM B221 ASTM B221M. Provide alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish, but not less than 22,000-psi (150-MPa) ultimate tensile strength and not less than 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) thick at any location for main frame and sash members.

2.1.2 CONCEALED BOLTS

ASTM A307, Grade A unless otherwise indicated.

2.1.3 SEALANTS

For sealants required within prefabricated transaction windows, provide type recommended by manufacturer for joint size and movement. Sealant shall remain permanently elastic, nonshrinking, and nonmigrating.

2.1.4 GASKETS

For gaskets required within prefabricated transaction windows, provide type recommended by manufacturer for joint size and movement. Gaskets shall remain permanently elastic, nonshrinking, and nonmigrating.

2.2 SLIDING WINDOW COMPONENTS

2.2.1 Horizontal Slider

Aluminum self-closing, flush mounted.

2.2.2 Hook Bolt Locks

Maximum Security.

2.2.3 Glass

Clear Tempered Glass, 1/4 inch thick.

2.2.4 Track/Slides

Stainless steel ball bearing slides all windows and drawers.

2.2.5 Miscellaneous Glazing Materials

Provide material, size, and shape complying with requirements of glass manufacturers, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

2.2.5.1 Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers

Type recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

2.2.5.2 Setting Blocks

Elastomeric material with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.

2.2.5.3 Spacers

Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Type A Shore durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.

2.2.5.4 Edge Blocks

Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

2.2.6 Anchors, Clips, and Window Accessories

Stainless steel; hot-dip, zinc-coated steel or iron, of sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.

2.2.6.1 Horizontal Sliding Window Unit

Service Opening, 20 inches x 29 inches. Rough Opening, 48 x 36.

Glazing 1/4 inch tempered, Finish Clear.

2.3 SECURITY EXCHANGE WINDOW UNITS

Aluminum Security Exchange/Teller window

2.3.1 Deal Tray

Built-in (8" x 11-1/2") with stainless steel flap cover

2.3.2 Glazing

1/4 inch tempered for Non-Bullet Resistant applications.

2.3.3 Unit

Rough Opening 30-3/8 inches (w) x 36-3/8 inches (h). Finish Clear.

2.4 INTERCOM AND TALK THROUGH

Model: 6 inch Round Heavy Stainless Steel Speak-Thru

2.5 SECURITY DEVICE ACCESSORIES

2.5.1 Security Lock Bar

Sliding aluminum lock bar.

2.5.2 Auto-Lock Handle

Stainless steel constructed auto-locking handle on all self-closing sliders to prevent intrusion.

2.5.3 Hook-Lock

Maximum security Adams Rite style hook lock on all sliders.

2.6 FABRICATION

Fabricate window to dimensions indicated on Drawings. Fabricate windows, and accessories to provide a complete system for assembly of components and anchorage of window, drawers and accessories.

- a. Provide units that are reglazable from the secure side without dismantling the nonsecure side of framing.
- b. Prepare prefabricated transaction windows for glazing unless preglazing at the factory is indicated

Rigidly fit and secure joints and corners with internal reinforcement. Make joints and connections flush, hairline, and weatherproof. Fully weld corners.

- a. Fabricate framing with manufacturer's standard, internal opaque armoring in thicknesses required for prefabricated transaction windows to comply with ballistics-resistance performance indicated.

Prepare components with reinforcement required for hardware.

2.6.1 Welding

To greatest extent possible, weld before finishing and in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding

2.6.2 Metal Protection

Separate dissimilar metals to protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.

2.6.3 Speaking Apertures

Factory-cut openings in glazing.

2.6.4 Preglazed Fabrication

Preglaze window units at factory, where required for applications indicated.

2.6.5 Weatherstripping

Factory applied.

2.6.6 Bottom Sills

Stainless steel construction, no bottom tracks and no pop rivets.

2.6.7 Handles

Stainless steel, manufacturer's standard profile and finish.

2.7 SHOP FINISHING

2.7.1 Concealed Steel Items

Galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123 ASTM A123/A123M to thickness Grade 85, 2.0 oz/sq ft (610 gm/sq m).

2.7.2 Stainless Steel

304 Stainless Steel with NAAMM No. 3 finish.

2.7.3 Bituminous Paint

Apply bituminous paint to concealed metal surfaces in contact with cementitious or dissimilar materials.

2.7.4 Touch-Up Primer

For Galvanized Steel Surfaces. SSPC Paint 20 zinc rich.

2.7.5 Extent of Finish

Apply factory coating to all surfaces exposed at completed assemblies. Apply finish to surfaces cut during fabrication so that no natural aluminum is visible in completed assemblies, including joint edges. Apply touch-up materials recommended by coating manufacturer for field application to cut ends and minor damage to factory applied finish.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS: Verification of existing conditions before starting work. Verify construction is ready to receive Products specified in this section.

Verify rough openings are correct size and in correct location. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations of security window connections before security window installation.

Inspect built-in and cast-in anchor installations, before installing prefabricated transaction windows, to verify that anchor installations comply with requirements. Prepare inspection reports.

- a. Remove and replace anchors where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements. Reinspect after repairs or replacements are made.
- b. Perform additional inspections to determine compliance of replaced or additional work. Prepare anchor inspection reports.

For glazing materials whose orientation is critical for performance, verify installation orientation.

Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

Furnish frames and anchors to other sections as required for installation in surrounding partition and casework construction.

3.3 INSTALLATION

Install Products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Align Products plumb, level and square. Rigidly secure Products to adjacent supporting construction.

Glaze windows in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and 08 81 00 GLAZING.

Seal perimeter joints in accordance with 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

Connect electrical components to power source.

Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended in writing by manufacturer for this purpose. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

3.4 ADJUSTING

01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS: Requirements for adjusting.

Adjust horizontal-sliding, prefabricated transaction windows to provide a tight fit at contact points for smooth operation and a secure enclosure. Adjust transaction drawers to provide a tight fit at contact points for

smooth operation and secure enclosure. Remove and replace defective work, including security windows that are warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS: Requirements for cleaning.

Remove protective material from factory finished surfaces. Wash surfaces by method recommended and acceptable to sealant and window manufacturer; rinse and wipe surfaces clean. Remove excess sealant by moderate use of mineral spirits or other solvent acceptable to sealant and window manufacturer.

Clean metal and glass surfaces to polished condition. Lubricate sliding security window hardware. Lubricate transaction drawer hardware. Provide temporary protection to ensure that prefabricated transaction windows are without damage at time of Substantial Completion.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 71 00

DOOR HARDWARE

02/16, CHG 4: 02/22

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E283	(2019) Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen
ASTM F883	(2013; R 2022) Standard Performance Specification for Padlocks

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.1	(2021) Butts and Hinges
ANSI/BHMA A156.3	(2020) Exit Devices
ANSI/BHMA A156.4	(2013) Door Controls - Closers
ANSI/BHMA A156.5	(2020) Cylinder and Input Devices for Locks
ANSI/BHMA A156.6	(2021) Architectural Door Trim
ANSI/BHMA A156.7	(2016) Template Hinge Dimensions
ANSI/BHMA A156.8	(2021) Door Controls - Overhead Stops and Holders
ANSI/BHMA A156.12	(2013) Interconnected Locks & Latches
ANSI/BHMA A156.13	(2017) Mortise Locks & Latches Series 1000
ANSI/BHMA A156.15	(2021) Release Devices Closer Holder, Electromagnetic and Electromechanical
ANSI/BHMA A156.16	(2018) Auxiliary Hardware
ANSI/BHMA A156.18	(2020) Materials and Finishes
ANSI/BHMA A156.21	(2019) Thresholds
ANSI/BHMA A156.22	(2021) Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems
ANSI/BHMA A156.25	(2013) Electrified Locking Devices

ANSI/BHMA A156.30	(2014) High Security Cylinders
ANSI/BHMA A156.31	(2013) Electric Strikes and Frame Mounted Actuators
ANSI/BHMA A156.36	(2010) Auxiliary Locks

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code
NFPA 72	(2022) National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
NFPA 80	(2022) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
NFPA 101	(2021) Life Safety Code
NFPA 252	(2022) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

STEEL DOOR INSTITUTE (SDI/DOOR)

SDI/DOOR A250.8	(2017) Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames
-----------------	---

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191	Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines
-------------	---

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL Bld Mat Dir	(updated continuously online) Building Materials Directory
----------------	--

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Manufacturer's Detail Drawings; G, AE

Verification of Existing Conditions; G, AE

Hardware Schedule; G, AE

Keying System; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Hardware Items; G, AE

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Hardware Schedule Items, Data Package 1; G, AE

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Key Bitting

1.3 SHOP DRAWINGS

Submit manufacturer's detail drawings indicating all hardware assembly components and interface with adjacent construction. Indicate power components and wiring coordination for electrified hardware. Base shop drawings on verified field measurements and include verification of existing conditions.

1.4 PRODUCT DATA

Indicate fire-ratings at applicable components. Provide documentation of ABA/ADA accessibility compliance of applicable components, as required by 36 CFR 1191 Appendix D - Technical.

1.5 HARDWARE SCHEDULE

Provide Hardware Item List and Hardware Schedule containing the following information, and additional information as needed to identify the complete make up of each hardware set and its application to each opening:

1.5.1 Hardware Item List:

- a. Hardware Type
- b. Item Number
- c. Quantity
- d. Size(s)
- e. Reference Publication / Type Number
- f. Manufacturer's Name / Catalog Number
- g. Key Control Symbols
- h. UL Mark (If fire rated and listed)
- i. BHMA Finish(es)

j. Remarks

1.5.2 Hardware Schedule

- a. Hardware Set Number
- b. Opening Number(s)
- c. Opening Description (single/double leaf, hand, size, door/frame material)
- d. Fire Rating
- f. Hardware Items
- g. Quantity
- h. Size
- i. BHMA Finish
- j. Remarks

In addition, submit hardware schedule data package 1 in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.6 KEY BITTING CHART REQUIREMENTS

1.6.1 Requirements

Submit key bitting charts to the Contracting Officer prior to completion of the work. Include:

- a. Complete listing of all keys (e.g. AA1 and AA2).
- b. Complete listing of all key cuts (AA1-123456, AA2-123458).
- c. Tabulation showing which key fits which door.
- d. Copy of floor plan showing doors and door numbers.
- e. Listing of 20 percent more key cuts than are presently required in each master system.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7.1 Hardware Manufacturers and Modifications

Provide, as far as feasible, locks, hinges, and closers of one lock, hinge, or closer manufacturer's make. Modify hardware as necessary to provide features indicated or specified.

1.7.2 Key Shop Drawings Coordination Meeting

Prior to the submission of the key shop drawing, the Contracting Officer, Contractor, Door Hardware Subcontractor, using Activity and Base Locksmith must meet to discuss and coordinate key requirements for the facility.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver hardware in original individual containers, complete with necessary appurtenances including fasteners and instructions. Mark each individual container with item number as shown on hardware schedule. Deliver permanent keys and removable cores to the Contracting Officer, either directly or by certified mail. Deliver construction master keys with the locks.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TEMPLATE HARDWARE

Hardware applied to metal or to prefinished doors must be manufactured using a template. Provide templates to door and frame manufacturers in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.7 for template hinges. Coordinate hardware items to prevent interference with other hardware.

2.2 HARDWARE FOR FIRE DOORS AND EXIT DOORS

Provide all hardware necessary to meet the requirements of NFPA 72 for door alarms, NFPA 80 for fire doors, NFPA 101 for exit doors, NFPA 252 for fire tests of door assemblies, ABA/ADA accessibility requirements, and all other requirements indicated, even if such hardware is not specifically mentioned in paragraph HARDWARE SCHEDULE. Provide Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. labels for such hardware in accordance with UL Bld Mat Dir or equivalent labels in accordance with another testing laboratory approved in writing by the Contracting Officer.

2.3 HARDWARE ITEMS

Clearly and permanently mark with the manufacturer's name or trademark, hinges, pivots, locks, latches, exit devices, bolts and closers where the identifying mark is visible after the item is installed. For closers with covers, the name or trademark may be beneath the cover. Coordinate electrified door hardware components with corresponding components specified in Division 28 ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEMS (ESS).

2.3.1 Hinges

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.1. Provide hinges that are 4-1/2 by 4-1/2 inch unless otherwise indicated. Construct loose pin hinges for interior doors and reverse-bevel exterior doors so that pins are non-removable when door is closed. Other anti-friction bearing hinges may be provided in lieu of ball bearing hinges.

2.3.1.1 Protection Devices

Provide full height hand and finger protection device at the hinge-side area opening of doors and gates. Provide hinge-side protection devices on both sides of doors and gates, covering hinges and space between door and frame when doors are in the open position. The installed device must push hand and fingers out of the opening and away from a crushing hazard.

2.3.2 Locks and Latches

- a. At exterior locations provide locksets of full stainless steel type 302 or 304 construction including fronts, strike, escutcheons, knobs, bolts and all interior working parts. Marine Grade I, fully

non-ferrous.

- b. In non-air-conditioned interior environments or humid interior environments, provide interior locksets on the same Marine Grade I, fully non-ferrous as exterior locksets.

2.3.2.1 Mortise Locks and Latches

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Series 1000, Operational Grade 1, Security Grade 2. Provide mortise locks with escutcheons not less than 7 by 2-1/4 inch with a bushing at least 1/4 inch long. Cut escutcheons to fit cylinders and provide trim items with straight, beveled, or smoothly rounded sides, corners, and edges. Provide knobs and roses of mortise locks with screwless shanks and no exposed screws.

2.3.2.2 Interconnected Locks and Latches

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.12. Provide F96 or F97, unless otherwise specified.

2.3.2.3 Auxiliary Locks

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.36, Grade 1.

2.3.3 Exit Devices

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Grade 1. Provide adjustable strikes for rim type and vertical rod devices. Provide open back strikes for pairs of doors with mortise and vertical rod devices. Provide Provide escutcheons not less than 7 by 2-1/4 inch.

2.3.4 Cylinders and Cores

Provide cylinders and cores for new locks, including locks provided under other sections of this specification. Provide cylinders and cores with seven pin tumblers. Provide cylinders from the products of one manufacturer, and provide cores from the products of one manufacturer. Rim cylinders, mortise cylinders, and knobs of bored locksets have interchangeable cores which are removable by special control keys. Stamp each interchangeable core with a key control symbol in a concealed place on the core.

Provide cylinders for new locks, including locks provided under other sections of this specification. Provide fully compatible cylinders of Grade 1 products from products of one manufacturer with interchangeable cores that are removable by a special control key. Factory set the cores with seven pin tumblers using the A4 system and F keyway. Submit a core code sheet with the cores. Provide master keyed cores in one system for this project. Provide construction interchangeable cores.

2.3.4.1 High Security Cylinders

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.30, security level C for all high security cylinder components.

2.3.5 Electrified Hardware

Comply with the requirements of NFPA 70 for wiring of electrified hardware.

2.3.5.1 Electric Strikes and Frame Mounted Actuators

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.31, Grade 1. Provide electric strikes and actuators as required to meet operational requirements. Provide electric strikes that release automatically during power failure. Provide battery backup for continued operation during power failure. Provide strikes and actuators with a minimum opening force of 2500 pounds.

Provide facility interface devices that use direct current (dc) power to energize the solenoids. Provide electric strikes and actuators that incorporate end-of-line resistors to facilitate line supervision by the system. If not incorporated into the electric strike or local controller, provide metal oxide resistors (MOVs) to protect the controller from reverse current surges.

2.3.5.1.1 Solenoid

Provide actuating solenoid for strikes and actuators that are rated for continuous duty, cannot dissipate more than 12 Watts and must operate on 12 or 24 Volts dc. Inrush current cannot exceed 1 ampere and the holding current cannot be greater than 500 milliamperes. Actuating solenoid must move from fully secure to fully open positions in less than 500 milliseconds.

2.3.5.1.2 Signal Switches

Provide strikes and actuators with signal switches to indicate to the system when the bolt is not engaged or the strike mechanism is unlocked.

2.3.5.1.3 Tamper Resistance

Provide strike guards that prevent tampering with the latch bolt of the locking hardware or the latch bolt keeper of the electric strike. Strike guards to bolt through the door using tamper resistant screws. Provide strike guards made of 1/8 inch thick brass and that are 11-1/14 inch high by 1-5/8 inch wide, with a minimum 5/32 inch wide offset.

2.3.5.1.4 Coordination

Provide electric strikes and actuators of a size, weight and profile compatible with each specified door frame. Field verify installation clearances prior to procurement.

2.3.5.1.5 Mounting Method

Provide electric strikes and actuators suitable for use with single and double doors, with mortise or rim type hardware specified, and for right or left hand mounting as specified. In double door installations, locate the lock in the active leaf and monitor the fixed leaf.

2.3.5.2 Electrified Mortise Locks

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.25, Grade 1. Provide electrified mortise locks that remain maintained during power failure. Provide facility interface devices that use dc power to energize solenoids. Provide solenoids, resistors, and signal switches in accordance with paragraph ELECTRIC STRIKES AND FRAME MOUNTED ACTUATORS.

2.3.5.2.1 Power Transfer Hinges

Provide power transfer hinges with each electrified lock that route power and monitoring signals from the lockset to the door frame. Coordinate power transfer hinges with door frames.

2.3.5.3 Card Readers and Keypad Access Control Hardware

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.6 and ANSI/BHMA A156.25, Grade 1 components. Provide surface, semi-flush, pedestal, or weatherproof mountable devices as specified for each individual location. For specification of access control devices, see 28 10 05 ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEMS (ESS)

2.3.5.4 Release Devices

In accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.15, Grade 1.

2.3.5.4.1 Closer Holders

Provide header mounted closer holder devices.

2.3.6 Keying System

Provide a grand master keying system. Provide a construction master keying system construction interchangeable cores. Provide key cabinet as specified.

All keyway cylinders will be provided by the Contractor, with conformance to Fort Liberty IDG requirements. The Contractor will conduct a pre-construction conference to review the scope. Provide cylinders of Grade 1 products from one manufacturer. Notify the Contracting Officer 90 days prior to the required delivery of the cylinders. Provide temporary cores and keys for the Contractor's use during construction, and for testing of locksets. The Contractor will provide the required service of a certified locksmith to install cores and provide keying. The contractor will verify keying requirements with project's End-User and validate provision of cylinders and keying at the time of final building inspection.

2.3.7 Lock Trim

Provide cast, forged, or heavy wrought construction and commercial plain design for lock trim.

2.3.7.1 Lever Handles

Provide lever handles . Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.3 for mortise locks of lever handles for exit devices. Provide lever handle locks with a breakaway feature (such as a weakened spindle or a shear key) to prevent irreparable damage to the lock when force in excess of that specified in ANSI/BHMA A156.13 is applied to the lever handle. Provide lever handles return to within 1/2 inch of the door face.

2.3.8 Keys

Furnish seven change keys for each interchangeable core, furnish two control keys, six masters keys, and six construction master keys. Furnish a quantity of key blanks equal to 20 percent of the total number of change

keys. Stamp each key with appropriate key control symbol and "U.S. property - do not duplicate." Do not place room numbers on keys.

2.3.9 Door Bolts

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.16. Provide dustproof strikes for bottom bolts, except at doors having metal thresholds. Provide automatic latching flush bolts in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Type 25.

2.3.10 Closers

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.4, Series C02000, Grade 1, with PT 4C. Provide with brackets, arms, mounting devices, fasteners, full size covers, cement cases, and other features necessary for the particular application. Size closers in accordance with manufacturer's printed recommendations, or provide multi-size closers, Sizes 1 through 6, and list sizes in the Hardware Schedule. Provide manufacturer's 10 year warranty.

Use stainless steel inside bracketed or door mounted closers on exterior doors. Non-ferrous closers, such as aluminum or cast bronze, are permissible where door utilization is minimal. On interior doors use closers of 302 or 304 stainless steel or non-ferrous materials. On surface-mounted closers use or apply rust inhibiting finish on all ferrous parts. Also apply this finish on concealed closers.

2.3.10.1 Identification Marking

Engrave each closer with manufacturer's name or trademark, date of manufacture, and manufacturer's size designation in locations that will be visible after installation.

2.3.11 Overhead Holders

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.8.

2.3.12 Door Protection Plates

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.6.

2.3.12.1 Sizes of Armor Mop and Kick Plates

2 inch less than door width for single doors; 1 inch less than door width for pairs of doors. Provide 10 inch kick plates for flush doors. Provide a minimum 36 inch armor plates for flush doors, except 16 inch high armor plates on fire doors. Provide 6 inch mop plates.

2.3.13 Door Stops and Silencers

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.16. Silencers Type L03011. Provide three silencers for each single door, two for each pair.

2.3.14 Padlocks

Provide in accordance with ASTM F883.

2.3.15 Thresholds

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.21. Use J35100, with vinyl or silicone rubber insert in face of stop, for exterior doors opening out, unless specified otherwise.

2.3.16 Weatherstripping Gasketing

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.22. Provide the type and function designation where specified in paragraph HARDWARE SCHEDULE. Provide a set to include head and jamb seals, sweep strips, and, for pairs of doors, astragals. Air leakage of weatherstripped doors not to exceed 0.5 cubic feet per minute of air per square foot of door area when tested in accordance with ASTM E283. Provide weatherstripping with one of the following:

2.3.16.1 Extruded Aluminum Retainers

Extruded aluminum retainers not less than 0.050 inch wall thickness with vinyl, neoprene, silicone rubber, or polyurethane inserts. Provide clear (natural) anodized aluminum.

2.3.17 Rain Drips

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.22. Provide extruded aluminum rain drips, not less than 0.08 inch thick, factory painted finish. Provide the manufacturer's full range of color choices to the Contracting Officer for color selection. Provide rain drips with a 4 inch overlap on each side of each exterior door that is not protected by an awning, roof, eave or other horizontal projection. Set drips in sealant and fasten with stainless steel screws.

2.3.17.1 Door Rain Drips

Approximately 1-1/2 inch high by 5/8 inch projection. Align bottom with bottom edge of door.

2.3.17.2 Overhead Rain Drips

Approximately 1-1/2 inch high by 2-1/2 inch projection. Align bottom with door frame rabbet.

2.3.18 Auxiliary Hardware (Other than locks)

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.

2.3.19 Special Tools

Provide special tools, such as spanner and socket wrenches and dogging keys, as required to service and adjust hardware items.

2.4 FASTENERS

Provide fasteners of type, quality, size, and quantity appropriate to the specific application. Fastener finish to match hardware. Provide stainless steel or nonferrous metal fasteners in locations exposed to weather. Verify metals in contact with one another are compatible and will avoid galvanic corrosion when exposed to weather.

2.5 FINISHES

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.18. Provide hardware in BHMA 630 finish (satin stainless steel), unless specified otherwise. Provide items not manufactured in stainless steel in BHMA 626 finish (satin chromium plated) over brass or bronze, except finish for surface door closers, and except for steel hinges. Provide hinges for exterior doors in stainless steel with BHMA 630 finish. Furnish exit devices in BHMA 626 finish in lieu of BHMA 630 finish. Match exposed parts of concealed closers to lock and door trim. Match hardware finish for aluminum doors to the doors.

2.6 KEY CABINET AND CONTROL SYSTEM

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.5, Type required to yield a capacity (number of hooks) 50 percent greater than the number of key changes used for door locks.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Provide hardware in accordance with manufacturers' printed installation instructions. Fasten hardware to wood surfaces with full-threaded wood screws or sheet metal screws. Provide machine screws set in expansion shields for fastening hardware to solid concrete and masonry surfaces. Provide toggle bolts where required for fastening to hollow core construction. Provide through bolts where necessary for satisfactory installation.

3.1.1 Weatherstripping Installation

Provide full contact, weathertight seals that allow operation of doors without binding the weatherstripping.

3.1.1.1 Stop Applied Weatherstripping

Fasten in place with color matched sheet metal screws not more than 9 inch on center after doors and frames have been finish painted.

3.1.2 Lightproofing and Soundproofing Installation

Provide as specified for stop applied weatherstripping.

3.1.3 Threshold Installation

Extend thresholds the full width of the opening and notch end for jamb stops. Set thresholds in a full bed of sealant and anchor to floor with cadmium-plated, countersunk, steel screws in expansion sleeves. For aluminum thresholds placed on top of concrete surfaces, coat the underside surfaces that are in contact with the concrete with fluid applied waterproofing as a separation measure prior to placement.

3.2 FIRE DOORS AND EXIT DOORS

Provide hardware in accordance with NFPA 72 for door alarms, NFPA 80 for fire doors, NFPA 101 for exit doors, and NFPA 252 for fire tests of door assemblies. .

3.3 HARDWARE LOCATIONS

Provide in accordance with SDI/DOOR A250.8, unless indicated or specified otherwise.

- a. Kick and Armor Plates: Both sides of double-acting doors.
- b. Mop Plates: Bottom flush with bottom of door.

3.4 KEY CABINET AND CONTROL SYSTEM

Locate where directed. Tag one set of file keys and one set of duplicate keys. Place other keys in appropriately marked envelopes, or tag each key. Provide complete instructions for setup and use of key control system. On tags and envelopes, indicate door and room numbers or master or grand master key.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

After installation, protect hardware from paint, stains, blemishes, and other damage until acceptance of work. Submit notice of testing 15 days before scheduled, so that testing can be witnessed by the Contracting Officer. Adjust hinges, locks, latches, bolts, holders, closers, and other items to operate properly. Demonstrate that permanent keys operate respective locks, and give keys to the Contracting Officer. Correct, repair, and finish, errors in cutting and fitting and damage to adjoining work.

3.6 HARDWARE SETS

1	HW-001 Exterior Entrance Single Blast 101A, 107A, 117A / Non-Blast 129A 129D, 129G, 134A, 134B, 134D, 135A			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Butt Hinges with 2 Horizontal Hinge Pins Each Hinge		Non-Removable Pin Hinges (N.R.P.) HA7 for Blast Doors	Stainless Steel
1	Store Room Mortised Lockset/ Keyed Exterior			Stainless Steel (Brushed)
1	Interchangeable Core			
1	Closer	LCN	4040xp	

1	HW-001 Exterior Entrance Single Blast 101A, 107A, 117A / Non-Blast 129A 129D, 129G, 134A, 134B, 134D, 135A			
1	Wall Stop			
1	Threshold			
1 Set	Weatherstripping			
1 Set	Door Top Raindrip			
1	Electric Strike			

2	HW-001A Interior Single Blast / Fire Rated 107B, 116			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Butt Hinges - N.R.P. 2 Horizontal Hinge Pins Each Hinge		HA7	Stainless Steel
1	Mortise Storeroom Lockset, /Keyed /Push Bar on secure side, Lever on applied force side Fire Exit Hardware			
1	Interchangeable Core			
1	Closer (No-Hold Open)	LCN	4040xp	
1	Wall Stop			
1	Threshold			
1 Set	Smoke Seals			
1 Set	Silencers			

3	HW-002 Exterior Double Blast / Utility Rooms 127, 128			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish

3	HW-002 Exterior Double Blast / Utility Rooms 127, 128			
3 PR	Butt Hinges - N.R.P 2 Horizontal Hinge Pins Each Hinge			Stainless Steel (Brushed)
1	Mortise Storeroom Lockset/Keyed			Stainless Steel (Brushed)
1	Lever on Exterior side, (1) Lever on secure side (Active Leaf) Keyed			
1	Surface Bolts (T & B), Surface Mounted on secure side / No Entry or Exit Hardware / (Passive Leaf)	Rockwood # 580-12 or Equal		Stainless Steel (Brushed)
1	Removable Steel Vertical Mullion (bolted top & bottom) / (Mounted to interior behind meeting leaves)			Painted to match door paint
2	Closers (no Hold-Open)	LCN	4040xp Active Leaf	
1	Threshold			
1	Interchangeable Core			
2	Easy-Pedal Kick Stand Hold Open- Each Leaf			
1 Set	Weatherstripping			
2	Floor Stops			
1	Astragal			
1 Set	Door Top Rain Drip			
1	Coordinator	Rockwood	576	US 26D

4	HW-003 Interior Entrance Vestibule / Comms Room 111, 121			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish

4	HW-003 Interior Entrance Vestibule / Comms Room 111, 121			
1.5 PR	Hinges (N.R.P.)			
2 PR	Hinges for Door 111 (N.R.P.)			
1	Mortise Storeroom Lockset / Keyed on non-secure side/ Lever on each side for Rm. 121 / Push bar on Corridor 111 side			
1	Closer	LCN	4040xp	
1	Electric Strike			
1	Easy-Pedal Kick Stand Hold Open (on Room 121 only)			
1	Wall Stop			
1 Set	Silencers			

5	HW-004 Entrance Single Vault, Coiling Door 129B, 129C, 129F, 130, 134C			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1 Set	Hardware by Manufacturer			
	Remarks: Inactive Leaf of door 130 will be provided as conforming with AR-190-11. Refer to TY drawings.			
1	FF-L-2937 (Vault Door Only)			
Remarks: Refer To TY Drawings For Additional Hardware Information				

6	HW-005 Exterior Double Entrance 129E			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
3 PR	Butt Hinges - N.R.P			Stainless Steel

6	HW-005 Exterior Double Entrance 129E			
1	Storeroom Lockset / Keyed on non-secured side			316 Stainless Steel
1	Coordinator	Rockwood	576	US 26D
2	Floor Stops			
1	Lever on Exterior side, 1 Push Bar on secure side (Active Leaf)			
2	Closers	LCN	4040xp	
1	Threshold			
1 Set	Weatherstripping			
1	Astragal			12 Gauge Stainless Min. Painted To Match Door
1 Set	Door Top Raindrip			To match door
2	Easy-Pedal Kick Stand Each Leaf			

7	HW-101 Interior Storage Door 132			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Butt Hinges			
1	Mortise Lockset - Storage			
1	Interchangeable Core			

7	HW-101 Interior Storage Door 132			
1	Electric Strike			
1	Wall Stop			
1	Easy-Pedal Kick Stand Hold Open			
1 Set	Silencers			
1	Electric Strike			

8	HW-102 Toilet Rooms 124, 125			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Butt Hinges			
1	Closer	LCN	4040xp	
1	Wall Stop			
1	Pull Plate / Push Plate/ Stainless Steel 304.			
1 Set	Silencers			

9	HW-103 Janitor's Closet 115			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
2 PR	Butt Hinges			
1	Mortise Lockset - Storage			
1	Ingterchangeable Core			
1	Wall Stop			
1	Closer - Heavy duty, 180°			
2	Armor Plates (1 Each side of door)			
1 Set	Silencers			

10	HW-104 Shower Room Doors 123, 126			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Hinges			
1	Mortise Lockset - Privacy			
1	Wall Stop			
1 Set	Silencers			

11	HW-106 COMMs/ Storage File Doors 122, 131			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Hinges			
1	Mortise Lockset - Storage			
1	Closer	LCN	4040xp	
1	Wall Stop			
1	Easy-Pedal Kick Stand Hold Open			
1 Set	Silencers			
1	Electric Strike			

12	HW-107 Interior Conference Room / Office / Mothers Room Door 103, 104, 105, 106, 108A, 109, 110, 113, 114, 119, 137A, 137B			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Hinges			
1	Mortise Lockset - Storage			
1	Wall Stop			
1 Set	Silencers			
1	Electric Strike			
1	Closer	LCN	4040xp	

12	HW-107 Interior Conference Room / Office / Mothers Room Door 103, 104, 105, 106, 108A, 109, 110, 113, 114, 119, 137A, 137B
Remarks: Automatic door closers on openings 114, 108A and 137A Only.	

13	HW-108 Restroom 136			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Hinges			
1	Mortise Lockset - Privacy			
1	Closer	LCN	4040xp	
1	Wall Stop			
1 Set	Silencers			

14	HW-109 Warehouse Interior Fire Rated 135B			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Hinges - N.R.P.			
1	Mortise Lockset - Entrance			
1	Closer	LCN	4040xp	
1	Threshold			Aluminum
1	Wall Stop			
1 Set	Silencer			

15	HW-110 Interior Single SIPR 120			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Hinges - N.R.P.			
1	Mortise Lockset - Storage LKM10K			
1	X-10 Spin Dial Lock			
1	Closer	LCN	4040xp	

15	HW-110 Interior Single SIPR 120			
1	Threshold			Aluminum
1	Wall Stop			

16	HW-111 Corridor Door 101B, 117B			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Hinges - N.R.P.			
1	Mortise Lockset - Entrance			
1	Push Bar / Lever on Pull Side			
1	Closer	LCN	4040xp	
1	Wall Stop			
1 Set	Silencer			

17	HW-112 Entrance Single Blast 108B			
Qty	Item Description	Manufacturer	Product	Finish
1.5 PR	Security Hinges Butt Hinges - N.R.P 2 Horizontal Hinge Pins Each Hinge		HA7	Stainless Steel
1	Lever on applied force side / Push Bar on secure side Fire Exit Hardware			
1	Electric Strike			
1	Interchangeable Core			
1	Closer	LCN	4040xp	
1	Wall Stop			
1	Threshold			

17	HW-112 Entrance Single Blast 108B			
1 Set	Silencers			
1 Set	Smoke Seals			

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 81 00

GLAZING

05/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The requirements of Section 08 88 56, BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT GLAZING SYSTEMS, apply to the designated windows assemblies provided for this project. The intent is that this section, 08 81 00, GLAZING, specifies the materials, size of components, moisture and air control properties, finish and appearance of the glazing, while Section 08 88 56 specifies the performance requirements for blast loading for the glazing systems.

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

AAMA 800	(2016) Voluntary Specifications and Test Methods for Sealants
AAMA GDSG-1	(1987) Glass Design for Sloped Glazing
AAMA TIR A7	(2011) Sloped Glazing Guidelines

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI Z97.1	(2015) Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test
------------	---

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C509	(2006; R 2021) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Cellular Preformed Gasket and Sealing Material
ASTM C864	(2005; R 2015) Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C1021	(2008; R 2014) Standard Practice for Laboratories Engaged in Testing of Building Sealants
ASTM C1036	(2021) Standard Specification for Flat Glass
ASTM C1048	(2018) Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass
ASTM C1087	(2016) Standard Test Method for Determining Compatibility of

Liquid-Applied Sealants with Accessories
Used in Structural Glazing Systems

ASTM C1172	(2019) Standard Specification for Laminated Architectural Flat Glass
ASTM C1184	(2014) Standard Specification for Structural Silicone Sealants
ASTM C1281	(2016) Standard Specification for Preformed Tape Sealants for Glazing Applications
ASTM D395	(2016; E 2017) Standard Test Methods for Rubber Property - Compression Set
ASTM E1300	(2016) Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings

GLASS ASSOCIATION OF NORTH AMERICA (GANA)

GANA Glazing Manual	(2008) Glazing Manual
GANA Sealant Manual	(2008) Sealant Manual
GANA Standards Manual	(2008) Engineering Standards Manual

INSULATING GLASS MANUFACTURERS ALLIANCE (IGMA)

IGMA TB-1200	(1983; R 2016) Guidelines for Insulating Glass Dimensional Tolerances
IGMA TB-3001	(2001) Guidelines for Sloped Glazing
IGMA TM-3000	(1990; R 2016) North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial & Residential Use

NATIONAL FENESTRATION RATING COUNCIL (NFRC)

NFRC 100	(2020) Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-Factors
NFRC 200	(2020) Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 4-010-01	(2018;with Change 1, 2020) DoD Minimum Antiterrorism Standards for Buildings
--------------	--

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

16 CFR 1201	Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials
-------------	---

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data; G, AE

Insulating Glass; G, AE

Documentation for Energy Star qualifications.

Glazing Accessories; G, AE

Manufacturer's descriptive product data, handling and storage recommendations, installation instructions, and cleaning instructions.

Local/Regional Materials; (LEED)

Documentation indicating distance between manufacturing facility and the project site. Indicate distance of raw material origin from the project site. Indicate relative dollar value of local/regional materials to total dollar value of products included in project.

Sealants; G, AE

Laminated Glass; G, AE

SD-04 Samples

Insulating Glass; G, AE

Laminated Glass; G, AE

SD-05 Design Data

Blast Design Calculations; G, AE

See Section 08 88 56, BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT GLAZING SYSTEM, for criteria for blast loading and design of glazing systems

Performance Analysis; G, AE

Calculations for glazing to include:

Overall performance for each exterior window type in tabular form. Table shall include:

- a. Glazing performance
- b. Glazing capacity
- c. Glazing thickness

Calculation submittal shall be stamped and signed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of North Carolina, whose qualifications meet or exceed those required by this specification.

SD-07 Certificates

Insulating Glass

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Setting and Sealing Materials

Glass Setting

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty for Insulated Glass Units

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Fabricate and install watertight and airtight glazing systems to withstand thermal movement and wind loading without glass breakage, gasket failure, deterioration of glazing accessories, or defects in the work. Glazed panels must comply with the safety standards, in accordance with ANSI Z97.1, and comply with indicated wind/snow loading in accordance with ASTM E1300.

Sloped glazing must comply with AAMA GDSG-1 and AAMA TIR A7, and IGMA TB-3001.

Exterior Windows as shown shall be designed to meet the blast requirements of this specification and of UFC 4-010-01, 2018, change 1 2020.

Coordinate design of glass with requirements of Section 08 39 53, BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT DOORS, and Section 08 88 56, BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT GLAZING SYSTEMS.

1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

Submit two 8 by 10 inch samples of each of the following: tinted glass, blast resistant insulating glass units tempered, annealed, and laminated glass.

Submit three samples of each other material.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver products to the site in unopened containers, labeled plainly with manufacturers' names and brands. Store glass and setting materials in safe, enclosed dry locations and do not unpack until needed for installation. Handle and install materials in a manner that will protect them from damage.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not start glazing work until the outdoor temperature is above 40 degrees F and rising, unless procedures recommended by the glass manufacturer and approved by the Contracting Officer are made to warm the glass and rabbet surfaces. Provide ventilation to prevent condensation of moisture on glazing work during installation. Do not perform glazing work

during damp or rainy weather.

1.7 WARRANTY

1.7.1 Warranty for Insulated Glass Units

Warranty insulating glass units against development of material obstruction to vision (such as dust, fogging, or film formation on the inner glass surfaces) caused by failure of the hermetic seal, other than through glass breakage, for a 10-year period following acceptance of the work. Provide new units for any units failing to comply with terms of this warranty within 45 working days after receipt of notice from the Government.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SUSTAINABILITY CRITERIA

2.1.1 Local/Regional Materials

See Section 01 33 29 LEED(tm) DOCUMENTATION for cumulative total local material requirements. Glazing materials may be locally available.

2.2 BLAST RESISTANT EXTERIOR WINDOW DESIGN PERFORMANCE

Provide Blast Design Calculations and performance analysis performed by an approved blast consultant that show the glazing can provide the required level of protection from the designated blast threat. Section 08 88 56, BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT GLAZING Systems for additional design requirements

2.3 GLASS

ASTM C1036, unless specified otherwise. In doors and sidelights, provide safety glazing material conforming to 16 CFR 1201.

2.3.1 Clear Glass

For interior glazing 1/4 inch thick glass should be used.

Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality q5 (B). Provide for glazing openings not indicated or specified otherwise. Use double-strength sheet glass or 1/8 inch float glass for openings up to and including 15 square feet, 3/16 inch for glazing openings over 15 square feet but not over 30 square feet, and 1/4 inch for glazing openings over 30 square feet but not over 45 square feet.

2.3.2 Annealed Glass

Annealed glass must be Type I transparent flat type, Class 1 - clear, Quality q3 - glazing select, conforming to ASTM C1036.

2.3.3 Laminated Glass

ASTM C1172, Kind LA fabricated from two nominal 1/8 inch pieces of Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, flat annealed transparent glass conforming to ASTM C1036. Flat glass shall be laminated together with a minimum of 0.030 inch thick, clear polyvinyl butyral interlayer. The total thickness shall be a minimum of 1/4 inch, provide thickness shall be designed to

provide the required level of protection for for wind and blast resistance according to the requirements of this specification and other referenced specifications. Color shall be clear.

Safety glazing for prefabricated transaction windows does not need to be designed for blast-resistance.

2.3.4 Tempered Glass

ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated), Type I, Class 1 (transparent), Quality q3, 1/4" inch thick, conforming to ASTM C1048 and GANA Standards Manual. Color must be clear. Provide wherever safety glazing material is indicated or specified.

2.4 INSULATING GLASS UNITS

Two panes of glass separated by a dehydrated airspace, filled with argon gas and hermetically sealed. Submit performance and compliance documentation for each type of insulating glass.

Insulated glass units must have a Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC) maximum of 0.35 determined according to NFRC 200 and a U-factor maximum of 0.32 Btu per square foot by hr by degree F in accordance with NFRC 100.

Dimensional tolerances must be as specified in IGMA TB-1200. Spacer must be black, roll-formed, thin-gauge, C-section steel, with bent or tightly welded or keyed and sealed joints to completely seal the spacer periphery and eliminate moisture and hydrocarbon vapor transmission into airspace through the corners. Primary seal must be compressed polyisobutylene and the secondary seal must be a specially formulated silicone.

The inner light must be ASTM C1172, clear annealed flat glass Type I, Class I, Quality q3. Flat glass shall be laminated together with a minimum of 0.030 inch thick, clear polyvinyl butyl interlayer. The total thickness shall be of 1/4 inch, designed for wind and blast loading as specified herein. The outer light must be ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 2 (tinted heat absorbing), Quality q4, 3/16 inch clear/3/16 inch clear laminated with high performance coating on surface #2.

2.4.1 Low Emissivity Coatings

Interior and exterior glass panes for Low-E insulating units must be Type I annealed flat glass, Class 2-tinted with anti-reflective low-emissivity coating or heat-strengthened or fully tempered glass complying with ASTM C1048, Condition C on No. 2 surface (inside surface of exterior pane), Quality q3 - glazing select, conforming to ASTM C1036. Glass performance must be U value maximum of 0.31 assembly total Btu/hr-ft²-F, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC) maximum of 0.35. Color must be gray.

2.5 SETTING AND SEALING MATERIALS

Provide as specified in the GANA Glazing Manual, IGMA TM-3000, IGMA TB-3001, and manufacturer's recommendations, unless specified otherwise herein. Do not use metal sash putty, nonskinning compounds, nonresilient preformed sealers, or impregnated preformed gaskets. Materials exposed to view and unpainted must be gray or neutral color. Sealant testing must be performed by a testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021.

Submit glass manufacturer's recommendations for setting and sealing

materials and for installation of each type of glazing material specified.

2.5.1 Putty and Glazing Compound

Provide glazing compound as recommended by manufacturer for face-glazing metal sash. Putty must be linseed oil type. Do not use putty and glazing compounds with insulating glass or laminated glass.

2.5.2 Sealants

Provide elastomeric and structural sealants.

2.5.2.1 Elastomeric Sealant

ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 12.5, Use G. Use for channel or stop glazing metal sash. Sealants must be chemically compatible with setting blocks, edge blocks, and sealing tapes, with sealants used in manufacture of insulating glass units. Color of sealant must be white.

2.5.2.2 Structural Sealant

ASTM C1184, Type S.

2.5.3 Glazing Tapes

2.5.3.1 Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes

Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:

- a. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
- b. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
- c. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

2.5.3.2 Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes

Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:

- a. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
- b. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.5.4 Setting Blocks and Edge Blocks

Closed-cell neoprene setting blocks must be dense extruded type conforming to ASTM C509 and ASTM D395, Method B, Shore A durometer between 70 and 90. Edge blocking must be Shore A durometer of 50 (plus or minus 5). Provide silicone setting blocks when blocks are in contact with silicone sealant. Profiles, lengths and locations must be as required and

recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Block color must be black.

2.5.5 Glazing Gaskets

Glazing gaskets must be extruded with continuous integral locking projection designed to engage into metal glass holding members to provide a watertight seal during dynamic loading, building movements and thermal movements. Glazing gaskets for a single glazed opening must be continuous one-piece units with factory-fabricated injection-molded corners free of flashing and burrs. Glazing gaskets must be in lengths or units recommended by manufacturer to ensure against pull-back at corners. Provide glazing gasket profiles as recommended by the manufacturer for the intended application.

2.5.5.1 Fixed Glazing Gaskets

Fixed glazing gaskets must be closed-cell (sponge) smooth extruded compression gaskets of cured elastomeric virgin neoprene compounds conforming to ASTM C509, Type 2, Option 1.

2.5.5.2 Wedge Glazing Gaskets

Wedge glazing gaskets must be high-quality extrusions of cured elastomeric virgin neoprene compounds, ozone resistant, conforming to ASTM C864, Option 1, Shore A durometer between 65 and 75.

2.5.5.3 Aluminum Framing Glazing Gaskets

Glazing gaskets for aluminum framing must be permanent, elastic, non-shrinking, non-migrating, watertight and weathertight.

2.5.6 Accessories

Provide as required for a complete installation, including glazing points, clips, shims, angles, beads, and spacer strips. Provide noncorroding metal accessories. Provide primer-sealers and cleaners as recommended by the glass and sealant manufacturers. Use ASTM C1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to surface.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Any materials that show visual evidence of biological growth due to the presence of moisture must not be installed on the building project.

3.1 PREPARATION

Preparation, unless otherwise specified or approved, must conform to applicable recommendations in the GANA Glazing Manual, GANA Sealant Manual, IGMA TB-3001, IGMA TM-3000, and manufacturer's recommendations. Determine the sizes to provide the required edge clearances by measuring the actual opening to receive the glass. Grind smooth in the shop glass edges that will be exposed in finish work. Leave labels in place until the installation is approved, except remove applied labels on heat-absorbing glass and on insulating glass units as soon as glass is installed. Securely fix movable items or keep in a closed and locked position until glazing compound has thoroughly set.

3.2 GLASS SETTING

Shop glaze or field glaze items to be glazed using glass of the quality and thickness specified or indicated. Glazing, unless otherwise specified or approved, must conform to applicable recommendations in the GANA Glazing Manual, GANA Sealant Manual, IGMA TB-3001, IGMA TM-3000, and manufacturer's recommendations. Aluminum windows, wood doors, and wood windows may be glazed in conformance with one of the glazing methods described in the standards under which they are produced, except that face puttying with no bedding will not be permitted. Handle and install glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Use beads or stops which are furnished with items to be glazed to secure the glass in place. Verify products are properly installed, connected, and adjusted.

3.2.1 Sheet Glass

Cut and set with the visible lines or waves horizontal.

3.2.2 Insulating Glass Units

Do not grind, nip, or cut edges or corners of units after the units have left the factory. Springing, forcing, or twisting of units during setting will not be permitted. Handle units so as not to strike frames or other objects. Installation must conform to applicable recommendations of IGMA TB-3001 and IGMA TM-3000.

3.2.3 Installation of Laminated Glass

Sashes which are to receive laminated glass must be weeped to the outside to allow water drainage into the channel.

3.3 CLEANING

Clean glass surfaces and remove labels, paint spots, putty, and other defacement as required to prevent staining. Glass must be clean at the time the work is accepted.

3.4 PROTECTION

Protect glass work immediately after installation. Identify glazed openings with suitable warning tapes, cloth or paper flags, attached with non-staining adhesives. Protect reflective glass with a protective material to eliminate any contamination of the reflective coating. Place

protective material far enough away from the coated glass to allow air to circulate to reduce heat buildup and moisture accumulation on the glass. Upon removal, separate protective materials for reuse or recycling. Remove and replace glass units which are broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or otherwise damaged during construction activities with new units.

3.5 GLAZING SCHEDULE

Type	Description	Composition	Coatings	Construction
IGU- 1	Clear, Blast-Resistant	1-1/4" insulating glass with air space	Low 'e' on #2 surface	Inner Light Laminated 2 layers of 1/8" annealed glass and .030 PVB inter layer. Comply with ASTM C1172 Outer Lite - Laminated 2 Layers of 3/16" annealed glass. Comply with ASTM C1036
GU-1	Clear, Tempered	1/4" Tempered Glass	Uncoated	1 Layer of 1/4" Tempered Glass

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 88 56

BLAST REQUIREMENTS FOR BLAST RESISTANT GLAZING SYSTEMS
02/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM F1642 (2012) Standard Test Method for Glazing and Glazing Systems Subject to Airblast Loadings

ASTM F2248 (2012) Standard Practice for Specifying an Equivalent 3-Second Duration Design Loading for Blast Resistant Glazing Fabricated with Laminated Glass

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 4-010-01 (2018;with Change 1, 2020) DoD Minimum Antiterrorism Standards for Buildings

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 Design Requirements

Minimum performance requirements for blast resistant glazing systems, including exterior window systems, shall meet Low Level of Protection UFC requirements.

In conjunction with meeting aesthetic and performance requirements, the Contractor may propose alternate detailing methods for consideration.

1.2.2 Performance Requirements

1.2.2.1 General

Provide design of exterior, blast resistant glazing systems to meet the minimum requirements of UFC 4-010-01, Appendix B, Section B-3.1.

1.2.2.2 Vestibules or Foyers

Exterior glazing systems of vestibules shall provide a medium level of protection through dynamic analysis.

1.2.2.3 Window System Design

Window system design meeting UFC 4-010-01, Appendix B, Section B-3.1. shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1.2.2.3.1 Glazing Requirements

Provide laminated glazing with a minimum polyvinyl-butylal (PVB) interlayer thickness of 0.030-inch. For insulated glass units (IGUs), provide laminated glazing with a minimum polyvinyl-butylal (PVB) interlayer thickness of 0.030-inch at the inboard pane.

1.2.2.3.2 Window Framing Requirements

1.2.2.3.2.1 General

Provide window frames, mullions, and sashes of aluminum or steel designed in accordance with ASTM F2248.

1.2.2.3.3 Glazing Frame Bite

Glazing must be adhered to the supporting frame with structural silicone sealant or adhesive glazing tape.

Refer to ASTM F2248 for glazing frame bite requirements for structurally or non-structurally glazed windows. At a minimum, the glazing shall have a frame bite of 3/8 inch for structurally glazed systems and 1 inch for non-structurally glazed systems. For structurally glazed applications, apply the structural silicone bead to both sides of the glass panel for single pane glazing, but only to the inboard side for insulating glass units.

1.2.2.4 Alternate Method of Design

Glazing, framing members, connections, and supporting structural elements may be designed using dynamic analysis to prove that the element of the window system shall perform equivalent to or better than the hazard rating associated with a low level of protection as defined below.

1.2.2.4.1 Dynamic Design Loading

The dynamic design loading for analysis shall be the appropriate pressures and impulses from the applicable explosive weights at the actual standoff distances at which the windows are sited. A summary of applicable dynamic design loads and their locations specific to this building's site layout are as follows.

1.2.2.4.1.1 Typical

SOF SSA Exterior Window Systems: Linearly decaying load with a peak pressure of 12.6 psi and an impulse of 78 psi-msec.

1.2.2.4.2 Application of Dynamic Load

All elements designed using dynamic analysis shall be analyzed for all applicable dynamic loads. This design load shall be applied over the areas tributary to the element being analyzed.

1.2.2.4.3 Glazing Design

Glazing shall meet the Very Low Hazard rating as defined in ASTM F1642 which is defined as the glazing is observed to fracture and is located within 1m (40 in.) of the original location. Also, there are three or less perforations caused by glazing slivers and no fragment indents

anywhere in a vertical witness panel located 3 m (120 in.) from the interior face of the specimen and there are fragments with a sum total united dimension of 25 cm (10 in.) or less on the floor between 1 m (40 in.) and 3 m (120 in.) from the interior face of the specimen. Glazing dust and slivers are not accounted for in the rating. In WinGARD 5.5.1 this is equivalent to condition 3a.

Exterior glazing of vestibules shall be designed to crack but remain in the frame. In WINGARD 6.1, this is equivalent to Performance Condition 2.

1.2.2.4.4 Framing Elements Design

Design frame elements not to exceed the following response limits, associated with a Low Level of Protection.

- a. 6 degree rotation
- b. Ductility of 7
- c. Shear demand-to-capacity ratio of 1.0
- d. 3 degree rotation
- e. Ductility of 5
- f. Shear demand-to-capacity ratio of 1.0

1.2.2.5 Testing

As an alternative to these requirements, window systems may be dynamically tested to demonstrate performance equivalent to or better than the glazing hazard rating associated with a low level of protection. The design loading for a dynamic test shall be the appropriate pressure and impulse from the applicable explosive weight at the actual standoff distance at which the window is sited. Testing shall include the entire window system, including connections, and shall be in accordance with ASTM F1642. Test report shall include but not be limited to:

1.2.2.5.1 Specimens

Minimum of three (3) identical specimens shall be tested for the design blast load summarized in preceding paragraphs or a higher air-blast load. Those specimens shall be similar to the project window in pane sizes and lay-up, mullion type and sizes, anchor number and system, etc.

1.2.2.5.2 Supporting Structure

The structural supporting material used in the test for fastener attachment shall be representative of the field installed condition. Any deviations in field application of the connections or the connected elements from the test must be demonstrated by calculation to provide the required level of protection for the specific application.

1.2.2.5.3 Standoff Distance

Standoff distance for the blast test shall be computed and documented in accordance with ASTM F1642 for the design peak pressure and impulse.

1.2.2.5.4 Data Collection

Minimum of three (3) pressure transducers shall be installed in the frame and one (1) free-field pressure transducer shall be used in the test as specified in ASTM F1642.

1.2.2.5.5 Test Report

Test report shall be performed by an accredited laboratory or signed and sealed by a registered Professional Engineer whose qualifications meet or exceed Quality Assurance criteria.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Approach Description; G, AE

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Mullions and Framing Members; G, AE

Anchorage; G, AE

Mechanical Anchors; G, AE

Supporting Structure; G, AE

Glass; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Mullions and Framing Members; G, AE

Anchorage; G, AE

Mechanical Anchors; G, AE

Glass; G, AE

SD-05 Design Data

Calculation Summary; G, AE

Calculations/Design Analysis for:

Mullions and Framing Members; G, AE

Anchorage; G, AE

Mechanical Anchors; G, AE

Supporting Structure (coordinate loading scenarios)

with the contract drawings); G, AE

Glass; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Test Report; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Engineer's Qualifications; G, AE

1.3.1 Calculations

1.3.1.1 Approach Description

Prior to performing engineering calculations submit a description of the technique(s) that shall be employed to calculate the response of the system to the defined loading.

1.3.1.2 Calculation Summary

Calculation package is to include a summary sheet briefly outlining the following:

Evaluation criteria

Calculation assumptions

Table of results by window type/location

Statement of conformance with specification requirements

1.3.1.3 Professional Engineer

Calculation submittal is to be stamped and signed by a registered Professional Engineer whose qualifications meet or exceed the of the Quality Assurance section of this specification.

1.3.1.4 General Calculation Requirements

Submit engineering calculations or experimental testing to show that window response meets specified prescriptive requirements under static or dynamic design methods.

1.3.1.5 Extent of Calculations

Calculations must include, but may not be limited to, analysis of the following:

1.3.1.5.1 Mullions and Framing Members

Provide a clear load path from the glass to the primary element and supporting analysis which illustrates each component's ability to transfer the design load to the primary element. Analysis of primary element shall illustrate flexural and shear capacity.

1.3.1.5.2 Anchorage

Analyze the strength of embedded anchor assembly, as well as pull-out and reaction forces shared with the building structure. Analyze the window wall anchor clip inserts and fasteners and assemblies, including bolts and stiffeners. Include exact loadings to be transferred to the building structure in the analysis.

Safety Factors:

SF = 1 shall be allowed for connection elements that provide a ductile mode of failure (e.g. bolt bearing, tensile yielding, etc.).

SF = 1.5 shall be used for connection elements that provide a non-ductile mode of failure (e.g. weld fracture, concrete cone failure due to anchor bolt pull-out, etc.).

1.3.1.5.3 Mechanical Anchors

Mechanical anchor capacities shall be developed from dynamic testing. An International Code Council (ICC-ES) evaluation report showing testing for dynamic loading (i.e. seismic or blast) is to be submitted with calculations.

1.3.1.5.4 Supporting Structure

Coordination of the window/supporting structure interaction shall be the contractors' responsibility. The window contractor's engineer performing blast calculations for the window system shall coordinate loading scenarios with the contract drawings

1.3.1.5.5 Glass

Determine glass pane performance using an analysis program such as WINGARD 5.5.1 or later, developed by the General Service Administration. If a program other than WinGard is used, it must be approved by the design team prior to calculations. WinGard calculations provided in the calculation package are to include the complete text rather than the "concise" text printout. Probability of Failure. To determine the response of the glass and the anchorage loads, the probability of breakage for the glass is to be 500 breaks per 1000.

1.3.2 Testing

1.3.2.1 Test Windows

Test windows are required to be similar to the project windows. Identical mullion shapes, glass lay-up, window distribution and anchorage system are required between test windows and project windows. Glass panes areas and mullion spans for the project windows are required to be within 10% of the test windows.

1.3.2.2 Test Report

Test report package is to include a summary sheet briefly outlining the following:

Brief description of the test performed

Table of test results by window type/location

Table of comparison between test windows and project windows

Statement of Conformance with ASTM F1642

In addition, test report must include all the information required by ASTM F1642 Section 12.

1.3.2.3 Professional Engineer

Test report is to be stamped and signed by a registered Professional Engineer, registered in North Carolina, whose qualifications meet or exceed Quality Assurance criteria and/or certified by an accredited ASTM testing laboratory.

1.3.3 Certificates

Engineer's qualifications must meet or exceed the Quality Assurance section of this specification. At a minimum, qualifications must list each project in which the Engineer performed analysis of window systems, the effective start and end dates of performance of the analysis and a reference.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Engineer

Engage an Engineering Professional to perform dynamic analysis of the Blast Resistant Windows. The Engineer shall have a minimum of 5 years experience in blast resistant design and demonstrable experience designing blast resistant window systems in the past 18 months.

1.4.2 Window Bite

The required window system bite must be verified in the field.

1.4.3 Installation Orientation

Windows delivered to the construction site are to be clearly labeled as to the proper installation orientation (i.e. laminated pane of glass to be installed as the interior pane.)

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Framing Members

Use extruded aluminum alloy sections or continuous structural steel sections.

2.1.1.1 Yield Strength

Provide supporting references that grade of steel or aluminum used is capable of achieving calculated ductility ratio.

2.1.1.2 Dynamic Increase Factors

If dynamic analysis is used, the yield strength of framing members may be increased to account for static increase factors and dynamic strain rate effects as follows:

2.1.1.2.1 Structural Steel

For $f_y = 36$ ksi, the yield strength may be increased by a factor of 1.42. For $f_y = 42$ ksi or greater, the yield strength may be increased by a factor of 1.31.

2.1.1.2.2 Aluminum

6063-T6 Alloy - $F_y = 25$ ksi, the yield strength may be increased by a factor of 1.14. 6061-T6 Alloy - $F_y = 35$ ksi, the yield strength may be increased by a factor of 1.09.

2.1.1.3 Section Modulus

The plastic section modulus may be used in dynamic design calculations.

2.1.1.4 Built-Up Sections

Design built-up sections using ultimate stress and strain compatibility approaches as defined by industry standards. If a built-up section is analyzed as one unit, full shear stress transfer along the line of contact between the individual sections must be illustrated.

2.1.2 Glass Units

2.1.2.1 Glass-to-Glass Interlayer

Clear polyvinyl butyral (PVB) laminating film/sheet shall be used on the inner lite of exterior window systems.

2.1.2.2 Window Bite

Glazing must be adhered to frame with structural silicone sealant or adhesive tape per ASTM F2248.

2.1.3 Structural Silicone Sealant

2.1.3.1 Ultimate Tensile Strength per ASTM C1135

Minimum 110 psi in tension.

Ultimate tensile strength may be increased by a factor of 1.18 to account for dynamic strain rate effects.

2.1.3.2 Safety Factors

Ultimate tension and shear capacities are to be used with a safety factor of 1.0.

2.1.3.3 Structural Silicone Placement

Apply the structural silicone bead to both sides of the glass panel for single pane glazing, but only to the inboard side for insulating glass

units.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 91 00

METAL WALL LOUVERS

08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 500-L (2015) Laboratory Methods of Testing
Louvers for Rating

AMCA 511 (2010; R 2016) Certified Ratings Program
for Air Control Devices

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

AAMA 2603 (2020) Voluntary Specification,
Performance Requirements and Test
Procedures for Pigmented Organic Coatings
on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels

AAMA 2605 (2020) Voluntary Specification,
Performance Requirements and Test
Procedures for Superior Performing Organic
Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A653/A653M (2020) Standard Specification for Steel
Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or
Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by
the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM B221 (2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Wall Louvers

Man-bar Security Barriers

SD-03 Product Data

Metal Wall Louvers

SD-04 Samples

Wall Louver Samples; G, AE

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

Deliver materials to the site in an undamaged condition. Carefully store materials off the ground to provide proper ventilation, drainage, and protection against dampness. Louvers must be free from nicks, scratches, and blemishes. Replace defective or damaged materials with new.

1.4 DETAIL DRAWINGS

Show all information necessary for fabrication and installation of wall louvers and integration of man-bar security barriers. Indicate materials, sizes, thicknesses, fastenings, and profiles.

1.5 COLOR SAMPLES

Colors of finishes for wall louver samples must closely approximate colors indicated. Where color is not indicated, submit the manufacturer's standard colors to the Contracting Officer for selection.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Galvanized Steel Sheet

ASTM A653/A653M, coating designation G90.

2.1.2 Aluminum Sheet

ASTM B209, alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming.

2.1.3 Extruded Aluminum

ASTM B221, alloy 6063-T5 or -T52.

2.2 METAL WALL LOUVERS

Weather resistant type, with bird screens and made to withstand a wind load of not less than 30 pounds per square foot. Wall louvers must bear the AMCA certified ratings program seal for air performance and water penetration in accordance with AMCA 500-L and AMCA 511. The rating must show a water penetration of 0.20 or less ounce per square foot of free area at a free velocity of 800 feet per minute.

2.2.1 Extruded Aluminum Louvers

Fabricated of extruded 6063-T5 or -T52 aluminum with a wall thickness of not less than 0.081 inch.

2.2.2 Screens, Security Man-bars, and Frames

For aluminum louvers, provide 1/2 inch square mesh, 14 or 16 gage aluminum or 1/4 inch square mesh, 16 gage aluminum bird screening. For steel louvers, provide 1/2 inch square mesh, 12 or 16 gage zinc-coated steel; 1/2 inch square mesh, 16 gage copper; or 1/4 inch square mesh, 16 gage zinc-coated steel or copper bird screening. Mount screens in removable, rewirable frames of same material and finish as the louvers.

2.3 FASTENERS AND ACCESSORIES

Provide stainless steel screws and fasteners for aluminum louvers and zinc-coated or stainless steel screws and fasteners for steel louvers. Provide other accessories as required for complete and proper installation.

2.4 FINISHES

2.4.1 Aluminum

Exposed aluminum surfaces must be factory finished with an organic coating. Color must be as indicated. Louvers must have the same finish.

2.4.1.1 Organic Coating

Clean and prime exposed aluminum surfaces. Provide a baked enamel finish conforming to AAMA 2603, with total dry film thickness not less than 0.8 mil superior performance finish in accordance with AAMA 2605 with total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mil, color to match adjacent siding.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Wall Louvers

Install using stops or moldings, flanges, strap anchors, or jamb fasteners as appropriate for the wall construction and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.1.2 Screens and Frames

Attach frames to louvers with screws or bolts.

3.2 PROTECTION FROM CONTACT OF DISSIMILAR MATERIALS

3.2.1 Copper or Copper-Bearing Alloys

Paint copper or copper-bearing alloys in contact with dissimilar metal with heavy-bodied bituminous paint or separate with inert membrane.

3.2.2 Aluminum

Where aluminum contacts metal other than zinc, paint the dissimilar metal with a primer and two coats of aluminum paint.

3.2.3 Metal

Paint metal in contact with mortar, concrete, or other masonry materials with alkali-resistant coatings such as heavy-bodied bituminous paint.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 09 06 00

SCHEDULES FOR FINISHES

05/09, CHG 1: 11/13

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This section covers only the color of exterior and interior materials and products that are exposed to view in the finished construction. The word "color", as used herein, includes surface color and pattern. Requirements for quality, product specifications, and method of installation are covered in other appropriate sections of the specifications. Specific locations where the various materials are required are shown on the drawings if not identified in this specification. Items not designated for color in this section may be specified in other sections. When color is not designated for items, propose a color for approval.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 COLOR SCHEDULE

The color schedule information provided in the following paragraphs lists the colors, patterns and textures required for exterior and interior finishes, including both factory applied and field applied colors. Where color is shown as being specific to one manufacturer, an equivalent color by another manufacturer may be submitted for approval. Manufacturers and materials specified are not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers. In the case of difference between the drawings and specifications, colors identified in this specification govern.

2.2 EXTERIOR FINISHES

Reference drawings for manufacturer and color information.

2.2.1 Exterior Walls

Exterior wall colors apply to exterior wall surfaces including recesses at entrances and projecting vestibules. When applicable, paint conduit to closely match the adjacent surface color. Provide wall colors to match the colors listed below.

2.2.1.1 Brick

Palmetto 1.25 Greystone

2.2.1.2 Mortar

Light Buff

2.2.1.3 Concrete Masonry Units (Rock/Split-Faced), Smooth-Faced

Adams 4310 (Warm Grey)

2.2.1.4 Metal Wall Panels, Hardware, and Associated Trim

Paint FS-23617 (Beige)

2.2.1.5 Precast Stone

Limestone

2.2.1.6 Glass and Glazing

Solar Gray-Medium Tint

2.2.2 Exterior Trim

Provide exterior trim to match the colors listed below.

2.2.2.1 Steel Doors and Door Frames

Paint FS-24084 (Dark Bronze)

2.2.2.2 Steel Windows (mullion, muntin, sash, trim, and sill)

Paint FS-24084 (Dark Bronze)

2.2.2.3 Fascia

Paint FS-24084 (Dark Bronze)

2.2.2.4 Soffits and Ceilings

Soffits: Gypsum Exposed Structure: Artillery

2.2.2.5 Overhangs

Paint FS-24084 (Dark Bronze)

2.2.2.6 Downspouts and Gutters

Paint FS-24084 (Dark Bronze)

2.2.2.7 Louvers

Match adjacent material in color.

2.2.2.8 Flashings

Paint FS-24084 (Dark Bronze)

2.2.2.9 Coping

PAINT FS - 24084 (Dark Bronze)

2.2.2.10 Handrails

Handrails, Freestanding: FS-20059 (Mission Brown), Handrails,
Attached to Buildings: FS-24084 (Dark Bronze)

2.2.2.11 Guardrails

Paint FS-24084 (Dark Bronze)

2.2.2.12 Caulking and Sealants

Match adjacent material in color.

2.2.2.13 Bollards

Bollards Adjacent to Buildings: FS-24084 (Dark Bronze)
Bollards at site perimeter fencing and dumpster enclosure:
FS-20059 with FS-23655 (Safety Yellow) stripe

2.2.2.14 Signage

Traffic Signs and Street Signposts and Backs: FS-20059 (Mission Brown)
Street Address Signs on Buildings: FS-27886 (White) with FS-20059 (Mission Brown) Reflective Copy
Building Number Sign: FS-20059 (Mission Brown) with FS-27886 (White) Copy
Organization Sign Backs and Posts FS-20059 (Mission Brown).

2.2.2.15 Control Joints

Match adjacent material in color.

2.2.2.16 Expansion Joint and/or Covers

Match adjacent material in color.

2.2.3 Exterior Roof

Apply roof color to exterior roof surfaces including sheet metal flashings and copings, snow guards, mechanical units, mechanical penthouses, roof trim, pipes, conduits, electrical appurtenances, and similar items.
Provide roof color to match the colors listed below.

2.2.3.1 Metal

FS-24201 (Medium Bronze)

2.2.3.2 TPO

White

2.2.3.3 Penetrations

Match roof in color.

2.3 INTERIOR FINISHES

2.3.1 Interior Floor Finishes

Provide flooring materials to match the colors listed below.

2.3.1.1 Luxury Vinyl Tile

Travertine ETR toscano 7212

2.3.1.2 Static-Control Resilient Flooring (Static-Dissipative Vinyl Tile)

Flannel Blanket

2.3.1.3 Porcelain Tile

Reverb Ash

2.3.1.4 Transition

Cement

2.3.1.5 Entrance Mat

Black Grey

2.3.1.6 Plastic Laminate

Cream Softwood, Natural Grain

2.3.1.7 Industrial Floor Coating

Mushroom

2.3.2 Interior Base Finishes

Provide base materials to match the colors listed below.

2.3.2.1 Resilient Base and Moldings

Cement

2.3.2.2 Porcelain Tile

Reverb Ash

2.3.3 Interior Wall Finishes

Apply interior wall color to the entire wall surface, including reveals, vertical furred spaces and columns, grilles, diffusers, electrical and access panels, and piping and conduit adjacent to wall surfaces unless otherwise specified. Paint items not specified in other paragraphs to match adjacent wall surface. Provide wall materials to match the colors listed below.

2.3.3.1 Paint

Toasted Almond FS-27886
Almond FS-164000

2.3.3.2 Ceramic Tile

Biscuit 00101
Arctic White 0790

2.3.3.3 Exposed Structural Columns

Toasted Almond FS-27886

2.3.4 Interior Ceiling Finishes

Apply ceiling colors to ceiling surfaces including soffits, furred down areas, grilles, diffusers, registers, and access panels. In addition, apply ceiling color to joists, underside of roof deck, and conduit and piping where joists and deck are exposed and required to be painted. Provide ceiling materials to match the colors listed below.

2.3.4.1 Acoustical Tile and Grid

Manufacturers Standard White

2.3.4.2 Paint (Ceilings)

Ceiling white FS-37886

2.3.4.3 Paint (Soffits)

Ceiling white FS-37886

2.3.4.4 Metal Deck

FS-36307

2.3.4.5 Structural Framing

FS-36307

2.3.5 Interior Trim

Provide interior trim to match the colors listed below.

2.3.5.1 Steel Doors

Almond FS-16400

2.3.5.2 Steel Door Frames

Almond FS-16400

2.3.5.3 Steel Windows (mullion, muntin, sash, trim, and stool)

Almond FS-16400

2.3.5.4 Wood Doors

Rift cut red oak

2.3.5.5 Wood Stain

Clear

2.3.6 Interior Window Treatment

Provide window treatments to match the colors listed below.

2.3.6.1 Horizontal Blinds

974 Pearl

2.3.7 Interior Miscellaneous

Provide miscellaneous items to match the colors listed below.

2.3.7.1 Toilet Partitions and Urinal Screens

HDPE; Coordinate with tile color

2.3.7.2 Casework

Match wood door species

2.3.7.3 Plastic Laminate

Match wood door species

2.3.7.4 Solid Surfacing Material

White Jasmine

2.3.7.5 Corner Guards

Match wall color

2.3.7.6 Protective Wall Covering/Panel

Match wall color

2.3.7.7 Signage Message Color

Match contrasting accent for the colorway

2.3.7.8 Signage Background Color

Match contrasting accent for the colorway

2.3.7.9 Bulletin Board

Tacwall, Earthen with aluminum trim.

2.3.7.10 Wall Switch Handles and Standard Receptacle Bodies

Match substrate color

2.3.7.11 Electrical Device Cover Plates

Stainless steel No. 4 satin finish

2.3.7.12 Electrical Panels

Match substrate color

2.3.7.13 Shower Wall Kits, Trim and Shower Pan

Bone or equal
PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 29 00

GYPSUM BOARD

08/16, CHG 4: 02/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C475/C475M	(2017) Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board
ASTM C514	(2004; R 2020) Standard Specification for Nails for the Application of Gypsum Board
ASTM C840	(2020) Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board
ASTM C954	(2018) Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness
ASTM C1002	(2020) Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs
ASTM C1047	(2019) Standard Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base
ASTM C1396/C1396M	(2017) Standard Specification for Gypsum Board
ASTM C1629/C1629M	(2018a) Standard Classification for Abuse-Resistant Nondecorated Interior Gypsum Panel Products and Fiber-Reinforced Cement Panels
ASTM D226/D226M	(2017) Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
ASTM D1037	(2012) Evaluating Properties of Wood-Base Fiber and Particle Panel Materials
ASTM D2394	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Simulated Service Testing of Wood and Wood-Base

Finish Flooring

ASTM D3273	(2016) Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber
ASTM D5420	(2016) Standard Test Method for Impact Resistance of Flat, Rigid Plastic Specimen by Means of a Strike Impacted by a Falling Weight (Gardner Impact)
ASTM E84	(2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E695	(2003; R 2015; E 2015) Measuring Relative Resistance of Wall, Floor, and Roof Construction to Impact Loading

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers
--------------------	--

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE	(updated on-line) Approval Guide http://www.approvalguide.com/
--------------	---

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36	(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use
-------	-------------------------------------

GYPSUM ASSOCIATION (GA)

GA 214	(2010) Recommended Levels of Gypsum Board Finish
GA 216	(2010) Application and Finishing of Gypsum Panel Products
GA 253	(2012) Application of Gypsum Sheathing
GA 600	(2009) Fire Resistance Design Manual

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS	SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage
-----	--

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168	(2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications
------------------	--

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818	(2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
---------	---

For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

UL Fire Resistance

(2014) Fire Resistance Directory

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board

Accessories

Submit for each type of gypsum board and for cementitious backer units.

Gypsum Board

Recycled Content for Gypsum Board; S

Recycled Content for Paper Facing and Gypsum Cores; S

VOC Content of Joint Compound; S

SD-06 Test Reports

ASTM E90 Factory Test Report; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Asbestos Free Materials; G, AE

Certify that gypsum board types, gypsum backing board types, cementitious backer units, and joint treating materials do not contain asbestos.

Indoor Air Quality for Gypsum Board; S

Indoor Air Quality for Non-aerosol Adhesives; S

Indoor Air Quality for Aerosol Adhesives; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Safety Data Sheets

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Manufacturer Maintenance Instructions

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

Submit required indoor air quality certifications in one submittal package.

1.3.1.1 Ceiling and Wall Systems

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.3.1.2 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.4.1 Delivery

Deliver materials in the original packages, containers, or bundles with each bearing the brand name, applicable standard designation, and name of manufacturer, or supplier.

1.4.2 Storage

Keep materials dry by storing inside a sheltered building. Where necessary to store gypsum board and cementitious backer units outside, store off the ground, properly supported on a level platform, and protected from direct exposure to rain, snow, sunlight, and other extreme weather conditions. Provide adequate ventilation to prevent condensation. Store per manufacturer's recommendations for allowable temperature and humidity range. Do not store gypsum wallboard with materials which have high emissions of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) or other contaminants. Do not store panels near materials that may offgas or emit harmful fumes, such as kerosene heaters, fresh paint, or adhesives. Do not use materials that have visible moisture or biological growth.

1.4.3 Handling

Neatly stack gypsum board and cementitious backer units flat to prevent sagging or damage to the edges, ends, and surfaces.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

Furnish type of gypsum board work specialized by the installer with a minimum of 3 years of documented successful experience.

1.6 SCHEDULING

The gypsum wallboard must be taped, finished and primed before the installation of the highly-emitting materials. The gypsum wallboard must be installed after the installation and ventilation period of the highly-emitting materials.

Commence application only after the area scheduled for gypsum board work is completely weathertight. The heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning systems must be complete and in operation prior to application of the gypsum board. If the mechanical system cannot be activated before gypsum board is begun, the gypsum board work may proceed in accordance with an approved plan to maintain the environmental conditions specified below. Apply gypsum board prior to the installation of finish flooring and acoustic ceiling.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not expose the gypsum board to excessive sunlight prior to gypsum board application. Maintain a continuous uniform temperature of not less than 50 degrees F and not more than 80 degrees F for at least one week prior to the application of gypsum board work, while the gypsum board application is being done, and for at least one week after the gypsum board is set. Shield air supply and distribution devices to prevent any uneven flow of air across the plastered surfaces. Provide ventilation to exhaust moist air to the outside during gypsum board application, set, and until gypsum board jointing is dry. In glazed areas, keep windows open top and bottom or side to side 3 to 4 inches. Reduce openings in cold weather to prevent freezing of joint compound when applied. For enclosed areas lacking natural ventilation, provide temporary mechanical means for ventilation. In unglazed areas subjected to hot, dry winds or temperature differentials from day to night of 20 degrees F or more, screen openings with cheesecloth or similar materials. Avoid rapid drying. During periods of low indoor humidity, provide minimum air circulation following gypsum boarding and until gypsum board jointing complete and is dry.

1.8 FIRE RESISTIVE CONSTRUCTION

Comply with specified fire-rated assemblies for design numbers indicated per UL Fire Resistance or FM APP GUIDE.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Conform to specifications, standards and requirements specified. Provide gypsum board types, gypsum backing board types, cementitious backing units, and joint treating materials manufactured from asbestos free materials only. Submit Safety Data Sheets and manufacturer maintenance instructions for gypsum materials including adhesives.

2.1.1 Gypsum Board

ASTM C1396/C1396M. Gypsum board must contain a minimum of 5 percent post-consumer recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for gypsum board. Paper facings must contain a minimum of 100 percent recycled paper content. Gypsum cores must contain a minimum of 95 percent post-industrial recycled gypsum content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for paper facing and

gypsum cores. Provide gypsum wall board and panels meeting the emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type). Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for gypsum board.

2.1.1.1 Regular

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, tapered edges.

2.1.1.2 Type X (Special Fire-Resistant)

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, tapered edges.

2.1.1.3 Mold Resistant / Anti-Microbial Gypsum

ASTM D3273. 48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, tapered edges.

2.1.2 Gypsum Backing Board

ASTM C1396/C1396M, gypsum backing board must be used as a base in a multilayer system.

2.1.2.1 Regular

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, square edges.

2.1.2.2 Type X (Special Fire-Resistant)

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, square edges.

2.1.3 Regular Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board

ASTM C1396/C1396M

2.1.3.1 Regular

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, tapered edges.

2.1.3.2 Type X (Special Fire-Resistant)

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, tapered edges.

2.1.4 Abuse Resistant Gypsum Board

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, tapered edges.
Reinforced gypsum panel with imbedded fiber mesh or lexan backing tested in accordance with the following tests. Hard body impact test must attain a Level 2 performance in accordance with ASTM C1629/C1629M. Provide fasteners that meet manufacturer requirements and specifications stated within this section. Abuse resistant gypsum board, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, have a flame spread rating of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less.

2.1.4.1 Soft Body Impact Test

ASTM E695 or ASTM D2394 for impact penetration and deformation. ASTM E695 using a 60 lb leather bag filled with steel pellets, resisting no less than 300 ft. lb. cumulative impact energy before failure or ASTM D2394 using 5.5 inch hemispherical projectile resisting no less than 264 ft. lb.

before failure. Provide test specimen stud spacing a minimum 16 inch on center.

2.1.4.2 Hard Body Impact Test

Comply with hard body impact test in accordance with ASTM C1629/C1629M Classification Level 2.

2.1.4.3 Surface Abrasion Test

Comply with test surface abrasion test in accordance with ASTM C1629/C1629M.

2.1.4.4 Indentation Test

ASTM D5420 or ASTM D1037 for indentation resistance. ASTM D5420 using a 32 oz weight with a 5/8 inch hemispherical impacting head dropped once 3 feet creating not more than 0.137 inch indentation or ASTM D1037 using no less than 470 lb weight applied to the 0.438 inch diameter ball to create not more than a 0.0197 inch indentation depth.

2.1.5 Joint Treatment Materials

ASTM C475/C475M. Product must be low emitting VOC types with VOC limits not exceeding 50 g/L. Provide data identifying VOC content of joint compound. Use all purpose joint and texturing compound containing inert fillers and natural binders, including lime compound. Pre-mixed compounds must be free of antifreeze, vinyl adhesives, preservatives, biocides and other slow releasing compounds.

2.1.5.1 Embedding Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured for use in embedding tape at gypsum board joints and compatible with tape, substrate and fasteners.

2.1.5.2 Finishing or Topping Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured for use as a finishing compound.

2.1.5.3 All-Purpose Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured to serve as both a taping and a finishing compound and compatible with tape, substrate and fasteners.

2.1.5.4 Setting or Hardening Type Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured for use with fiber glass mesh tape.

2.1.5.5 Joint Tape

Use cross-laminated, tapered edge, reinforced paper, or fiber glass mesh tape recommended by the manufacturer.

2.1.6 Fasteners

2.1.6.1 Nails

ASTM C514.

2.1.6.2 Screws

ASTM C1002, Type "G", Type "S" or Type "W" steel drill screws for fastening gypsum board to gypsum board, wood framing members and steel framing members less than 0.033 inch thick. ASTM C954 steel drill screws for fastening gypsum board to steel framing members 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick. Provide cementitious backer unit screws with a polymer coating.

2.1.6.3 Staples

No. 16 USS gage flattened galvanized wire staples with 7/16 inch wide crown outside measurement and divergent point for base ply of two-ply gypsum board application. Use as follows:

<u>Length of Legs</u>	<u>Thickness of Gypsum Board</u>
1-1/8 inches	1/2 inch
1-1/4 inches	5/8 inch

2.1.7 Adhesives

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of GS-36. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for non-aerosol adhesives applied on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system). Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system).

2.1.7.1 Adhesive for Fastening Gypsum Board to Metal Framing

Not permitted.

2.1.7.2 Adhesive for Fastening Gypsum Board to Wood Framing

Not permitted.

2.1.7.3 Adhesive for Laminating

Not permitted.

2.1.8 Accessories

ASTM C1047. Fabricate from corrosion protected steel or plastic designed for intended use. Accessories manufactured with paper flanges are not acceptable. Flanges must be free of dirt, grease, and other materials that may adversely affect bond of joint treatment. Provide prefinished or job decorated materials.

2.1.9 Asphalt Impregnated Building Felt

Provide a 15 lb asphalt moisture barrier over glass mat covered or reinforced gypsum sheathing. Conforming to ASTM D226/D226M Type 1 (No. 15) for asphalt impregnated building felt.

2.1.10 Water

Provide clean, fresh, and potable water.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

3.1.1 Framing and Furring

Verify that framing and furring are securely attached and of sizes and spacing to provide a suitable substrate to receive gypsum board and cementitious backer units. Verify that all blocking, headers and supports are in place to support plumbing fixtures and to receive soap dishes, grab bars, towel racks, and similar items. Do not proceed with work until framing and furring are acceptable for application of gypsum board and cementitious backer units.

3.1.2 Gypsum Board and Framing

Verify that surfaces of gypsum board and framing to be bonded with an adhesive are free of dust, dirt, grease, and any other foreign matter. Do not proceed with work until surfaces are acceptable for application of gypsum board with adhesive.

3.1.3 Masonry and Concrete Walls

Verify that surfaces of masonry and concrete walls to receive gypsum board applied with adhesive are dry, free of dust, oil, form release agents, protrusions and voids, and any other foreign matter. Do not proceed with work until surfaces are acceptable for application of gypsum board with adhesive.

3.1.4 Building Construction Materials

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.2 APPLICATION OF GYPSUM BOARD

Apply gypsum board to framing and furring members in accordance with ASTM C840 or GA 216 and the requirements specified. Apply gypsum board with separate panels in moderate contact; do not force in place. Stagger end joints of adjoining panels. Neatly fit abutting end and edge joints. Use gypsum board of maximum practical length; select panel sizes to minimize waste. Cut out gypsum board to make neat, close, and tight joints around openings. In vertical application of gypsum board, provide panels in lengths required to reach full height of vertical surfaces in one continuous piece. Lay out panels to minimize waste; reuse cutoffs whenever feasible. Surfaces of gypsum board and substrate members may be bonded together with an adhesive, except where prohibited by fire rating(s). Treat edges of cutouts for plumbing pipes, screwheads, and joints with water-resistant compound as recommended by the gypsum board manufacturer.

Minimize framing by floating corners with single studs and drywall clips. Install 5/8 inch gypsum or 1/2 inch ceiling board over framing at 24 inch on center. Provide type of gypsum board for use in each system specified herein as indicated.

3.2.1 Application of Gypsum Board to Steel Framing and Furring

Apply in accordance with ASTM C840, System VIII or GA 216.

3.2.2 Gypsum Board for Wall Tile or Tile Base Applied with Adhesive

In dry areas (areas other than tubs, shower enclosures, saunas, steam rooms, gang shower rooms), apply glass mat water-resistant gypsum tile backing board in accordance with ASTM C840, System X or GA 216.

3.2.3 Exterior Application

Apply exterior gypsum board (such as at soffits) in accordance with ASTM C840, System XI or GA 216.

3.2.4 Glass Mat Covered or Fiber Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing

Apply glass mat covered or fiber reinforced gypsum sheathing in accordance to gypsum association publications GA 253. Follow gypsum sheathing manufacturer's requirements of design details for joints and fasteners and be properly installed to protect the substrate from moisture intrusion. Do not leave exposed surfaces of the glass mat covered or fiber reinforced gypsum sheathing beyond the manufacturer's recommendation without a weather barrier cladding. Provide continuous asphalt impregnated building felt over sheathing surface in shingle fashion with edges and ends lapped a minimum of 6 inch. Properly flash the openings. Seal all joints, seams, and penetrations with a compatible silicone sealant.

3.2.5 Floating Interior Angles

Minimize framing by floating corners with single studs and drywall clips. Locate the attachment fasteners adjacent to ceiling and wall intersections in accordance with ASTM C840, System XII or GA 216, for single-ply and two-ply applications of gypsum board to wood framing.

3.2.6 Control Joints

Install expansion and contraction joints in ceilings and walls in accordance with ASTM C840, System XIII or GA 216. Fill control joints between studs in fire-rated construction with firesafing insulation to match the fire-rating of construction.

3.3 FINISHING OF GYPSUM BOARD

Tape and finish gypsum board in accordance with ASTM C840, GA 214 and GA 216. Finish plenum areas above ceilings to Level 1 in accordance with GA 214. Finish water resistant gypsum backing board, ASTM C1396/C1396M, to receive ceramic tile to Level 2 in accordance with GA 214. Finish walls and ceilings to receive a heavy-grade wall covering or heavy textured finish before painting to Level 3 in accordance with GA 214. Finish walls and ceilings without critical lighting to receive flat paints, light textures, or wall coverings to Level 4 in accordance with GA 214. Unless otherwise specified, finish all gypsum board walls, partitions and ceilings to Level 5 in accordance with GA 214. Provide

joint, fastener depression, and corner treatment. Tool joints as smoothly as possible to minimize sanding and dust. Do not use self-adhering fiber glass mesh tape with conventional drying type joint compounds; use setting or hardening type compounds only. Provide treatment for water-resistant gypsum board as recommended by the gypsum board manufacturer. Protect workers, building occupants, and HVAC systems from gypsum dust.

3.3.1 Uniform Surface

Wherever gypsum board is to receive eggshell, semigloss or gloss paint finish, or where severe, up or down lighting conditions occur, finish gypsum wall surface in accordance to GA 214 Level 5. In accordance with GA 214 Level 5, apply a thin skim coat of joint compound to the entire gypsum board surface, after the two-coat joint and fastener treatment is complete and dry.

3.4 SEALING

Seal openings around pipes, fixtures, and other items projecting through gypsum board and cementitious backer units as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS. Apply material with exposed surface flush with gypsum board or cementitious backer units.

3.4.1 Sealing for Glass Mat or Reinforced Gypsum Board Sheathing

Apply silicone sealant in a 3/8 inch bead to all joints and trowel flat. Apply enough of the same sealant to all fasteners penetrating through the glass mat gypsum board surface to completely cover the penetration when troweled flat. Do not place construction and materials behind sheathing until a visual inspection of sealed joints during daylight hours has been completed by Contracting Officer.

3.5 FIRE-RESISTANT ASSEMBLIES

Wherever fire-rated construction is indicated, provide materials and application methods, including types and spacing of fasteners, wall and ceiling framing in accordance with the specifications contained in UL Fire Resistance for the Design Number(s) indicated, or GA 600 for the File Number(s) indicated. Joints of fire-rated gypsum board enclosures must be closed and sealed in accordance with UL test requirements or GA requirements. Seal penetrations through rated partitions and ceilings tight in accordance with tested systems.

3.6 SOUND RATED ASSEMBLIES

When sound rated assemblies are required, provide materials and application methods, including panels, insulation, types and spacing of fasteners, wall and ceiling framing in accordance with the contract document and the description of the assembly in the ASTM E90 Factory Test Report. Seal partitions continuously with acoustical foam or sealant (both sides) and finished to match wall wherever it abuts another element such as the floor, ceiling, wall, column, mullion, or another system or assembly.

3.7 PATCHING

Patch surface defects in gypsum board to a smooth, uniform appearance, ready to receive finishes.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 09 30 10

CERAMIC, QUARRY, AND GLASS TILING
08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI A108/A118/A136.1 (2019) American National Standard
Specifications for the Installation of
Ceramic Tile

ANSI A137.1 (2019) American National Standards
Specifications for Ceramic Tile

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C33/C33M (2018) Standard Specification for Concrete
Aggregates

ASTM C144 (2018) Standard Specification for
Aggregate for Masonry Mortar

ASTM C150/C150M (2021) Standard Specification for Portland
Cement

ASTM C206 (2014) Standard Specification for
Finishing Hydrated Lime

ASTM C207 (2018) Standard Specification for Hydrated
Lime for Masonry Purposes

ASTM C648 (2020) Standard Test Method for Breaking
Strength of Ceramic Tile

ASTM C1026 (2013; R 2018) Standard Test Method for
Measuring the Resistance of Ceramic and
Glass Tile to Freeze-Thaw Cycling

ASTM C1027 (2009; R 2017) Standard Test Method for
Determining Visible Abrasion Resistance of
Glazed Ceramic Tile

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350 (2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for
the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile
Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor
Sources using Environmental Chambers

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36 (2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

TILE COUNCIL OF NORTH AMERICA (TCNA)

TCNA Hdbk (2017) Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and
Stone Tile Installation

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and
Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act
(ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Porcelain Tile; G, AE

Recycled Content for Porcelain Tile; S

Mosaic Tile; G, AE

Recycled Content for Mosaic Tile; S

Glazed Ceramic Wall Tile; G, AE

Recycled Content for Glazed Ceramic Wall Tile; S

Transition Strips; G, AE

Metal Strips; G

Setting-Bed; G

Mortar, Grout, and Adhesive; G

Cementitious Backer Units; G

Waterproof Membrane; G

Crack Isolation Membrane; G

SD-04 Samples

Tile; G, AE

Transition Strips; G, AE

Metal Strips; G

Grout; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality for Adhesives; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Approved Cleaning Instructions

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Porcelain Tile, Data Package 1; G

Mosaic Tile, Data Package 1; G

Glazed Ceramic Wall Tile, Data Package 1; G

Transition Strips, Data Package 1; G

Metal Strips, Data Package 1; G

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Provide installers having a minimum of two years of experience with a company specializing in performing the type of work described. Each type and color of tile to be provided from a single source. Each type and

color of mortar, adhesive, and grout to be provided from the same source.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Ship tiles in sealed packages and clearly marked with the grade, type of tile, producer identification, and country of origin. Deliver materials to the project site in manufacturer's original unopened containers with seals unbroken and labels and hallmarks intact. Protect materials from weather, and store them under cover in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Store and handle tiles per manufacturer's instructions for gauged porcelain tile and gauged porcelain tile panels/slabs.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not perform ceramic tile work unless the substrate and ambient temperature is at least 50 degrees F and rising. Maintain temperature above 50 degrees F while the work is being performed and for at least 7 days after completion of the work. When temporary heaters are used, ventilate the area to the outside to avoid carbon dioxide damage to new tilework.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's warranty to repair or replace defective tiling materials and workmanship, including tile, mortar and grout products and installation as a system, for a period of one year from date of final acceptance of the work.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

Supply an extra 2 percent of each type tile used in clean and marked cartons.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TILE

Provide tiles that comply with ANSI A137.1 and are standard grade tiles. Provide a minimum breaking strength of 125 lbs. for wall tile and 250 lbs. for floor tile in accordance with ASTM C648. Provide exterior building tile for cold climate projects that is approved by the manufacturer for exterior use when tested in accordance with ASTM C1026. Provide floor tiles with a minimum wet dynamic coefficient of friction (DCOF) value of 0.42 when tested in accordance with ANSI A137.1 requirements. Provide glazed floor tile with a Class IV-Commercial classification as rated by the manufacturer when tested in accordance with ASTM C1027 for visible abrasion resistance as related to foot traffic. For materials like tile, accessories, and transition strips submit samples of sufficient size to show color range, pattern, type and joints.

Submit manufacturers' descriptive product data for each type of ceramic, q tiling indicated. Include manufacturers' literature, finishes, profiles and thicknesses of materials.

Submit manufacturers' operations and maintenance data for each type of ceramic tiling indicated in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

2.1.1 Porcelain Tile

Provide unglazed through body (surface color and pattern go all the way through the tile body), porcelain tile and cove base and trim pieces. Provide tile with a V2 aesthetic classification. Blend tiles in factory and in a packages to have same color range and continuous blend for installation. Provide nominal tile size(s) of 12 by 24 inch and 5/16 inch thick.

Provide porcelain tiling materials that contain a minimum of 10 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for porcelain tile.

2.1.2 Mosaic Tile

Furnish unglazed, mosaic tile composed of porcelain. Provide tile with a V1 aesthetic classification. Blend tiles in factory and in a packages to have same color range and continuous blend for installation. Provide nominal tile size(s) of 2 by 2 inch.

Provide mosaic tiling materials that contain a minimum of 3 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for mosaic tile.

2.1.3 Glazed Ceramic Wall Tile

Provide glazed ceramic wall tile that has cushioned edges and trim with lead-free matte finish. Provide nominal tile size(s) of CWT-1: 4 by 16 inch CWT-2: 4 by 8 inch. inch.

Provide glazed ceramic wall tile materials that contain a minimum of 3 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for glazed ceramic wall tile.

2.2 SETTING-BED

Submit manufacturer's catalog data. Compose the setting-bed of the following materials:

2.2.1 Aggregate for Concrete Fill

Conform to ASTM C33/C33M for aggregate fill. Do not exceed one-half the thickness of concrete fill for maximum size of coarse aggregate.

2.2.2 Portland Cement

Conform to ASTM C150/C150M for cement, Type I, white for wall mortar and gray for other uses.

2.2.3 Sand

Conform to ASTM C144 for sand.

2.2.4 Hydrated Lime

Conform to ASTM C206 for hydrated lime, Type S or ASTM C207, Type S.

2.3 WATER

Provide potable water.

2.4 MORTAR, GROUT, AND ADHESIVE

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of GS-36. For products located on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system, provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for adhesives. Provide bond coat, mortar, and grout supplied from the same manufacturer.

2.4.1 Latex-Portland Cement Mortar

TCNA Hdbk.

2.4.2 Ceramic Tile Grout

TCNA Hdbk; petroleum-free and plastic-free sand-portland cement grout .

2.4.3 Epoxy Resin Grout

TCNA Hdbk. Water cleanable epoxy conforming to ANSI A108/A118/A136.1; provide manufacturer proportioned and packaged kit having hardener, resin and colored filler and horizontal and vertical grade products as applicable. Provide antimicrobial additive designed for prevention of mold and mildew.

2.4.4 Urethane Grout

TCNA Hdbk; premixed, urethane, water-based grout with color consistency and antimicrobial protection; no color fading, streaking or shading, chemical and stain resistant; and UV stable.

2.4.5 Sealants

Comply with applicable regulations regarding toxic and hazardous materials and as specified. Provide sealant that does not change the color or alter the appearance of the grout. Refer to Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

2.5 SUBSTRATES

Refer to Section 09 29 00 GYPSUM BOARD for cementitious backer units.

2.5.1 Cementitious Backer Units

Provide cementitious backer unit, for use as tile substrate as indicated, in accordance with TCNA Hdbk. Furnish 5/8 inch thick cementitious backer units.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS TRIMS

2.6.1 Transition Strips

Provide clear anodized aluminum transitions between tile and carpet or resilient flooring. Provide types as recommended by flooring manufacturer for both edges and transitions of flooring materials specified. Provide transition strips that comply with 36 CFR 119 requirements.

2.6.2 Metal Strips

Provide Cove, Angle, and L-shape, trim shapes, height to match tile and setting thickness, designed specifically for flooring, and wall applications. Provide extruded square, clear anodized aluminum edging at tile surfaces with exposed outside corners. Provide profiles appropriate for finished floor and wall materials as indicated.

2.7 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

2.7.1 General

Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A108/A118/A136.1 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.

2.7.2 Chlorinated-Polyethylene Shower Waterproof Membrane

Nonplasticized, chlorinated polyethylene faced on both sides with nonwoven polyester fabric; 0.040 inch nominal thickness.

2.8 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE

2.8.1 General

Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A108/A118/A136.1 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.

2.9 COLOR, TEXTURE, AND PATTERN

Provide color, pattern and texture as specified in drawings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATORY WORK AND WORKMANSHIP

Inspect surface to receive tile in conformance to the requirements of TCNA Hdbk for surface conditions for the type setting bed specified and for workmanship. Provide variations of tiled surfaces that fall within maximum values shown below:

TYPE	WALLS	FLOORS

TYPE	WALLS	FLOORS
Latex-Portland Cement Mortar	1/8 inch in 8 ft.	1/8 inch in 10 ft.
Epoxy	1/8 inch in 8 ft.	1/8 inch in 10 ft.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Do not start tile work until roughing in for mechanical and electrical work has been completed and tested, and built-in items requiring membrane waterproofing have been installed and tested. Close space, in which tile is being set, to traffic and other work. Keep closed until tile is firmly set. Do not start floor tile installation in spaces requiring wall tile until after wall tile has been installed. Apply tile in colors and patterns indicated in the area shown on the drawings. Install tile with the respective surfaces in true even planes to the elevations and grades shown. Provide special shapes as required for sills, jambs, recesses, offsets, external corners, and other conditions to provide a complete and neatly finished installation. Solidly back tile bases and coves with mortar. Do not walk or work on newly tiled floors without using kneeling boards or equivalent protection of the tiled surface. Keep traffic off horizontal portland cement mortar installations for at least 72 hours. Keep all traffic off epoxy installed floors for at least 40 hours after grouting, and heavy traffic off for at least 7 days, unless otherwise specifically authorized by manufacturer. Dimension and draw detail drawings at a minimum scale of 1/4 inch = 1 foot. Include drawings of pattern at inside corners, outside corners, termination points and location of all equipment items such as thermostats, switch plates, mirrors and toilet accessories mounted on surface. Submit drawings showing ceramic tile pattern elevations and floor plans. Submit manufacturer's preprinted installation instructions.

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SUBSTRATES

3.3.1 Cementitious Backer Units and Glass-Mat Water-Resistant Backing Board

Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WALL TILE

Install wall tile in accordance with the TCNA Hdbk, method W244C-17 and with grout joints of 1/16 inch. Install thinner wall tile flush with thicker wall tile applied on same wall and provide installation materials as recommended by the tile and setting materials manufacturer's to achieve flush installation.

3.4.1 Ceramic Tile Grout

Prepare and install ceramic tile grout in accordance with TCNA Hdbk. Provide and apply manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.4.2 Epoxy Resin Grout

Prepare and install epoxy resin grout in accordance with TCNA Hdbk method.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLOOR TILE

Install floor tile in accordance with TCNA Hdbk method F115 and with grout joints of 3/16 inch.

3.5.1 Workable or Cured Mortar Bed

Install floor tile over a workable mortar bed or a cured mortar bed at the option of the Contractor. Conform to TCNA Hdbk for workable mortar bed materials and installation. Conform to TCNA Hdbk for cured mortar bed materials and installation. Provide minimum 1/4 inch to maximum 3/8 inch joints in uniformed width.

3.5.2 Resinous Grout

When resinous grout is indicated, grout quarry tile with either furan grout conforming to ANSI A108/A118/A136.1 or epoxy resin grout conforming to ANSI A108/A118/A136.1. Rake and clean joints to the full depth of the tile and neutralize when recommended by the resin manufacturer. Install epoxy resin grout in conformance with TCNA Hdbk. Install resin grout in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Provide a coating of wax applied from the manufacturer on all tile installed with furan resin. Follow manufacturer's printed installation instructions of installed resin grout for proportioning, mixing, installing, and curing. Maintain the recommended temperature in the area and on the surface to be grouted. Protect finished grout of grout stain.

3.5.3 Ceramic Tile Grout

Prepare and install ceramic tile grout in accordance with TCNA Hdbk. Provide and apply manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.5.4 Waterproof and Crack Isolation Membranes

Install as indicated in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5.5 Concrete Fill

Provide a 3500 psi concrete fill mix to dry as consistency as practicable. Spread, tamp, and screed concrete fill to a true plane, and pitch to drains or levels as shown. Thoroughly damp concrete fill before applying setting-bed material. Reinforce concrete fill with one layer of reinforcement, with the uncut edges lapped the width of one mesh and the cut ends and edges lapped a minimum 2 inch. Tie laps together with 18 gauge wire every 10 inch along the finished edges and every 6 inch along the cut ends and edges. Provide reinforcement with support and secure in the centers of concrete fills. Provide a continuous mesh; except where expansion joints occur, cut mesh and discontinue across such joints. Provide reinforced concrete fill under the setting-bed where the distance between the under-floor surface and the finished tiles floor surface is a minimum of 2 inches, and of the same thickness that the mortar setting-bed over the concrete fill with the thickness required in the specified TCNA Hdbk.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS TRIMS

3.6.1 Transition Strips

Install transition strips where indicated, in a manner similar to that of the ceramic tile floor and as recommended by the manufacturer. Provide thresholds full width of the opening. Install head joints at ends not exceeding 1/4 inch in width and grouted full.

3.6.2 Metal Trims

Install trim where indicated. Embed anchoring leg in setting mortar in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. During grouting of tile joints, immediately wipe grout from finish surface.

3.7 EXPANSION JOINTS

Form and seal joints as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.7.1 Walls

Provide expansion joints at control joints in backing material. Wherever backing material changes, install an expansion joint to separate the different materials.

3.7.2 Floors

Provide expansion joints over construction joints, control joints, and expansion joints in concrete slabs in accordance with TCNA Hdbk EJ171 type to suit conditions. Provide expansion joints where tile abuts restraining surfaces such as perimeter walls, curbs and columns and at intervals of 20 to 25 feet each way in large interior floor areas. Extend expansion joints through setting-beds and fill.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

Upon completion, thoroughly clean tile surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's approved cleaning instructions. Do not use acid for cleaning glazed tile. Clean floor tile with resinous grout or with factory mixed grout in accordance with printed instructions of the grout manufacturer. After the grout has set, provide a protective coat of a noncorrosive soap or other approved method of protection for tile wall surfaces. Cover tiled floor areas with building paper before foot traffic is permitted over the finished tile floors. Provide board walkways on tiled floors that are to be continuously used as passageways by workmen. Replace damaged or defective tiles.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 09 51 00

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A489	(2018; E 2018) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Eyebolts
ASTM A641/A641M	(2019) Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire
ASTM A653/A653M	(2020) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A1008/A1008M	(2021a) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable
ASTM B633	(2019) Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel
ASTM C635/C635M	(2017) Standard Specification for Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panel Ceilings
ASTM C636/C636M	(2013) Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels
ASTM C834	(2017) Standard Specification for Latex Sealants
ASTM E795	(2016) Standard Practices for Mounting Test Specimens During Sound Absorption Tests
ASTM E1264	(2019) Acoustical Ceiling Products

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS	SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage
-----	--

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Approved Detail Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Acoustical Units; G, AE

Recycled Content for Type IV Ceiling Tiles; S

SD-04 Samples

Acoustical Units; G, AE

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

1.3.1.1 Ceiling Tiles

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.3.1.2 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited in this Section.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE. AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the site in the manufacturer's original unopened containers with brand name and type clearly marked. Carefully handle and store materials in dry, watertight enclosures. Immediately before installation, store acoustical units for not less than 24 hours at the same temperature and relative humidity as the space where they will be

installed in order to assure proper temperature and moisture acclimation.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Maintain a uniform temperature of not less than 60 degrees F nor more than 85 degrees F and a relative humidity of not more than 70 percent for 24 hours before, during, and 24 hours after installation of acoustical units.

1.6 SCHEDULING

Complete and dry interior finish work such as plastering, concrete and terrazzo work before ceiling installation. Complete mechanical, electrical, and other work above the ceiling line; install and start operating heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems in order to maintain temperature and humidity requirements.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's warranty to repair or replace defective materials and workmanship including but not limited to, sagging and warping of panels and rusting and of grid systems, for a period of ten years from date of final acceptance of the work.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

Furnish spare tiles, from the same lot as those installed, of each color at the rate of 5 tiles for each 1000 tiles installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide sound controlling units mechanically mounted on a ceiling suspension system for acoustical treatment. Provide the unit size, texture, finish, and color as specified. Coordinate the entire ceiling system with other details, like the location of access panels and ceiling penetrations, for instance, shown on the drawings. The Contractor is responsible for the final assembly and performance of the specified work. Provide the location and extent of acoustical treatment as shown on the approved detail drawings. Submit drawings showing suspension system, method of anchoring and fastening, details, and reflected ceiling plan. Coordinate with paragraph RECLAMATION PROCEDURES for reclamation of mineral fiber acoustical ceiling panels to be removed from the job site.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL UNITS

Submit samples of each type of acoustical unit and each type of suspension grid tee section showing texture, finish, and color. Conform acoustical units to ASTM E1264, Class A, and the following requirements:

2.2.1 Units for Exposed-Grid System ACT-1

2.2.1.1 Type

IV (non-asbestos mineral fiber with membrane-faced overlay). Provide Type IV Acoustical Ceiling Tiles containing a minimum of 60 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for Type IV ceiling tiles.

2.2.1.2 Flame Spread

Class A, 25 or less

2.2.1.3 Pattern

E

2.2.1.4 Minimum NRC

0.75 when tested on mounting Type E-400 of ASTM E795.

2.2.1.5 Minimum Light Reflectance Coefficient

0.88

2.2.1.6 Nominal Size

24 by 24 inch

2.2.1.7 Edge Detail

Tegular

2.2.1.8 Finish

Factory-applied standard finish - White. See paragraph COLORS AND STANDARDS.

2.2.1.9 Minimum CAC

35

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEM

Provide narrow width flange suspension system conforming to ASTM C635/C635M for intermediate-duty systems. Provide surfaces exposed to view of aluminum with a factory-applied white baked-enamel finish. Provide wall molding having a flange of not less than 15/16 inch. Provide standard corners. Provide a suspension system with a maximum deflection of 1/360 of the span length capable of supporting the finished ceiling, light fixtures, air diffusers, and accessories, as shown.

2.4 HANGERS

Provide hangers and attachment capable of supporting a minimum 300 pound ultimate vertical load without failure of supporting material or attachment.

2.4.1 Wires

Conform wires to ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1, 0.08 inch (12 gauge) in diameter.

2.4.2 Straps

Provide straps of 1 by 3/16 inch galvanized steel conforming to ASTM A653/A653M, with a light commercial zinc coating or ASTM A1008/A1008M with an electrodeposited zinc coating conforming to ASTM B633, Type RS.

2.4.3 Rods

Provide 3/16 inch diameter threaded steel rods, zinc or cadmium coated.

2.4.4 Eyebolts

Provide eyebolts of weldless, forged-carbon-steel, with a straight-shank in accordance with ASTM A489. Provide minimum 1/4 inch, zinc coated eyebolts.

2.4.5 Masonry Anchorage Devices

Comply with ASTM C636/C636M for anchorage devices for eyebolts.

2.5 ACCESS PANELS

Provide access panels that match adjacent acoustical units, designed and equipped with suitable framing and fastenings for removal and replacement without damage. Size panel to be not less than 12 by 12 inch or more than 12 by 24 inch.

- a. Attach an identification plate of 0.032 inch thick aluminum, 3/4 inch in diameter, stamped with the letters "AP" and finished the same as the unit, near one corner on the face of each access panel.
- b. Identify ceiling access panel by a number utilizing white identification plates or plastic buttons with contrasting numerals. Provide plates or buttons of minimum 1 inch diameter and securely attached to one corner of each access unit. Provide a typewritten card framed under glass listing the code identification numbers and corresponding system descriptions listed above. Mount the framed card where directed and furnish a duplicate card to the Contracting Officer. Code identification system is as follows:

- (1) Fire detection/alarm system
- (2) Air conditioning controls
- (3) Plumbing system
- (4) Heating and steam systems
- (5) Air conditioning duct system
- (6) Sprinkler system
- (7) Intercommunication system

2.6 ADHESIVE

Use adhesive as recommended by tile manufacturer.

2.7 FINISHES

Use manufacturer's standard textures, patterns and finishes as specified for acoustical units and suspension system members. Treat ceiling suspension system components to inhibit corrosion.

2.8 COLORS AND PATTERNS

Use colors and patterns for acoustical units and suspension system components as indicated; colors listed are not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers.

2.9 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

Conform acoustical sealant to ASTM C834, nonstaining.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

Examine surfaces to receive directly attached acoustical units for unevenness, irregularities, and dampness that would affect quality and execution of the work. Rid areas, where acoustical units will be cemented, of oils, form residue, or other materials that reduce bonding capabilities of the adhesive. Complete and dry interior finish work such as plastering, concrete, and terrazzo work before installation. Complete and approve mechanical, electrical, and other work above the ceiling line prior to the start of acoustical ceiling installation. Provide acoustical work complete with necessary fastenings, clips, and other accessories required for a complete installation. Do not expose mechanical fastenings in the finished work. Lay out hangers for each individual room or space. Provide hangers to support framing around beams, ducts, columns, grilles, and other penetrations through ceilings. Keep main runners and carrying channels clear of abutting walls and partitions. Provide at least two main runners for each ceiling span. Wherever required to bypass an object with the hanger wires, install a subsuspension system so that all hanger wires will be plumb.

3.1.1 Suspension System

Install suspension system in accordance with ASTM C636/C636M and as specified herein. Do not suspend hanger wires or other loads from underside of steel decking.

3.1.1.1 Plumb Hangers

Install hangers plumb and not pressing against insulation covering ducts and pipes. Where lighting fixtures are supported from the suspended ceiling system, provide hangers at a minimum of four hangers per fixture and located not more than 6 inch from each corner of each fixture.

3.1.1.2 Splayed Hangers

Splay (slope or slant) hangers around obstructions, offsetting the resulting horizontal force by bracing, countersplaying, or other acceptable means.

3.1.2 Wall Molding

Provide wall molding where ceilings abut vertical surfaces. Miter corners where wall moldings intersect or install corner caps. Secure wall molding not more than 3 inch from ends of each length and not more than 16 inch on

centers between end fastenings. Provide wall molding springs at each acoustical unit in semi-exposed or concealed systems.

3.1.3 Acoustical Units

Install acoustical units in accordance with the approved installation instructions of the manufacturer. Ensure that edges of acoustical units are in close contact with metal supports, with each other, and in true alignment. Arrange acoustical units so that units less than one-half width are minimized. Hold units in exposed-grid system in place with manufacturer's standard hold-down clips, if units weigh less than 1 psf or if required for fire resistance rating.

3.1.4 Acoustical Sealant

Seal all joints around pipes, ducts or electrical outlets penetrating the ceiling. Apply a continuous ribbon of acoustical sealant on vertical web of wall or edge moldings.

3.1.5 Adhesive Application

Wipe back of tile to remove accumulated dust. Daub acoustical units on back side with four equal daubs of adhesive. Apply daubs near corners of tiles. Ensure that contact area of each daub is at least 2 inch diameter in final position. Press units into place, aligning joints and abutting units tight and uniform without differences in joint widths.

3.2 CEILING ACCESS PANELS

Locate ceiling access panels directly under the items which require access.

3.3 CLEANING

Following installation, clean dirty or discolored surfaces of acoustical units and leave them free from defects. Remove units that are damaged or improperly installed and provide new units as directed.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 62 38

STATIC-CONTROL FLOORING

08/17, CHG 1: 08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E648	(2019a) Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source
ASTM F150	(2006; R 2013) Standard Test Method for Electrical Resistance of Conductive and Static Dissipative Resilient Flooring
ASTM F1700	(2020) Standard Specification for Solid Vinyl Floor Tile
ASTM F1861	(2021) Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base
ASTM F1869	(2016a) Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride
ASTM F2170	(2019a) Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers
--------------------	--

ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE ASSOCIATION (ESD)

ESD S6.1	(2019) Standard for the Protection of Electrostatic Discharge Susceptible Items - Grounding
----------	---

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36	(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use
-------	-------------------------------------

RESILIENT FLOOR COVERING INSTITUTE (RFCI)

FLOORSCORE	FLOORSCORE IAQ Certification
------------	------------------------------

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SCHEDULING

Schedule static-control flooring work after any other work which would damage the finished surface of the flooring.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Static-Control Resilient Flooring; G

Recycled content for Static-Dissipative Vinyl Tile; S

Accessories; G, AE

Adhesives; G, AE

Warranty

SD-04 Samples

Static-Control Resilient Flooring; G, AE

Moldings; G, AE

Accessories; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Fire Resistance

Moisture, Alkalinity and Bond

Testing

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality for Static-Dissipative Vinyl Tile; S

Indoor Air Quality for Adhesives; S

Qualifications of Applicator

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Static-Control Resilient Flooring; G

Accessories; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Static-Control Resilient Flooring; G

Accessories; G

1.3.1 Samples

1.3.1.1 Static-Control Resilient Flooring

Submit three samples of each indicated color and type of flooring, base, moldings, and accessories sized a minimum 2-1/2 by 4 inch.

1.3.1.2 Moldings

Submit three pieces of each type at least 12 inches long.

1.3.1.3 Operations and Maintenance Data

- a. Submit Data Package 1 in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.
- b. Submit three copies of manufacturer's maintenance instructions for each type of flooring material describing recommended type of cleaning equipment and materials, spotting and cleaning methods, and cleaning cycles.

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

1.4.1.1 Floor Covering Materials

Provide Static-Dissipative Vinyl Tile and wall base products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by FLOORSCORE, UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section.

1.4.1.2 Adhesives

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

Provide extra material from same dye lot for future maintenance. Provide a minimum of 3 percent of total square yards of each flooring and base type, pattern, and color.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

The flooring manufacturer will approve the Qualifications of Applicator and certify that he/she has a minimum of 3 years of experience in the application of the materials to be used.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the building site in original unopened containers bearing the manufacturer's name, style name, pattern color name and number, size, production run, project identification, handling instructions and related information. Observe ventilation and safety procedures specified in the Safety Data Sheets (SDS). Do not store flooring near materials that may off-gas or emit harmful fumes, such as kerosene heaters, fresh paint, or adhesives.

1.7.1 Static-Control Resilient Flooring

Store materials in a clean, dry, secure, and well-ventilated area free from strong contaminant sources and residues with ambient air temperature range as recommended by the manufacturer but not less than 68 degrees F or more than 85 degrees F. Stack materials according to manufacturer's recommendations. Protect materials from the direct flow of heat from hot-air registers, radiators and other heating fixtures and appliances.

1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Provide temporary ventilation during work of this section.

1.8.1 Static-Control Resilient Flooring

Maintain areas in which resilient flooring is to be installed at a temperature range as recommended by the manufacturer but not less than 68 degrees F or more than 85 degrees F for 3 days before application, during application and 2 days after application, unless otherwise directed by the flooring manufacturer for the flooring being installed. Maintain a minimum temperature range as recommended by the manufacturer but not less than 55 degrees F thereafter for the duration of the contract. Provide adequate ventilation to remove moisture from area and to comply with regulations limiting concentrations of hazardous vapors.

1.9 WARRANTY

1.9.1 Static-Control Resilient Flooring

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties including a five year wear warranty and ten year conductivity warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STATIC-CONTROL RESILIENT FLOORING

2.1.1 Static-Dissipative Resilient Flooring

2.1.1.1 Static-Dissipative Vinyl Tile

Static-dissipative vinyl tile must be a homogeneous vinyl product and conform to ASTM F1700. Provide electrical resistance from surface to surface and surface to ground between 1,000,000 ohms (1.0×10 to the 6th) and 1,000,000,000 ohms (1.0×10 to the 9th) when tested in accordance with ASTM F150. Tile must be 24 inches square and 1/8 inch thick.

Provide Static-Dissipative Vinyl Tile containing a minimum of 10 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for Static-Dissipative Vinyl Tile.

Provide certification of indoor air quality for Static-Dissipative Vinyl Tile.

2.2 WALL BASE

2.2.1 Resilient Base

Resilient base must conform to ASTM F1861, Type TP (thermoplastic rubber), Style B (coved - installed with resilient flooring). Provide 4 inch high and a minimum 1/8 inch thick wall base. Provide job formed corners in matching height, shape, and color.

2.3 ADHESIVES

Provide conductive adhesive as recommended by the manufacturer of the static-control flooring. Provide conductive adhesive for carpet tile that is also releasable as recommended by the manufacturer. Provide adhesive for wall base as recommended by the wall base manufacturer.

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of GS-36. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for adhesives.

2.4 MOLDINGS

Provide heavy duty tapered moldings of and types as recommended by flooring manufacturer for both edges and transitions of flooring materials specified. Provide vertical lip on molding of maximum 1/4 inch. Provide bevel change in level between 1/4 and 1/2 inch with a slope no greater than 1:2. Provide warm grey color to match resilient base.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

Use accessories recommended by the manufacturer of the flooring.

2.6 ELECTRICAL GROUND CONNECTION

Provide an electrical ground connection that meets the requirements of ESD S6.1. Connection between the static-control floor system and the external grounding system must be provided. Contact with the static-control floor system must be with conductive grounding strip and must have the greater of the following: a minimum contact area of 9 square inch or the dimensions recommended by the manufacturer. Provide the grounding conductor recommended by the manufacturer of the flooring. Connect and install the grounding conductor as recommend by the flooring manufacturer.

2.7 MANUFACTURER'S COLOR, PATTERN AND TEXTURE

Provide color, pattern and texture as indicated. Provide flooring in any one continuous area or replacement of damaged flooring in continuous area from same production run with same shade and pattern.

2.8 FIRE RESISTANCE TESTING REQUIREMENTS

Provide a minimum average critical radiant flux of 0.22 watts per square centimeter for flooring in corridors and exits when tested in accordance with ASTM E648.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION

Before any work under this section is begun, defects such as rough or scaling concrete, low spots, high spots, and uneven surfaces must be corrected, and damaged portions of concrete slabs must be repaired in accordance with flooring manufacturer's recommended instructions. Floor must be in a level plane with a maximum variation of 1/8 inch every 10 feet, except where indicated as sloped. Repair cracks and irregularities and prepare the subfloor in accordance with flooring manufacturer's recommended instructions. Curing and sealing compounds should not be used on concrete surfaces to receive flooring unless they have been tested and approved by the flooring manufacturer. In addition, remove paint, varnish, oils, release agents, sealers, waxes, and adhesives, as required by the flooring product in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions. If a curing compound is required, it must be coordinated for compatibility with the flooring adhesive.

3.2 MOISTURE, ALKALINITY AND BOND TESTS

Determine the suitability of the concrete subfloor for receiving the flooring with regard to moisture content and pH level by moisture and alkalinity tests. Conduct moisture testing in accordance with ASTM F1869 or ASTM F2170, unless otherwise recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Conduct alkalinity testing as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Determine the compatibility of the flooring adhesives to the concrete floors by a bond test in accordance with the flooring manufacturer's recommendations.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF STATIC-CONTROL RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

Install static-control resilient flooring, ground connections and accessories in accordance with the approved manufacturer's installation instructions. Tile lines and joints must be kept square, symmetrical, tight, and even. Tile at the perimeter of the area to be finished may vary as necessary to maintain full-size tiles in the field, but no perimeter tile may be less than one-half the field tile size, except where irregular shaped rooms make it impossible. Tile must be cut, fitted, and scribed to walls, partitions, and projections after field flooring has been applied. Install grounding strips in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Protect edges of flooring material meeting hard surface flooring with molding and install in accordance with the molding manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF WALL BASE

3.5.1 Resilient Base

Install wall base in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Prepare and apply adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's printed directions. Tighten base joints and make even with adjacent resilient flooring. Fill voids along the top edge of base at masonry walls with caulk. Roll entire vertical surface of base with hand roller, and press toe of base with a straight piece of wood to ensure proper alignment. Avoid excess adhesive in corners.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

The flooring must be cleaned in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Flooring must be protected by a covering of heavy-duty building paper before foot traffic is permitted. Lap and secure edges of kraft paper protection to provide a continuous cover. Boardwalks must be placed over flooring in areas where subsequent building operations might damage the floor. Remove and replace flooring that becomes loose, broken, or curled prior to acceptance, or flooring that does not conform to resistance requirements of ASTM F150.

3.7 TESTING

Test the flooring in accordance with and conform to the requirements of ESD S6.1.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 65 00

RESILIENT FLOORING
08/10, CHG 3: 08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D4078	(2002; R 2015) Water Emulsion Floor Polish
ASTM E648	(2019a) Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source
ASTM F710	(2021) Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring
ASTM F1482	(2021) Standard Practice for Installation and Preparation of Panel Type Underlayments to Receive Resilient Flooring
ASTM F1700	(2020) Standard Specification for Solid Vinyl Floor Tile
ASTM F1861	(2021) Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base
ASTM F1869	(2016a) Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride
ASTM F2170	(2019a) Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers
--------------------	--

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36	(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use
-------	-------------------------------------

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS	SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage
-----	--

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Resilient Flooring and Accessories; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Resilient Flooring and Accessories; G

Adhesives

Luxury Vinyl Tile

Wall Base

SD-04 Samples

Resilient Flooring and Accessories; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Moisture, Alkalinity and Bond Tests; G

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality for Adhesives; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Surface Preparation; G

Installation; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Resilient Flooring and Accessories; G

1.3 CERTIFICATES

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality

Submit required indoor air quality certifications and validations in one submittal package.

1.3.1.1 Floor Covering Materials

Provide Luxury Vinyl Tile, and wall base products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by FLOORSCORE, UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification by other third-party programs. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.3.1.2 Adhesives, Caulking and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the building site in original unopened containers bearing the manufacturer's name, style name, pattern color name and number, production run, project identification, and handling instructions. Store materials in a clean, dry, secure, and well-ventilated area free from strong contaminant sources and residues with ambient air temperature maintained above 68 degrees F and below 85 degrees F, stacked according to manufacturer's recommendations. Remove resilient flooring products from packaging to allow ventilation prior to installation. Protect materials from the direct flow of heat from hot-air registers, radiators and other heating fixtures and appliances. Observe ventilation and safety procedures specified in the MSDS. Do not store rubber surface products with materials that have a high capacity to adsorb volatile organic compound (VOC) emissions. Do not store exposed rubber surface materials in occupied spaces. Do not store near materials that may offgas or emit harmful fumes, such as kerosene heaters, fresh paint, or adhesives.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Maintain areas to receive resilient flooring at a temperature above 68 degrees F and below 85 degrees F for 3 days before application, during application and 2 days after application, unless otherwise directed by the flooring manufacturer for the flooring being installed. Maintain a minimum temperature of 55 degrees F thereafter. Provide adequate ventilation to remove moisture from area and to comply with regulations limiting concentrations of hazardous vapors.

1.6 SCHEDULING

Schedule resilient flooring application after the completion of other work which would damage the finished surface of the flooring.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties that extend beyond a one year period.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

Provide extra flooring material of each color and pattern at the rate of 5 tiles for each 1000 tiles and 5 square feet for each 1000 square feet of sheet flooring installed. Provide extra wall base material composed of 20 linear feet of each type, color and pattern. Package all extra materials in original properly marked containers bearing the manufacturer's name, brand name, pattern color name and number, production run, and handling instructions. Provide extra materials from the same lot as those installed. Leave extra stock at the site in location assigned by Contracting Officer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 LUXURY VINYL TILE TYPE LVT-1

Conform to ASTM F1700 Class III printed film with a minimum wear layer thickness 0.030 inch (30 mil) and minimum overall thickness 0.118 inch, Type B (embossed). Provide 24 inch square tile. Provide tile with a factory protective finish that enhances cleanability and durability.

Provide Luxury Vinyl Tile containing a minimum of 35 percent recycled content.

2.2 WALL BASE

Conform to ASTM F1861, Type TP (thermoplastic rubber), Style C (butt toe cove installed with 1/8 inch thick flooring). Provide 4 inch high and a minimum 1/8 inch thick wall base. Provide job formed corners in matching height, shape, and color.

2.3 MOULDING

Provide tapered mouldings of rubber clear anodized aluminum and types as recommended by flooring manufacturer for both edges and transitions of flooring materials specified. Provide vertical lip on moulding of maximum 1/4 inch. Provide bevel change in level between 1/4 and 1/2 inch with a slope no greater than 1:2.

2.4 ADHESIVES

Provide adhesives for flooring, base and accessories as recommended by the manufacturer and comply with local indoor air quality standards. Submit manufacturer's descriptive data, documentation stating physical characteristics, and mildew and germicidal characteristics.

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of GS-36. Provide certification

or validation of indoor air quality for adhesives.

2.5 SURFACE PREPARATION MATERIALS

Provide surface preparation materials, such as panel type underlayment, lining felt, and floor crack fillers as recommended by the flooring manufacturer for the subfloor conditions. Comply with ASTM F1482 for panel type underlayment products. Use one of the following substrates:

- a. Plywood: As specified in Section 06 10 00 ROUGH CARPENTRY.
- b. Concrete.

2.6 POLISH/FINISH

Provide polish finish as recommended by the manufacturer and conform to ASTM D4078 for polish.

2.7 CAULKING AND SEALANTS

Provide caulking and sealants in accordance with Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

2.8 MANUFACTURER'S COLOR, PATTERN AND TEXTURE

Provide color, pattern and texture for resilient flooring and accessories in accordance with Section 09 06 00 SCHEDULES FOR FINISHES. Color listed is not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers. Provide flooring in any one continuous area or replacement of damaged flooring in continuous area from same production run with same shade and pattern. Submit scaled drawings indicating patterns (including location of patterns and colors) and dimensions. Submit manufacturer's descriptive data and three samples of each indicated color and type of flooring, base, mouldings, and accessories sized a minimum 2-1/2 by 4 inch. Submit Data Package 1 in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

2.9 FIRE RESISTANCE TESTING REQUIREMENTS

Provide a minimum average critical radiant flux of 0.45 watts per square centimeter for flooring in corridors and exits when tested in accordance with ASTM E648.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Examine and verify that site conditions are in agreement with the design package. Report all conditions that will prevent a proper installation. Do not take any corrective action without written permission from the Government. Work will proceed only when conditions have been corrected and accepted by the installer. Submit manufacturer's printed installation instructions for all flooring materials and accessories, including preparation of substrate, seaming techniques, and recommended adhesives.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

Provide a smooth, true, level plane for surface preparation of the flooring, except where indicated as sloped. Floor to be flat to within

3/16 inch in 10 feet. Prepare subfloor in accordance with flooring manufacturer's recommended instructions. Prepare the surfaces of lightweight concrete slabs (as defined by the flooring manufacturer) as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Comply with ASTM F710 for concrete subfloor preparation. Floor fills or toppings may be required as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Install underlayments, when required by the flooring manufacturer, in accordance with manufacturer's recommended printed installation instructions. Comply with ASTM F1482 for panel type underlayments. Before any work under this section is begun, correct all defects such as rough or scaling concrete, chalk and dust, cracks, low spots, high spots, and uneven surfaces. Repair all damaged portions of concrete slabs as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Remove concrete curing and sealer compounds from the slabs, other than the type that does not adversely affect adhesion. Remove paint, varnish, oils, release agents, sealers, waxes, and adhesives, as required by the flooring product in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions.

3.3 MOISTURE, ALKALINITY AND BOND TESTS

Determine the suitability of the concrete subfloor for receiving the resilient flooring with regard to moisture content and pH level by moisture and alkalinity tests. Conduct moisture testing in accordance with ASTM F1869 or ASTM F2170, unless otherwise recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Conduct alkalinity testing as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Determine the compatibility of the resilient flooring adhesives to the concrete floors by a bond test in accordance with the flooring manufacturer's recommendations. Submit copy of test reports for moisture and alkalinity content of concrete slab, and bond test stating date of test, person conducting the test, and the area tested.

3.4 GENERAL INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.5 PLACING LUXURY VINYL TILES

Install luxury vinyl tile flooring using glue down installation. Install flooring and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Prepare and apply adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's directions for installation method specified. Keep tile lines and joints square, symmetrical, tight, and even. Keep each floor in true, level plane, except where slope is indicated. Vary edge width as necessary to maintain full-size tiles in the field, no edge tile to be less than one-half the field tile size, except where irregular shaped rooms make it impossible. Cut flooring to fit around all permanent fixtures, built-in furniture and cabinets, pipes, and outlets. Cut, fit, and scribe edge tile to walls and partitions after field flooring has been applied.

3.6 PLACING MOULDING

Provide moulding where flooring termination is higher than the adjacent finished flooring and at transitions between different flooring materials. When required, locate moulding under door centerline. Moulding is not required at doorways where thresholds are provided. Secure moulding with adhesive as recommended by the manufacturer. Prepare and apply adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's printed directions.

Anchor aluminum moulding to floor surfaces as recommended by the manufacturer.

3.7 PLACING WALL BASE

Install wall base in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Prepare and apply adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's printed directions. Tighten base joints and make even with adjacent resilient flooring. Fill voids along the top edge of base at masonry walls with caulk. Roll entire vertical surface of base with hand roller, and press toe of base with a straight piece of wood to ensure proper alignment. Avoid excess adhesive in corners.

3.8 CLEANING

Immediately upon completion of installation of flooring in a room or an area, dry and clean the flooring and adjacent surfaces to remove all surplus adhesive. Clean flooring as recommended in accordance with manufacturer's printed maintenance instructions and within the recommended time frame. As required by the manufacturer, apply the recommended number of coats and type of polish and finish in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.9 PROTECTION

From the time of installation until acceptance, protect flooring from damage as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Remove and replace flooring which becomes damaged, loose, broken, or curled and wall base which is not tight to wall or securely adhered.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 67 23.13

STANDARD RESINOUS FLOORING

11/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C307	(2018) Standard Test Method for Tensile Strength of Chemical-Resistant Mortar, Grouts, and Monolithic Surfacing
ASTM C413	(2018) Standard Test Method for Absorption of Chemical-Resistant Mortars, Grouts, and Monolithic Surfacing and Polymer Concretes
ASTM C531	(2018) Standard Test Method for Linear Shrinkage and Coefficient of Thermal Expansion of Chemical-Resistant Mortars, Grouts, and Monolithic Surfacing, and Polymer Concretes
ASTM C579	(2018) Standard Test Methods for Compressive Strength of Chemical-Resistant Mortars, Grouts, Monolithic Surfacing, and Polymer Concretes
ASTM C580	(2018) Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength and Modulus of Elasticity of Chemical-Resistant Mortars, Grouts, Monolithic Surfacing, and Polymer Concretes
ASTM D523	(2014; R 2018) Standard Test Method for Specular Gloss
ASTM D2240	(2015; E 2017) Standard Test Method for Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness
ASTM D2794	(1993; R 2019) Standard Test Method for Resistance of Organic Coatings to the Effects of Rapid Deformation (Impact)
ASTM E648	(2019a) Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source
ASTM F1869	(2016a) Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride

ASTM F2170 (2019a) Standard Test Method for
Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete
Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes

1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Pre-Installation Meetings

Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.2.2 Product Data

Within 30 days of contract award, submit manufacturer's catalog data for the following items:

- a. Epoxy-Resin Binder/Matrix
- b. Cured Epoxy Binder
- c. Surface Sealing Coat

1.2.3 Design Mix Data

Within 30 days of contract award, submit design mix data for the following items, including a complete list of ingredients and admixtures:

- a. Epoxy-Resin Binder/Matrix
- b. Cured Epoxy Binder
- c. Surface Sealing Coat

Ensure applicable test reports verify the mix has been successfully tested and meets design requirements.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer's Catalog Data; G

SD-04 Samples

Hardboard Mounted Epoxy Flooring; G, AE

Floor Topping; G, AE

SD-05 Design Data

Design Mix Data

SD-07 Certificates

Referenced Standards Certificates

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty; G

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect materials from weather, soil, and damage during delivery, storage, and construction. Deliver materials in original packages, containers, or bundles bearing brand name and name of material.

Maintain materials used in the installation of floor topping at a temperature between 65 and 85 degrees F.

1.5 QUALITY CONTROL

Prior to commencement of work, submit referenced standards certificates for the following, showing conformance with the referenced standards contained in this section:

- a. Epoxy-Resin Binder/Matrix
- b. Cured Epoxy Binder
- c. Surface Sealing Coat

1.5.1 Sampling

Submit hardboard mounted epoxy flooring samples not less than 12 inch square for each required color.

Provide panels showing nominal thickness of finished toppings, color, and texture of finished surfaces. Finished floor toppings and the approved samples are to match in color and texture.

1.6 WARRANTY

Submit a 2 year written warranty for all materials and installation work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Submit installation drawings for heavy duty epoxy flooring systems clearly designating the areas of application and the installation plan. Include in the installation plan, methods to control sand and dust if sand blasting is required.

2.2 MATERIALS

2.2.1 Mixes

2.2.1.1 Cured Epoxy Binder

Provide a cured epoxy binder with the following properties.

<u>PROPERTY</u>	<u>TEST METHOD</u>	<u>REQUIREMENT</u>
Compressive Strength, psi	ASTM C579	10,000
Tensile strength, psi	ASTM C307	1,750
Flexural Strength, psi	ASTM C580	4,000
Water absorption, percent 24 hours at 77 degrees F, maximum	ASTM C413	< 1%
Hardness, Shore D	ASTM D2240	0.85 to 0.90
Impact Resistance	ASTM D2794	>160 in. lbs.
Flammability	ASTM E648	Class 1
Coefficient of linear thermal expansion, inch/inch/degree F, maximum	ASTM C531	1.4x10 ⁻⁵ in./in.
Flexural Modulus of Elasticity	ASTM C580	2.0x10 ⁶ psi
*1/8 inch thick castings		
**1/8 by 1 by 3 inch castings, aged in forced draft oven		

2.2.1.2 Surface Sealing Coat

Provide nonambering aliphatic or aromatic moisture-curing polyurethane surface sealer into which has been incorporated a flatting agent. Add flatting agent not more than 24 hours prior to actual application of the coating. Ensure cured coating with flatting agent yields 60-degree specular gloss of 10 to 20 when tested in accordance with ASTM D523.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Prior to applying resinous flooring material, inspect substrate and immediately report any unsatisfactory conditions that exist and repair.

Verify that the concrete substrates are dry and the moisture-vapor emissions are within acceptable levels according to the manufacturer's written instructions.

Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with application of resinous flooring only after substrates have a maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 6 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. of slab area in 24 hours.

Relative Humidity Test: Use in situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 85 percent relative humidity level measurement.

3.1.1 Safety Precautions

Prior to application in confined spaces of toppings and coatings containing flammable or toxic properties, institute safety precautions recommended by the manufacturer of the product.

Erect "NO SMOKING" signs, and prohibit smoking or use of spark- or flame-producing devices within 50 feet of any mixing or placing operation involving flammable materials.

Provide the personnel required to handle, mix, or apply toppings containing toxic or flammable properties with such items of personal protective equipment and apparel for eye, skin, and respiratory protection as are recommended by the manufacturer of the product. Ensure all personnel are trained in the appropriate use and wearing of personal protection equipment.

3.1.2 Protection of Adjacent Surfaces

In addition to the protection of adjacent surfaces during installation, provide areas used to store and mix materials with a protective covering under the materials. After application of the sealer coats, protect finished flooring during the remainder of the construction period. In areas of expected minimum or moderate traffic, cover floors with 70 pound kraft paper, with strips taped together and edges secured to prevent roll-up. Place vegetable fiberboard, plywood, or other suitable material that does not mar the flooring over the paper to protect areas used as passages by workmen and areas subject to floor damage because of subsequent building operations. Upon completion of construction, remove the protection, clean flooring and, where necessary, repair, reseal, or both, at no additional cost to the Government.

3.1.3 Concrete Subfloor

3.1.3.1 New Concrete Floors

Do not commence installation of the floor topping until the concrete has cured a minimum of 28 calendar days. Verify that the concrete floor is straight, properly sloped, and has rough type finish. Ensure that the

concrete is moist cured with burlap or polyethylene. Before applying the prime coat, clean the concrete surface by an approved method.

3.1.4 Mixing Of Materials

Select the job mix proportions on the trial batch proportions used to prepare the floor topping samples as submitted and approved.

Use mechanical equipment for mixing of materials in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Use rotating paddle-type masonry mortar mixers for preblending the three sizes and color pigment, if any, of the walnut shell aggregate and addition of the mixed epoxy resin binder. Ensure mixing times are as recommended by the materials supplier(s), provided mixing times result in homogeneous mixtures. Limit quantity of material mixed at one time to that which can be applied and finished within the working life of the mixtures. Verify that the temperature of materials at the time of mixing are between 65 and 85 degrees F.

3.2 APPLICATION

3.2.1 Areas of Application

Anchor plates set with the top surface at or above the finished epoxy floor level do not require coverage with this flooring material. Extend flooring under equipment, except when the equipment base is indicated to be flush against the structural floor. Cover and/or mask surfaces not to receive the epoxy floor topping, such as equipment or cabinets installed prior to surface-preparation efforts and adjacent to the flooring installation.

3.2.2 Application of Prime Coat and Troweling

Combine the epoxy binder components A and B in the proportions specified by the manufacturer to form a clear compatible system immediately on mixing. Cure combined components to a clear film possessing a glossy, non-greasy surface at relative humidities less than 80 percent, having the following properties after curing 24 hours at 77 degrees F, followed by 24 hours at 125 degrees F:

Ensure that the prepared subfloor surface is dry and at a temperature of not less than 60 degrees F when application of the floor topping is initiated. Immediately before application of the prime/scratch coat on the prepared surface, remove dust or other loose particles by blowing with compressed air or vacuum cleaned. Use only an air compressor equipped with an efficient oil-water trap to prevent oil contamination or wetting of surface.

Apply a thin roller coat of the epoxy binder specified to the prepared subfloor as a prime coat. As an aid to placing, compacting, and finishing the floor topping, form a scratch coat by sprinkling a minimum quantity of the walnut shell aggregate on the prime coat surface immediately following the prime coat application. Prior to application of the prime/scratch coat, fill cracks in the concrete per manufacturer's instructions, and make provisions to keep control or expansion joints open.

Place the floor topping prior to final gelling of the prime/scratch coat. Immediately after the materials are mixed as specified, dump the mixture

in the placement area and spread to prolong troweling life. Screed or rough trowel placed materials to the specified thickness and then compact by the use of a smooth roller prior to finish troweling to a nominal thickness of 3/16 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch. Ensure all finished surfaces are free of ridges, hollows (bird-baths), trowel marks, and smoothness varies no more than 1/8 inch when tested with an 8 foot straightedge. Make provisions to maintain the work areas in a relatively dust-free environment during curing of the topping.

3.2.3 Sealer Coat

After the floor topping has set firmly (approximately 6 to 16 hours depending on subfloor temperature) in a relatively dust-free environment, apply two thin coats of the sealer coat, by means of brush, roller, squeegee, or notched trowel to provide a pore-free, easy-to-clean surface. At the time of sealer application, ensure that the surface is dust-free. Depending on relative humidity, allow the applied sealer to cure to a tack-free condition in 2 to 4 hours. Do not apply second coat until after the initial coat has cured to a tack-free, hard film. Maintain topping areas in a relatively dust-free environment during curing of the sealer coats.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.3.1 Repairing

Remove and replace damaged or unacceptable portions of completed work with new work to match adjacent surfaces at no additional cost to the Government.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

Clean surfaces of the new work, and adjacent surfaces soiled as a result of the work. Remove all equipment, surplus materials, and rubbish associated with the work from the site.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 90 00

PAINTS AND COATINGS

02/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

1.1.1 Painting Included

Where a space or surface is indicated to be painted, include the following unless indicated otherwise.

- a. Surfaces behind portable objects and surface mounted articles readily detachable by removal of fasteners, such as screws and bolts.
- b. New factory finished surfaces that require identification or color coding and factory finished surfaces that are damaged during performance of the work.
- c. Existing coated surfaces that are damaged during performance of the work.

1.1.1.1 Exterior Painting

Includes new surfaces of the building and appurtenances. Also included are existing coated surfaces made bare by cleaning operations.

1.1.1.2 Interior Painting

Includes new surfaces of the building and appurtenances as indicated and existing coated surfaces made bare by cleaning operations. Where a space or surface is indicated to be painted, include the following items, unless indicated otherwise.

- a. Exposed columns, girders, beams, joists, and metal deck; and
- b. Other contiguous surfaces.

1.1.2 Painting Excluded

Do not paint the following unless indicated otherwise.

- a. Surfaces concealed and made inaccessible by panelboards, fixed ductwork, machinery, and equipment fixed in place.
- b. Surfaces in concealed spaces. Concealed spaces are defined as enclosed spaces above suspended ceilings, furred spaces, attic spaces, crawl spaces, elevator shafts and chases.
- c. Steel to be embedded in concrete.
- d. Copper, stainless steel, aluminum, anodized aluminum, brass, and lead except existing coated surfaces.
- e. Hardware, fittings, and other factory finished items.

1.1.3 Miscellaneous Painting

1.1.3.1 Lettering Building

Provide lettering as scheduled on the drawings type, . Samples must be approved before application.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONFERENCE OF GOVERNMENTAL INDUSTRIAL HYGIENISTS (ACGIH)

ACGIH 0100 (2017; Suppl 2020) Documentation of the Threshold Limit Values and Biological Exposure Indices

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D235 (2002; R 2012) Mineral Spirits (Petroleum Spirits) (Hydrocarbon Dry Cleaning Solvent)

ASTM D523 (2014; R 2018) Standard Test Method for Specular Gloss

ASTM D6386 (2016a) Standard Practice for Preparation of Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coated Iron and Steel Product and Hardware Surfaces for Painting

CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION (CDC)

Intelligence Bulletin 65 (2013) Occupational Exposure to Carbon Nanotubes and Nanofibers

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

MPI 8 (2016) Alkyd, Exterior Flat (MPI Gloss Level I)

MPI 9 (2016) Alkyd, Exterior Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6)

MPI 23 (2015) Primer, Metal, Surface Tolerant

MPI 31 (2012) Varnish, Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6)

MPI 39 (2018) Primer, Latex, for Interior Wood

MPI 44 (2016) Latex, Interior, (MPI Gloss Level 2)

MPI 45 (2016) Primer Sealer, Interior Alkyd

MPI 47 (2016) Alkyd, Interior, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)

MPI 48	(2016) Alkyd, Interior, Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6-7)
MPI 49	(2015) Alkyd, Interior, Flat (MPI Gloss Level 1)
MPI 50	(2015) Primer Sealer, Latex, Interior
MPI 51	(2016) Alkyd, Interior, (MPI Gloss Level 3)2
MPI 52	(2016) Latex, Interior, (MPI Gloss Level 3)
MPI 54	(2016) Latex, Interior, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)
MPI 56	(2012) Varnish, Interior, Polyurethane, Oil Modified, Gloss
MPI 57	(2012) Varnish, Interior, Polyurethane, Oil Modified, Satin
MPI 71	(2012) Varnish, Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Flat (MPI Gloss Level 1)
MPI 72	(2016) Polyurethane, Two-Component, Pigmented, Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6-7)
MPI 76	(2016) Primer, Alkyd, Quick Dry, for Metal
MPI 77	(2015) Epoxy, Gloss
MPI 79	(2016) Primer, Alkyd, Anti-Corrosive for Metal
MPI 90	(2012) Stain, Semi-Transparent, for Interior Wood
MPI 94	(2016) Alkyd, Exterior, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)
MPI 95	(2015) Primer, Quick Dry, for Aluminum
MPI 101	(2016) Primer, Epoxy, Anti-Corrosive, for Metal
MPI 107	(2016) Primer, Rust-Inhibitive, Water Based
MPI 108	(2015) Epoxy, High Build, Low Gloss
MPI 138	(2016) Latex, Interior, High Performance Architectural, (MPI Gloss Level 2)
MPI 139	(2016) Latex, Interior, High Performance Architectural, (MPI Gloss Level 3)
MPI 140	(2016) Latex, Interior, High Performance Architectural, (MPI Gloss Level 4)

MPI 141	(2016) Latex, Interior, High Performance Architectural, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)
MPI 144	(2016) Latex, Interior, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, (MPI Gloss Level 2)
MPI 145	(2016) Latex, Interior, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, (MPI Gloss Level 3)
MPI 146	(2016) Latex, Interior, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, (MPI Gloss Level 4)
MPI 147	(May 2016) Latex, Interior, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)
MPI 149	(2016) Primer Sealer, Interior, Institutional Low Odor/VOC
MPI 153	(2016) Light Industrial Coating, Interior, Water Based, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)
MPI 161	(2016) Light Industrial Coating, Exterior, Water Based (MPI Gloss Level 3)
MPI 163	(2016) Light Industrial Coating, Exterior, Water Based, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)
MPI 164	(2016) Light Industrial Coating, Exterior, Water Based, Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6)
MPI ASM	(2019) Architectural Painting Specification Manual
MPI GPS-1-14	(2014) Green Performance Standard GPS-1-14
MPI GPS-2-14	(2014) Green Performance Standard GPS-2-14
MPI MRM	(2015) Maintenance Repainting Manual

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC 7/NACE No.4	(2007) Brush-Off Blast Cleaning
SSPC Glossary	(2011) SSPC Protective Coatings Glossary
SSPC PA 1	(2016) Shop, Field, and Maintenance Coating of Metals
SSPC SP 1	(2015) Solvent Cleaning
SSPC SP 2	(2018) Hand Tool Cleaning
SSPC SP 3	(2018) Power Tool Cleaning
SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3	(2007) Commercial Blast Cleaning
SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2	(2007) Near-White Blast Cleaning

SSPC VIS 1	(2002; E 2004) Guide and Reference Photographs for Steel Surfaces Prepared by Dry Abrasive Blast Cleaning
SSPC VIS 3	(2004) Guide and Reference Photographs for Steel Surfaces Prepared by Hand and Power Tool Cleaning
SSPC VIS 4/NACE VIS 7	(1998; E 2000; E 2004) Guide and Reference Photographs for Steel Surfaces Prepared by Waterjetting
SSPC-SP WJ-1/NACE WJ-1	(2012) Clean to Bare Substrate, Waterjet Cleaning of Metals
SSPC-SP WJ-2/NACE WJ-2	(2012) Very Thorough Cleaning, Waterjet Cleaning of Metals
SSPC-SP WJ-3/NACE WJ-3	(2012) Thorough Cleaning, Waterjet Cleaning of Metals
SSPC-SP WJ-4/NACE WJ-4	(2012) Light Cleaning, Waterjet Cleaning of Metals

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1	(2014) Safety -- Safety and Health Requirements Manual
------------	--

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-STD-101	(2014; Rev C) Color Code for Pipelines and for Compressed Gas Cylinders
-------------	---

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)

EPA Method 24	(2000) Determination of Volatile Matter Content, Water Content, Density, Volume Solids, and Weight Solids of Surface Coatings
---------------	---

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

FED-STD-313	(2018) Material Safety Data, Transportation Data and Disposal Data for Hazardous Materials Furnished to Government Activities
-------------	---

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.1000	Air Contaminants
------------------	------------------

1.3 DEFINITIONS

1.3.1 Qualification Testing

Qualification testing is the performance of all test requirements listed in the product specification. This testing is accomplished by MPI to

qualify each product for the MPI Approved Product List, and may also be accomplished by Contractor's third-party testing lab if an alternative to Batch Quality Conformance Testing by MPI is desired.

1.3.2 Batch Quality Conformance Testing

Batch quality conformance testing determines that the product provided is the same as the product qualified to the appropriate product specification. This testing must be accomplished by an MPI testing lab.

1.3.3 Coating

SSPC Glossary; (1) A liquid, liquefiable, or mastic composition that is converted to a solid protective, decorative, or functional adherent film after application as a thin layer; (2) Generic term for paint, lacquer, enamel.

1.3.4 DFT or dft

Dry film thickness, the film thickness of the fully cured, dry paint or coating.

1.3.5 DSD

Degree of Surface Degradation, the MPI system of defining degree of surface degradation. Five levels are generically defined under the Assessment sections in the MPI MRM, MPI Maintenance Repainting Manual.

1.3.6 EXT

MPI short term designation for an exterior coating system.

1.3.7 INT

MPI short term designation for an interior coating system.

1.3.8 Loose Paint

Paint or coating that can be removed with a dull putty knife.

1.3.9 mil / mils

The English measurement for 0.001 in or one one-thousandth of an inch.

1.3.10 MPI Gloss Levels

MPI system of defining gloss. Seven gloss levels (G1 to G7) are generically defined under the Evaluation sections of the MPI Manuals. Traditionally, Flat refers to G1/G2, Eggshell refers to G3, Semigloss refers to G5, and Gloss refers to G6.

Gloss levels are defined by MPI as follows:

Gloss Level	Description	Units at 60 degree angle	Units at 80 degree angle
G1	Matte or Flat	0 to 5	10 max

Gloss Level	Description	Units at 60 degree angle	Units at 80 degree angle
G2	Velvet	0 to 10	10 to 35
G3	Eggshell	10 to 25	10 to 35
G4	Satin	20 to 35	35 min
G5	Semi-Gloss	35 to 70	
G6	Gloss	70 to 85	
G7	High Gloss		

Gloss is tested in accordance with ASTM D523. Historically, the Government has used Flat (G1 / G2), Eggshell (G3), Semi-Gloss (G5), and Gloss (G6).

1.3.11 MPI System Number

The MPI coating system number in each MPI Division found in either the MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual or the Maintenance Repainting Manual and defined as an exterior (EXT/REX) or interior system (INT/RIN).

1.3.12 Paint

SSPC Glossary; (1) Any pigmented liquid, liquefiable, or mastic composition designed for application to a substrate in a thin layer that is converted to an opaque solid film after application. Used for protection, decoration, identification, or to serve some other functional purposes; (2) Application of a coating material.

1.3.13 REX

MPI short term designation for an exterior coating system used in repainting projects or over existing coating systems.

1.3.14 RIN

MPI short term designation for an interior coating system used in repainting projects or over existing coating systems.

1.4 SCHEDULING

Allow paint, polyurethane, varnish, and wood stain installations to cure prior to the installation of materials that adsorb VOCs, including unprimed gypsum wallboard,.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

Samples of specified materials may be taken and tested for compliance with

specification requirements.

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Piping Identification

SD-03 Product Data

Coating; G

Product Data Sheets

SD-04 Samples

Color; G

SD-07 Certificates

Qualification Testing laboratory for coatings; G

Indoor Air Quality for Paints and Primers

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Mixing

Manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Coatings, Data Package 1; G

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Regulatory Requirements

1.6.1.1 Environmental Protection

In addition to requirements specified elsewhere for environmental protection, provide coating materials that conform to the restrictions of the local Air Pollution Control District and regional jurisdiction. Notify Contracting Officer of any paint specified herein which fails to conform.

1.6.1.2 Lead Content

Do not use coatings having a lead content over 0.06 percent by weight of nonvolatile content.

1.6.1.3 Chromate Content

Do not use coatings containing zinc-chromate or strontium-chromate.

1.6.1.4 Asbestos Content

Provide asbestos-free materials.

1.6.1.5 Mercury Content

Provide materials free of mercury or mercury compounds.

1.6.1.6 Silica

Provide abrasive blast media containing no free crystalline silica.

1.6.1.7 Human Carcinogens

Provide materials that do not contain ACGIH 0100 confirmed human carcinogens (A1) or suspected human carcinogens (A2).

1.6.1.8 Carbon Based Fibers / Tubes

Materials must not contain carbon based fibers such as carbon nanotubes or carbon nanofibers. Intelligence Bulletin 65 ranks toxicity of carbon nanotubes on a par with asbestos.

1.6.2 Approved Products List

The current MPI, "Approved Product List" which lists paint by brand, label, product name and product code as of the date of Contract award, will be used to determine compliance with the submittal requirements of this specification. The Contractor may choose to use a subsequent MPI "Approved Product List", however, only one list may be used for the entire Contract and each coating system is to be from a single manufacturer. Provide all coats on a particular substrate from a single manufacturer. No variation from the MPI Approved Products List is acceptable.

1.6.3 Paints and Coatings Indoor Air Quality Certifications

Provide paint and coating products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by MPI GPS-1-14, MPI GPS-2-14 or provide certification by other third-party programs. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

Provide certification of Indoor Air Quality for Paints and Primers. Submit required indoor air quality certifications in one submittal package.

1.6.4 Field Samples and Tests

The Contracting Officer may choose up to two coatings that have been delivered to the site to be tested at no cost to the Government. Take samples of each chosen product as specified in the paragraph SAMPLING PROCEDURE. Test each chosen product as specified in the paragraph TESTING PROCEDURE. Remove products from the job site which do not conform, and replace with new products that conform to the referenced specification. Test replacement products that failed initial testing as specified in the paragraph TESTING PROCEDURE at no cost to the Government.

1.6.4.1 Sampling Procedure

Select paint at random from the products that have been delivered to the job site for sample testing. The Contractor must provide one quart samples of the selected paint materials. Take samples in the presence of the Contracting Officer, and label, and identify each sample. Provide labels in accordance with the paragraph PACKAGING, LABELING, AND STORAGE.

1.6.4.2 Testing Procedure

Provide Batch Quality Conformance Testing for specified products, as defined by and performed by MPI. As an alternative to Batch Quality Conformance Testing, the Contractor may provide Qualification Testing for specified products above to the appropriate MPI product specification, using the third-party laboratory approved under the paragraph QUALIFICATION TESTING laboratory for coatings. Include the backup data and summary of the test results within the qualification testing lab report. Provide a summary listing of all the reference specification requirements and the result of each test. Clearly indicate in the summary whether the tested paint meets each test requirement. Note that Qualification Testing may take 4 to 6 weeks to perform, due to the extent of testing required.

Submit name, address, telephone number, FAX number, and e-mail address of the independent third party laboratory selected to perform testing of coating samples for compliance with specification requirements. Submit documentation that laboratory is regularly engaged in testing of paint samples for conformance with specifications, and that employees performing testing are qualified. If MPI is chosen to perform the Batch Quality Conformance testing, the above submittal information is not required, only a letter is required from the Contractor stating that MPI will perform the testing.

1.7 PACKAGING, LABELING, AND STORAGE

Provide paints in sealed containers that legibly show the Contract specification number, designation name, formula or specification number, batch number, color, quantity, date of manufacture, manufacturer's formulation number, manufacturer's directions including any warnings and special precautions, and name and address of manufacturer. Furnish pigmented paints in containers not larger than 5 gallons. Store paints and thinners in accordance with the manufacturer's written directions, and as a minimum, stored off the ground, under cover, with sufficient ventilation to prevent the buildup of flammable vapors, and at temperatures between 40 to 95 degrees F. Do not store paint, polyurethane, varnish, or wood stain products with materials that have a high capacity to absorb VOC emissions. Do not store paint, polyurethane, varnish, or wood stain products in occupied spaces.

1.8 SAFETY AND HEALTH

Comply with applicable Federal, State, and local laws and regulations, and with the ACCIDENT PREVENTION PLAN, including the Activity Hazard Analysis as specified in Section 01 35 26 GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS and in Appendix A of EM 385-1-1. Include in the Activity Hazard Analysis the potential impact of painting operations on painting personnel and on others involved in and adjacent to the work zone.

1.8.1 Toxic Materials

To protect personnel from overexposure to toxic materials, conform to the most stringent guidance of:

- a. The applicable manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets (SDS) or local regulation.

- b. 29 CFR 1910.1000.
- c. ACGIH 0100, threshold limit values.

Submit manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets for coatings, solvents, and other potentially hazardous materials, as defined in FED-STD-313.

1.9 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Comply, at minimum, with manufacturer recommendations for space ventilation during and after installation. Isolate area of application from rest of building when applying high-emission paints or coatings.

1.9.1 Coatings

Do not apply coating when air or substrate conditions are:

- a. Less than 5 degrees F above dew point;
- b. Below 50 degrees F or over 95 degrees F, unless specifically pre-approved by the Contracting Officer and the product manufacturer. Do not, under any circumstances, violate the manufacturer's application recommendations.

1.9.2 Post-Application

Vacate space for as long as possible after application. Wait a minimum of 48 hours before occupying freshly painted rooms. Maintain one of the following ventilation conditions during the curing period, or for 72 hours after application:

- a. Supply 100 percent outside air 24 hours a day.
- b. Supply airflow at a rate of 6 air changes per hour, when outside temperatures are between 55 degrees F and 85 degrees F and humidity is between 30 percent and 60 percent.
- c. Supply airflow at a rate of 1.5 air changes per hour, when outside air conditions are not within the range stipulated above.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Conform to the coating specifications and standards referenced in PART 3. Submit Product Data Sheets for specified coatings and solvents. Provide preprinted cleaning and maintenance instructions for all coating systems. Submit Manufacturer's Instructions on Mixing: Detailed mixing instructions, minimum and maximum application temperature and humidity, pot life, and curing and drying times between coats.

2.2 COLOR SELECTION OF FINISH COATS

Provide colors of finish coats as indicated or specified. Allow Contracting Officer to select colors not indicated or specified. Manufacturers' names and color identification are used for the purpose of color identification only. Named products are acceptable for use only if they conform to specified requirements. Products of other manufacturers

are acceptable if the colors are approximately the colors indicated and the product conforms to specified requirements.

Provide color, texture, and pattern of wall coating systems as indicated . Submit manufacturer's samples of paint colors. Cross reference color samples to color scheme as indicated. Submit color stencil codes. Tint each coat progressively darker to enable confirmation of the number of coats.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION OF AREAS AND SPACES NOT TO BE PAINTED

Prior to surface preparation and coating applications, remove, mask, or otherwise protect hardware, hardware accessories, machined surfaces, radiator covers, plates, lighting fixtures, public and private property, and other such items not to be coated that are in contact with surfaces to be coated. Following completion of painting, reinstall removed items by workmen skilled in the trades. Restore surfaces contaminated by coating materials, to original condition and repair damaged items.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

Remove dirt, splinters, loose particles, grease, oil, and other foreign matter and substances deleterious to coating performance as specified for each substrate before application of paint or surface treatments. Remove oil and grease prior to mechanical cleaning. Schedule cleaning so that dust and other contaminants will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces. Spot-prime exposed ferrous metals such as nail heads on or in contact with surfaces to be painted with water-thinned paints, with a suitable corrosion-inhibitive primer capable of preventing flash rusting and compatible with the coating specified for the adjacent areas. Refer to MPI ASM and MPI MRM for additional more specific substrate preparation requirements.

3.2.1 Substrate Repair

- a. Repair substrate surface damaged during coating removal;
- b. Sand edges of adjacent soundly-adhered existing coatings so they are tapered as smooth as practical to areas involved with coating removal; and
- c. Clean and prime the substrate as specified.

3.3 PREPARATION OF METAL SURFACES

3.3.1 Existing and New Ferrous Surfaces

- a. Ferrous Surfaces including Shop-coated Surfaces and Small Areas That Contain Rust, Mill Scale and Other Foreign Substances: Solvent clean or detergent wash in accordance with SSPC SP 1 to remove oil and grease. Where shop coat is missing or damaged, clean according to SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3, or SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2.; Protect shop-coated ferrous surfaces from corrosion by treating and touching up corroded areas immediately upon detection.
- b. Surfaces With More Than 20 Percent Rust, Mill Scale, and Other Foreign Substances: Clean entire surface in accordance with

SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3 / SSPC-SP WJ-3/NACE WJ-3.

3.3.2 Final Ferrous Surface Condition:

3.3.2.1 Tool Cleaned Surfaces

Comply with SSPC SP 2 and SSPC SP 3. Use as a visual reference, photographs in SSPC VIS 3 for the appearance of cleaned surfaces.

3.3.2.2 Abrasive Blast Cleaned Surfaces

Comply with SSPC 7/NACE No.4, SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3, and SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2. Use as a visual reference, photographs in SSPC VIS 1 for the appearance of cleaned surfaces.

3.3.2.3 Waterjet Cleaned Surfaces

Comply with SSPC-SP WJ-1/NACE WJ-1, SSPC-SP WJ-2/NACE WJ-2, SSPC-SP WJ-3/NACE WJ-3 or SSPC-SP WJ-4/NACE WJ-4. Use as a visual reference, photographs in SSPC VIS 4/NACE VIS 7 for the appearance of cleaned surfaces.

3.3.3 Galvanized Surfaces

- a. New or Existing Galvanized Surfaces With Only Dirt and Zinc Oxidation Products: Clean with solvent, steam, or non-alkaline detergent solution in accordance with SSPC SP 1. Completely remove coating by brush-off abrasive blast if the galvanized metal has been passivated or stabilized. Do not "passivate" or "stabilize" new galvanized steel to be coated. If the absence of hexavalent stain inhibitors is not documented, test as described in ASTM D6386, Appendix X2, and remove by one of the methods described therein.
- b. Galvanized with Slight Coating Deterioration or with Little or No Rusting: Water jetting to SSPC-SP WJ-3/NACE WJ-3 to remove loose coating from surfaces with less than 20 percent coating deterioration and no blistering, peeling, or cracking. Use inhibitor as recommended by the coating manufacturer to prevent rusting.
- c. Galvanized With Severe Deteriorated Coating or Severe Rusting: Water jet to SSPC-SP WJ-3/NACE WJ-3 degree of cleanliness.

3.3.4 Non-Ferrous Metallic Surfaces

Aluminum and aluminum-alloy, lead, copper, and other nonferrous metal surfaces.

Surface Cleaning: Solvent clean in accordance with SSPC SP 1 and wash with mild non-alkaline detergent to remove dirt and water soluble contaminants.

3.3.5 Terne-Coated Metal Surfaces

Solvent clean surfaces with mineral spirits, ASTM D235. Wipe dry with clean, dry cloths.

3.3.6 Existing Surfaces with a Bituminous or Mastic-Type Coating

Remove chalk, mildew, and other loose material by washing with a solution

of 1/2 cup trisodium phosphate, 1/4 cup household detergent, one quart 5 percent sodium hypochlorite solution and 3 quarts of warm water.

3.4 APPLICATION

3.4.1 Coating Application

- a. Comply with applicable federal, state and local laws enacted to ensure compliance with Federal Clean Air Standards. Apply coating materials in accordance with SSPC PA 1. SSPC PA 1 methods are applicable to all substrates, except as modified herein.
- b. At the time of application, paint must show no signs of deterioration. Maintain uniform suspension of pigments during application.
- c. Unless otherwise specified or recommended by the paint manufacturer, paint may be applied by brush, roller, or spray. Use trigger operated spray nozzles for water hoses. Use rollers for applying paints and enamels of a type designed for the coating to be applied and the surface to be coated. Wear protective clothing and respirators when applying oil-based paints or using spray equipment with any paints.
- d. Only apply paints, except water-thinned types, to surfaces that are completely free of moisture as determined by sight or touch.
- e. Thoroughly work coating materials into joints, crevices, and open spaces. Pay special attention to ensure that all edges, corners, crevices, welds, and rivets receive a film thickness equal to that of adjacent painted surfaces.
- f. Apply each coat of paint so that dry film is of uniform thickness and free from runs, drops, ridges, waves, pinholes or other voids, laps, brush marks, and variations in color, texture, and finish. Completely hide all blemishes.
- g. Touch up damaged coatings before applying subsequent coats. Broom clean and clear dust from interior areas before and during the application of coating material.
- h. Drying Time: Allow time between coats, as recommended by the coating manufacturer, to permit thorough drying, but not to present topcoat adhesion problems. Provide each coat in specified condition to receive next coat.
- i. Primers, and Intermediate Coats: Do not allow primers or intermediate coats to dry more than 30 days, or longer than recommended by manufacturer, before applying subsequent coats. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for surface preparation if primers or intermediate coats are allowed to dry longer than recommended by manufacturers of subsequent coatings. Cover each preceding coat or surface completely by ensuring visually perceptible difference in shades of successive coats.
- j. Finished Surfaces: Provide finished surfaces free from runs, drops, ridges, waves, laps, brush marks, and variations in colors.

3.4.2 Mixing and Thinning of Paints

Reduce paints to proper consistency by adding fresh paint, except when thinning is mandatory to suit surface, temperature, weather conditions, application methods, or for the type of paint being used. Obtain written permission from the Contracting Officer to use thinners. Verify that the written permission includes quantities and types of thinners to use.

When thinning is allowed, thin paints immediately prior to application with not more than one pint of suitable thinner per gallon. The use of thinner does not relieve the Contractor from obtaining complete hiding, full film thickness, or required gloss. Thinning cannot cause the paint to exceed limits on volatile organic compounds. Do not mix paints of different manufacturers.

3.4.3 Coating Systems

- a. Systems by Substrates: Apply coatings that conform to the respective specifications listed in the following Tables:

Table for Exterior Applications	
MPI Division	Substrate Application
MPI Division 3	Exterior Concrete Paint Table
MPI Division 4	Exterior Concrete Masonry Units Paint Table
MPI Division 5	Exterior Metal, Ferrous and Non-Ferrous Paint Table
MPI Division 6	Exterior Wood; Dressed Lumber, Paneling, Decking, Shingles Paint Table
MPI Division 9	Exterior Stucco Paint Table
MPI Division 10	Exterior Cloth Coverings and Bituminous Coated Surfaces Paint Table

Table for Interior Applications	
MPI Division	Substrate Application
MPI Division 3	Interior Concrete Paint Table
MPI Division 4	Interior Concrete Masonry Units Paint Table
MPI Division 5	Interior Metal, Ferrous and Non-Ferrous Paint Table
MPI Division 6	Interior Wood Paint Table
MPI Division 9	Interior Plaster, Gypsum Board, Textured Surfaces Paint Table

- b. Minimum Dry Film Thickness (DFT): Apply paints, primers, varnishes, enamels, undercoats, and other coatings to a minimum dry film

thickness of 1.5 mil each coat unless specified otherwise in the Tables. Coating thickness, where specified, refers to the minimum dry film thickness.

- c. Coatings for Surfaces Not Specified Otherwise: Coat unspecified surfaces the same as surfaces having similar conditions of exposure.

3.5 COATING SYSTEMS FOR METAL

Apply coatings of Tables in MPI Division 5 for Exterior and Interior.

- a. Apply specified ferrous metal primer to steel surfaces on the same day that surface is cleaned, to surfaces that meet all specified surface preparation requirements at time of application.
- b. Inaccessible Surfaces: Prior to erection, use one coat of specified primer on metal surfaces that will be inaccessible after erection.
- c. Shop-primed Surfaces: Touch up exposed substrates and damaged coatings to protect from rusting prior to applying field primer.
- d. Surface Previously Coated with Epoxy or Urethane: Apply MPI 101, 1.5 mils DFT immediately prior to application of epoxy or urethane coatings.
- e. Pipes and Tubing: The semitransparent film applied to some pipes and tubing at the mill is not to be considered a shop coat. Overcoat these items with the specified ferrous-metal primer prior to application of finish coats.
- f. Exposed Nails, Screws, Fasteners, and Miscellaneous Ferrous Surfaces. On surfaces to be coated with water thinned coatings, spot prime exposed nails and other ferrous metal with latex primer MPI 107.

3.6 COATING SYSTEMS FOR WOOD AND PLYWOOD

- a. Apply coatings of Tables in MPI Division 6 for Exterior and Interior.
- b. Prior to erection, apply two coats of specified primer to treat and prime wood and plywood surfaces which will be inaccessible after erection.

3.7 PIPING IDENTIFICATION

Piping Identification, Including Surfaces In Concealed Spaces: Provide in accordance with MIL-STD-101. Place stenciling in clearly visible locations. On piping not covered by MIL-STD-101, stencil approved names or code letters, in letters a minimum of 1/2 inch high for piping and a minimum of 2 inches high elsewhere. Stencil arrow-shaped markings on piping to indicate direction of flow using black stencil paint.

3.8 INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE

In addition to meeting previously specified requirements, demonstrate mobility of moving components, including swinging and sliding doors, cabinets, and windows with operable sash, for inspection by the Contracting Officer. Perform this demonstration after appropriate curing and drying times of coatings have elapsed and prior to invoicing for final payment.

3.9 WASTE MANAGEMENT

As specified in the Waste Management Plan and as follows. Do not use kerosene or any such organic solvents to clean up water based paints. Properly dispose of paints or solvents in designated containers. Close and seal partially used containers of paint to maintain quality as necessary for reuse. Store in protected, well-ventilated, fire-safe area at moderate temperature. Place materials defined as hazardous or toxic waste in designated containers. Coordinate with manufacturer for take-back program. Set aside scrap to be returned to manufacturer for recycling into new product. When such a service is not available, contact local recyclers to reclaim the materials. Set aside extra paint for future color matches or reuse by the Government. Where local options exist for leftover paint recycling, collect all waste paint by type and provide for delivery to recycling or collection facility for reuse by local organizations.

3.10 PAINT TABLES

All DFT's are minimum values. Use only materials with a MPI GPS-1-14 green check mark having a minimum MPI "Environmentally Friendly" E2 rating based on VOC (EPA Method 24) content levels. Acceptable products are listed in the MPI Green Approved Products List, available at <http://www.specifygreen.com/APL/ProductIdxByMPInum.asp>.

3.10.1 Exterior Paint Tables

3.10.1.1 MPI Division 5: Exterior Metal, Ferrous and Non-Ferrous Paint Table

A. Steel / Ferrous Surfaces

(1) New Steel that has been hand or power tool cleaned to SSPC SP 2 or SSPC SP 3

Alkyd					
New	Existing, uncoated	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI EXT 5.1Q-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI REX 5.1D-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 23	MPI 94	MPI 94	5.25 mils
MPI EXT 5.1Q-G6 (Gloss)	MPI REX 5.1D-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 23	MPI 9	MPI 9	5.25 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.					

(2) New Steel that has been blast-cleaned to SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3

Alkyd

New	Existing, uncoated	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI EXT 5.1D-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI REX 5.1D-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 79	MPI 94	MPI 94	5.25 mils
MPI EXT 5.1D-G6 (Gloss)	MPI REX 5.1D-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 79	MPI 9	MPI 9	5.25 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.					

(3) New steel blast cleaned to SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2

Waterborne Light Industrial					
New	Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI EXT 5.1R-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI EXT 5.1R-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 101	MPI 108	MPI 163	8.5 mils
MPI EXT 5.1R-G6 (Gloss)	MPI EXT 5.1R-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 101	MPI 108	MPI 164	8.5 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.					

Pigmented Polyurethane					
New	Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI EXT 5.1J-G6 (Gloss)	MPI EXT 5.1J-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 101	MPI 108	MPI 72	8.5 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.					

B. Exterior Surfaces, Other Metals (Non-Ferrous)

(1) Aluminum, aluminum alloy and other miscellaneous non-ferrous metal items not otherwise specified except hot metal surfaces, roof surfaces, and new prefinished equipment

Alkyd				
New Galvanized Surfaces	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT

MPI EXT 5.4F-G1 (Flat)	MPI 95	MPI 8	MPI 8	5 mils
MPI EXT 5.4F-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 95	MPI 94	MPI 94	5 mils
MPI EXT 5.4F-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 95	MPI 9	MPI 9	5 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

Waterborne Light Industrial Coating				
New Galvanized Surfaces	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI EXT 5.4F-G1 (Flat)	MPI 95	MPI 161	MPI 161	5 mils
MPI EXT 5.4F-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 95	MPI 163	MPI 163	5 mils
MPI EXT 5.4F-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 95	MPI 164	MPI 164	5 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

(2) Surfaces adjacent to painted surfaces; Mechanical, Electrical, Fire extinguishing sprinkler systems including valves, conduit, hangers, supports, exposed copper piping, and miscellaneous metal items not otherwise specified except floors, hot metal surfaces, and new prefinished equipment

Alkyd				
New	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI EXT 5.1D-G1 (Flat)	MPI 79	MPI 8	MPI 8	5.25 mils
MPI EXT 5.1D-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 79	MPI 94	MPI 94	5.25 mils
MPI EXT 5.1D-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 79	MPI 9	MPI 9	5.25 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

Waterborne Light Industrial Coating

New	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI EXT 5.1C-G3(Eggshell)	MPI 79	MPI 161	MPI 161	5 mils
MPI EXT 5.1C-G5(Semigloss)	MPI 79	MPI 163	MPI 163	5 mils
MPI EXT 5.1C-G6(Gloss)	MPI 79	MPI 164	MPI 164	5 mils
Primer as recommended by manufacturer. Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

3.10.2 Interior Paint Tables

3.10.2.1 MPI Division 5: Interior Metal, Ferrous and Non-Ferrous Paint Table

A. Interior Steel / Ferrous Surfaces

(1) Metal, Mechanical, Electrical, Fire extinguishing sprinkler systems including valves, conduit, hangers, supports, Surfaces adjacent to painted surfaces (Match surrounding finish), exposed copper piping, and miscellaneous metal items not otherwise specified except floors, hot metal surfaces, and new prefinished equipment

High Performance Architectural Latex				
New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 5.1R-G2 (Flat)	MPI 76	MPI 138	MPI 138	5 mils
MPI INT 5.1R-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 76	MPI 139	MPI 139	5 mils
MPI INT 5.1R-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 76	MPI 141	MPI 141	5 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

Alkyd				
New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 5.1E-G2 (Flat)	MPI 76	MPI 49	MPI 49	5.25 mils

MPI INT 5.1E-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 76	MPI 51	MPI 51	5.25 mils
MPI INT 5.1E-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 76	MPI 47	MPI 47	5.25 mils
MPI INT 5.1E-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 76	MPI 48	MPI 48	5.25 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

(2) Metal in toilets, restrooms, shower areas, and other high-humidity areas not otherwise specified except floors, hot metal surfaces, and new prefinished equipment

Alkyd				
New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 5.1E-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 76	MPI 51	MPI 51	5.25 mils
MPI INT 5.1E-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 76	MPI 47	MPI 47	5.25 mils
MPI INT 5.1E-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 76	MPI 48	MPI 48	5.25 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

Alkyd; For Hand Tool Cleaning				
New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 5.1T-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 23	MPI 51	MPI 51	5.25 mils
MPI INT 5.1T-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 23	MPI 47	MPI 47	5.25 mils
MPI INT 5.1T-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 23	MPI 48	MPI 48	5.25 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

(3) Miscellaneous non-ferrous metal items not otherwise specified except floors, hot metal surfaces, and new prefinished equipment. Match surrounding finish

High Performance Architectural Latex

New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 5.4F-G2 (Flat)	MPI 95	MPI 138	MPI 138	5 mils
MPI INT 5.4F-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 95	MPI 139	MPI 139	5 mils
MPI INT 5.4F-G4 (Satin)	MPI 95	MPI 140	MPI 140	5 mils
MPI INT 5.4F-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 95	MPI 141	MPI 141	5 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

Alkyd				
New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 5.4J-G2 (Flat)	MPI 95	MPI 49	MPI 49	5 mils
MPI INT 5.4J-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 95	MPI 51	MPI 51	5 mils
MPI INT 5.4J-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 95	MPI 47	MPI 47	5 mils
MPI INT 5.4J-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 95	MPI 48	MPI 48	5 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

3.10.2.2 MPI Division 6: Interior Wood Paint Table

A. Interior Wood and Plywood

(1) New Wood and plywood not otherwise specified

High Performance Architectural Latex				
New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 6.4S-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 39	MPI 139	MPI 139	4.5 mils

MPI INT 6.4S-G4 (Satin)	MPI 39	MPI 140	MPI 140	4.5 mils
MPI INT 6.4S-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 39	MPI 141	MPI 141	4.5 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

Alkyd				
New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 6.4B-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 45	MPI 51	MPI 51	4.5 mils
MPI INT 6.4B-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 45	MPI 47	MPI 47	4.5 mils
MPI INT 6.4B-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 45	MPI 48	MPI 48	4.5 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

Institutional Low Odor / Low VOC Latex				
New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 6.3V-G2 (Flat)	MPI 39	MPI 144	MPI 144	4 mils
MPI INT 6.3V-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 39	MPI 145	MPI 145	4 mils
MPI INT 6.3V-G4 (Satin)	MPI 39	MPI 146	MPI 146	4 mils
MPI INT 6.3V-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 39	MPI 147	MPI 147	4 mils

B. Interior New Wood and Plywood, except floors; natural finish or stained

Natural finish, oil-modified polyurethane					
New	Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 6.4J-G4	MPI RIN 6.4L-G4	MPI 57	MPI 57	MPI 57	4 mils

MPI INT 6.4J-G6 (Gloss)	MPI RIN 6.4L-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 56	MPI 56	MPI 56	4 mils
----------------------------	----------------------------	--------	--------	--------	--------

Stained, oil-modified polyurethane						
New	Existing	Stain	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 6.4E-G4	MPI RIN 6.4G-G4	MPI 90	MPI 57	MPI 57	MPI 57	4 mils
MPI INT 6.4E-G6 (Gloss)	MPI RIN 6.4G-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 90	MPI 56	MPI 56	MPI 56	4 mils

Stained, Moisture Cured Urethane						
New	Existing	Stain	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 6.4V-G2 (Flat)	MPI RIN 6.4V-G2 (Flat)	MPI 90	MPI 71	MPI 71	MPI 71	4 mils
MPI INT 6.4V-G6 (Gloss)	MPI RIN 6.4V-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 90	MPI 31	MPI 31	MPI 31	4 mils

C. New Wood Doors; Pigmented finish

Alkyd				
New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 6.3B-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 45	MPI 47	MPI 47	4.5 mils
MPI INT 6.3B-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 45	MPI 48	MPI 48	4.5 mils
Note: Sand between all coats per manufacturers recommendations.				

Pigmented Polyurethane				
New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 6.1E-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 72	MPI 72	MPI 72	4.5 mils
Note: Sand between all coats per manufacturers recommendations.				

3.10.2.3 MPI Division 9: Interior Plaster, Gypsum Board, Textured Surfaces Paint Table

A. Interior New Wallboard not otherwise specified

Latex					
New	Existing, previously painted	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 9.2A-G2 (Flat)	RIN 9.2A-G2 (Flat)	MPI 50	MPI 44	MPI 44	4 mils
MPI INT 9.2A-G3 (Eggshell)	RIN 9.2A-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 50	MPI 52	MPI 52	4 mils
MPI INT 9.2A-G5 (Semigloss)	RIN 9.2A-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 50	MPI 54	MPI 54	4 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.					

High Performance Architectural Latex - High Traffic Areas					
New	Existing, previously painted	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 9.2B-G2 (Flat)	MPI RIN 9.2B-G2 (Flat)	MPI 50	MPI 138	MPI 138	4 mils
MPI INT 9.2B-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI RIN 9.2B-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 50	MPI 139	MPI 139	4 mils
MPI INT 9.2B-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI RIN 9.2B-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 50	MPI 141	MPI 141	4 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.					

Institutional Low Odor / Low VOC Latex, New

Institutional Low Odor / Low VOC Latex				
New	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 9.2M-G2 (Flat)	MPI 149	MPI 144	MPI 144	4 mils
MPI INT 9.2M-G3 (Eggshell)	MPI 149	MPI 145	MPI 145	4 mils
MPI INT 9.2M-G4 (Satin)	MPI 149	MPI 146	MPI 146	4 mils

MPI INT 9.2M-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 149	MPI 147	MPI 147	4 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

B. Interior New Wallboard in toilets, restrooms, shower areas, and other high humidity areas not otherwise specified

Waterborne Light Industrial Coating					
New, uncoated Existing	Existing, previously painted	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 9.2L-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI RIN 9.2L-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 50	MPI 153	MPI 153	4 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.					

Alkyd					
New, uncoated Existing	Existing, previously painted	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 9.2C-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI RIN 9.2C-G5 (Semigloss)	MPI 50	MPI 47	MPI 47	4 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.					

Epoxy, New, uncoated Existing

Epoxy				
New, uncoated Existing	Primer	Intermediate	Topcoat	System DFT
MPI INT 9.2E-G6 (Gloss)	MPI 50	MPI 77	MPI 77	4 mils
Topcoat: Coating to match adjacent surfaces.				

-- End of Section --

SECTION 09 96 00

HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

11/14

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

MPI ASM (2019) Architectural Painting
Specification Manual

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC 7/NACE No.4 (2007) Brush-Off Blast Cleaning

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Equipment List; G

SD-03 Product Data

Epoxy Coatings; G, AE

SD-04 Samples

Color Chips; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Epoxy Coatings; G, AE

Manufacturer's Printed Instructions; G, AE

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

Comply with Master Painters Institute (MPI) Standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List." Comply with the requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" before any project is started.

Submit an equipment list consisting of a list of proposed equipment to be used in performance of construction work.

Submit three color chips 3-inch by 4-inch or manufacture's pull-down of each finish color and gloss as scheduled.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver special coating materials to the project in their original containers bearing manufacturer's name, descriptive label, and coating formulations. Provide new and unopened containers.

Store special coating materials in tightly closed containers in a covered, well-ventilated area where they are not exposed to excessive heat, fumes, sparks, flame, or direct sunlight. Protect water-based coatings against freezing.

Store solvents, thinners, and equipment cleaners with the same care as the coating materials with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at a minimum 45 degrees F.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Submit manufacturer's catalog data including manufacturer's name and identification. Include detailed data analysis of each special coating material required for the project, with all the coating constituents measured as percentages of the total weight of the coating. Also provide manufacturer's data concerning application, thinning, and average coverage per gallon

2.2 MATERIALS

2.2.1 Epoxy Coatings

Provide at all exterior bollards, guardrails, handrails, and exposed metal framing. Conform to MPI ASM, No. 116 for epoxy coatings and epoxy block filler, as modified.

Resins for finish coats are based on a polyamide-cured, epoxy-resin material. Apply finish coats with a dry-film thickness of not less than 4 mils per coat. Finish color and gloss are as indicated.

2.2.1.1 Ferrous and Galvanized Metal Surface Coatings

Coatings on ferrous and galvanized metal surfaces consist of a prime coat and not less than two finish coats. Comply with MPI ASM, No. 101 for an epoxy zinc primer with a metallic-zinc pigment for the substrate to be coated and the end use of the coated surface. Ensure resin solids and zinc pigment are not less than 80 percent of the total weight of the coating material. Apply prime coat with a total dry-film thickness of not less than 4 mils. Provide an epoxy-based finished coat as specified.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

3.1.1 Surface Preparation

Protect adjacent materials and equipment against damage from spillage, dripping, and spatter of coating materials. Leave clean building

materials and equipment with all damaged surfaces corrected. Provide "WET PAINT" signs to indicate newly painted surfaces.

Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by the Contracting Officer, and leave in an undamaged condition. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

Provide forced ventilation for interior spaces during application and drying of coatings to prevent the buildup of toxic or explosive concentrations of solvent vapors.

Provide fire extinguishers of the required quantity and correct type to combat flammable liquid fires.

Dispose of rags that are used to wipe up coating materials, solvents, and thinners by drenching with water and placing them in a covered metal container

3.1.2 Cleaning

At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

Clean application equipment promptly and thoroughly with a suitable solvent after each use and stored in a clean, covered, well-ventilated container.

3.1.3 Steel Substrates

Remove rust and loose mill scale. Clean using methods recommended in writing by coating manufacturer. Conform to SSPC 7/NACE No.4 for blast cleaning.

3.1.4 Galvanized-Metal Substrates

Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied coatings.

3.1.5 Coating Material Preparation

Mix and prepare coating materials in accordance with the coating manufacturer's printed instructions for applying the particular material and coat. Keep materials which are not in actual use in closed containers.

Coating materials that have been mixed with an automatic shaker are allowed to stand to let air bubbles escape, then given a final hand mixing before application. Stir materials so as to produce a mixture of uniform density. Stir at frequent intervals during application to prevent skinning. Do not stir film which may form on the surface of the material. Remove film and strain, if necessary.

3.1.5.1 Thinning

Thinning is done in accordance with coating manufacturer's printed directions for the particular material and coat.

3.1.5.2 Tinting

Ensure prime and intermediate coats of paint are slightly different tints from the finish coat to facilitate identification of each coat. Tinting is done by the coating manufacturer and clearly identified as to color and coat.

3.2 APPLICATION

Do not perform exterior painting in damp or rainy weather. Interior painting is not allowed until the building is enclosed and has thoroughly dried out. Painting is not allowed below 50 degrees F or above 95 degrees F. Apply paint in accordance with the coating manufacturer's recommendations, and as specified.

Ensure coating application is done by skilled applicators. Apply coatings to clean and properly prepared surfaces. Apply coatings with clean, high-quality application equipment. Allow sufficient time between coats to ensure complete drying and curing. Sand and dust surfaces between coatings, as required, to produce a surface free of visible defects. Lightly sand high gloss coatings and clear finishes between coats to ensure bond of following coats.

Apply coats to the surfaces in an even film. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, application marks, runs, sags, and other similar surface imperfections are not acceptable. Remove defective coating applications and re-coat as directed.

Ensure coating lines such as wainscots are sharp, true, and well-defined. Tape may be used to establish coating lines, providing tape is removed before ragging or sawtooth edges form.

Ensure surfaces, including edges, corners, crevices, welds, and other similar changes in surface plane, meet the dry-film thickness not less than specified.

3.2.1 Brush Application

Use clean, proper size brushes for high-quality application of the specified coating materials. Brush out slow-dry coatings. Brush out quick-dry coatings only enough to spread out evenly.

3.2.2 Roller Application

Use clean roller covers of the proper nap length, nap texture, and material for high-quality application of the specified coating materials.

Ensure roller application is equivalent in all respects to the same coats applied by high-quality brush application.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.3.1 Field Test

Government may take dry-film tests from time to time on finished surfaces. Apply additional coatings to surfaces where there is less than the minimum specified dry-film thickness.

3.3.2 Repairing

Remove damaged and unacceptable portions of completed work and replace with new work to match adjacent surfaces at no additional cost to the Government.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 10 14 00.10

EXTERIOR SIGNAGE

08/17, CHG 1: 11/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS C1.1M/C1.1	(2012) Recommended Practices for Resistance Welding
AWS D1.1/D1.1M	(2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel
AWS D1.2/D1.2M	(2014; Errata 1 2014; Errata 2 2020) Structural Welding Code - Aluminum

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M	(2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A653/A653M	(2020) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A924/A924M	(2020) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A1011/A1011M	(2018a) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength
ASTM B26/B26M	(2018; E 2018) Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings
ASTM B108/B108M	(2019) Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Permanent Mold Castings
ASTM B209	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM B221 (2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

ASTM E84 (2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM AMP 500 (2006) Metal Finishes Manual

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

All exterior signage shall be fabricated and installed by DPW OMD sign shop. Prior to installation of signs a digging permit shall be obtained from DPW and all utilities shall be marked. Exterior signage must be of the design, detail, sizes, types, and message content shown on the drawings, must conform to the requirements specified, and must be provided at the locations indicated. Submit exterior signage schedule in electronic media with spread sheet format. Spread sheet must include sign location, sign type, and message. Signs must be complete with lettering, framing as detailed, and related components for a complete installation. Each sample must consist of a complete sign panel with letters and symbols. Samples may be installed in the work, provided each sample is identified and location recorded. Submit three color samples for each material requiring color and 12 inch square sample of sign face color sample.

1.2.1 Wind Load Requirements

Exterior signage must be designed to withstand 127 mph windload. Submit design analysis and supporting calculations performed in support of specified signage.

1.2.2 Character Proportions and Heights

Letters and numbers on indicated signs for handicapped-accessible buildings must have a width-to-height ratio between 3:5 and 1:1 and a stroke-width-to-height ratio between 1:5 and 1:10. Characters and numbers on indicated signs must be sized according to the viewing distance from which they are to be read. The minimum height is measured using an upper case letter "X". Lower case characters are permitted.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Approved Detail Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Modular Exterior Signage System

Installation

Exterior Signage; G, AE

Wind Load Requirements

SD-04 Samples

Exterior Signage; G, AE

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Protection and Cleaning; G, AE

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

Signs, plaques, and dimensional letters must be the standard product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products. Items of equipment must essentially duplicate equipment that has been in satisfactory use at least 2 years prior to bid opening.

1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Materials must be wrapped for shipment and storage, delivered to the jobsite in manufacturer's original packaging, and stored in a clean, dry area in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.6 WARRANTY

Manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties that extend beyond a one year period must be provided.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MODULAR EXTERIOR SIGNAGE SYSTEM

Exterior signage must consist of a system of coordinated directional, identification, and regulatory type signs located where shown. Dimensions, details, materials, message content, and design of signage must be as shown. Submit manufacturer's descriptive data and catalog cuts.

2.1.1 Free-Standing Base Mount Pylon/Monolith Type Signs

2.1.1.1 Framing

Interior framing must consist of aluminum tube columns welded to companion plates. Perimeter framing must consist of aluminum angle framing welded to the post and plate system as designed. Framing members must be designed to permit panel removal. Mounting must be provided as shown. Framing members of steel must be finished with semi-gloss baked enamel or two-component acrylic polyurethane. Openings must be sealed from moisture and made tamper-proof.

2.1.1.2 Exterior Sheeting Panels

Modular panels must be provided in sizes shown on drawings. Panels must be fabricated a minimum of 0.090 inch thick aluminum. Top and end panels

must be removable and must be secured by 3/16 inch socket head jack nuts. Finish for metal panels must be semi-gloss baked enamel two-component acrylic polyurethane.

2.1.1.3 Mounting

Mount by securing to concrete foundation as indicated.

2.1.1.4 Finishes

Base finish must be semi-gloss baked enamel or two-component acrylic polyurethane. Metal panel system finish must be baked enamel or two-component acrylic polyurethane. Signs shall have reflective white vinyl borders.

2.1.2 Panel And Post/Panel Type Signs

2.1.2.1 Posts

One-piece galvanized steel posts must be provided with minimum 0.125 inch wall thickness. Posts must be designed to accept panel framing system described. The post must be designed to permit attachment of panel framing system without exposed fasteners. Caps must be provided for each post.

2.1.2.2 Panel Framing System

Panel framing consisting of aluminum sections and interlocking track components must be designed to interlock with posts with concealed fasteners.

2.1.2.3 Panels

Modular message panels must be provided in sizes shown on drawings. Panels must be fabricated a minimum of 0.080 inch aluminum. Panels with metal return sheeting must have welded corners, ground smooth.

2.1.2.4 Finishes

Post finish must be semi-gloss baked enamel or two-component acrylic polyurethane. Metal panel system finish must be baked enamel or two-component acrylic polyurethane.

2.1.2.5 Mounting

Provide permanent mounting by embedding posts in concrete foundation as indicated. Provide removable mounting by a steel sleeve embedded in concrete as indicated.

2.2 GRAPHICS FOR EXTERIOR SIGNAGE SYSTEMS

2.2.1 Graphics

Signage graphics must conform to the following:

- a. Pressure sensitive precision cut vinyl letters with reflecting surface must be provided.

2.2.2 Messages

See drawings and schedule for message content. Typeface: Helvetica medium. Type size as indicated.

2.3 ALUMINUM ALLOY PRODUCTS

Aluminum alloy products must conform to ASTM B209 for sheet or plate, ASTM B221 for extrusions and ASTM B26/B26M or ASTM B108/B108M for castings. Aluminum extrusions must be provided at least 1/8 inch thick and aluminum plate or sheet at least 16 gauge thick. Welding for aluminum products must conform to AWS C1.1M/C1.1.

2.4 ORGANIC COATING

Clean, prime and give surfaces a semi-gloss baked enamel finish in accordance with NAAMM AMP 500, AMP 505, with total dry film thickness not less than 1.2 mils.

2.5 STEEL PRODUCTS

Structural steel products must conform to ASTM A36/A36M. Sheet and strip steel products must conform to ASTM A1011/A1011M. Welding for steel products must conform to AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

2.6 VINYL SHEETING FOR GRAPHICS

Vinyl sheeting must be 5 to 7 year premium type and must be in accordance with the flammability requirements of ASTM E84 and must be a minimum 0.003 inch film thickness. Film must include a precoated pressure sensitive adhesive backing, Class 1, or positionable pressure sensitive adhesive backing, Class 3.

2.7 ANCHORS AND FASTENERS

Exposed anchor and fastener materials must be compatible with metal to which applied and must match in color and finish and must be non-rusting, non-corroding, and non-staining. Exposed fasteners must be tamper-proof.

2.8 SHOP FABRICATION AND MANUFACTURE

2.8.1 Factory Workmanship

Work must be assembled in the shop, as far as practical, ready for installation at the site. Work that cannot be shop assembled must be given a trial fit in the shop to ensure proper field assembly. Holes for bolts and screws must be drilled or punched. Drilling and punching must produce clean, true lines and surfaces. Welding to or on structural steel must be in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Welding must be continuous along the entire area of contact. Exposed welds must be ground smooth. Exposed surfaces of work must have a smooth finish and exposed riveting must be flush. Fastenings must be concealed where practical. Items specified to be galvanized must be by hot-dip process after fabrication if practical. Galvanization must be in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M and ASTM A653/A653M, as applicable. Other metallic coatings of steel sheet must be in accordance with ASTM A924/A924M. Joints exposed to the weather must be formed to exclude water. Drainage and weep holes must be included as required to prevent condensation buildup.

2.8.2 Dissimilar Materials

Where dissimilar metals are in contact, or where aluminum is in contact with concrete, mortar, masonry, wet or pressure-treated wood, or absorptive materials subject to wetting, the surfaces must be protected with a coat of asphalt varnish or a coat of zinc-molybdate primer to prevent galvanic or corrosive action.

2.8.3 Shop Painting

Surfaces of miscellaneous metal work, except nonferrous metal, corrosion resisting steel, and zinc-coated work, must be given one coat of zinc-molybdate primer or an approved rust-resisting treatment and metallic primer in accordance with manufacturer's standard practice. Surfaces of items to be embedded in concrete must not be painted. Upon completion of work, damaged surfaces must be recoated.

2.9 COLOR, FINISH, AND CONTRAST

Color must be selected from manufacturers standard colors. Color listed is not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers. For buildings required to be handicapped-accessible, the characters and background of signs must be eggshell, matte, or other non-glare finish. Characters and symbols must contrast with their background - either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Signs, plaques, or dimensional letters must be installed in accordance with approved manufacturer's instructions at locations shown on the approved detail drawings; submit drawings showing elevations of each type of sign; dimensions, details, and methods of mounting or anchoring; shape and thickness of materials; and details of construction. A schedule showing the location, each sign type, and message must be included. Circuits installed underground must conform to the requirements of Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION. Steel conduits installed underground and illuminated signage mounted directly on buildings must be in conformance with the requirements of Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Signs must be installed plumb and true at mounting heights indicated, and by method shown or specified. Signs mounted on other surfaces must not be installed until finishes on such surfaces have been completed. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions and cleaning instructions.

3.1.1 Anchorage

Anchorage and fastener materials must be in accordance with approved manufacturer's instructions for the indicated substrate. Anchorage not otherwise specified or indicated must include slotted inserts, expansion shields, and powder-driven fasteners when approved for concrete; toggle bolts and through bolts for masonry; machine carriage bolts for steel; lag bolts and screws for wood.

3.1.2 Protection and Cleaning

The work must be protected against damage during construction. Hardware

and electrical equipment must be adjusted for proper operation. Glass, frames, and other sign surfaces must be cleaned in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. After signs are completed and inspected, cover all project identification, directional, and other signs which may mislead the public. Covering must be maintained until instructed to be removed by the Contracting Officer or until the facility is to be opened for business. Submit six copies of maintenance instructions listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guides. The instructions must include simplified diagrams for the equipment as installed. Signs must be cleaned, as required, at time of cover removal.

3.2 FIELD PAINTED FINISH

Miscellaneous metals and frames must be field painted in accordance with Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS. Anodized metals, masonry, and glass must be protected from paint. Finish must be free of scratches or other blemishes.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 10 14 00.20

INTERIOR SIGNAGE

08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA DAF45 (2003; Reaffirmed 2009) Designation System for Aluminum Finishes

AA PK-1 (2015) Pink Sheets: Designations and Chemical Composition Limits for Aluminum Alloys in the Form of Castings & Ingot

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

AAMA 2604 (2017a) Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for High Performance Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.2/D1.2M (2014; Errata 1 2014; Errata 2 2020) Structural Welding Code - Aluminum

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM B221 (2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

ASTM D635 (2018) Standard Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC/ANSI A117.1 (2009) Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA LD 3 (2005) Standard for High-Pressure Decorative Laminates

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 101 (2021) Life Safety Code

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and
Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act
(ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Room Identification And Directional Signage System; G, AE

Exit Door Tactile Sign; G, AE

Door Tags; G, AE

SD-04 Samples

Interior Signage; G, AE

Room Identification And Directional Signage System; G, AE

Exit Door Tactile Sign; G, AE

Door Tags; G, AE

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Approved Manufacturer's Instructions; G, AE

Protection and Cleaning; G, AE

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Samples

Submit interior signage samples of each of the following sign types showing typical quality, workmanship and color: all sign types included in project.

1.3.2 Detail Drawings

Submit detail drawings showing elevations of each type of sign,

dimensions, details and methods of mounting or anchoring, mounting height, shape and thickness of materials, and details of construction. Include a schedule showing the location, each sign type, and message.

1.3.3 Sign Fabricator

Sign Fabricator to follow room number strategies created by designer. The room numbering system to be reviewed and approved by the Contracting Officer and command end users during the shop drawing phase, and prior to fabrication.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Package materials to prevent damage and deterioration during shipment, handling, storage and installation. Deliver products to the jobsite in manufacturer's original packaging and store in a clean, dry area in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.5 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's warranty to repair or replace defective interior signage materials and workmanship for a period of 2 years from date of final acceptance of the work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ROOM IDENTIFICATION AND DIRECTIONAL SIGNAGE SYSTEM

Provide signs, plaques, directories, and dimensional building letters that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products that essentially duplicate signs that have been in satisfactory use at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Obtain signage from a single manufacturer with edges and corners of finished letter forms and graphics true and clean.

2.1.1 Modular Sign Systems

Provide manufactured pre-engineered component-based sign system, consisting of a combination of aluminum extrusions and injection molded parts, pre-engineered and designed to create an updatable sign system that allows for easy and inexpensive updates and changes. Provide system with incremental widths and heights that permit the assembly of multiple inserts of variable size to create a single sign. Provide a tamper-resistant sign which requires a special tool to change inserts composed of extruded aluminum for applied graphics. Provide continuous extruded aluminum endcaps in square 1/4 inch thick profile. Sign inserts are required to be front or side loading.

2.1.2 Standard Room Signs

Provide signs that include tactile letters, symbols and Braille for interior rooms or spaces where the sign is not likely to change over time. Tactile text descriptions are required for pictograms that are provided to identify a permanent room. Examples include interior signs that label restrooms, stairs, room numbers or letters, and room names. These permanent room signs can include paper inserts for updatable information.

2.1.2.1 Tactile Letters, Symbols and Braille

Provide ADA compliant material per 36 CFR 1191 which is raised 1/32 inch from the first surface, has a minimum 5/8 inch in height and is an ADA acceptable font. The color of the tactile letters is required to contrast with the sign face color per ADA standards. The ADA required Braille has a minimum durometer reading of 90. All raised letters, numbers and symbols are to comply.

2.1.3 Directional Signs

Directional signs provide arrows with messages which point to critical destinations such as departments, offices, or other pertinent destinations. These can be a panel sign system with a series of permanently attached messages or a modular system with updatable inserts. Directional signs have header panels with applied or direct print messages.

2.1.4 Message Inserts

Provide updatable message inserts covered with a clear matte 0.015 inch vinyl protective overlay. The insert is typeset message laser printed on paper card stock. Provide paper and software with message template for creating text and symbols for computers identified for Government production of paper inserts after project completion. Manufacturer is required to offer online ordering capabilities to facilitate and expedite ordering packages of replacement, color-coated paper inserts.

2.1.5 Type of Mounting for Signs

Provide surface mounted signs mounted with concealed mechanical fastening through the holders. Secure inserts in holders when captured by side profiles of extruded aluminum holders. Mount framed plaques with manufacturer's standard (1/6 inch) 1.59 mm thick closed cell vinyl foam with adhesive backing. Adhesive must be transparent, long aging, high tech formulation on two sides of the vinyl foam. Double-faced tape consisting of acrylic adhesive on polyurethane foam used in conjunction with silicone adhesive. Provide signs with aluminum ceiling/projecting mount attachment extrusion to secure to ceiling or wall surface, along with matting ceiling/projecting mount track extrusion for hanging, projecting, and double-sided signs. Provide mounting for ceiling/projecting mount attachment extrusion by mechanical fasteners, selected based on wall or ceiling conditions. Mount track extrusion hinges over width of mount attachment and secured with 3.5 by 0.06 mm (6-32 inch) by 6 mm (1/4 inch) cone point stainless steel set screws.

2.1.6 Character Proportions and Heights

Letters and numbers on signs conform to 36 CFR 1191.

2.2 EXIT DOOR TACTILE SIGN

Provide tactile sign with the message EXIT at each exit door that requires an exit sign to conform with NFPA 101. Sign tactile message is to comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

2.3 DOOR TAGS

Provide one door tag plate for each room entry door. In size as indicated on drawings. Provide room number to match architectural floor plan room

number.

2.3.1 Engraved Copy

Machine engrave letters, numbers, symbols, and other graphics into panel sign on face to produce precisely formed copy and sharp images, incised to uniform depth. Melamine plastic engraving stock used for ADA compliant graphic is three-ply lamination contrasting color core meeting ASTM D635.

2.4 PRESSURE SENSITIVE LETTERS

2.4.1 Fabrication

Ensure that vinyl letter edges and corners of finished letterforms and graphics are true and clean. Do not use letterforms and graphics with rounded positive or negative corners, nicked, cut, or ragged edges.

2.4.2 Size

Letter size: as indicated.

2.5 MATERIALS

2.5.1 Aluminum Alloy Products

Aluminum extrusions are at least 1/8 inch thick, and aluminum plate or sheet are at least 0.0508 inch thick. Extrusions conform to ASTM B221; plate and sheet conforms to ASTM B209. Where anodic coatings are specified, alloy conforms to AA PK-1 alloy designation 514.0. Exposed anodized aluminum finishes are as shown. Welding for aluminum products conforms to AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

2.5.2 Anodic Coating

Anodized finish conforms to AA DAF45 as follows:

- a. Clear (natural) designation AA-M10-C22-A31, Architectural Class II 0.4 mil or thicker.
- b. Integral color anodized designation AA-M10-C22-A32, Architectural Class 0.4 to 0.7 mil.
- c. Electrolytically deposited color-anodized designation AA-M10-C22-A34, Architectural Class II 0.4 to 0.7 mil.

2.5.3 Organic Coating

Organic coating conforms to AAMA 2604, with total dry film thickness not less than 1.2 mils.

2.5.4 Plastic Laminate Sheet

ANSI/NEMA LD 3, general purpose HGS grade, 0.048 inch nominal thickness.

2.5.5 Fabrication and Manufacture

2.5.5.1 Factory Workmanship

Holes for bolts and screws are drilled or punched. Drilling and punching

produces clean, true lines and surfaces. Exposed surfaces of work have a smooth finish; exposed riveting is flush. Conceal fastenings where practicable.

2.5.5.2 Dissimilar Materials

Where dissimilar metals are in contact, protect surfaces prevent galvanic or corrosive action.

2.5.6 Typeface

Helvetica Neue 55 Roman.

2.6 GRAPHICS

Provide signage graphics for modular signs to the following:

2.6.1 Subsurface Copy

Copy is transferred to the back face of clear acrylic sheeting forming the panel face to produce precisely formed opaque image. This method bonds all sign elements (color, graphics, lettering, Braille and substrate) into a single unit.

2.6.2 Photopolymer

Integral graphics and Braille achieved by photomechanical stratification processes. Provide photopolymer used for ADA compliant graphics of the type that has a minimum durometer reading of 90. Tactile graphics are raised 1/32 inch from the first surface of plaque by photomechanical stratification process.

2.6.3 Graphic Blast Raised Copy

Background is sandblasted to a uniform depth of 1/32 inch leaving raised text and Braille. Background is factory-finished with polyurethane paint.

2.7 COLOR, FINISH, AND CONTRAST

Provide color as indicated; colors listed are not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers. Finish of eggshell, matte, or other non-glare finish for all signs as required in handicapped-accessible buildings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install signs plumb and true and in accordance with approved manufacturer's instructions at locations shown on the detail drawings. Submit operating instructions outlining the step-by-step procedures required for system operation. The instructions include simplified diagrams for the system as installed, the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. Provide each set permanently bound with a hard cover. The following identification must be inscribed on the covers: "OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS", name and location of the facility, name of the Contractor, and contract number. Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE DATA. Mounting

height and mounting location complies with 36 CFR 1191. Install required blocking. Do not install signs on doors or other surfaces until finishes on such surfaces have been installed. Signs installed on glass surfaces are installed with matching blank back-up plates in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

Do not install items that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.1.1 Anchorage

Provide anchorage in accordance with approved manufacturer's instructions. Anchorage not otherwise specified or shown includes slotted inserts, expansion shields, and powder-driven fasteners when approved for concrete; toggle bolts and through bolts for masonry; machine carriage bolts for steel; lag bolts and screws for wood. Provide exposed anchor and fastener materials compatible with metal to which applied with matching color and finish.

- a. Signs mounted to painted gypsum board surfaces must be removable for painting maintenance.
- b. Mount signs to lay-in ceiling grids with clip connections to ceiling tees.
- c. Install signs mounted on metal surfaces with magnetic tape.
- d. Install signs mounted on fabric surfaces with hook and loop tape or pin mount.
- e. Install signs to workstation panels with panel clips.

3.1.2 Protection and Cleaning

Protect the work against damage during construction. Adjust hardware and electrical equipment for proper operation. Clean glass, frames, and other sign surfaces at completion of signage installation in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 10 21 13

TOILET COMPARTMENTS

08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A167	(2011) Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
ASTM A336/A336M	(2021) Standard Specification for Alloy Steel Forgings for Pressure and High-Temperature Parts
ASTM A385/A385M	(2020) Standard Practice for Providing High-Quality Zinc Coatings (Hot-Dip)
ASTM B36/B36M	(2018) Standard Specification for Brass Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Rolled Bar
ASTM B86	(2018; E 2021) Standard Specification for Zinc and Zinc-Aluminum (ZA) Alloy Foundry and Die Castings
ASTM B221	(2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
ASTM D7611/D7611M	(2013; E 2014) Standard Practice for Coding Plastic Manufactured Articles for Resin Identification

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC A117.1	(2017) Standard And Commentary Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
------------	---

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS	SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage
-----	--

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-60003 (Basic; Notice 1) Partitions, Toilet,
Complete

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and
Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act
(ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication Drawings

Installation Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Cleaning and Maintenance Instructions

Colors And Finishes

Anchoring Devices and Fasteners

Hardware and Fittings

Brackets

Door Hardware

Toilet Enclosures

Urinal Screens

Pilaster Shoes

Finishes; G, AE

SD-04 Samples

Colors and Finishes; G, AE

Hardware and Fittings

Anchoring Devices and Fasteners

SD-07 Certificates

Warranty

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Plastic Identification; G,AE

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality

1.3.1.1 Laminated Plastic and Solid Phenolic Products

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

Comply with to ICC A117.1 code for access for the handicapped operation of toilet compartment door and hardware.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials in the manufacturer's original unopened packages with the brand, item identification, and project reference clearly marked. Store components in a dry location that is adequately ventilated; free from dust, water, other contaminants, and damage during delivery, storage, and construction.

1.6 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's warranty to repair or replace defective materials and workmanship for a period of one year from date of final acceptance of the work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Provide a complete and usable toilet partition system, including toilet enclosures, urinal screens, system of panels, hardware, and support components. Furnish the partition system from a single manufacturer, with a standard product as shown in the most recent catalog data. Submit Fabrication Drawings for toilet partitions and urinal screens consisting of fabrication and assembly details to be performed in the factory. Submit manufacturer's Cleaning and Maintenance Instructions in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

2.1.1 Plastic Identification

Verify that plastic products to be incorporated into the project are

labeled in accordance with ASTM D7611/D7611M. Where products are not labeled, provide product data indicating polymeric information in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Type 1	Polyethylene Terephthalate (PET, PETE)
Type 2	High Density Polyethylene (HDPE)
Type 3	Vinyl (Polyvinyl Chloride or PVC)
Type 4	Low Density Polyethylene (LDPE)
Type 5	Polypropylene (PP)
Type 6	Polystyrene (PS)
Type 7	Other. Use of this code indicates that the package in question is made with a resin other than the six listed above, or is made of more than one resin listed above, and used in a multi-layer combination.

2.2 MATERIALS

2.2.1 Solid Polyethylene Panels (Finish 5)

Provide high density polyethylene (HDPE) suitable for exposed application. Waterproof, non-absorbent and graffiti resistant textured surface with a Flame Spread Index of 75 or less, and a Smoke Developed Index of 450 or less.

2.2.2 Anchoring Devices and Fasteners

Provide steel anchoring devices and fasteners hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication, in conformance with ASTM A385/A385M and ASTM A123/A123M. Conceal all galvanized anchoring devices.

2.2.3 Brackets

Provide two-ear panel wall brackets, T-style, 1 inch stock. Provide stirrup style panel-to-pilaster brackets.

2.2.4 Hardware and Fittings

2.2.4.1 General Requirements

Provide hardware for the toilet partition system that complies with CID A-A-60003 for the specified type and style of partitions. Provide hardware finish highly resistant to alkalis, urine, and other common toilet room acids. Comply with 36 CFR 1191 of latching devices and hinges for handicap compartments; provide stainless steel devices and hinges with door latches that operate without either tight grasping or twisting of the wrist of the operator. Submit three samples of each item, including anchoring devices and fasteners. Approved hardware samples may be installed in the work if properly identified.

Material	Conformance Standard
----------	----------------------

Cold-rolled sheet steel	ASTM A336/A336M, commercial quality
Zinc-base alloy	ASTM B86, Alloy AC41-A
Brass	ASTM B36/B36M, Alloy C26800
Aluminum	ASTM B221
Corrosion-resistant steel	ASTM A167, Type 304

2.2.4.2 Finishes

- a. Provide stainless steel with a No. 4 finish.

2.2.5 Door Hardware

2.2.5.1 Hinges

Provide adjustable hinges to hold in-swinging doors open at any angle up to 90 degrees and outswinging doors up to 10 degrees. Provide self-lubricating hinges with the indicated swing. Provide hinges that are cutout-insert type and have the following type of return movement:

- a. Gravity return movement

2.2.5.2 Latch and Pull

Provide latch and pull that is a combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper equipped with emergency access. Provide surface mounted latch.

2.2.5.3 Coat Hooks

Provide coat hooks that are combination units with hooks and rubber tipped pins.

2.3 PARTITION PANELS AND DOORS

Fabricate partition panels, and pilasters of materials and construction listed:

Provide plastic (HDPE) partition panels, doors and pilasters not less than 1 inch thick.

Provide solid polyethylene toilet partitions and screens with recycled content of 30 percent minimum.

2.3.1 Toilet Enclosures

Provide toilet enclosures that comply with CID A-A-60003, Type I, Style A, floor supported. Furnish width, length, and height of toilet enclosures as shown. Finish surface of panels are solid polyethylene (Finish 5); water resistant; graffiti resistant; non-absorbent radius beveled edges. Reinforce panels indicated to receive toilet paper holders or grab bars for mounting of the items required, and provide cut outs for through partition toilet accessories. Provide grab bars to withstand a bending stress, shear stress, shear force, and a tensile force induced by 250 lbf.

Grab bars cannot rotate within their fittings.

2.3.2 Urinal Screens

Provide urinal screens that comply with CID A-A-60003, Type III, Style F, wall hung. Provide finish for surface of screens as solid polyethylene (Finish 5) ; water resistant; graffiti resistant; non-absorbent with radius beveled edges; with manufacturer's standard post design of materials matching the thickness and construction of pilasters. Furnish width and height of urinal screens as shown. Provide thickness to match toilet compartment panel construction. Secure wall hung urinal screens with a minimum of three wall stirrup brackets. Fabricate screens from the same types of panels and pilasters as the toilet partitions. Use corrosion-resistant steel fittings and fasteners.

2.4 FLOOR-ANCHORED PARTITIONS

Provide pilasters in size indicated that are manufacturer's standard corrosion resistant anchoring assemblies complete with leveling adjustment nuts and pilasters for structural connection to floor. Provide anchoring device at the bottom of the pilaster consisting of a steel bar not less than 1/2 by 7/8 inch welded to the reinforced face sheets and having not less than two 3/8 inch round anchorage devices for securing to the floor slab. Provide anchorage devices complete with threaded rods, expansion shields, lock washers, and leveling-adjustment nuts. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal anchorage.

2.5 PILASTER SHOES

Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal floor-mounted anchorage. Provide stainless steel pilaster shoes. Height is a minimum 3 inches.

2.6 HARDWARE

Provide hardware for the toilet partition system that complies with CID A-A-60003 for the specified type and style of partitions. Use a hardware finish that is highly resistant to alkalis, urine, and other common toilet room acids. Hardware includes: chrome plated nonferrous cast pivot hinges, gravity type, adjustable for door close positioning; nylon bearings; chrome plated aluminum door latch; door strike and keeper with rubber bumper; and cast alloy chrome plated coat hook and bumper, . Provide latching devices and hinges for handicap compartments complying with 36 CFR 1191 and chrome-plated steel door latches that operate without either tight grasping or twisting of the wrist of the operator. Use stainless steel, tamper proof type screws and bolts. Wall mounting brackets are continuous, full height, stainless steel , in accordance with toilet compartment manufacturer's instructions.. Provide floor-mounted anchorage consisting of corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with threaded rods, lock washers, and leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for structural connection to floor.

2.7 COLORS AND FINISHES

2.7.1 Colors

Provide color as indicated; colors listed are not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers.

Color of pilaster shoes matches the core of solid plastic compartments.

Submit three samples showing color and a finished edge on two adjacent sides and core construction, each not less than 12 inch square.

2.7.2 Finishes

2.7.2.1 Finishes No. 4, No 4A and No. 5

Provide manufacturer's standard solid polyethylene (Finish 5) formed under high pressure rendering a single component section not less than 1 inch thick. Colors extend throughout the panel thickness.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Take field measurements prior to the preparation of drawing and fabrication to ensure proper fits. Verify that field measurements, surfaces, substrates and conditions are as required, and ready to receive work. Verify correct spacing of plumbing fixtures. Verify correct location of built in framing, anchorage, and bracing. Report in writing to Contracting Officer prevailing conditions that adversely affect satisfactory execution of the work of this section. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 METAL PARTITION FABRICATION

- a. Fabricate metal partition panels, doors, screens, and pilasters required for the project from galvanized-steel face sheets with formed edges. Laminate face sheets via pressure to the sound-deadening core with edges sealed with a continuous locking strip and corners mitered and welded. Ground all welds smooth. Provide concealed reinforcement for installation of hardware, fittings, and accessories. Surface of face sheets must be, free from wave, warp, or buckle.
- b. Before application of an enamel coating system, solvent-clean galvanized-steel surfaces to remove processing compounds, oils, and other contaminants harmful to coating-system adhesion. After cleaning, coat the surfaces with a metal-pretreatment phosphate coating. After pretreatment, finish exposed galvanized-steel surfaces with a baked-enamel coating system as specified.
- c. Provide an enamel coating system consisting of a factory-applied baked acrylic enamel coating system. Provide a coating system that is a durable, washable, stain-resistant, and mar-resistant finish.

3.3 INSTALLATION

Do not install items that show visual evidence of biological growth. Install partitions rigid, straight, plumb, and level, with the panels centered between the fixtures. Provide a panel clearance of not more than 1/2 inch and secure the panels to walls and pilasters with continuous full height wall brackets. Locate wall brackets so that holes for wall bolts occur in masonry or tile joints. Secure panels to pilasters with brackets matching the wall brackets. Provide for adjustment due to minor floor variations. Locate head rail joints at pilaster center lines. Install adjacent components for consistency of line and plane. Equip each door with hinges, one door latch, and one coat hook and bumper. Align hardware to uniform clearance at vertical edges of doors.

- a. Secure panels to hollow plastered walls with toggle bolts using not less than 1/4-20 screws of the length required for the wall thickness. Provide toggle bolts with a load-carrying strength of not less than 600 pounds per anchor.
- b. Secure panels to ceramic tile on hollow plastered walls or hollow concrete-masonry walls with toggle bolts using not less than 1/4-20 screws of the length required for the wall thickness. Provide toggle bolts with a load-carrying strength of not less than 600 pounds per anchor.
- c. Secure panels to solid masonry or concrete with lead or brass expansion shields designed for use with not less than 1/4-20 screws, with a shield length of not less than 1-1/2 inches. Provide expansion shields with a load-carrying strength of not less than 600 pounds per anchor.
- d. Submit Installation Drawings for toilet partitions, and urinal screens showing plans, elevations, details of construction, hardware, reinforcing and blocking, fittings, mountings and escutcheons. Indicate on drawings the type of partition, location, mounting height, cutouts, and reinforcement required for toilet-room accessories.

3.4 FLOOR-ANCHORED PARTITIONS

Secure pilasters to the floor with the anchorage device specified. Make all leveling devices readily accessible for leveling, plumbing, and tightening the installation. Level tops of doors with tops of pilasters when doors are in a closed position. Expansion shields have a minimum 2 inch penetration into the concrete slab.

3.5 FINAL ADJUSTMENT

After completion of the installation, make final adjustments to the pilaster-leveling devices, door hardware, and other working parts of the partition assembly. Doors have a uniform vertical edge clearance of approximately 3/16 inch and rest open at approximately 30 degrees when unlatched.

3.6 CLEANING

Touch up baked enamel and powder coat finish with the same color of paint that was used for the finish. Clean all surfaces and adjacent surfaces soiled as a result of the work, in an approved manner compliant with the manufacturer's recommended cleaning and protection from damage procedures until accepted. Remove all equipment, tools, surplus materials, and work debris from the site.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 10 26 00

WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B221	(2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
ASTM D256	(2010; R 2018) Standard Test Methods for Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics
ASTM D543	(2020) Standard Practices for Evaluating the Resistance of Plastics to Chemical Reagents
ASTM D635	(2018) Standard Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position
ASTM E84	(2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM G21	(2015; R 2021; E 2021) Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers
--------------------	--

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36	(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use
-------	-------------------------------------

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 80	(2022) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
---------	--

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)

SAE J1545 (2005; R 2014) Instrumental Color
Difference Measurement for Exterior
Finishes, Textiles and Colored Trim

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Corner Guards; G, AE

Door Protectors; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Corner Guards; G

Door Protectors; G

SD-04 Samples

Corner Guards; G, AE

Door Protectors; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Fire Resistance Rating

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Corner Guards, Data Package 1; G

Door Protectors, Data Package 1; G

Wall Covering and Panels, Data Package 1; G

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality

1.3.1.1 Wall Covering and Panels

Provide sheet and high impact resistant resilient materials certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.3.1.2 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the project site in manufacturer's original unopened containers with seals unbroken and labels and trademarks intact. Keep materials dry, protected from weather and damage, and stored under cover. Store materials at approximately 70 degrees F for at least 48 hours prior to installation.

1.5 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's warranty to repair or replace defective materials and workmanship for a 1 year period of one year from date of final acceptance of the work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

To the maximum extent possible, provide wall and door protection items that are standard products of a single manufacturer and furnished as detailed. Drawings show general configuration of products required.

Submit detailed shop drawings of each wall and door protection item indicated. Include elevations, dimensions, clearances, details of construction and anchorage, and details of joints and connections.

Submit manufacturers' descriptive product data for each wall and door protection item indicated. Include manufacturers' literature, finishes, profiles and thicknesses of materials.

Submit manufacturers' operations and maintenance data for each wall and door protection item indicated in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

2.1.1.1 Resilient Material

Provide resilient material consisting of high impact resistant extruded PVC free conforming to the following:

2.1.1.1.1 Minimum Impact Resistance

Minimum impact resistance must be 18 ft-lbs/sq. inch when tested in accordance with ASTM D256, (Izod impact, ft-lbs per sq inch notched).

2.1.1.1.2 Fire Resistance Rating

Provide the following surface burning characteristics when tested and labeled in accordance with ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency: maximum flame spread of 25 and a smoke developed rating of 450 or less. Provide material rated as self extinguishing when tested in accordance with ASTM D635. Provide resilient material used for protection on fire rated doors and frames listed by the qualified testing agency performing the tests. Provide resilient material installed on fire rated wood/steel door and frame assemblies tested on similar type assemblies. Test results of material tested on any other combination of door/frame assembly are not acceptable.

2.1.1.1.3 Integral Color

Provide colored components having integral color and matched in accordance with SAE J1545 to within plus or minus 1.0 on the CIE-LCH scales.

2.1.1.1.4 Chemical and Stain Resistance

Provide materials resistant to chemicals and stains reagents in accordance with ASTM D543.

2.1.1.1.5 Fungal and Bacterial Resistance

Provide materials resistant to fungi and bacteria in accordance with ASTM G21, as applicable.

2.2 CORNER GUARDS

2.2.1 Resilient Corner Guards

Provide flush mounted corner guards, radius formed to profile shown. Provide corner guards that extend from floor to ceiling. Furnish mounting hardware, cushions, and base plates. Provide assembly consisting of a snap-on corner guard formed from high impact resistant resilient material, mounted on a continuous aluminum retainer. Extruded aluminum retainer conforms to ASTM B221, alloy 6063, temper T5 or T6. Provide aluminum components that contain a minimum of 35 percent recycled content. Flush mounted type guards act as a stop for adjacent wall finish material. Furnish factory fabricated end closure caps for top and bottom of surface mounted corner guards. Provide flush mounted corner guards installed in fire rated wall that maintain the rating of the wall. Manufacturer to provide insulating materials that are an integral part of the corner guard system. Provide exposed metal portions of fire rated assemblies with a paintable surface.

2.3 DOOR PROTECTORS

Provide door protection items with high impact resistant acrylic vinyl or polyvinyl chloride resilient material, minimum 0.060 inch thick for doors and 0.040 inch thick for door frames. Coordinate door and door frame protection material requirements with door and frame suppliers to insure fit for all components and color matching with other resilient materials. Provide adhesive as recommended by resilient material manufacturer.

2.4 TRIM, FASTENERS AND ANCHORS

Provide PVC free trim, fasteners and anchors for each specific installation as indicated.

2.5 FINISH

Submit samples indicating color and texture of materials requiring color and finish.

2.5.1 Resilient Material Finish

Provide resilient material finish of shadowgrain texture with colors in accordance with SAE J1545.

2.6 ADHESIVES

Provide adhesive for resilient material in accordance with manufacturers recommendations. Provide sealants and non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) the VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168, or VOC content requirements of GS-36.

2.7 COLOR

Provide color as specified in Section 09 06 00 SCHEDULES FOR FINISHES.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install items that show visual evidence of biological growth. Install items on surfaces that are clean, smooth, and free of obstructions.

3.1.1 Corner Guards and Wall Guards

- a. Mount guards on external corners of interior walls, partitions and columns and in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.

3.1.1.1 Stainless Steel Guards

- a. Mount guards on external corners of interior walls, partitions and columns and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- b. Where corner guards are installed on walls, partitions or columns finished with plaster or ceramic tile, provide continuous 16 gauge thick, perforated, galvanized z-shape steel anchors welded to back

edges of corner guards and wired to metal studs. Coat back surfaces of corner guards, where shown, with a non-flammable, sound deadening material. Overlap corner guards on finish plaster surfaces.

- c. Where corner guards are installed on exposed structural glazed facing tile units or masonry wall, partitions or columns, anchor corner guards to existing walls with 1/4 inch oval head stainless steel countersunk expansion or toggle bolts. Grout spaces solid between guards and backing with portland cement and sand mortar.
- d. Where corner guards are installed on gypsum board, clean surfaces and anchor guards with a neoprene solvent-type contact adhesive specifically manufactured for use on gypsum board construction. Remove excess adhesive from the guard edges and allow to cure undisturbed for 24 hours.

3.1.2 Door Protectors

Install protectors after frames are in place, but prior to hanging of doors, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Apply adhesives in controlled environment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Install protection for fire doors and frames in accordance with NFPA 80.

3.1.3 Wall Coverings and Panels

Install as indicated in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 10 28 13

TOILET ACCESSORIES
08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C1036 (2021) Standard Specification for Flat Glass

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-STD-1691 (1994; Rev F) Construction and Material Schedule for Military Medical and Dental Facilities

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Product Schedule; G, AE

Submit product Schedule indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room for each toilet accessory item required. Identify locations using room designations indicated on the drawings.

SD-03 Product Data

Recycled content for stainless steel toilet accessories; S

Item A5030 Bench, Stall, Shower, Built In; G, AE

Item A5083 Dispenser, Paper Towel & Waste Receptacle, Recessed; G, AE

Item A5090 Disposal, Sanitary Napkin, SS, Surface Mounted; G, AE

Item A5109 Grab Bar, 1-1/4 inch Dia., SS, 2 Wall, W/C Accessible; G, AE

Item A5110 Grab Bar, 1-1/4 inch Dia., SS, 2 Wall, Shower Use; G, AE

Item A5135 Shelf, Utility W/ Mop/Broom Holders, SS, Surf Mntd; G, AE

Item A5145 Hook, Garment, Double, SS, Surface Mounted; G, AE

Item A5200 Dispenser, Toilet Tissue, SS, 2-Roll, Surface Mntd; G, AE

Submit catalog numbers, literature, data sheets, construction details, profiles, anchoring and mounting requirements ,including cutouts in other work and substrate preparation, ,electrical characteristics, and other pertinent data for each toilet accessory item to evaluate function, materials, dimensions and appearance.

Mirrors

Mop Rack & Shelf

Soap Dispenser

Towel Bar

Partition Screen

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Item A5030 Bench, Stall, Shower, Built In; G, AE

Item A5083 Dispenser, Paper Towel, Recessed; G, AE

Item A5090 Disposal, Sanitary Napkin, SS, Surface Mounted; G, AE

Item A5109 Grab Bar, 1-1/4 inch Dia., SS, 2 Wall, W/C Accessible; G, AE

Item A5110 Grab Bar, 1-1/4 inch Dia., SS, 2 Wall, Shower Use; G, AE

Item A5135 Shelf, Utility W/ Mop/Broom Holders, SS, Surf Mntd; G, AE

Item A5145 Hook, Garment, Double, SS, Surface Mounted; G, AE

Item A5170 Rod, Shower Curtain, 1 inch Diameter, W/Curtain & Hooks; G, AE

Item A5200 Dispenser, Toilet Tissue, SS, 2-Roll, Surface Mntd; G, AE

Submit Data Package 1 for each toilet accessory item , and Data Package 2 for each electrical toilet accessory item, in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Wrap toilet accessories for shipment and storage, then deliver to the jobsite in manufacturer's original packaging, and store in a clean, dry area protected from construction damage and vandalism.

1.4 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's warranty to repair or replace defective materials and workmanship for a period of one year from date of final acceptance of the work..

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCESSORY ITEMS

Provide toilet accessories where indicated in accordance with Contractor-provided product schedule. Conform to the requirements for accessory items specified herein which are based on MIL-STD-1691 Joint Schedule Numbers (JSN). Provide each accessory item complete with the necessary mounting plates of sturdy construction with corrosion resistant surface.

Provide stainless steel products listed herein manufactured from materials containing a minimum of 50 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for stainless steel toilet accessories.

2.1.1 Anchors and Fasteners

Provide corrosion-resistant anchors and fasteners capable of developing a restraining force commensurate with the strength of the accessory to be mounted and suited for use with the supporting construction. Provide tamperproof design exposed fasteners with finish to match the accessory. Provide fasteners proposed for use for each type of wall construction and mounting.

2.1.2 Finishes

Except where noted otherwise, provide the following finishes on metal:

Metal	Finish
Stainless steel	No. 4 satin finish
Carbon steel, copper alloy, and brass	Chromium plated, bright

2.1.3 Item A5030 Bench, Stall, Shower, Built-In

Wall mounted shower seat. Frame made of 18 gauge stainless steel with satin finish. Seat made of one piece of 1/2 inch thick nonporous solid phenolic with slots to permit water to drain, secured to frame with stainless steel carriage bolts and acorn nuts. Mounting hardware included. Seat to support a minimum static load of 250 pounds. Hinge seat to fold up when not in use. Seat complies with ADA guidelines.

Approximate size: 34 inches wide by 22 inches deep by 1/2 inch thick.

2.1.4 Item A5083 Dispenser, Paper Towel, Recessed

Recess mounted paper towel dispenser. Unit constructed of heavy gauge stainless steel with satin finish, all welded construction, have full

length piano hinge and tumbler lock. Unit dispenses 300 C-fold or 400 multifold paper towels and be self-feeding until supply is depleted. Towel dispensing slot is snag-free. Unit is ADA compliant.

Approximate size: 12 inches wide by 17 inches high by 4 inches deep.

2.1.5 Item A5090 Disposal, Sanitary Napkin, SS, Surface Mounted

Surface mounted sanitary napkin receptacle. Unit made of stainless steel with satin finish and all welded construction. Unit has piano hinge attached at the top and an integral finger depression for opening. For use with disposable paper liners, available separately. Unit may be attached to wall or toilet partition.

Approximate size: 7 inches wide by 4 inches deep by 10 inches high.

2.1.6 Item A5109 Grab Bar, 1-1/4 Inch Diameter, SS, 2 Wall, W/C Accessible

Grab bar of 1-1/4 inch diameter satin finish stainless steel with peened gripping surface for use in toilet stall/room. Snap-on flange covers for concealed mounting are stainless steel and equipped with two screw holes for attachment to wall. Grab bars designed to meet and exceed ADA requirements for structural strength. Grab bars designed to withstand loads of 900 pounds when properly installed. Clearance from wall to grab bar is 1-1/2 inches to meet ADA and ANSI codes.

2.1.7 Item A5110 Grab Bar, 1-1/4 Inch Diameter, SS, 2 Wall, Shower Use

Grab bar of 1-1/4 inch diameter satin finish stainless steel with peened gripping surface. Snap-on flange covers for concealed mounting stainless steel. Bent ends of tubing pass through the flanges and are Heliarc welded for maximum strength. Grab bars designed to meet and exceed ADA requirements for structural strength. Grab bars designed to withstand loads of 900 pounds when properly installed. Clearance from wall to grab bar is 1-1/2 inches to meet ADA and ANSI codes.

2.1.8 Item A5135 Shelf, Utility W/ Mop/Broom Holders, SS, Surf Mounted

Surface mounted mop/broom holder with shelf made of 18 gauge stainless steel with all exposed surfaces in satin finish. Unit has shelf 8 inches deep with shelf support brackets of satin finish stainless steel welded to mounting base, and a minimum of 3 hooks/3 holders. Mop holders have spring-loaded rubber cams and hold mop or broom handle with a diameter between 5/8 inch and 1 inch.

Approximate size: 36 inches wide by 8 inches deep.

2.1.9 Item A5145 Hook, Garment, Double, SS, Surface Mounted

Surface mounted double garment hook made of stainless steel with satin finish. For use on door back or wall. Hook comes with concealed mounting bracket secured to concealed wall plate. Mounting hardware included. Flange size is approximately 2 inches by 2 inches.

2.1.10 Item A5170 Rod, Shower Curtain, 1 Inch Diameter, W/Curtain & Hooks

Shower Curtain Rod with concealed mounting. Shower curtain rod made of satin finish stainless steel, 1 inch diameter, with flanges included, and have white vinyl shower curtain, 72 inches high, and stainless steel

curtain hooks. Shower curtain has corrosion resistant grommets, reinforced heading, and treated with antibacterial and flame retardant agents. Shower hooks are stainless steel. Length as indicated on drawings.

2.1.11 Item A5200 Dispenser, Toilet Tissue, SS, 2-Roll, Surface Mounted

Concealed surface mounted, double roll, toilet tissue dispenser of stainless steel. Unit holds and dispenses two standard 5-1/4 inch diameter rolls of toilet tissue. Spindles are free-spinning for non-controlled delivery, chrome-plated plastic equipped with heavy-duty internal springs.

Approximate size: 7 inches diameter by 4 inches deep.

2.1.12 Mirrors

Provide Type I transparent flat type, Class 1-clear glass for mirrors. Glazing Quality q1 1/4 inch thick conforming to ASTM C1036. Coat glass on one surface with silver coating, copper protective coating, and mirror backing paint. Provide highly adhesive pure silver coating of a thickness which provides reflectivity of 83 percent or more of incident light when viewed through 1/4 inch thick glass, free of pinholes or other defects. Provide copper protective coating with pure bright reflective copper, homogeneous without sludge, pinholes or other defects, of proper thickness to prevent "adhesion pull" by mirror backing paint. Provide mirror backing paint with two coats of special scratch and abrasion-resistant paint and baked in uniform thickness to provide a protection for silver and copper coatings which will permit normal cutting and edge fabrication.

2.1.13 Mop Rack & Shelf

Stainless Steel with 4 grip jaw cam mechanism securing mop or broom handles. Also includes 3 stainless steel hooks and storage shelf.

2.1.14 Soap Dispenser

Provide surface mounted soap dispenser, liquid type, consisting of a black plastic body with cartridge pumps that will collapse as the soap is dispensed. Capacity shall be 1 liter. Basis of design product is the Deb Group Restyle Curve dispenser, Model 91606

2.1.15 Towel Bar

Stainless steel extra-heavy-duty surface mounted towel bar with satin finish. 1" outside diameter. Basis of design product is Bobrick, Model B-530 x 24.

2.1.16 Partition Screen

1" Thick wall hung screen with 2 sheet metal faces with a moisture-resistant honeycomb core that is adhered to the inner surfaces. Provide with welded corners and Stainless steel stirrup brackets. Basis of Design Bradley S474.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install items that show visual evidence of biological growth. Provide the same finish for the surfaces of fastening devices exposed after installation as the attached accessory. Provide oval exposed screw heads. Install accessories at the location and height indicated. Protect exposed surfaces of accessories with strippable plastic or by other means until the installation is accepted. After acceptance of accessories, remove and dispose of strippable plastic protection. Coordinate accessory manufacturer's mounting details with other trades as their work progresses. Use sealants for brackets, plates, anchoring devices and similar items in showers (a silicone sealant specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS) as they are set to provide a watertight installation. After installation, thoroughly clean exposed surfaces and restore damaged work to its original condition or replace with new work.

3.1.1 Recessed Accessories

Fasten accessories with wood screws to studs, blocking or rough frame in wood construction. Set anchors in mortar in masonry construction. Fasten to metal studs or framing with sheet metal screws in metal construction.

3.1.2 Surface Mounted Accessories

Mount on concealed backplates, unless specified otherwise. Conceal fasteners on accessories without backplates. Install accessories with corrosion-resistant fasteners as required by the construction. Install backplates in the same manner, or provide with lugs or anchors set in mortar, as required by the construction. Fasten accessories mounted on gypsum board and plaster walls without solid backing into the metal or wood studs, or to backplates secured to metal studs.

3.2 CLEANING

Clean material in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Do not use alkaline or abrasive agents. Take precautions to avoid scratching or marring exposed surfaces.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 10 44 16

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

11/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 1	(2021) Fire Code
NFPA 10	(2022) Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers
NFPA 101	(2021) Life Safety Code

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 299	(2012; May 2021) Dry Chemical Fire Extinguishers
--------	--

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fire Extinguishers; G, AE

Accessories; G, AE

Cabinets; G, AE

Wall Brackets; G, AE

Schedule; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Fire Extinguishers; G, AE

Accessories; G, AE

Cabinets; G, AE

Wall Brackets; G, AE

Replacement Parts List; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Fire Extinguishers Certifications; G, AE

Manufacturer's Warranty with Inspection Tag; G, AE

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect materials from weather, soil, and damage during delivery, storage, and construction.

Deliver materials in their original packages, containers, or bundles bearing the brand name and the name and type of the material.

1.3.1 Samples

Provide the following equipment samples: One of each type of fire extinguisher being installed; one full-sized sample of each type of cabinet being installed; three samples of wall brackets and accessories of each type being used.

Use approved samples for installation, with proper identification and storage.

1.4 WARRANTY

Guarantee that Fire Extinguishers are free of defects in materials, fabrication, finish, and installation and that they will remain so for a period of not less than 6 years after completion.

Submit the manufacturer's warranty with inspection tag.

1.5 PROJECT SCHEDULE

For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire extinguisher schedule with fire protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Submit fabrication drawings consisting of fabrication and assembly details performed in the factory and product data for the following items: Fire Extinguishers; Accessories, cabinets, Wall Brackets.

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

2.1.1 Types

Submit fire extinguishers certifications showing compliance with local codes and regulations.

Provide fire extinguishers conforming to NFPA 10. Provide quantity and placement in compliance with the applicable sections of NFPA 1, NFPA 101.

Provide dry chemical type fire extinguishers compliant with UL 299.

2.1.2 Material

Provide enameled steel extinguisher shell.

2.1.3 Size

5 pounds extinguishers.

2.1.4 Accessories

Forged brass valve

Fusible plug

Safety release

Pressure gage

2.2 EQUIPMENT

2.2.1 Cabinets

2.2.1.1 Material

Provide aluminum cabinets.

2.2.1.2 Type

Provide semi-recessed cabinet for a 4 inch wall.

2.2.1.3 Size

Dimension cabinets to accommodate the specified fire extinguishers.

2.2.2 Wall Brackets

Provide wall-hook fire extinguisher wall brackets.

Provide wall bracket and accessories as approved.

2.2.2.1 Identification

Provide lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by the drawings.

Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

Orientation: Vertical.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install Fire Extinguishers where indicated on the drawings. Verify exact locations prior to installation.

Provide extinguishers which are fully charged and ready for operation upon

installation. Provide extinguishers complete with Manufacturer's Warranty with Inspection Tag attached.

Install fire extinguishers in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

Comply with the manufacturer's recommendations for all installations.

3.2 PROTECTION

3.2.1 Repairing

Remove and replace damaged and unacceptable portions of completed work with new work at no additional cost to the Government.

Submit replacement parts list indicating specified items replacement part, replacement cost, and name, address and contact for replacement parts distributor.

3.2.2 Cleaning

Clean all surfaces of the work, and adjacent surfaces which are soiled as a result of the work. Remove from the site all construction equipment, tools, surplus materials and rubbish resulting from the work.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 11 11 00

INDUSTRIAL EQUIPMENT

08/22

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

Equipment items as listed below by Equipment Mark Number:

EQ-01 - RACK, PALLET, WITH DECK, 8 FOOT
EQ-04 - BATTERY CONTAINMENT
EQ-05 - RACK, PALLET, WITH DECK, 10 FOOT
EQ-08 - RACK, BULK STORAGE, WITH DECK
EQ-10 - RACK, PALLET, WITH DECK, 8 FOOT
EQ-11 - STACKING UNIT, 2,000 lbs. CAPACITY
EQ-13 - WIRE CONTAINER

Roughing-in, installation of equipment, and final connection of utilities, with labor, services, and incidentals necessary for complete and operational equipment installation.

Piping, wiring, and switching between equipment and utilities.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication Drawings; EQ-11 STACKING UNIT, 2,000 lbs. CAPACITY; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

EQ-01 - Rack, Pallet, with Deck, 8 Foot; G, AE
EQ-04 - Battery Containment; G, AE
EQ-05 - Rack, Pallet, with Deck, 10 Foot; G, AE
EQ-08 - Rack, Bulk Storage, with Deck; G, AE
EQ-10 - Rack, Pallet, with Deck, 8 Foot; G, AE
EQ-11 - Stacking Unit; G, AE
EQ-13 - Wire Container; G, AE

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Instructions

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty for Stacking Unit; G, AE

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver, store, and handle metal casework in a manner that prevents damage or disfigurement.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- a. Experience: Equipment shall be produced by a manufacturer of established reputation with a minimum of five years experience supplying specified equipment.
- b. Furnish services of Stacking Unit technicians, experienced in installation and operation of the type of system being provided, to supervise installation, testing, adjustment of system, and instruction to Government personnel.

1.5 WARRANTY

Warrant work specified herein for one year from substantial completion against defects in materials, function, and workmanship.

Warranty for Stacking Unit shall include materials and labor necessary to correct defects.

Defects shall include, but not be limited to noisy, rough, or substandard operation; loose, damaged, and missing parts; and abnormal deterioration of finish.

All parts shall be readily available locally in the United States.

1.6 LABELING

Manufacturer shall securely attach in a prominent location on each major item of equipment a noncorrosive nameplate showing manufacturer's name, address, model number, serial number, and pertinent utility or operating data.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 RACK, PALLET, WITH DECK, 8 FOOT

Equipment Mark Number: EQ-01 - RACK, PALLET, WITH DECK, 8 FOOT

2.1.1 DIMENSIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

2.1.1.1 Unit Dimensions

Length of Unit	8'6"
Width of Unit	3'6"
Overall Height of Unit	8'0"

2.1.1.2 Physical Data

Quantity of Shelves	2
Shelf Beam Height	4.1"
Interior Clear Span	8'0"
Upright Adjustable Centers	2"
Upright Frame Capacity	15,220 lbs
Beam Capacity	5,200 lbs

2.1.2 TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

2.1.2.1 Unit Construction

- a. Uprights shall be constructed of heavy-duty steel roll formed cross section with formed channel and horizontal and vertical strut members welded between the front and the rear columns. Rack uprights shall be punched with a teardrop design to accept mating beams on two-inch centers for vertical beam adjustment and to accept beam safety clips. Rack front and rear columns shall be arc welded to steel base plates. Provide a minimum of two anchor holes per base plate.
- b. Beams shall be constructed of heavy duty steel roll formed and continuously arc welded providing a closed section with an integral step located on one corner to accept wire decking or pallet support members. Beams shall have a minimum of two (2) pins located on end clips to mate the beam to the upright. Spring-type safety clips shall be provided to lock the beam in place once seated in the upright.
- c. Unit shall include wire decking.

2.1.2.2 Unit Finish

Unit shall have an enamel finish.

2.2 BATTERY CONTAINMENT

Equipment Mark Number: EQ-04 - BATTERY CONTAINMENT

2.2.1 Dimensional Specifications

2.2.1.1 Unit Dimensions

Length of Unit	4'3.5"
Width of Unit	4'3.5"
Overall Height of Unit	8"

2.2.2 Technical Description

2.2.2.1 Unit Construction

- a. Unit shall be constructed of durable high-density polyethylene with removable grating. Unit shall be configured with low profile for loading. Unit shall include capability to be combined with other units with a U-channel connection strip to expand capacity.
- b. Unit containment capacity shall be minimum 66 gallons.
- c. Unit load capacity shall be minimum 8,000 pounds.

2.3 RACK, PALLET, WITH DECK, 10 FOOT

Equipment Mark Number: EQ-05 - RACK, PALLET, WITH DECK, 10 FOOT

2.3.1 DIMENSIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

2.3.1.1 Unit Dimensions

Length of Unit	10'6"
Width of Unit	3'6"
Overall Height of Unit	8'0"

2.3.1.2 Physical Data

Quantity of Shelves	2
Shelf Beam Height	4.1"
Interior Clear Span	10'0"
Upright Adjustable Centers	2"
Upright Frame Capacity	15,220 lbs
Beam Capacity	6,140 lbs

2.3.2 TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

2.3.2.1 Unit Construction

- a. Uprights shall be constructed of heavy duty steel roll formed cross section with formed channel and horizontal and vertical strut members welded between the front and the rear columns. Rack uprights shall be punched with a teardrop design to accept mating beams on two-inch centers for vertical beam adjustment and to accept beam safety clips. Rack front and rear columns shall be arc welded to steel base plates. Provide a minimum of two anchor holes per base plate.
- b. Beams shall be constructed of heavy duty steel roll formed and continuously arc welded providing a closed section with an integral step located on one corner to accept wire decking or pallet support members. Beams shall have a minimum of two (2) pins located on end clips to mate the beam to the upright. Spring-type safety clips shall be provided to lock the beam in place once seated in the upright.
- c. Unit shall include wire decking.

2.3.2.2 Unit Finish

Unit shall have an enamel finish

2.4 RACK, BULK STORAGE, WITH DECK

Equipment Mark Number: EQ-08 - RACK, BULK STORAGE, WITH DECK

2.4.1 DIMENSIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

2.4.1.1 Unit Dimensions

Length of Unit	6'0"
Width of Unit	2'0"
Overall Height of Unit	8'0"

2.4.1.2 Physical Data

Quantity of Shelves	4
Upright Adjustable Centers	1.5"
Upright Frame Capacity	10,000 lbs

Beam Capacity 1,900 lbs

2.4.2 TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

2.4.2.1 Unit Construction

- a. Uprights shall be constructed of heavy-duty welded 14-gauge steel with tubular steel cross and diagonal members. Uprights shall have tapered slots on 1-1/2 inch centers for vertical beam adjustment. An extra upright frame shall be provided at end of each row of racks to complete assembly.
- b. Beams shall be "Z" shaped and constructed of welded 14-gauge steel with 3 rugged lugs MIG welded on each beam end that lock into V-Grip slots for 6 load-bearing points per beam. Beams shall have 5/8-inch recess to accept decking.
- c. Unit shall include solid decking of 20-gauge steel.

2.4.2.2 Accessories

- a. Anchoring foot constructed out of 14-gauge steel. Foot shall be supplied with anchoring bolts 3/8 inch in width and 3 inches in length.

2.4.2.3 Unit Finish

Unit shall have an enamel finish

2.5 RACK, PALLET, WITH DECK, 8 FOOT

Equipment Mark Number: EQ-10 - RACK, PALLET, WITH DECK, 8 FOOT

2.5.1 DIMENSIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

2.5.1.1 Unit Dimensions

Length of Unit	8'6"
Width of Unit	4'0"
Overall Height of Unit	8'0"

2.5.1.2 Physical Data

Number of Shelves	2
Shelf Beam Height	4.1"
Interior Clear Span	8'0"
Upright Adjustable Centers	2"
Upright Frame Capacity	15,220 lbs
Beam Capacity	5,200 lbs

2.5.2 Technical Description

2.5.2.1 Unit Construction

- a. Uprights shall be constructed of heavy duty steel roll formed cross section with formed channel and horizontal and vertical strut members welded between the front and the rear columns. Rack uprights shall be punched with a teardrop design to accept mating beams on two-inch centers for vertical beam adjustment and to accept beam safety clips. Rack front and rear columns shall be arc welded to steel base plates.

Provide a minimum of two anchor holes per base plate.

- b. Beams shall be constructed of heavy duty steel roll formed and continuously arc welded providing a closed section with an integral step located on one corner to accept wire decking or pallet support members. Beams shall have a minimum of two (2) pins located on end clips to mate the beam to the upright. Spring-type safety clips shall be provided to lock the beam in place once seated in the upright.

- c. Unit shall include wire decking.

2.5.2.2 Unit Finish

Unit shall have an enamel finish.

2.6 STACKING UNIT, 2,000 lbs. CAPACITY

Equipment Mark Number: EQ-11 - STACKING UNIT

2.6.1 DIMENSIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

2.6.1.1 Overall Unit Dimensions

- a. Each Stacking Unit shall not exceed the following dimensions:

Length of Unit	24'6"
Width of Unit	16'3"
Overall Height of Unit	14'5"

2.6.1.2 Physical Data

Number of Storage Sections per Unit	12
Aisle Width	7'10"
Number of Storage Pallets	36 per stacking unit
Storage Section Capacity	25,000 lbs
Bay Capacity	50,000 lbs

2.6.2 TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

2.6.2.1 Storage Unit Construction

- a. System columns shall be constructed of heavy-duty steel roll formed double walled construction. Horizontal and vertical strut members welded between the front and the rear columns. Steel shall be minimum 11-guage double wall construction. Front and rear columns shall be arc welded to steel bearing pads with a minimum of two anchor holes per base plate.
- b. System columns shall be one continuous piece 13 feet in length. Each column shall have minimum thirty-seven pallet retaining notches for optimal storage density. Frontal positions shall have a minimum half inch positive engagement hook to ensure load security.
- c. Front openings between columns shall be spaced a minimum of forty-three and a half inches apart to accommodate forty-two-inch wide pallets.
- d. Column spacing shall be forty-nine and a half inches to accommodate forty-eight-inch deep pallets.

2.6.2.2 Bridge System

- a. Top running bridge type with minimum load capacity of 2,000 pounds.
- b. Bridge shall be constructed out of two 6"x4" wide flange beams. Load capacity shall be minimum 12lbs.ft.
- c. Bridge shall have two 6"x2" rectangular tube end trucks. Each truck shall have two 9-inch diameter double flanged wheels with a roller bearing pressure fitting. Each end truck shall have a rail sweep in front of each wheel.
- d. Provided running rail for the bridge system shall be 20 lbs. A.S.C.E.

2.6.2.3 Mast and Trolley

- a. Trolley shall be manually propelled with minimum load capacity of 2,000 pounds.
- b. Trolley shall be constructed out of steel plate with four integral flanges.
- c. Trolley shall have four 5-inch diameter ball bearing type wheels with lubrication. Each wheel shall have a one and a quarter inch stabilizing bearing to ensure it stays within bridge envelope.
- d. Mast shall be constructed out of two 6" channels separated by ladder cross members. All construction shall be welded.
- e. Mast shall have four 2-inch diameter crowned cam rollers with pressure grease fittings. Each roller shall be equipped with a one and a quarter inch diameter bearing for stability.
- f. Mast shall be equipped with 42" long by 4" wide by 1-1/4" deep shaft type fork system.
- g. Mast shall be capable of 360 degree rotation with steel angle stops to prevent damage to the Storage Unit System.

2.6.2.4 Electrical Hoist

- a. System shall be provided with an electrical hoist, minimum 1 HP single speed with a lift rate of 16 ft/min.

2.6.2.5 Controls

- a. System shall have the following controls.
 - i. UP/DOWN Push Button
 - ii. ON/OFF Light Switch
 - iii. ON/OFF Key Switch with key removable in the off position only

2.6.3 UTILITIES

2.6.3.1 Electrical Requirements

- a. Electrical requirements shall be 460V, 3 Phase, with an operating load of 2.5 amps.

- b. Hoist shall be electrified with a 4-bar insulated conductor power system.
- c. Unit shall be equipped with minimum 2 90-watt flood lamps mounted on the mast for illumination.

2.6.4 ACCESSORIES

2.6.4.1 Wire Container

Equipment Mark Number: EQ-12

- a. System shall be provided with 18 wire baskets per stacking unit with maximum dimensions of 42" wide by 48" deep by 24" tall.
- b. Wire Containers shall be mounted to provided storage system pallets.

2.7 WIRE CONTAINER

Equipment Mark Number: EQ-13 - WIRE CONTAINER

2.7.1 DIMENSIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

2.7.1.1 Unit Dimensions

Length of Unit	4'0"
Width of Unit	3'4"
Overall Height of Unit	3'6"

2.7.1.2 Physical Data

Volume Capacity	36 cu. ft.
Load Capacity	4,000 lbs
Unit Weight	166 lbs
Stacking Capacity	8,400 lbs

2.7.2 TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

2.7.2.1 Unit Construction

- a. Unit shall be constructed out of heavy duty 3-gauge steel mesh in a 2-inch by 2-inch pattern on five sides.
- b. Unit shall be equipped with a front loading drop door.
- c. Unit shall have stackable 11-gauge feet on each corner. Feet shall be minimum 3-7/8 inches clear from the underside of the unit to permit forklift access.
- d. Unit shall be foldable for ease of storage. Folded dimensions shall be 43 inches deep, 50.5 inches wide, and 9.5 inches high.

2.7.2.2 Unit Finish

Unit shall have a zinc electroplate finish.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

Coordinate location of rough-in work and utility stub-outs to assure match with equipment to be installed.

Inspect delivered equipment for damage from shipping and exposure to weather. Compare delivered equipment with packing lists and specifications to assure receipt of all items.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Perform work under direct supervision of Foreman or Construction Superintendent with authority to coordinate installation of scheduled equipment.

Install equipment in accordance with plans, shop drawings, and manufacturer's instructions:

- a. Positioning: Place equipment in accordance with any noted special positioning requirements generally level, plumb, and at right angles to adjacent work.
- b. Fitting: Where field cutting or trimming is necessary, perform in a neat, accurate, professional manner without damaging equipment or adjacent work.
- c. Anchorage: Attach equipment securely to floor, as directed by Architect, to prevent damage resulting from inadequate fastening. Installation fasteners shall be installed to avoid scratching or damaging adjacent surfaces.
- d. Upon completion of work, finish surfaces shall be free of tool marks, scratches, blemishes, and stains.

3.3 TESTING

After final connections are made and prior to authorizing payment, specified equipment shall be tested for compliance with all specified features using acceptance procedures provided by the manufacturer.

3.4 CLEANUP

- a. Touch-up damage to painted finishes.
- b. Wipe and clean equipment of any oil, grease, and solvents, and make ready for use.
- c. Clean area around equipment installation and remove packing or installation debris from job site.
- d. Notify Architect for acceptance inspection.

3.5 TRAINING

Direct the technical representative to provide specified hours of training to designated Owner's maintenance personnel in operation and maintenance of the following equipment. Coordinate, with Owner, training schedule and

list of personnel to be trained.

a. EQ-11: 4 hours.

Obtain, from technical representative, a list of Owner's personnel trained in equipment operations and maintenance.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 11 13 19.13

LOADING DOCK LEVELERS

08/09, CHG 1: 05/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS C2.18 (1993; Errata 1993; R 2001) Guide for the Protection of Steel with Thermal Sprayed Coatings of Aluminum and Zinc and Their Alloys and Composites

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

ASTM A143/A143M (2007; R 2020) Standard Practice for Safeguarding Against Embrittlement of Hot-Dip Galvanized Structural Steel Products and Procedure for Detecting Embrittlement

ASTM A153/A153M (2016a) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

ASTM D624 (2000; R 2020) Standard Test Method for Tear Strength of Conventional Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers

ASTM D2000 (2018) Standard Classification System for Rubber Products in Automotive Applications

ASTM D2632 (2015; R 2019) Standard Test Method for Rubber Property-Resilience by Vertical Rebound

MATERIAL HANDLING INDUSTRY OF AMERICA (MHI)

MHI MH30.1 (2015) Performance and Testing Requirements for Dock Leveling Devices

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Industrial Dock Leveler

A manufactured structure designed to span and compensate space and height differentials between a loading dock and freight carrier to facilitate safe, efficient, freight transfer.

1.2.2 Adjustable Loading Ramp

Synonym for Fixed Type Industrial Dock Leveler.

1.2.3 Fixed Type Industrial Dock Leveler

A dock leveler that is permanently affixed to the dock structure, and usually incorporating a mechanical system to position the dock leveler with respect to the freight carrier at the lip end while being fixed at the opposite hinged end.

1.2.4 Velocity Fuse

A valve or similar device that goes into the hydraulic line. If the dock leveler becomes inadvertently or accidentally unsupported, this fuse will freeze the movement of dock leveler within 4 inches of the dock leveler original position.

1.2.5 Carrier

A wheeled, enclosed trailer or container that, when attached to a heavy-duty truck or van, is used to carry bulk freight over long distances.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Loading Dock Levelers; G, AE

SD-04 Samples

Dock Bumpers

Rubber

SD-07 Certificates

Hardware Items

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Loading Dock Levelers, Data Package 3; G, AE

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Record Drawings; G, AE

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Manufacturer's Representative

Furnish services of Fixed Type Industrial Dock Leveler technicians, experienced in installation and operation of the type of system being provided, to supervise installation, testing, adjustment of system, and instruction to Government personnel.

1.4.2 Detail Drawings

Submit drawings depicting dimensions, tolerances, surface finishes, hardnesses, flush edge angles, method of mounting and anchoring, and control schematics and diagram. Show complete wiring, schematic diagrams, and any other details required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit. Show proposed layout and anchorage of equipment and appurtenances on Drawing Sheet No. A102.

1.4.3 Record Drawings

Submit record as-built drawings depicting dimensions, tolerances, surface finishes, hardnesses, flush edge angles, method of mounting and anchoring, and control schematics and diagram, including mechanical and electrical components, testing and acceptance (one copy sepia transparency) for each industrial dock leveler.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Matchmark and tag parts which are disassembled for shipment with metal tags. Provide waterproofed tags and markings. Protect the delivered equipment in storage from the weather, humidity and temperature variation, dirt and dust, or other contaminants.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

After approval of the detail drawings, and not later than 1 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy, provide spare parts data for each different item of material and equipment specified. Furnish a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply and a list of the parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced after 3 year(s) of service.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Standard Products

Submit data including a complete list of equipment and materials, manufacturer's descriptive and technical literature, performance charts and curves, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. Provide materials and equipment, which are the standard products of a manufacturer

regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products, and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Equipment shall be supported by a service organization that is, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, reasonably convenient to the site. Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS, applies to this Section, with the additions and modifications specified herein.

2.1.2 Exposed Surfaces

All exposed metal surfaces and fastening materials shall fully comply with the minimum requirements of ASTM A123/A123M, ASTM A143/A143M, and ASTM A153/A153M.

2.1.3 Nameplate

Attach corrosion-resistant metal plate securely and legibly on the exterior surface of the dock leveler. Include the following information indented or embossed on the plate:

- a. Description of the equipment: Describe procedures for operating and services equipment, and warnings or cautions of hazardous procedures.
- b. Name of the manufacturer.
- c. Serial and model number.
- d. Rated capacity in pounds.
- e. Shipping weight.
- f. Date of manufacture (month and year).

2.2 LOADING DOCK LEVELERS

Provide permanent loading dock levelers in accordance with MHI MH30.1 with minimum performance characteristics based on the following:

- a. Fork Lift Loads:
 - (1) Design levelers to accommodate 4 wheel fork trucks.
 - (2) Design levelers to handle maximum 20,000 LBS gross dynamic load.

Provide loading dock leveler with mechanical type which is manually released at dock leveler and raises by spring action and is lowered by walk-on of dock operator. Make provision for maintenance access to understructure and lifting mechanism. Provide steel tread plate lip and platform, hinged and supported from beneath by steel framework that contains lifting, positioning, and lowering assembly. Ensure that platform surface is flush with surrounding floor surface of loading dock when not in service. Provide integral positive restraint when leveler is in maintenance position.

2.2.1 Design Requirements

Design, fabricate, and finish loading ramp to permit washing with water and detergents, and operating in an ambient temperature from 0 to plus 110 degrees F.

2.2.2 Dock Leveler Height Adjustment

Provide a ramp whose incline can be adjusted to suit the height of the freight carrier. Allow the loading ramp a minimum of 5" above and below dock.

2.2.3 Dock Leveler Extension and Retraction

Extend non-fixed end of the dock leveler from a retracted position behind the line of the loading dock platform bumpers to at least 12 inches beyond the forward edge of the dock platform bumpers so as to rest on the bed of the freight carrier. The difference in length of the platform from its fully retracted position to its fully extended position shall be practically constant throughout the ramp, including the ramp extension.

2.2.4 Safety Devices

2.2.4.1 Dock Bumpers

Submit certificates showing conformance with the referenced standards contained in this section. Provide ramp and load dock face with laminated rubber, tire-fabric, or equivalent dock bumpers recommended by the dock leveler manufacturer. Submit one typical Loading Dock Bumper completely assembled with supporting rods, end angles, bolts, and nuts. (This may be the smallest size bumper required.) One section of 8 inches wide by full depth and height of bumper including one end angle with the opposite end exposed for inspection. Solid Rubber pieces conforming to ASTM D2000, Grade 4AA612A13B13F17 may be used instead of rubberized fabric.

2.2.4.1.1 Finish

Metal for dock bumpers, including Hardware Items, shall be hot-dip galvanized conforming to ASTM A123/A123M.

2.2.5 Rated Capacity

Minimum 20,000 pounds roll over capacity.

2.3 OPERATION

2.3.1 Mechanical Control

Mechanical chain-activated, with extension-spring operation and counter-balance non-manual, raising and lowering system. Once the freight carrier has departed, manually return the platform to the stored, level position. Ensure the ramp, in its stored position capable of being lowered below dock platform level without extending the lip of the ramp.

2.4 CONSTRUCTION AND MATERIALS

Construct all load carrying parts of forged or welded steel. The entire live load carrying surface of the ramp and rear attachment shall be not less than 1/4 inch thick, 55 ksi minimum yield strength, low alloy, nonskid steel tread plate. Provide minimum 5/8 inch vertical projections on the live load carrying surface. Bevel the lip or ramp extension. Design load carrying surfaces to permit free movement of powered hand or platform trucks, low lift pallet trucks, and fork lift trucks. Fabricate lip hinge of not less than 1/4 inch wall seamless steel tubing.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

2.5.1 Dock Bumpers

Provide bumpers in accordance with ASTM D2632 and ASTM D624 that are capable of sustaining repeated impacts from trucks or trailers without damage to the dock, dock levelers, or bumpers.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Install and adjust in accordance with NFPA 70, manufacturer's approved detail drawings, and as-built system assembly drawings. Install controls so operator can see dock leveler while manipulating controls. Do not pour the pit for the adjustable loading ramp until the design and detail drawings have been approved. If the pit size is limited by construction conditions involved, alter the dock leveler equipment to fit the pit. Clearly indicate these alterations or modifications on the drawings. Check and verify the appropriate measurements at the building. Do not exceed 2 inch clearances between the ramp and pit.

3.3 CLEANING, TREATMENT AND PAINTING

In accordance with manufacturer's standard practice, shop clean, treat and paint ferrous surfaces including platform, lip, frame, springs, cylinders, and any other non-cadmium plated or non-galvanized surface (but not including bearings, gear contact surfaces, parts protected by lubrication, or other surfaces not usually painted or coated). Clean ferrous surfaces, shot pen, and protect the base metal with an application of 99.9 percent pure zinc coating with a thickness of 0.010 to 0.012 in accordance with AWS C2.18 and protect the base metal with an application of a paint manufactured with rust inhibiting chemical additives to a thickness of 2.5 to 3 mils followed by a final coat of standard primer with a thickness of 2.5 to 3 mils. Protect nonferrous parts against corrosion as necessary.

3.3.1 Workmanship

Conduct field touch-up work as to avoid damaging other surfaces and public property in the area. Do not apply field applied paint during foggy, damp, rainy weather, or the ambient temperatures below 45 degrees F and above 95 degrees F.

3.3.2 Dissimilar Metals Protection

Insulate control surfaces by electrolytically inactive materials.

3.3.3 Finish Coat Color

Brilliant yellow and black. Paint 3 inch wide black and yellow diagonal stripes on all vertical surfaces of pit, skirts, and platform edges exposed above adjacent surfaces at any ramp position. Paint similar stripes on top of ramp surfaces in 6 inch wide band around outside edges

(except for fixed edge).

3.4 FIELD TESTS

Provide personnel, instruments, materials, and equipment, including test vehicles, for the administration and direction of the tests. Correct defects and repeat tests under the cognizance of the Contracting Officer and the dock leveler manufacturer. The Contracting Officer is responsible for certifying the test load.

3.4.1 Roll-Over Load Tests

Move roll-over load of 20,000 pounds over the dock leveler between the bed of a freight carrier and the building loading dock surface for 10 cycles. With the ramp extension retracted and the ramp platform leveled with the building loading dock surface, run a 20,000 pound roll-over load over the ramp in various directions for 20 cycles. Do not allow permanent deformation or hydraulic system leakage to occur subsequent to examination after these roll-over tests.

3.4.2 Drop Tests

Twice, drop test the dock leveler at the indicated rated capacity as follows: With the load on the platform and the lip resting on a vehicle carrier bed not less than 10 inches above loading dock surface, pull the carrier or pull away from the lip, leaving the loading ramp unsupported. Do not exceed 4 inch for the measured vertical drop of the dock leveler taken at the point where the lip rests on the vehicle carrier during each of the drop tests. Inspect the loading ramp after each drop and ensure no damage or distortion to the mechanical, or structural components. Do not allow leakage from the hydraulic system.

3.4.3 Acceptance Tests

Perform an acceptance test in the presence of the dock leveler manufacturer and the Contracting Officer subsequent to roll-over load tests and drop tests. Conduct operation of the equipment through all of its motions and specified checks as follows: (a) extend lip to rest on a variety of freight carriers with beds up 12 inch above and below dock level; (b) test 4 inch drop limitation with 7000 pound load on ramp, evenly distributed; (c) test level compensation with the ramp, loaded with a minimum of 7000 pounds; and (d) test proper compensation (float) for various compression of countersprings, with ramp loaded and unloaded.

3.5 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

Upon completion of the work and at a time designated by the Contracting Officer, provide the services of a competent Technician regularly employed or authorized by the manufacturer of the dock leveler to instruct Government personnel in the proper operation, maintenance, safety, and emergency procedures of the dock leveler. A minimum of one and no more than two eight-hour working days of instruction is required. Conduct the training at the job site or at any other location mutually satisfactory to the Government and the Contractor.

3.6 OPERATING MANUALS

Operating manuals shall detail the step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, and shutdown. Operating manuals shall include

the manufacturer's name, model number, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. List routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guides in the maintenance manuals. Also include piping and equipment layout and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 12 21 00

WINDOW BLINDS

08/17, CHG 2: 11/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Provide window treatment, conforming to NFPA 701, complete with necessary brackets, fittings, and hardware. Provide each window treatment type as a complete unit in accordance with paragraph WINDOW TREATMENT PLACEMENT SCHEDULE. Mount and operate equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Completely cover windows to receive a treatment.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 701 (2019) Standard Methods of Fire Tests for
Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation

SD-03 Product Data

Window Blinds; G

Recycled Content for aluminum components; S

SD-04 Samples

Window Blinds; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Window Blinds

SD-07 Certificates

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Window Blinds; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Window Blinds; G

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Window Blinds

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 Greenguard Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver components to the jobsite in the manufacturer's original packaging with the brand or company name, item identification, and project reference clearly marked. Store components in a dry location that is adequately ventilated and free from dust, water, or other contaminants and has easy access for inspection and handling. Store materials flat in a clean dry area with temperature maintained above 50 degrees F. Do not open containers until needed for installation unless verification inspection is required.

1.6 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties that extend beyond a 1 year period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 WINDOW BLINDS

Provide each blind, including hardware, accessory items, mounting brackets and fastenings, as a complete unit produced by one manufacturer. Unless otherwise indicated, all parts will be the same color and will match the color of the blind slat. Treat steel features for corrosion resistance. Submit product data and samples of each type and color of window treatment. Provide samples 6 inch in length for each color.

Provide Aluminum Components with a minimum of 24 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for aluminum components.

2.1.1 Horizontal Blinds

Provide horizontal blinds with 1 inch slats. Blind units must be capable of nominally 180 degree partial tilting operation and full-height raising. Blinds must be inside mount. Provide tapes for 2 inch slats with longitudinal reinforced vinyl plastic in 1-piece turn ladder construction. Tapes for 1 inch slats must be braided polyester or nylon.

2.1.1.1 Head Channel and Slats

Provide head channel made of aluminum with corrosion-resistant finish nominal 0.024 inch for 1 inch slats. Provide slats of aluminum, not less than 0.006 inch thick, and of sufficient strength to prevent sag or bow in the finished blind. Provide a sufficient amount of slats to assure proper control, uniform spacing, and adequate overlap. Enclose all hardware in the headrail.

2.1.1.2 Controls

A transparent tilting wand will be provided to tilt the slats, it will hang vertically by its own weight, and will swivel for easy operation. Provide a tilter control of enclosed construction. Provide moving parts and mechanical drive made of compatible materials which do not require lubrication during normal expected life. The tilter will tilt the slats to any desired angle and hold them at that angle so that any vibration or movement of ladders and slats will not drive the tilter and change the angle of slats. Include a mechanism to prevent over tightening. Provide a wand of sufficient length to reach to within 5 feet of the floor.

2.1.1.3 Intermediate Brackets

Provide intermediate brackets for installation, as recommended by the manufacturer, of blinds over 60 inch wide.

2.1.1.4 Bottom Rail

Provide bottom rail made of corrosion-resistant steel with factory applied finish. Provide closed oval shaped bottom rail with double-lock seam for maximum strength. Bottom rail and end caps to match slats in color.

2.1.1.5 Braided Ladders

Provide braided ladders of 100 percent polyester yarn, color to match the slat color. Space ladders 15.2 slats per foot of drop in order to provide a uniform overlap of the slats in a closed position.

2.1.1.6 Hold-Down Brackets

Provide universal type hold-down brackets for sill or jamb mount where indicated on placement list.

2.1.2 Light Control and Privacy Blinds

In addition to requirements for horizontal blinds, provide each unit with a feature that offers hidden slat holes for maximum light control and privacy.

2.2 COLOR

Provide color, pattern and texture in accordance with Section 09 06 00
SCHEDULES FOR FINISHES

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

Submit drawings showing fabrication and Installation details. Show layout and locations of track, direction of draw, mounting heights, and details. Provide Manufacturer's Instructions and Operation and Maintenance Data. Perform installation of window blinds in accordance with the approved detail drawings and manufacturer's installation instructions. Install units level, plumb, secure, and at proper height and location relative to window units. Provide and install supplementary or miscellaneous items in total, including clips, brackets, or anchorages incidental to or necessary for a sound, secure, and complete installation. Do not start installation until completion of room painting and finishing operations.

3.3 CLEAN-UP

Upon completion of the installation, inspect window treatments for soiling, damage or blemishes; and adjust them for form and appearance and proper operating condition. Repair or replace damaged units as directed by the Contracting Officer. Isolate metal parts from direct contact with concrete, mortar, or dissimilar metals. Ensure blinds installed in recessed pockets can be removable without disturbing the pocket. The entire blind, when retracted, must be contained behind the pocket. For blinds installed outside the jambs and mullions, overlap each jamb and mullion 0.75 inch or more when the jamb and mullion sizes permit. Include all hardware, brackets, anchors, fasteners, and accessories necessary for a complete, finished installation.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 12 31 00

MANUFACTURED METAL CASEWORK

11/14, CHG 2: 11/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel

AWS D1.3/D1.3M (2018) Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A167 (2011) Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip

ASTM A325 (2014) Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength

ASTM A325M (2014) Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 830 MPa Minimum Tensile Strength (Metric)

ASTM A1008/A1008M (2021a) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable

ASTM F594 (2009; R 2020) Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Nuts

ASTM F836M (2020) Standard Specification for Style 1 Stainless Steel Metric Nuts (Metric)

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.5 (2020) Cylinder and Input Devices for Locks

ANSI/BHMA A156.9 (2020) Cabinet Hardware

ANSI/BHMA A156.11 (2014) Cabinet Locks

KITCHEN CABINET MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (KCMA)

KCMA A161.1 (2017) Performance & Construction
Standards for Kitchen and Vanity Cabinets

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

FS FF-B-588 (Rev E; Notice 1) Bolt, Toggle: and
Expansion Sleeve, Screw

FS FF-S-325 (Basic; Int Amd 3; Notices 3, 4) Shield,
Expansion; Nail, Expansion; and Nail,
Drive Screw (Devices, Anchoring, Masonry)

FS TT-E-489 (Rev J; Notice 2) Enamel, Alkyd, Glass,
Low VOC Content

1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Pre-Installation Meeting

Within 30 calendar days after date of award , submit for the approval of the Contracting Officer six (6) copies of outline drawings of all casework to be furnished under this contract, together with weights and overall dimensions, and required samples. Ensure drawings show the general arrangement and overall dimensions of the casework, details of any casework supports. Submit the following for review and approval:

- a. Fabrication Drawings
- b. Installation Drawings

Submit installation drawings for metal cabinets. Include in drawings the location of cabinets, details of cabinet relationship and dimensional positions.

Submit manufacturer's catalog data and certificates for the following items showing conformance with the referenced standards contained in this section:

- a. Cabinets
- b. Corrosion-Resistant Steel
- c. Adhesives
- d. Filler Material
- e. Fasteners
- f. Accessories and Hardware

Submit manufacturer's instructions for metal cabinet systems including special provisions required to install equipment components and system packages. Include special notices detailing impedances, hazards and safety precautions.

Submit manufacturer's standard color charts for metal cabinets showing the manufacturer's recommended color and finish selections.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication Drawings; G, AE

Installation Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Cabinets; G, AE

Corrosion-Resistant Steel; G

Adhesives; G

Filler Material; G

Fasteners; G

Accessories and Hardware; G

SD-04 Samples

Accessories and Hardware; G

Manufacturer's Standard Color Charts; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Corrosion-Resistant Steel; G

Adhesives; G

Filler Material; G

Fasteners; G

Accessories and Hardware; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Instructions; G

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver, store, and handle metal casework in a manner that prevents damage or disfigurement.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

2.1.1 Design Requirements

Provide metal casework, factory-fabricated and finished in the manufacturer's standard sizes and finishes of the type, design, and configuration indicated. Provide freestanding top and base cabinet assemblies consisting of individual units joined into continuous sections. Accomplish fastenings to permit removal and replacement of individual units without affecting the remainder of the installation. Provide removable doors equipped with position stops to avoid accidental complete withdrawals. Fix or adjust shelves as indicated.

2.2 MATERIALS

Provide corrosion-resistant steel conforming to ASTM A1008/A1008M, and ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304 Finish 4.

Provide accessories and hardware conforming to the following requirements, as applicable:

Extension drawer slides: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, Type B85071

Semiconcealed hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, Type B81201, 1-1/2 inches

Locks, keying, and keys: As directed

Catches: Magnetic, 5-pound pull

Sliding door set:

Impregnated fiberboard track

Nylon glides

Provide Fasteners conforming to the following:

Screws: Complying with ANSI Standards, Group, Type and Class as applicable

Anchoring Devices: FS FF-S-325, Group, Type, and Class as applicable

Toggle bolts: FS FF-B-588, Type I, Class A, Style 2

Nuts: ASTM F594, corrosion-resistant steel

Bolts: ASTM A325, heavy, hexagon head bolts corrosion-resistant steel

Nuts: ASTM F836M, corrosion-resistant steel

Bolts: ASTM A325M, heavy, hexagon head bolts corrosion-resistant steel

2.3 STEEL CABINET FABRICATION

2.3.1 General

Provide freestanding top and base cabinets fabricated from 22-gauge,

cold-rolled furniture steel, except for backs of cabinets and backs of doors provide 24-gauge steel. Construct cabinets with no raw edges or exposed flanges, with welds being flush and ground smooth on all exposed surfaces. Provide concealed fasteners at all exposed exterior surfaces. Provide doors and drawer fronts with panelized double-wall construction, not less than 1/2-inch thick, with a sound-absorbing material adhered between the walls. Equip doors and drawers with rubber or plastic silencers and bumpers. Provide drawers with removable fronts, mounted on renewable fiber guides and equipped with position stops for complete drawer withdrawal. Provide adjustable shelving as indicated.

2.3.2 Workmanship

Align end panels, top rails, bottoms and vertical posts at intersections in same plane, without overlap. Grind exposed welds flush and smooth. Welding is to conform to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.3/D1.3M.

Additional casework construction requirements:

- a. Welded assembly.
- b. Fabricate with enclosed uprights or posts full height or width at front, include sides, backs, bottoms, soffits, ceilings under sloping tops, headers and rail, assembled to form an integral unit.
- c. Form sides to make rabbeted stile 3/4 to 1-1/8 inch wide, closed by channel containing shelf adjustment slots.
- d. Make top and cross rails of "U" shaped channel.
- e. Enclose all backs and bottoms in cabinets, including drawer units.
- f. Provide finish panel on exposed cabinet backs.
- g. Do not use screws and bolts in construction or assembly of casework, except to secure hardware, applied door stops, accessories, removable panels and where casework is required to be fastened end to end or back to back.
- h. Provide reinforcing for hardware.
- i. Size Dimensions:
 - (1) Used dimensions shown or specified within tolerances specified.
 - (2) Tolerance:
 - (a) Depth: 13-inches in lieu of 12 -inches, 18 inches in lieu of 16 -inches, except wall hung units above counter 21 inches to 24 inches in lieu of 22-inches.
 - (b) Width: Minus one inch.
 - (c) Height: 1-inch plus or minus for wall hung cabinets and counter mounted cabinets, excluding sloping tops. 1-inch plus for floor standing cabinets, excluding base and sloping tops. Full height cabinets shown back to back same height.
 - (d) Manufacturer's tolerance for the length, depth or height: Not

to exceed 0.0625-inches

2.3.3 Minimum Thickness of Steel

	U. S. Standard Thickness <u>GAUGE</u>	<u>(INCH)</u>
Drawer fronts, backs, bodies, closure plates or scribe and filler strips less than 75 mm wide, filler strips less than 75 mm wide, sloping top, shelf reinforcement channel and shelves.	20	0.035
Base pedestals. Reinforcement for drawers with locks. Table legs, spreaders and stretchers, when fabricated of cold rolled tubing. Door exterior and interior panels, flush. Cross rails of base units. Front bottom rails, back bottom rails; rails may be 1.49 mm 16 gauge thick. Uprights or posts. Top corner gussets.	18	0.047
Aprons, apron division, reinforcing gussets, table legs, desk legs and aprons, spreaders and stretchers when formed without welding. Toe base gussets, drawer slides, and other metal work. Front top rails and back rails except top back rails may be 1.2 mm 18 gauge thick. reinforcing gussets, table legs, desk legs and aprons, spreaders and stretchers when formed without welding. Toe base gussets, drawer slides, and other metal work. Front top rails and back rails except top back rails may be 1.2 mm 18 gauge thick.	16	0.059
Drawer runners door tracks	14	1.88
Base unit bottom corner gussets and leg sockets	12	0.104

	U. S. Standard Thickness <u>GAUGE</u>	<u>(INCH)</u>
Reinforcement for hinge reinforcement inside doors and cabinets	12	3

2.3.4 Cabinets EQ-02

Provide cabinets with sheet steel fronts, backs, sides, tops, and bottoms.

Form sides with rabbeted stiles 1-1/8-inches wide, closed by welded channel containing embossed louvers spaced 1-1/2-inches on center, for adjustable shelves.

Provide cabinets that have a steel channel-shaped top rail, 18-gauge steel cross rails, and Z-shaped rear rail to engage 16-gauge steel hanging bracket.

At base cabinets, provide 1-1/2-inch long leveling screws for adjusting to floor variations that are accessible through plugged openings in bottom; install 14-gauge gussets to support the screws.

Provide freestanding pre-configured metal cabinet units 45 inches wide by 27-3/4 inches deep by 48 inches high. Provide cabinet with (5) drawers with heights of 7 inches, 8 inches, (1) 9 inches, (1) 10-1/8 inches, (1) 18 inches with a (9) compartment interior drawer with 7-1/2 inch by 7-7/8 inch compartments, center-mounted hinge lock bars secured with a single padlock.

2.3.5 Cabinets EQ-03

Provide cabinets with sheet steel fronts, backs, sides, tops, and bottoms.

Form sides with rabbeted stiles 1-1/8-inches wide, closed by welded channel containing embossed louvers spaced 1-1/2-inches on center, for adjustable shelves.

Provide cabinets that have a steel channel-shaped top rail, 18-gauge steel cross rails, and Z-shaped rear rail to engage 16-gauge steel hanging bracket.

At top cabinets, provide 1-1/2-inch long leveling screws for adjusting to floor variations that are accessible through plugged openings in bottom; install 14-gauge gussets to support the screws.

Provide freestanding pre-configured metal shelf cabinet units 45 inches wide by 27-3/4 inches deep x 48 inches high with (3) adjustable shelves, hinge lock bars, shelf door locks.

2.3.6 Cabinets EQ-06

Provide cabinets with sheet steel fronts, backs, sides, tops, and bottoms.

Form sides with rabbeted stiles 1-1/8-inches wide, closed by welded channel containing embossed louvers spaced 1-1/2-inches on center, for adjustable shelves.

Provide cabinets that have a steel channel-shaped top rail, 18-gauge steel cross rails, and Z-shaped rear rail to engage 16-gauge steel hanging bracket.

At base cabinets, provide 1-1/2-inch long leveling screws for adjusting to floor variations that are accessible through plugged openings in bottom; install 14-gauge gussets to support the screws.

Provide freestanding pre-configured metal cabinet units 45 inches wide by 27-3/4 inches deep by 60 inches high with (8) Drawers housing 120 compartments. (6) Drawer heights are 6 inches high, and (2) are 8 inches high. Cabinet to have center-mounted hinge lock bars secured with a single padlock.

At base cabinets, provide removable backs, knee space panels, or access doors where piping occurs.

2.3.7 Cabinets EQ-07

Provide cabinets with sheet steel fronts, backs, sides, tops, and bottoms.

Form sides with rabbeted stiles 1-1/8-inches wide, closed by welded channel containing embossed louvers spaced 1-1/2-inches on center, for adjustable shelves.

Provide cabinets that have a steel channel-shaped top rail, 18-gauge steel cross rails, and Z-shaped rear rail to engage 16-gauge steel hanging bracket.

At top cabinets, provide 1-1/2-inch long leveling screws for adjusting to floor variations that are accessible through plugged openings in bottom; install 14-gauge gussets to support the screws.

Provide freestanding pre-configured metal overhead cabinet units 45 inches wide by 27-3/4 inches deep by 20-3/4 inches high. Lockable steel doors with (1) adjustable shelf, and shelf door locks.

2.3.8 Cabinets EQ-09

Provide cabinets with sheet steel fronts, backs, sides, tops, and bottoms.

Form sides with rabbeted stiles 1-1/8-inches wide, closed by welded channel containing embossed louvers spaced 1-1/2-inches on center, for adjustable shelves.

Provide cabinets that have a steel channel-shaped top rail, 18-gauge steel cross rails, and Z-shaped rear rail to engage 16-gauge steel hanging bracket.

At base cabinets, provide 1-1/2-inch long leveling screws for adjusting to floor variations that are accessible through plugged openings in bottom; install 14-gauge gussets to support the screws.

Provide freestanding pre-configured metal cabinet units 36 inches wide by 30 inches deep x 44 inches high with (1) adjustable shelf.

2.3.9 Doors

Provide doors that are double-pan construction with 5/8-inch thick

telescoped inner pan into outer pan with exposed vertical edge formed into channel shape having returned lip over inner pan and offset to receive lip.

Coat panels with 1/8-inch thick asphaltic sound deadener.

Fasten reinforcement for hardware attachment to inner pan and conceal.

Fit hinged doors with pairs of hinges, knob pulls, locks, and bumpers.

Equip sliding doors with tracks, guides, bumpers, and bar pulls.

Additional considerations for doors:

- a. Hollow metal type, flush and glazed doors not less than 5/8 inch thick.
- b. Fabricate flush metal doors of two panels formed into pans with corners welded and ground smooth. Provide flush doors with a sound deadening core.
- c. Provide sheet steel hinge reinforcement inside doors.
- d. Sliding doors: Provide stops to prevent bypass.
- e. Doors removable without use of tools except where equipped with locks.

2.3.10 Drawers

Provide drawer fronts that are double-pan construction with 5/8-inch thick telescoped inner pan into outer pan with exposed vertical edge formed into channel shape having return lip over inner pan and offset to receive lip. Weld drawer bodies to front through flanges on sides and bottom, and to back through flanges at rear.

Extend flanges outward or downward, top of side, and backrolled.

Cove corners to 1/2-inch radius.

Provide drawer accessories including slides, bar pulls, lock and stop devices.

Additional considerations for drawers:

- a. Drawer fronts flush hollow metal type not less than 5/8-inch thick with sound deadening core. Fabricate of two panels formed into pans. Weld and grind smooth corners of drawer fronts.
- b. Form bodies from one piece of steel, weld to drawer front.
- c. Provide reinforcement for locks and provide rubber bumpers at both sides of drawer head to cushion closing.
- d. Equip with roller suspension guides.

2.3.11 Shelves

Fabricate shelves from corrosion-resistant steel sheet with front and rear edges flanged down 3/4-inch and hemmed back at 30 degrees to underside of shelf.

Support shelves with 16-gauge shelf clips inserted in slots in front stile and in form channel in back.

Notch flanges at sides to match and engage with embossments on side panels.

Additional considerations for shelves:

- a. Capable of supporting an evenly distributed minimum load of (twenty-five pounds per square foot) without visible distortion.
- b. Flange shelves down 3/4-inch on edges, with front and bearing edges flanged back 1/2 inch.
- c. For shelves over 42-inches in length and over 12 inches in depth install 1-1/2 x 1/2 x 0.0359 inch thick sheet steel hat channel reinforcement welded to underside midway between front and back and extending full length of shelf.
- d. Weld shelves to metal back and ends unless shown adjustable.
- e. Provide means of positive locking shelf in position, and to permit adjustment without use of tools.

2.3.12 Finish

Prime and factory finish steel cabinets with two coats of synthetic enamel, baking quality, conforming to FS TT-E-489, Class B. Provide colors as selected.

2.3.13 Welded Cabinets

Conform to KCMA A161.1, all welded construction.

2.4 ACCESSORIES AND HARDWARE

Furnish accessories such as interior drawer compartments for pre-configured cabinets, kick plates and shelf door locks as indicated.

Provide corrosion resistant hardware. Provide exposed hardware with a chromium-plated finish or a corrosion-resistant finish as approved. Paint semi-concealed hinges on cabinets where paint finish is required to match the cabinets. Provide door and drawer pulls as indicated.

2.5 CABINETS

2.5.1 Cabinet Locks

Requirements for cabinet locks:

- a. Where locks are shown.
- b. Locked pair of hinged door over 36 inches high:
 - (1) ANSI/BHMA A156.5, similar to E0261, key one side.
 - (2) On active leaf use three-point locking device, consisting of two steel rods and lever controlled cam at lock, to operate by lever having lock cylinder housed therein.

- (3) On inactive leaf use dummy lever of same design.
- (4) Provide keeper holes for locking device rods and cam.
- (5) Use two point locking device both doors of cabinet 6D similar to ANSI/BHMA A156.5, E0251, key one side.
- c. Door and Drawer: ANSI/BHMA A156.11 cam locks.
 - (1) Drawer and Hinged Door up to 36-inches high: E07261.05-03M 12301-11
 - (2) Pin-tumbler, cylinder type lock with not less than four pins. Disc tumbler lock "duo A" with brass working parts and case, as manufactured by Illinois Lock Company are acceptable.
 - (3) Sliding Door: E07161.
- d. Key locks differently for each type casework and master key for each service, such as Nursing Units, Psychiatric, Administrative, Pharmacy.
 - (1) Key drug locker inner door different from outer door.
 - (2) Provide two keys per lock.
 - (3) Provide six master keys per service or Nursing Unit.
- e. Marking of Locks and Keys:
 - (1) Name of manufacturer, or trademark which can readily be identified legibly marked on each lock and key change number marked on exposed face of lock.
 - (2) Key change numbers stamped on keys.
 - (3) Key change numbers to provide sufficient information for manufacturer to replace key.

2.5.2 Cabinet Hardware

Comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.9.

Requirements for cabinet hardware:

- a. Door/Drawer Pulls: B02011.
 - (1) One for drawers up to 23-inches wide.
 - (2) Two for drawers over 23-inches wide.
 - (3) Sliding door flush pull, each door: B02201.
- b. Cabinet Door Catch:
 - (1) Install at bottom of wall cabinets, top of base cabinets and top and bottom of full height cabinet doors over 48-inches.
 - (2) Omit on doors with locks.

d. Drawer Slides:

- (1) Use B05051 for drawers over 6-inches deep.
- (2) Use B05052 for drawers 3 to 6-inches deep.
- (3) Use B05053 for drawers less than 3-inches deep.

2.6 FINISH

2.6.1 Cabinet Finish

Provide cabinets with a factory-applied durable finish in accordance with KCMA A161.1 requirements and of a type standard with the manufacturer.

2.7 COLOR, TEXTURE, AND PATTERN

Provide color as selected from manufacturers standard colors.

2.8 DISPENSING TRAYS AND BINS

Requirements for dispensing trays and bins:

- a. Design trays and bins to fit cabinets where shown.
- b. Fabricate of steel, polypropylene, fiberglass reinforced polyester resin, or other suitable material.
- c. Lock securely in place without the use of tools.
- d. Fit at angle to provide gravity feed where shown.
- e. Dispensing Trays:
 - (1) Equip trays with two longitudinal dividers adjustable to three position.
 - (2) Approximate dimensions: 6-inches in width 3-inches (in depth, and length to suit cabinets depth furnished.
- f. Dispensing Bins:
 - (1) Open front, except for retaining rim. 05-03M 12301-14
 - (2) Approximate dimensions: 6-inches in width, 5-inches in depth, and length to suit cabinets furnished.

2.9 ELECTRICAL FIXTURES

Requirements for dispensing electrical fixtures:

- a. Comply with requirements of DIVISION 26 ELECTRICAL specifications for fixtures, receptacles, wiring and junction boxes required for fixtures and receptacles, included with casework.

2.10 SUSPENSION SYSTEM FOR INTERCHANGEABLE CASEWORK

Requirements for dispensing suspension systems for interchangeable

casework:

- a. Provide a suspension system for independent suspension of interchangeable under-counter cabinets and of countertops. Provide for removal or exchange of under counter cabinets of various heights, widths and types, and for vertical adjustment of counter tops to heights indicated on drawings.
- b. Suspension Frames: Fabricate from 1-1/4-inch square or x 1-1/2-inch rectangular, 0.104-inch 12 gauge steel tubing welded to form full rectangle. Provide integral, adjustable leveling device in steel leg with non marring foot cap.
- c. Provide cabinets with a .059-inch steel shaped form welded across the entire width of back to engage a continuous slot in a wall mounting channel. Provide final positive location and locking of case in position with two fastening devices through case stile at front.
- e. Paint all construction materials that are exposed.

2.11 WHEELED CARRIER

Provide a wheeled carrier to facilitate installation, removal, and transport of interchangeable cases as part of the interchangeable furniture system.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install casework as described in manufacturers installation drawings in accordance with design intent.

- a. Level base cabinets by adjusting leveling screws.
- b. Secure cases permanently to floor and wall construction, where applicable.
- c. Secure wall cases in position with screws to blocking, where applicable.
- d. Bolt adjoining cases together.
- e. Align doors, adjust hardware, and clean surfaces.

3.1.1 Coordination

Before installing casework, verify wall and floor surfaces covered by casework have been finished.

Verify location and size of mechanical and electrical services as required.

Verify reinforcement of walls and partitions for support and anchorage of casework.

3.1.2 Fastenings and Anchorage

Do not anchor to wood ground strips.

Provide hat shape metal spacers where fasteners span gaps or spaces 05-03M 12301-16.

Use 1/4-inch diameter toggle or expansion bolts, or other appropriate size and type fastening device for securing casework to walls or floor. Use expansion bolts shields having holding power beyond tensile and shear strength of bolt and breaking strength of bolt head.

Use 1/4-inch diameter hex bolts for securing cabinets together.

Use 1/4-inch by minimum 1-1/2-inch length lag bolt anchorage to wood blocking for concealed fasteners.

Use not less than No. 12 or 14 wood screws with not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood blocking.

Space fastening devices 12-inches on center with minimum of three fasteners in 3 or 4-foot unit width.

Anchor floor mounted cabinets with a minimum of four bolts through corner gussets. Anchor bolts may be combined with or separate from leveling device.

Secure cabinets in alignment with hex bolts or other internal fastener devices removable from interior of cabinets without special tools. Do not use fastener devices which require removal of tops for access.

Where units abut end to end anchor together at top and bottom of sides at front and back. Where units are back to back anchor backs together at corners with hex bolts placed inconspicuously inside casework.

Where type, size, or spacing of fastenings is not shown or specified, show on shop drawings proposed fastenings and method of installation.

3.1.3 Closures and Filler Plates

Close openings larger than 1/4-inch wide between cabinets and adjacent walls with flat, steel closure strips, scribed to required contours, or machined formed steel fillers with returns, and secured with sheet metal screws to tubular or channel members of units, or bolts where exposed on inside.

Where ceilings interfere with installation of sloping tops, omit sloping tops and provide flat steel filler plates.

- a. Secure filler plates to casework top members, unless shown otherwise.
- b. Secure filler plates more than 6-inches in width top edge to a continuous one by one inch .035-inches thick steel formed steel angle with screws.
- c. Anchor angle to ceiling with toggle bolts, 05-03M 12301-17

Install closure strips at exposed ends of pipe space and offset opening into concealed space. Paint closure strips and fillers with same finishes as cabinets. Caulk and seal laboratory furniture as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS

3.1.4 Cabinets

Install in available space; arranged for safe and convenient operation and maintenance. Align cabinets for flush joints except where shown otherwise.

Install cabinets level with bottom of wall cabinets in alignment and tops of base cabinets aligned. Install corner cabinets with hinges on corner side with filler or spacers sufficient to allow opening of drawers.

Plug Buttons:

- a. Install plug buttons in predrilled or prepunched perforations not used.
- b. Use chromium plate plug buttons or buttons finish to match adjacent surfaces.

Cabinets 6D: Ground to nearest cold water pipe in accordance with NFPA, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., or other nationally recognized laboratory approved ground specified system.

Cabinets PH77:

- a. Install undercounter unit, PH77U, on base to bring cabinet to same height as adjacent cabinets.
- b. Install wall hung units, PH77N, as for wall cabinets, bolt together with security type bolts.
- c. Install stacked units, PH77D, bolted together and to base with security type bolts.

3.2 CLEANING

Remove crating and packing materials from premises. Wipe down surfaces to remove fingerprints and markings and leave in clean condition.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.3.1 Inspection

Examine casework grounds and supports for adequate anchorage, foreign material, moisture, and unevenness that could prevent quality casework installation. Ensure that electrical and plumbing rough-ins for casework are complete. Do not proceed with installation until defects are corrected.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 12 36 00

COUNTERTOPS

08/16, CHG 2: 08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI A161.2 (1998) Decorative Laminate Countertops,
Performance Standards for Fabricated High
Pressure

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B18.6.1 (2016) Wood Screws (Inch Series)

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A325 (2014) Standard Specification for
Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated,
120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength

ASTM A325M (2014) Standard Specification for
Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 830
MPa Minimum Tensile Strength (Metric)

ASTM D13 (2002) Standard Specification for Spirits
of Turpentine

ASTM D570 (1998; E 2010; R 2010) Standard Test
Method for Water Absorption of Plastics

ASTM D638 (2014) Standard Test Method for Tensile
Properties of Plastics

ASTM D2583 (2013a) Indentation Hardness of Rigid
Plastics by Means of a Barcol Impressor

ASTM D4689 (2012) Standard Specification for
Adhesive, Casein-Type

ASTM D4690 (2012) Standard Specification for Urea
Formaldehyde Resin Adhesives

ASTM E84 (2020) Standard Test Method for Surface
Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials

ASTM F594 (2009; R 2020) Standard Specification for
Stainless Steel Nuts

ASTM F836M (2020) Standard Specification for Style 1
Stainless Steel Metric Nuts (Metric)

CALIFORNIA AIR RESOURCES BOARD (CARB)

CARB 93120 (2007) Airborne Toxic Control Measure
(ATCM) to Reduce Formaldehyde Emissions
from Composite Wood Products

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350 (2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for
the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile
Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor
Sources using Environmental Chambers

KITCHEN CABINET MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (KCMA)

KCMA A161.1 (2017) Performance & Construction
Standards for Kitchen and Vanity Cabinets

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

MPI 28 (2012) Varnish, Marine Spar, Exterior,
Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6)

MPI 91 (2012) Paste, Wood Filler

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA LD 3 (2005) Standard for High-Pressure
Decorative Laminates

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SCIENTIFIC EQUIPMENT AND FURNITURE ASSOCIATION (SEFA)

SEFA 7 (2007) Recommended Practice for Laboratory
and Hospital Fixtures

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-59295 Corrosion Preventive Compounds, Cold
Application(For New And Fielded Motor
Vehicles And Trailers)

FS FF-S-325 (Basic; Int Amd 3; Notices 3, 4) Shield,
Expansion; Nail, Expansion; and Nail,
Drive Screw (Devices, Anchoring, Masonry)

FS WW-P-541 (Rev E; Am 1; Notice 1) Plumbing Fixtures

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 770 Formaldehyde Standards for Composite Wood Products

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication; G, AE

Installation Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Synthetic Resin; G

Stainless Steel Sinks; G

SD-04 Samples

Countertop; G, AE

Backsplash; G

Manufacturer's Standard Color Charts; G

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality for Countertop Products; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Instructions

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality Certification

Submit required indoor air quality certifications in one submittal package.

1.3.1.1 Countertop Products

Provide countertop products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party

program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.3.1.2 Composite Wood, Wood Structural Panel and Agrifiber Products

For purposes of this specification, composite wood and agrifiber products include particleboard, medium density fiberboard (MDF), wheatboard, strawboard, panel substrates, and door cores. Provide products certified to meet emissions requirements of both 40 CFR 770 and CARB 93120. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver, store, and handle countertops and backsplash in a manner that will prevent damage and disfigurement.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide the manufacturer's standard type countertops or as indicated on the drawings. Accomplish fastenings to permit removal and replacement of individual countertops without affecting the remainder of the installation.

Submit manufacturer's instructions for countertops including special provisions required to install equipment components and system packages. Include all special notices detailing impedances, hazards and safety precautions.

Submit manufacturer's standard color charts for countertops showing the manufacturer's recommended color and finish selections.

Provide countertop products certified to meet the emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type). Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for countertop products.

2.1.1 Design

Provide factory fabricated, prefinished solid surface countertops in the manufacturer's standard sizes and finishes of the type, design, and configuration indicated. Provide countertops as specified and meet the requirements of KCMA A161.1. Accomplish fastenings to permit removal and replacement of individual units without affecting the remainder of the installation. Provide counters with watertight sink rim when indicated. Include removable drawers equipped with position stops to avoid accidental complete withdrawals.

2.2 FABRICATION

2.2.1 Countertop And Backsplash

Provide countertops and backsplash of Synthetic resin covered with a according to ANSI A161.2.

Provide a water-resistant type plywood, Grade B-D Douglas fir plywood, with a minimum thickness of 3/4-inch. Provide Synthetic resin backsplash

3/4-inch thick by the height indicated.

2.2.1.1 Solid Polymer Countertops

Provide countertop and backsplash of sheet material for sink/lavatory cutout; as shown, with 1/2 -inch material thickness, cast, and filled nonporous solid surfacing composed of acrylic polymer, mineral fillers, and pigments. Repair superficial damage, a depth of no more than 0.010-inch, by sanding or polishing. Use material conforming to the following performance requirements:

- a. Tensile Strength; 4100 psi, when tested in accordance with ASTM D638.
- b. Hardness; Barcol Impressor 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM D2583.
- c. Flammability; rated Class I with a flame spread of 25 maximum and a smoke developed of 100 maximum when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- d. Boiling water resistance; no effect when tested in accordance with ANSI/NEMA LD 3.
- e. High temperature; no effect when tested in accordance with ANSI/NEMA LD 3.
- f. Liquid absorption; 0.06 percent maximum (24 hours) when tested in accordance with ASTM D570.
- g. Sanitation; National Sanitation Foundation approval for food contact in accordance with Standard 51 and approval for food area applications.
- h. Impact resistance; no failure for ball drop when tested in accordance with ANSI/NEMA LD 3.

2.2.2 Color, Texture, and Pattern

Select color in accordance with the drawings. Color listed is not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers.

2.3 MATERIALS

Use thermosetting urea-resin Type II Adhesives for application of plastic laminate conforming to ASTM D4690 as recommended by the manufacturer of the laminate. Use adhesive for wood members conforming to ASTM D4689. Provide laminate and wood member adhesives meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168.

Use filler material conforming to MPI 91.

Provide softwoods conforming to Voluntary Product Standard PS-20.

Provide turpentine conforming to ASTM D13.

Provide varnish conforming to MPI 28.

Provide fasteners conforming to the following:

- a. Screws: ASME B18.6.1, Group, Type and Class as applicable

- b. Anchoring Devices: FS FF-S-325, Group, Type, and Class as applicable
- c. Toggle Bolts:
 - (1) Wings are two sheet-metal parts of "U" or channel shape. The wings are pivoted either on trunnion nuts or pins and are held normally in open position by a spring or springs placed inside the wing groove.
 - (2) Wing pivots are integral with the trunnion nuts used with the machine screw or threaded stud. Ensure the nut engages not less than two full threads of its screw or stud except in toggle bolts where the wing parts close on the bolt and lock it while being tightened, in which case one full thread engagement is permissible. The trunnion nuts are inserted in place with the pivots passed through the eyes in the wings.
- d. Nuts: ASTM F594, stainless steel
- e. Bolts: ASTM A325, heavy, hexagon head bolts stainless steel
- f. Nuts: ASTM F836M, stainless steel
- g. Bolts: ASTM A325M, heavy, hexagon head bolts stainless steel

Stainless Steel Sinks:

- a. 18-gage stainless steel, nonintegral, self-rimming
- b. Drain holes in center of bowl
- c. Underside coated with 1/8-inch thick sound deadener
- d. Die-form, seamless, raised edges at front and ends
- e. Cove corners to 1/2-inch radius
- f. Equip with strainers and tail pieces

Sound deadening: Conform to CID A-A-59295.

Provide service fixtures conforming to the following requirements:

- a. Fixtures: In accordance with the water conservation policy as stated in the Standard Plumbing Codes, Appendix J.
- b. Faucets: Splashback mounted, cast brass, chrome plated, FS WW-P-541
- c. Faucets: Deck mounted, cast brass, chrome plated, FS WW-P-541
- d. Gas, air, and vacuum, distilled water, steam, and de-ionized water cocks: Cast brass, chrome plated, ground key type
- e. Drains, strainers, and taps: Brass, chrome plated, FS WW-P-541
- f. Index buttons: Plastic, color codes in accordance with SEFA 7
- g. Special items: Nipples and locknuts with each fixture will be as

directed.

2.4 MIXES

2.4.1 Adhesives

Provide mounting and stone adhesives meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168.

2.4.1.1 Mounting Adhesives

Provide structural-grade silicone or epoxy adhesives of type recommended by manufacturer for application and conditions of use.

Provide spacers, if required, of type recommended by adhesive manufacturer.

2.4.1.2 Stone Adhesive

Provide epoxy or polyester adhesive of type recommend by manufacturer for application and conditions of use.

If adhesive will be visible in finished work, tint adhesive to match surfacing.

2.4.2 Joint Sealants

Use clear silicone sealant of type recommended by manufacturer for application and conditions of use. Provide joint sealant products meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168.

Provide anti-bacterial type in toilet rooms,.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Inspect material for defects prior to installation. Ensure materials throughout bear labels with the same batch number. Visually inspect materials used for adjacent pieces to assure acceptable color match. Inspect in lighting conditions similar to those on the project. Repair or replace damaged materials.

Install countertops plumb with cabinetry level to within 1/16-inch in 10-feet. Level base cabinets by adjusting leveling screws. Scribe and fit scribe strips to irregularities of adjacent surfaces. Gap openings exceeding 0.025-inch are not acceptable.

Secure countertops to cabinetry and wall construction using 1/4-inch diameter masonry anchors, spaced 30-inches maximum on center.

Submit installation drawings for countertops. Ensure drawings include location of cabinets, details of cabinets related and dimensional positions, and locations for roughing in plumbing, including sinks, faucets, strainers and cocks.

3.1.1 Preliminary Installation and Adjustment

Install materials in accordance to manufacturer's recommendations. Lift and place to avoid breakage.

Position materials to verify that materials are correctly sized and prepared. Make necessary adjustments.

If jobsite cutting, grinding, or polishing is required, use water-cooled tools. Protect jobsite and surfaces against dust and water. Perform work away from installation site if possible.

3.1.2 Surfacing

3.1.3 Permanent Installation

After verifying fit, remove quartz surfacing from position, clean substrates of dust and contamination, and clean quartz surfacing back side and joints with solvent.

Apply sufficient quantity of mounting adhesive in accordance with adhesive manufacturer's recommendations to provide permanent, secure installation.

Install surfacing plumb, level, and square and flat to within 1/6-inch in 10-feet.

3.1.4 Joints

Ensure joints between adjacent pieces of quartz surfacing are:

- a. Flush, tight fitting, level, and neat.
- b. Securely joined with stone adhesive. Fill joints level with quartz surfacing.

Clamp or brace quartz surfacing in position until adhesive sets.

Seal joints between backsplashes and countertops and around shower enclosures with silicone sealer.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Examine casework grounds and supports for adequate anchorage, foreign material, moisture, and unevenness that could prevent quality casework installation.

Ensure that electrical and plumbing rough-ins for casework are complete. Do not proceed with installation until defects are corrected.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

3.3.1 Solvent

Use a product recommended by adhesive manufacturer to clean surface of quartz surfacing to assure adhesion of adhesives.

3.3.2 Cleaning Agents

Use non-abrasive, soft-scrub type kitchen cleaners.

3.3.3 Cleaning

On completion of cabinet installation, touch up marred or abraded finished surfaces. Remove crating and packing materials from premises. Wipe down surfaces to remove fingerprints and markings and leave in clean condition.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 12 48 13

ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES

08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D2047 (2017) Standard Test Method for Static Coefficient of Friction of Polish-Coated Floor Surfaces as Measured by the James Machine

ASTM E648 (2019a) Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

1.2 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING

Materials in this technical specification may increase contract compliance with sustainability requirements.

1.2.1 EPA Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines

See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING for requirements associated with EPA-designated products.

1.2.2 USDA Biobased

See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING for requirements associated with USDA Biobased products.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation Drawings; G, AE

Detail Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Entrance Floor Mats and Frames; G

SD-04 Samples

Entrance Floor Mats and Frames; G, AE

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Instructions

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Protection, Maintenance, and Repair Information

1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

Comply with 36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for installed entrance floor mats and frames. Ensure that entrance floor mats and frames are slip-resistant in accordance with ASTM D2047, with a minimum 0.60 coefficient of friction, for accessible routes and are structurally capable of withstanding a uniform floor load of 300 lb/sq ft. Ensure that flammability is in accordance with ASTM E648, Class 1, Critical Radiant Flux, minimum 0.45 watts/square meter.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the project site in their original packages or containers bearing labels clearly identifying the manufacturer, brand name, and quality or grade.

Store materials in their original unbroken packages or containers in the area in which they will be installed. Unwrap, inspect, and place mats at indicated locations. Remove all excess packing materials.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

2.1.1 Entrance Floor Mats and Frames

Submit the manufacturer's catalog data. Submit samples of assembled sections of floor mats showing corners, intersections, and other details of construction..

2.1.1.1 Carpet-Type Mats

Provide a nylon carpet bonded to a 1/8-inch to 1/4-inch-thick, flexible vinyl backing to form mats that are 5/16 inch thick with nonraveling edges.

2.1.2 Adhesives and Concrete Primers

Provide adhesives and concrete primers, where required, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

2.1.3 Color and Size

Ensure that color is in accordance with the drawings. Ensure that the size of mat is as indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Comply with the manufacturer's requirements for substrates and floor conditions affecting installation of floor mats and frames. Ensure that all unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected before installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Submit detail drawings, and custom graphics drawings as required. Provide installation drawings. Provide the manufacturer's protection, maintenance, and repair information.

Install floor mats and frames according to manufacturer's instructions. Set mat tops at the height recommended by the manufacturer for the most effective cleaning action. Provide clearance between bottoms of doors and tops of mats.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 12 50 00.13 10

FURNITURE AND FURNITURE INSTALLATION

08/17, CHG 1: 11/18

PART 1 GENERAL

Purchase and install furniture as identified within this specification. This specification section includes a Furniture, Fixtures and Equipment (FF&E) Package attachment.

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2019) Energy Standard for Buildings
Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D4157 (2013; R 2017) Standard Test Method for
Abrasion Resistance of Textile Fabrics
(Oscillatory Cylinder Method)

ASTM E84 (2020) Standard Test Method for Surface
Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials

BIFMA INTERNATIONAL (BIFMA)

ANSI/BIFMA X5.1 (2017) American National Standards For
Office Furnishings - General Purpose
Office Chairs

ANSI/BIFMA X5.3 (2007; R2012) American National Standards
For Office Furnishings - Vertical Files

ANSI/BIFMA X5.4 (2012) American National Standards For
Office Furnishings - Lounge Seating

ANSI/BIFMA X5.5 (2014) American National Standards For
Office Furnishings -Desk Products

ANSI/BIFMA X5.6 (2016) American National Standards For
Office Furnishings -Panel Systems

ANSI/BIFMA X5.9 (2012) American National Standards For
Office Furnishings - Storage Units

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 101 (2021) Life Safety Code

NFPA 265 (2019) Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Room Fire Growth Contribution of Textile or Expanded Vinyl Wall Coverings on Full Height Panels and Walls

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 723 (2018) UL Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation Drawings; G

Grommet, Power and Communication Units, and Wire Management Locations; G

SD-03 Product Data

Product Data; G

Product Style Options; G, AE

SD-04 Samples

Fabric and Finishes; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Authorized Dealer; G

Certified Furniture Installers; G

Licensed Electrician; G

Certified Telecommunications Installer; G

Manufacturer's Certification; G

Warranty; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Furniture, Data Package 1; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Energy Efficient Equipment; S

Reduced VOC's for Furniture; S

Recycled Content of Furniture; S

Bio-Based Content of Furniture; S

1.3 SERVICES

Provide services to include furniture purchase, field measuring, installation drawings, shipping and delivery coordination, receiving, inspection, submitting and processing freight and warranty claims, unpacking, storing, assembly, installation and other related activities or tasks for a complete and functional installation. Reference Section 01 45 00.00 10 QUALITY CONTROL for inspection requirements. The Contracting Officer must be allowed to participate in inspections. Develop project timelines and establish shipping, receiving and installation dates that coordinate with the building construction schedule. Hold at a minimum weekly team meetings to brief the project team, include the Contracting Officer. Notify the Contracting Officer immediately of any scheduling problems, discontinued furniture items including fabrics and finishes, or other conditions which may cause delays, and recommend available substitutes, solutions, and provide updated timeline to coordinate with building construction schedule. Substitutes and solutions must comply with the specification and be approved by the Contracting Officer.

1.4 FURNITURE PURCHASE

Purchase furniture, including checking accuracy of all acknowledgements and schedules from manufacturers and making necessary corrections to insure that the manufacturer has a correct understanding of the order and requirement. Provide furniture from the GSA Schedules and provide GSA pricing. Provide furniture from open market only when an item is not available on the GSA Schedules. See FAR clause 52.251-1 Government Supply Sources. Compete the furniture purchase by obtaining a minimum of (3) separate proposals. Furniture is subject to FAR clause 52.236-5 Materials and Workmanship. If necessary to meet project timeline requirements, furniture may be purchased using manufacturers quick-ship programs or by coordinating factory times.

1.5 ALTERNATE DESIGN

When a manufacturer's product is unable to provide desk and workstation configurations and filing/storage that conform exactly to the furniture layouts shown in the contract drawings and specifications, alternate designs may be submitted for consideration by the Contracting Officer. Alternate designs must meet or exceed the following criteria. Alternate designs that are submitted but do not meet these criteria will be rejected.

1.5.1 Desk and Workstation Size and Configuration

The alternate design must provide desks and workstations of the same basic

size and configuration shown, with only the sizes of the individual components within the desk and workstation changed to meet the standard product of the manufacturer.

1.5.2 Filing and Storage Size and Configuration

The alternate design must provide filing and storage of the same basic size and configuration shown, with only the size changed to meet the standard product of the manufacturer. The storage capacity must not be reduced.

1.5.3 Furniture Requirements

The furniture provided must comply with the drawings, specifications, and the requirements identified in the FF&E Package Attachment.

1.5.4 Layout

The storage capacity, number of desks and workstations, number of persons accommodated, width of aisles, and functionality must be maintained. Layout must comply with NFPA 101 and 36 CFR 1191.

1.6 AUTHORIZED DEALER, CERTIFIED FURNITURE INSTALLERS, LICENSED ELECTRICIAN AND CERTIFIED TELECOMMUNICATIONS INSTALLER

When required by the furniture manufacturer, furniture must be installed by an authorized dealer and a certified furniture installation crew must be used on the project. All furniture requiring hardwiring must be completed by a licensed electrician. Communications installers must be Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI) Registered Cabling Installers, Technician Level or have a minimum of 3 years experience in the installation of the specified cables and components. All installers, furniture, electrical and communications, must be on-site if questions arise. Submit copies of authorized dealer, furniture installation crew, licensed electrician and certified telecommunications installer certifications.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

1.7.1 Delivery

Deliver furniture to the jobsite in manufacturer's original packaging or blanket wrapping. Original packaging must be marked with the manufacturer name, item identification, and project reference clearly marked.

1.7.2 Furniture Inspection

Inspect furniture and provide notification of damage within the time frame required by the shipping company while carrier is still on-site. Complete claims for concealed damage within the time frame required by the shipping company and furniture manufacturer. A claim file must be maintained that documents each claim. Forward copies of claims to the Contracting Officer on a daily basis.

1.7.3 Storage

Storage space is not available on-site and furniture must be stored at an off site location. Provide any storage space required for furniture and transport stored furniture to the project site for installation. Storage

location must be approved by the Contracting Officer at the time of the furniture order. If storage is required, furniture must be stored in a dry location that is adequately ventilated and free from dirt and dust, water, and other contaminants, in a manner that permits easy access for inspection and handling, and in an environment in accordance with furniture manufacturers instructions.

1.7.4 Furniture Staging Area

Coordinate location of the furniture staging area with the Contracting Officer.

1.8 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer performance guarantees or warranties for single-shift service and include parts, labor and transportation as follows, unless otherwise noted:

- a. Systems Furniture - 12 year minimum
- b. Desks and Workstations - 10 year minimum
- c. Filing and Storage - 10 year minimum
- d. Seating
 - (1) Seating, unless otherwise noted - 10 year minimum
 - (2) 24/7 Seating (multiple shift use) - 10 year minimum
 - (3) Seating Mechanisms and Pneumatic Cylinders - 10 year minimum
 - (4) Lounge Seating - 10 year minimum
 - (5) Stacking Chairs - 10 year minimum
- e. Tables
 - (1) Unless otherwise noted - 10 year minimum
 - (2) Table Mechanisms - 5 year minimum
 - (3) Table Ganging Device - 1 year minimum
- f. Miscellaneous
 - (1) Fabric - 3 year minimum
 - (2) LED Task Lighting - 5 year minimum
 - (3) Task Lighting - 3 year minimum

Provide items not listed with a 1 year minimum. When manufacturers standard performance guarantees or warranties exceed the minimum requirements identified, provide the standard performance guarantee or warranty. Submit manufacturer's warranty information for all furniture items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SUSTAINABILITY CRITERIA

For products in this section, where applicable and to extent allowed by performance criteria, provide and document the following:

2.1.1 Energy Efficient Equipment

Coordinate requirement for energy efficient equipment, such as appliances and lighting, and provide documentation in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING paragraph ENERGY EFFICIENT EQUIPMENT.

2.1.2 Reduced VOC's for Furniture

Coordinate requirement for reduced VOC requirements for furniture and provide documentation in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING paragraph REDUCE VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUNDS.

2.1.3 Recycled Content of Furniture

Coordinate requirement for recycled content for furniture and provide documentation in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING paragraph RECYCLED CONTENT.

2.1.4 Bio-Based Content of Furniture

Coordinate requirement for biobased content for furniture and provide documentation in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING paragraph BIO-BASED PRODUCTS.

2.2 REFERENCE TO MANUFACTURER NAMES AND COLORS

Where product and color is shown as being specific to one manufacturer in the FF&E Package Attachment, an equivalent color or product by another manufacturer may be submitted for approval. Manufacturers, style lines, model numbers, finish, and fabric information are provided to establish design intent and are not intended to limit the selection of equal products and colors from other manufacturers.

2.3 FURNITURE REQUIREMENTS

Use the FF&E Package Attachment in conjunction with the drawings and specifications for the furniture requirements. Provide furniture from manufacturer's standard product as shown in the most current published price list or amendment. Furniture provided must be part of current line as indicated with no intent to discontinue within two years. Provide furniture that is intended for commercial use not residential. Submit product data for all furniture items, to include catalog cuts, brochures, product information, and other necessary literature to indicate compliance with specifications. Provide product data for all similar types of items together as a group, such as desks/workstations, seating, storage, and tables,. Submit each grouping of similar type items in a single submittal.

When applicable, include GSA schedule information to confirm that items are available on GSA schedule. Tag product data sheets with applicable furniture item code and name. Submit data for all product style options for selection when options are available. This applies to but is not limited to furniture items that have options such as edge details,

hardware options, and grommet colors. Submit manufacturer's certification stating that furniture meets the specifications.

2.3.1 Construction

- a. Provide furniture that complies with the following testing requirements:

- (1) ANSI/BIFMA

- (a) Office Seating - ANSI/BIFMA X5.1
 - (b) Vertical Files - ANSI/BIFMA X5.3
 - (c) Lounge Seating - ANSI/BIFMA X5.4
 - (d) Desk Products - ANSI/BIFMA X5.5
 - (e) Panel Systems - ANSI/BIFMA X5.6
 - (f) Storage - ANSI/BIFMA X5.9

- (2) Flammability

- (a) Systems furniture and workstation panel components must meet requirements for flame spread and smoke development as specified by NFPA 101 except as follows. Conduct testing in accordance with either ASTM E84 or UL 723 on the entire assembled panel of the worst case (most combustible) combination of fabric and interior construction. In addition, fabric must meet the requirements of NFPA 265. Panel flame spread shall not exceed 25 for Class A , and panel smoke development shall not exceed 450 for Class A, B, and C.

- (b) Upholstered furniture.

- b. Provide furniture with no rough or sharp edges or exposed connections. Clips, screws, and other construction elements must be concealed wherever possible.
- c. Items such as desks, workstations and systems furniture must include all necessary components to be structurally sound and must not be attached to the wall unless specified to be wall mounted in the contract documents.
- d. Desks, workstations, storage, and tables must have leveling devices to compensate for uneven floors.
- e. The underside of desks, workstations, and tables must be completely and smoothly finished.
- f. The backside of freestanding desks, workstations, and storage must be finished.
- g. Provide chair casters and glides appropriate for the floor material they are located on, such as carpet and resilient flooring.

2.3.2 Locks and Keying

- a. All drawers and doors, including but not limited to overhead storage cabinets, storage towers, supply cabinets, storage cabinets, desk and workstation pedestals, and filing cabinets must be lockable.
- b. Key each desk and workstation in an office differently and key locks within each desk and workstation alike.
- c. Furniture storage components in private offices must be keyed alike. Key each private office differently.
- d. Provide field changeable lock cylinders in desks and workstations with a minimum of 100 different key options. Number keys and lock cylinders for ease of replacement or clearly label locks with a key number, except for those manufacturers who have removable format locks.
- e. Drawers within a pedestal must be lockable either by a central lock that controls all pedestals under one work surface or an individual keyed lock in each pedestal.
- f. Central file and storage units which are grouped together but are not a part of a workstation must be keyed alike unless otherwise specified.
- g. Provide two keys for each workstation when components are keyed alike. Also provide two keys for each miscellaneous item such as filing cabinets, supply cabinets, storage cabinets, and similar type furniture items.
- h. Provide three copies of each master key to the Contracting Officer.

2.3.3 Receptacle Bodies and Device Cover Plates

Provide furniture panel faceplates and receptacle body types as specified in FF&E Package Attachment . Provide color as follows:

- a. Faceplate: match panel trim color
- b. Receptacle Bodies: match panel trim color
- c. Communication Cable Jackets: match receptacle device cover plates in color
- d. Isolated Ground Receptacles: have distinct markings or be of a different color than other receptacles

2.3.4 Keyboard Tray

Provide worksurfaces that are capable of accepting an articulating keyboard tray at locations indicated. The keyboard tray must be capable of fully recessing under the work surface and extending to give the user full access to the keyboard. The keyboard tray must have height adjustability and positive and negative tilting capability and have 180-degree swing side travel rotation. The keyboard tray must have a wrist support and include a mouse pad at the same level as the keyboard that can accommodate both right and left handed users.

2.3.5 Fabric and Finish

Submit samples of all furniture fabric and finishes. Samples must be actual samples, not photographic representations, size must be a minimum of 3 by 3 inches. If necessary, provide larger size samples to clearly represent pattern. Label samples with fabric or finish code, furniture item code and name, manufacturer name, and color information. Fabric samples must also be labeled with fiber content and double rub testing information.

2.3.5.1 Fabric

- a. Fabric must be from manufacturer's standard line, graded-in textile manufacturer's fabrics.
- b. Provide a mid grade fabric, unless otherwise noted. Example: manufacturer available grades 1 through 4 (even number of grades), provide grade 3; manufacturer available grades A through D (even number of grades), provide grade C; manufacturer available grades A through E (odd number of grades), provide grade C (middle grade).
- c. Provide a topical or inherent soil retardant treatment where indicated.
- d. Fabric for seating must comply with a minimum of 100,000 double rubs unless otherwise noted. Perform double rub testing in accordance with the ASTM D4157 Wyzenbeek Method.
- e. Provide vinyl, polypropylene or similar type fabric for seating only if allowed in FF&E Package Attachment.
- f. Pattern:
 - (1) Provide patterned upholstery fabric to help hide soiling. Pattern is defined as follows:
 - (a) Solid Color: textured, single color or pattern smaller in size than the small size pattern
 - (b) Small Size Pattern: minimum 1/2 inch
 - (c) Medium Size Pattern: minimum 2 inch
 - (d) Large Size Pattern: minimum 5 inch
 - (2) Provide patterns as follows:
 - (a) Desk Chairs: solid color size pattern
 - (b) Side or Guest Chairs: medium size pattern
 - (c) Lounge Type Chairs: medium size pattern
 - (d) Conference Type Chairs: small size pattern
 - (e) Break Type Chairs: small size pattern
- g. See FF&E Package Attachment for additional information.

2.3.5.2 Finishes

Provide furniture finishes as listed below unless otherwise noted:

- a. Finishes must be able to be cleaned with ordinary household cleaning solutions. Wood finishes must be able to be cleaned with damp cloth as directed by the manufacturer.
- b. The finish of steel surfaces must be the manufacturer's most durable finish such as factory powder coat or baked enamel.
- c. Grommet colors must be compatible and coordinated with desk, workstation, and table finish colors.
- d. Plastic laminate worksurfaces and table tops must be neutral in color and must have a pattern to help hide soiling.
- e. See FF&E Package Attachment for additional information.

2.4 FURNITURE LAYOUT

Provide furniture layout as indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 BUILDING EXAMINATION

Become familiar with details of the work, inspect all areas and conditions under which furniture is to be installed, and coordinate scheduling of dedicated elevators and docks. Notify the Contracting Officer in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the installation. Work will proceed only when conditions have been corrected.

3.2 BUILDING PROTECTION

Protect building surfaces to prevent soiling and damage during delivery and installation. Any soiling and damage that occurs to the building during the installation of furniture must be cleaned and repaired, or replaced to its original condition and must be approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.3 INSTALLATION

3.3.1 Installation Drawings

Installation drawings must include furniture layout, critical dimensions and locations of electrical and communications. Furniture layouts shall reflect field verified conditions. Drawings must be at 1/4 inch = 1 foot scale, unless otherwise specified. Provide typical plans and isometrics/elevations of desks and workstations at a scale of 1/2 inch = 1 foot. When applicable, provide desk and workstation electrical and communications locations. When applicable include controlled-circuit identification for each furniture receptacle and coordinate with the building electrical system circuits in accordance with ASHRAE 90.1 - IP. Critical dimensions include, but are not limited to clearances and aisle widths. Drawings must include layout for furniture systems workstations for coordination purposes. Label furniture with furniture item code identified in this specification. Submit grommet, power and communication units, and wire management locations.

3.3.2 Furniture Installation Procedures

Complete installation in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions, assembly manuals, warranty requirements and approved installation drawings. Also comply with the following requirements:

- a. Use material handling equipment with rubber wheels.
- b. Furniture and components must be installed level, plumb, square, and with proper alignment with adjoining furniture.
- c. Match keys to locks and check locking mechanisms.
- d. Check drawers, doors, lighting, and other operable items and mechanisms for proper operation.
- e. Remove all protective wrapping tape, residue, and related type items.
- f. Securely interconnect furniture components where required.
- g. Securely attach and anchor furniture components to the building when required.
- h. Securely anchor furniture such as shelving and storage units to the building when required by the manufacturer.
- i. All items with an electrical plug, such as but not limited to task lighting and tables with electrical power, must be fully operational.
- j. All hardwired furniture, such as but not limited to furniture systems, must be fully operational. Verify that voltage is present in electrical outlets. Verify controlled-circuit outlets are properly configured in accordance with the installation drawings.
- k. Furniture must not block SIPRNET jacks or the jack enclosures on walls. Report conflicts to Contracting Officer to discuss resolution.
- l. Upon completion of installation, all furniture must be completely cleaned, finished, leveled, aligned, operational and functional.

3.3.3 Furniture Communications Installation

Installation of Information/Technology (IT) wiring, cables and face plates/boxes in the furniture will be completed by others.

3.4 CLEANING

Remove all packing materials and other trash from the jobsite. Upon completion of installation, all products must be clean, including inside all drawers and doors, and the area must be free of debris and left in a clean and neat condition. Any defects in or damage to furniture must be repaired or replaced and approved by the Contracting Officer. Damaged products that cannot be satisfactorily repaired must be replaced. Correct any problems with assembly and installation. Prior to any furniture repair, replacement, and/or assembly and installation corrections, protect the building surfaces.

3.5 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

Submit the Furniture, Data Package 1 in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and include the following:

3.5.1 Assembly Manuals

Describe assembly and re-configuration procedures. Provide three sets of installation video tapes if available.

3.5.2 Installation Instructions

Provide a copy of the instructions used to install the furniture. Also describe any special procedures or helpful hints learned during the installation process.

3.5.3 Maintenance Manuals

Describe proper cleaning and minor repair procedures, include cleaning instructions for fabrics.

3.5.4 Electrical System Manuals

Describe the functions, configuration, and maintenance of the furniture electrical system (power, communication, and data). This information may be included in the assembly or maintenance manuals.

3.5.5 Special Tools

Provide three sets of special tools necessary for assembly and disassembly of furniture and components from each manufacturer. Mark tool(s) with manufacturer and product information.

3.5.6 Furniture Drawings

Provide hard copy and electronic, showing installed furniture layout. Include all modifications. Provide electronic copies on a CD-ROM. Coordinate type (such as but not limited to Microstation, AutoCad and Revit) and version required with User. Include critical dimensions, and locations of building and furniture electrical and communications. Provide drawings at 1/4 inch = 1 foot scale, unless otherwise specified. Provide typical plans and isometrics/elevations of workstations at a scale of 1/2 inch = 1 foot. Code all furniture with furniture item code identified in this specification.

3.5.7 Furniture Listing

Provide complete listing, hard copy and electronic, of furniture provided. Include all modifications. Provide electronic copies on a CD-ROM. Coordinate type of electronic file required with User (such as but not limited to Word and Excel). Listing must include furniture item code and name used in FF&E Package, part/model numbers, fabrics and finishes for all components furnished. Organize listing by item name and code and provide building totals.

3.5.8 Order Form Documentation

Provide Order Form Documentation with Purchase Order number and project name and location to allow the User to follow up on warranty issues and

help with future purchases.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 13 34 19

METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS

08/20, CHG 1: 02/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA ADM	(2020) Aluminum Design Manual
AA ASD1	(2017; Errata 2017) Aluminum Standards and Data

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 325	(2017) Steel Construction Manual
AISC 360	(2016) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

AMERICAN IRON AND STEEL INSTITUTE (AISI)

AISC/AISI 121	(2007) Standard Definitions for Use in the Design of Steel Structures
AISI D100	(2017) Cold-Formed Steel Design Manual

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

ASCE 7-16	(2017; Errata 2018; Supp 1 2018) Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures
-----------	--

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.1/A5.1M	(2012) Specification for Carbon Steel Electrodes for Shielded Metal Arc Welding
AWS D1.1/D1.1M	(2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel
AWS D1.3/D1.3M	(2018) Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M	(2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A53/A53M	(2020) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated,

Welded and Seamless

ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A153/A153M	(2016a) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A307	(2021) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A500/A500M	(2021a) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes
ASTM A501/A501M	(2021) Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing
ASTM A529/A529M	(2019) Standard Specification for High-Strength Carbon-Manganese Steel of Structural Quality
ASTM A563	(2015) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts
ASTM A563M	(2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts (Metric)
ASTM A572/A572M	(2021; E 2021) Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel
ASTM A606/A606M	(2018) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet and Strip, High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled, with Improved Atmospheric Corrosion Resistance
ASTM A653/A653M	(2020) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A755/A755M	(2018) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic Coated by the Hot-Dip Process and Prepainted by the Coil-Coating Process for Exterior Exposed Building Products
ASTM A780/A780M	(2020) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
ASTM A992/A992M	(2020) Standard Specification for Structural Steel Shapes

ASTM A1008/A1008M	(2021a) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable
ASTM A1011/A1011M	(2018a) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength
ASTM B117	(2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B209	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
ASTM B221	(2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
ASTM B221M	(2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric)
ASTM B695	(2021) Standard Specification for Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM D522/D522M	(2017) Mandrel Bend Test of Attached Organic Coatings
ASTM D523	(2014; R 2018) Standard Test Method for Specular Gloss
ASTM D714	(2002; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Evaluating Degree of Blistering of Paints
ASTM D822	(2013; R 2018) Filtered Open-Flame Carbon-Arc Exposures of Paint and Related Coatings
ASTM D968	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by Falling Abrasive
ASTM D1056	(2020) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded Rubber
ASTM D1308	(2002; R 2013) Effect of Household Chemicals on Clear and Pigmented Organic Finishes

ASTM D1667	(2017) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Foam (Closed-Cell)
ASTM D2244	(2016) Standard Practice for Calculation of Color Tolerances and Color Differences from Instrumentally Measured Color Coordinates
ASTM D2247	(2015) Testing Water Resistance of Coatings in 100% Relative Humidity
ASTM D2794	(1993; R 2019) Standard Test Method for Resistance of Organic Coatings to the Effects of Rapid Deformation (Impact)
ASTM D3363	(2005; E 2011; R 2011; E 2012) Film Hardness by Pencil Test
ASTM D4214	(2007; R 2015) Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Degree of Chalking of Exterior Paint Films
ASTM DEFONLINE	(2008) ASTM Online Dictionary of Engineering Science and Technology
ASTM E84	(2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E1592	(2017) Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Sheet Metal Roof and Siding Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
ASTM E1646	(1995; R 2018) Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Metal Roof Panel Systems by Uniform Air Pressure Difference
ASTM F436/F436M	(2019) Standard Specification for Hardened Steel Washers Inch and Metric Dimensions
ASTM F844	(2019) Standard Specification for Washers, Steel, Plain (Flat), Unhardened for General Use
ASTM F1554	(2020) Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength
ASTM F1852	(2014) Standard Specification for "Twist Off" Type Tension Control Structural Bolt/Nut/Washer Assemblies, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength
ASTM F3125/F3125M	(2019) Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts and Assemblies,

Steel and Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, Inch Dimensions 120 ksi and 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength, and Metric Dimensions 830 MPa and 1040 MPa Minimum Tensile Strength

ASTM G152 (2013; R 2021) Standard Practice for Operating Open Flame Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

ASTM G153 (2013; R 2021) Standard Practice for Operating Enclosed Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

METAL BUILDING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (MBMA)

MBMA MBSM (2018) Metal Building Systems Manual

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM AMP 500 (2006) Metal Finishes Manual

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 80 (2022) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives

NFPA 252 (2022) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

NATIONAL ROOFING CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (NRCA)

NRCA RoofMan (2020) The NRCA Roofing Manual

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION (SMACNA)

SMACNA 1793 (2012) Architectural Sheet Metal Manual, 7th Edition

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC Paint 15 (1999; E 2004) Steel Joist Shop Primer/Metal Building Primer

SSPC Painting Manual (2002) Good Painting Practice, Steel Structures Painting Manual, Volume 1

SSPC SP 2 (2018) Hand Tool Cleaning

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety -- Safety and Health Requirements Manual

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-301-01 (2019, with Change 1, 2022) Structural Engineering

UFC 3-301-02 (2020) Design of Risk Category V Structures, National Strategic Military Assets

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Design Parameters

Design and construct pre-engineered metal buildings of size, shape, height, fenestration, siting, and configuration indicated. Coordinate site utility services, accessibility requirements, vehicular and pedestrian access, mechanical, electrical, plumbing and fire protection requirements, interior construction and finishes, and such other items as may be necessary for a complete, functional building.

1.2.2 Structural Performance

Provide metal building systems capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within the limits and conditions indicated.

1.2.2.1 Engineering

Design metal building systems conforming to procedures described in MBMA MBSM.

1.2.2.2 Design Loads

Design and construct to the indicated requirements and to those of UFC 3-301-01, Structural Engineering.

1.2.3 Water Penetration for Metal Roof Panels

No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E1646 at test-pressure difference of 2.86 lbf/sq.ft.

1.2.4 Specular Gloss

Finished roof surfaces to have a specular gloss value of 30 plus or minus 5 at an angle of 60 degrees when measured in accordance with ASTM D523.

1.2.5 Wind-Uplift Resistance

Design for wind-uplift resistance in accordance with UFC 3-301-01.

1.2.6 Erection Plan

Provide plans and a written erection/lifting procedure with required plans clearly showing the intended sequence and method of erection in accordance with EM 385-1-1 "Safety - Safety and Health Requirements". Indicate required crane lifting requirements, temporary support structures, member size and locations of braced or guyed temporary supports, and locations of bracing or guys anchor points. Clearly define the required framing sequence and conditions necessary to ensure the structure is maintained in

a properly braced and stable condition throughout the complete erection process.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- a. Bay: Dimension between main frames measured normal to frame (at centerline of frame) for interior bays, and dimension from centerline of first interior main frame measured normal to end wall (outside face of end-wall girt) for end bays.
- b. Clear Span: Distance between supports of beams, girders, or trusses (measured from lowest level of connecting area of a column and a rafter frame or knee).
- c. Eave Height: Vertical dimension from finished floor to eave (the line along the sidewall formed by intersection of the planes of the roof and wall).
- d. Terminology Standard: Refer to MBMA "Metal Building Systems Manual" for definitions of terms for metal building system construction not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

General: Provide a complete, integrated set of metal building system manufacturer's standard mutually dependent components and assemblies that form a metal building system capable of withstanding structural and other loads, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure or infiltration of water into building interior. Include primary and secondary framing, metal roof panels, metal wall panels, and accessories complying with requirements indicated.

Provide metal building system of size and with spacing, slopes, and spans indicated.

1.4.1 Primary Frame Type

- a. Rigid Clear Span: Solid-member, structural-framing system without interior columns.

1.4.2 Fixed End-Wall Framing

Provide manufacturer's standard fixed end wall, for buildings not required to be expandable, consisting of primary frame, capable of supporting one-half of a bay design load, and end-wall columns.

1.4.3 Secondary Frame Type

Provide manufacturer's standard purlins and partially inset-framed girts.

1.4.4 Eave Height

Eave height must be as indicated by nominal height on Drawings.

1.4.5 Bay Spacing

Bay Spacing must be as indicated on the drawings..

1.4.6 Roof Slope

Roof slope must be as indicated on the drawings.

1.4.7 Roof System

Provide manufacturer's standard vertical-rib, standing-seam metal roof panels.

1.4.8 Exterior Wall System

Provide field-assembled, un-insulated metal wall panels.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Manufacturer's Qualifications

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G

Erection Plan; G

SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer's Catalog Data

Recycled Content for Structural Steel Shapes and Plates; S

Recycled Content for Steel Pipe; S

Recycled Content for Aluminum Sheet Materials; S

SD-04 Samples

Coil Stock, 12 inches long by the actual panel width

Roof Panels, 12 inches long by actual panel width

Wall Panels, 12 inches long by actual panel width

Fasteners; G

Metal Closure Strips 10 inches long of each type; G

Manufacturer's Color Charts and Chips, 4 by 4 inches; G

SD-05 Design Data

Manufacturer's Descriptive and Technical Literature; G

Manufacturer's Building Design Analysis; G

Lateral Force Calculations; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Test Reports

Coatings and Base Metals

Factory Color Finish Performance Requirements; G

SD-07 Certificates

System Components

Coil Stock Certificates

Aluminized Steel Repair Paint

Galvanizing Repair Paint

Enamel Repair Paint

Qualification of Manufacturer; G

Qualification of Erector; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation of Roof and Wall panels; G

Shipping, Handling, and Storage

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Manufacturer's Warranty; G

Contractor's Warranty for Installation; G

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Pre-Erection Conference

After submittals are received and approved but before metal building system work, including associated work, is performed, the Contracting Officer will hold a pre-erection conference to review the following:

- a. The detail drawings, specifications, and manufacturer's descriptive and technical literature.
- b. Finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, erector's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- c. Methods and procedures related to metal building system erection, including, but not limited to: qualification of manufacturer, qualification of erector, manufacturer's catalog data, manufacturer's

building design analysis, lateral force calculations, written instructions and test reports. Lateral force calculations must include all analysis and confirmation of system components required to transfer lateral forces to the foundation.

- d. Support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and erection of structural members.
- e. Flashing, special roofing and siding details, roof and wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that will affect the metal building system, including coatings and base metals, factory color finish performance requirements, system components, and coil stock certificates.
- f. Governing regulations and requirements for, certificates, insurance, tests and inspections if applicable.
- g. Temporary protection requirements for metal panel assembly during and after installation.
- h. Samples of roof panels, wall panels, aluminized steel repair paint, galvanizing repair paint, and enamel repair paint.

1.6.1.1 Pre-Roofing and Siding Installation Conference

After structural framing system erection and approval but before roofing, siding work, including associated work, is performed; the Contracting Officer will hold a pre-roofing and siding conference to review the following:

- a. Examine purlins, sub-girts and formed shapes conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
- b. Review structural limitations of purlins, sub-girts and formed shapes during construction and after roofing and siding.
- c. Review flashings, special roof and wall details, roof drainage, roof and wall penetrations, roof equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect the metal building system.
- d. Review temporary protection requirements for metal roof and wall panels' assembly during and after installation.
- e. Review roof and wall observation and repair procedures after metal building system erection.

1.6.2 Manufacturer's Technical Representative

The representative must have authorization from manufacturer to approve field changes and be thoroughly familiar with the products, erection of structural framing and installation of roof and wall panels in the geographical area where construction will take place.

1.6.3 Manufacturer's Qualifications

Metal building system manufacturer must have a minimum of five years experience as a qualified manufacturer and a member of MBMA of metal building systems and accessory products.

Provide engineering services by an authorized currently licensed engineer in the geographical area where construction will take place, having a minimum of four years experience as an engineer knowledgeable in building design analysis, protocols and procedures for the "Metal Building Systems Manual" (MBMA MBSM); ASCE 7-16, the building code in the geographic area where the construction will take place and ASTM E1592. Provide certified engineering calculations using the products submitted for:

- a. Roof and Wall Wind Loads with basic wind speed, exposure category, co-efficient, importance factor, designate type of facility, negative pressures for each zone, methods and requirements of attachment.
- b. Roof Dead and Live Loads
- c. Collateral Loads
- d. Foundation Loads
- e. Roof Snow Load
- f. Seismic Loads

1.6.4 Qualification of Erection Contractor

An experienced erector who has specialized in erecting and installing work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and must be approved and certified by the metal building system manufacturer.

1.6.5 Single Source

Obtain primary and secondary components and structural framing members, each type of metal roof, wall and liner panel assemblies, clips, closures and other accessories from the standard products of the single source from a single manufacturer to operate as a complete system for the intended use.

1.6.6 Welding

Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS A5.1/A5.1M, AWS D1.1/D1.1M, and AWS D1.3/D1.3M.

1.6.7 Structural Steel

Comply with AISC 325, AISC 360, for design requirements and allowable stresses.

1.6.8 Cold-Formed Steel

Comply with AISC/AISI 121 and AISI D100 for design requirements and allowable stresses.

1.6.9 Fabrication

Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes and as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles with dimensional and structural requirements. Provide metal panel profile, including major ribs and

intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel. Aluminum and aluminum-alloy sheet and plate must conform to ASTM B209. Fabricate metal panel side laps with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, in a manner that will seal weather-tight and minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.

Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA 1793 that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated:

- a. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
- b. End Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
- c. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
- d. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
- e. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of size and metal thickness recommended by SMACNA or by metal building system manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

1.6.10 Finishes

Comply with NAAMM AMP 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

1.7 SHIPPING, HANDLING AND STORAGE

1.7.1 Delivery

Package and deliver components, sheets, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed and protected during transportation and handling.

1.7.2 Storage

Stack and store metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weather-tight and ventilated covering to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Store in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage. Do not store metal wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panel for entire period up to metal panel installation.

1.7.3 Protection of Materials

Protect foam-plastic insulation as follows:

- a. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
- b. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic insulation materials to project site before installation time.

Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction to minimize ultraviolet exposure.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

1.8.1 Weather Limitations

Proceed with installation preparation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit Work to proceed without water entering into existing panel system or building.

1.8.2 Field Measurements

1.8.2.1 Established Dimensions for Foundations

Comply with established dimensions on approved anchor-bolt plans, established foundation dimensions, and proceed with fabricating structural framing. Do not proceed without verifying field measurements. Coordinate anchor-bolt installation to ensure that actual anchorage dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.8.2.2 Established Dimensions for Metal Panels

Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, either establish framing and opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating metal panels without field measurements, or allow for field trimming metal panels. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual building dimensions, locations of structural members, and openings correspond to established dimensions.

1.8.2.3 Verification Record

Verify locations of all framing and opening dimensions by field measurements before metal panel fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.9 COORDINATION

Coordinate final design and placement of foundation between structural engineer of record, geotechnical engineer, MBMA and Contractor. Coordinate size and location of concrete foundations and casting of anchor-bolt inserts into foundation walls and footings. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in section on CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

Coordinate metal panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of supports and other adjoining work to provide a leak-proof, secure, and non-corrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

1.10.1 Building System Warranty

Furnish manufacturer's no-dollar-limit warranty for the metal building system. The warranty period is to be no less than 20 years from the date of acceptance of the work and be issued directly to the Government. The warranty must provide that if within the warranty period, the metal building system shows evidence of deterioration resulting from defective materials or workmanship, correcting of any defects is the responsibility of the metal building system manufacturer. Repairs that become necessary because of defective materials and workmanship while metal building system is under warranty are to be performed within 32 hours after notification, unless additional time is approved by the Contracting Officer. Failure to perform repairs within 32 hours of notification will constitute grounds for having emergency repairs performed by others and will not void the warranty.

1.10.2 Roof System Weather-Tightness Warranty

Furnish manufacturer's no-dollar-limit warranty for the metal panel system. The warranty period is to be no less than 20 years from the date of acceptance of the work and be issued directly to the Government.

The warranty is to provide that if within the warranty period the roof panel system shows evidence of corrosion, perforation, rupture, lost of weather-tightness or excess weathering due to deterioration of the panel system resulting from defective materials and correction of the defective workmanship is to be the responsibility of the metal building system manufacturer.

Repairs that become necessary because of defective materials and workmanship while roof panel system is under warranty are to be performed within 24 hours after notification, unless additional time is approved by the Contracting Officer. Failure to perform repairs within 24 hours of notification will constitute grounds for having emergency repairs performed by others and not void the warranty. Immediate follow-up and completion of permanent repairs must be performed within 10 business days from date of notification.

1.10.3 Roof and Wall Panel Finish Warranty

Furnish manufacturer's no-dollar-limit warranty for the metal panel system. The warranty period is to be no less than 10 years from the date of acceptance of the work and be issued directly to the Government.

The warranty is to provide that if within the warranty period the metal panel system shows evidence of checking, delaminating cracking, peeling, chalk in excess of a numerical rating of eight, as determined by ASTM D4214 test procedures; or change colors in excess of five CIE or Hunter units in accordance with ASTM D2244 or excess weathering due to deterioration of the panel system resulting from defective materials and finish or correction of the defective workmanship is to be the responsibility of the metal building system manufacturer.

Liability under this warranty is exclusively limited to replacing the defective coated materials.

Repairs that become necessary because of defective materials and workmanship while roof and wall panel system is under warranty are to be performed within 32 hours after notification, unless additional time is approved by the Contracting Officer. Failure to perform repairs within 32 hours of notification will constitute grounds for having emergency repairs performed by others and not void the warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL FRAMING MATERIALS

2.1.1 Steel Shapes and Plates

Wide flange and WT shapes: ASTM A992/A992M; ASTM A572/A572M or ASTM A529/A529M. Angles, Channels and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, ASTM A572/A572M or ASTM A529/A529M. Provide structural steel shapes and plates containing a minimum of 80 percent recycled content. Submit data identifying percentage of recycled content for structural steel shapes and plates.

2.1.2 Steel Pipe

ASTM A36/A36M, ASTM A53/A53M, ASTM A572/A572M or ASTM A529/A529M. Provide steel pipe containing a minimum of 50 percent recycled content. Submit data identifying percentage of recycled content for steel pipe.

2.1.3 Cold-Formed and Hot Formed Hollow Structural Sections

Cold formed: ASTM A500/A500M or ASTM B221, ASTM B221M. Hot-formed: ASTM A501/A501M.

2.1.4 Structural-Steel Sheet

Hot-rolled, ASTM A1011/A1011M or cold-rolled, ASTM A1008/A1008M.

2.1.5 Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet

ASTM A653/A653M, ASTM A606/A606M.

2.1.6 Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Pre-painted with Coil Stock Coating

Steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and pre-painted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.

- a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, and ASTM A123/A123M.

2.1.7 High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers

ASTM F3125/F3125M, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M hardened carbon-steel washers.

Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A153/A153M.

Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F1852, heavy-hex-head steel structural bolts with spline.

Finish: Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B695.

2.1.1.8 Non-High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers

ASTM A307, ASTM A563, and ASTM F844.

Finish: ASTM A153/A153M.

2.1.1.9 Anchor Rods

ASTM F1554.

- a. Configuration: Straight.
- b. Nuts: ASTM A563 heavy hex carbon steel.
- c. Plate Washers: ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel.
- d. Washers: ASTM F436/F436M hardened carbon steel.
- e. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A153/A153M .

2.1.1.10 Threaded Rods

ASTM A572/A572M.

- a. Nuts: ASTM A563MASTM A563 heavy hex carbon steel.
- b. Washers: ASTM F436/F436M hardened carbon steel.
- c. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A153/A153M .

2.1.1.11 Primer

SSPC-Paint 15, Type I, red oxide.

2.2 FABRICATION

2.2.1 General

Comply with MBMA MBSM - "Metal Building Systems Manual": Chapter IV, Section 9, "Fabrication and Erection Tolerances."

2.3 STRUCTURAL FRAMING

2.3.1 General

Clean all framing members to remove loose rust and mill scale. Provide 1 shop coat of primer to an average dry film thickness of 1 mil according to SSPC SP 2. Balance of painting and coating procedures must conform to SSPC Paint 15 and SSPC Painting Manual.

2.3.2 Primary Framing

Manufacturer's standard structural primary framing system includes transverse and lean-to frames; rafter, rakes, and canopy beams; sidewall, intermediate, end-wall, and corner columns; and wind bracing designed to withstand required loads and specified requirements. Provide frames with attachment plates, bearing plates, and splice members. Provide frame span and spacing indicated.

Shop fabricate framing components by welding or by using high-strength bolts to the indicated size and section with base-plates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other items required. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld framing for bolted field erection.

- a. Rigid Clear-Span Frames: I-shaped frame sections fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes. Interior columns are not permitted.
- b. Frame Configuration: Single gable .
- c. Exterior Column Type: Tapered.
- d. Rafter Type: Tapered.

2.3.3 Secondary Framing

Manufacturer's standard secondary framing members, including purlins, girts, eave struts, flange bracing, base members, gable angles, clips, headers, jambs, and other miscellaneous structural members. Fabricate framing from cold-formed, structural-steel sheet or roll-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet pre-painted with coil coating, unless otherwise indicated.

Shop fabricate framing components by roll-forming or break-forming to the indicated size and section with base-plates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other plates required for erection. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld secondary framing for bolted field connections to primary framing.

- a. Purlins: C or Z-shaped sections; fabricated from steel sheet, built-up steel plates, or structural-steel shapes; minimum depth as required to comply with system performance requirements .
- b. Girts: C or Z-shaped sections; fabricated from steel sheet, built-up steel plates, or structural-steel shapes. Form ends of Z-sections with stiffening lips angled 40 to 50 degrees to flange minimum depth as required to comply with system performance requirements .
- c. Eave Struts: Unequal-flange, C-shaped sections; fabricated from steel sheet, built-up steel plates, or structural-steel shapes; to provide adequate backup for metal panels.
- d. Flange Bracing: Structural-steel angles or cold-formed structural tubing to stiffen primary frame flanges.
- e. Sag Bracing: Structural-steel angles.
- f. Base or Sill Angles: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
- g. Purlin and Girt Clips: Steel sheet. Provide galvanized clips where clips are connected to galvanized framing members.
- h. Secondary End-Wall Framing: Manufacturer's standard sections fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet .
- i. Framing for Openings: Channel shapes; fabricated cold-formed, structural-steel sheet or structural-steel shapes. Frame head and jamb of door openings, and head, jamb, and sill of other openings.

- j. Miscellaneous Structural Members: Manufacturer's standard sections fabricated from cold-formed, structural-steel sheet; built-up steel plates; or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet; designed to withstand required loads.

2.3.4 Bracing

Provide adjustable wind bracing as follows:

- a. Rods: ASTM A36/A36M; ASTM A572/A572M; or ASTM A529/A529M threaded a minimum of 12" at each end.
- b. Angles: Fabricated from structural-steel shapes to match primary framing, of size required to withstand design loads.
- c. Rigid Portal Frames: Fabricate from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes to match primary framing; of size required to withstand design loads.
- d. Fixed-Base Columns: Fabricate from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes to match primary framing; of size required to withstand design loads.
- e. Diaphragm Action of Metal Panels: Design metal building to resist wind forces through diaphragm action of metal panels.
- f. Bracing: Provide wind bracing using any method specified above, at manufacturer's option.

2.4 PANEL MATERIALS

2.4.1 Aluminum Sheet

Roll-form aluminum roof and wall panels to the specified profile, with $f_y = .050$ inch thickness and depth as indicated. Aluminum sheets must contain a minimum recycled content of 20 percent. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for aluminum sheet materials. Material must be plumb and true, and within the tolerances listed:

- a. Aluminum Sheet conforming to ASTM B209, AA ADM and AA ASD1.
- b. Individual panels to have continuous length to cover the entire length of any roof slope and wall area with no joints or seams and formed without warping, waviness, or ripples that are not part of the panel profile and free of damage to the finish coating system.
- c. Provide panels with thermal expansion and contraction consistent with the type of system specified.
 - 1. Profile and coverage to be a minimum height and width from manufacturer's standard for the indicated roof slope and wall area.

2.4.2 Finish

All panels are to receive a factory-applied polyvinylidene fluoride of Kynar 500/Hylar 5000 finish consisting of a baked-on top-coat with a manufacturer's recommended prime coat conforming to the following:

- a. Metal Preparation: All metal is to have the surfaces carefully prepared for painting on a continuous process coil coating line by alkali cleaning, hot water rinsing, application of chemical conversion coating, cold water rinsing, sealing with acid rinse, and thorough drying.
- b. Prime Coating: A base coat of epoxy paint, specifically formulated to interact with the top-coat, is to be applied to the prepared surfaces by roll coating to a dry film thickness of 0.20 plus 0.05 mils. This prime coat must be oven cured prior to application of finish coat.
- c. Exterior Finish Coating: Apply the finish coating over the primer by roll coating to dry film thickness of 0.80 plus 0.05 mils for a total dry film thickness of 1.00 plus 0.10 mils. This finish coat must be oven-cured.
- d. Interior Finish Coating: Apply a wash-coat on the reverse side over the primer by roll coating to a dry film thickness of 0.30 plus 0.05 mils for a total dry film thickness of 0.50 plus 0.10 mils. The wash-coat must be oven-cured.
- e. Color: The exterior finish chosen from the manufacturer's color charts and chips.
- f. Physical Properties: Coating must conform to the industry and manufacturer's standard performance criteria as listed by the following certified test reports:

Chalking: ASTM DEFONLINE
Color Change and Conformity: ASTM D2244
Weatherometer: ASTM G152, ASTM G153 and ASTM D822
Humidity: ASTM D2247 and ASTM D714
Salt Spray: ASTM B117
Chemical Pollution: ASTM D1308
Gloss at 60 degrees: ASTM D523
Pencil Hardness: ASTM D3363
Reverse Impact: ASTM D2794
Flexibility: ASTM D522/D522M
Abrasion: ASTM D968
Flame Spread: ASTM E84

2.4.3 Repair Of Finish Protection

Repair paint for enameled metal panel must be compatible paint of the same formula and color as the specified finish furnished by the metal panel manufacturer, conforming to ASTM A780/A780M.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

2.5.1 General

Cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet conforming to ASTM A653/A653M and specified in Section 05 40 00 COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING unless otherwise indicated.

2.5.2 Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing

Refer to the following paragraph FASTENERS.

2.6 FASTENERS

2.6.1 General

Type, material, corrosion resistance, size and sufficient length to penetrate the supporting member a minimum of 1 inch with other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates in accordance with the metal panel manufacturer's and ASCE 7-16 requirements.

2.6.2 Exposed Fasteners

Fasteners for metal panels to be corrosion resistant coated steel, aluminum, stainless steel, or nylon capped steel compatible with the sheet panel or flashing and of a type and size recommended by the manufacturer to meet the performance requirements and design loads. Fasteners for accessories to be the manufacturer's standard. Provide an integral metal washer matching the color of attached material with compressible sealing EPDM gasket approximately 3/32 inch thick.

2.6.3 Screws

Screws to be corrosion resistant coated steel, aluminum or stainless steel being the type and size recommended by the manufacturer to meet the performance requirements.

2.6.4 Rivets

Rivets to be closed-end type, corrosion resistant coated steel, aluminum or stainless steel where watertight connections are required.

2.6.5 Attachment Clips

Fabricate clips from steel hot-dipped galvanized in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M or Series 300 stainless steel. Size, shape, thickness and capacity as required meeting the insulation thickness and design load criteria specified.

2.7 FRAMES AND MATERIALS FOR OPENINGS

2.7.1 Doors

Fire-Rated and Non-Fire-Rated Door Assemblies conforming with NFPA 80 and based on testing according to NFPA 252 as specified in Division 08 - OPENINGS unless otherwise indicated.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

2.8.1 General

All accessories to be compatible with the metal panels; sheet metal flashing, trim, metal closure strips, caps and similar metal accessories must not be less than the minimum thickness specified for the metal panels. Exposed metal accessories/finishes to match the panels, except as otherwise indicated. Molded foam rib, ridge and other closure strips to be non-absorbent closed-cell or solid-cell synthetic rubber or pre-molded neoprene to match configuration of the panels.

2.8.2 Roof and Wall Accessories and Specialties

Aluminum roof curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, dropout-type heat and smoke vents, hatch-type heat and smoke vents, gravity and roof ridge ventilators, wall louvers and other miscellaneous roof and wall equipment or penetrations conforming to AAMA, ASTM, and UL as specified in Division 07 unless otherwise indicated.

2.8.3 Rubber Closure Strips

Closed-cell, expanded cellular rubber conforming to ASTM D1056 and ASTM D1667; extruded or molded to the configuration of the specified metal panel and in lengths supplied by the metal panel manufacturer.

2.8.4 Metal Closure Strips

Factory fabricated closure strips to be the same material, thickness, color, finish and profile of the specified roof or wall panel.

2.8.5 2.6.6 Joint Sealants

2.8.5.1 Sealants

Sealants are to be an approved gun type for use in hand or air-pressure caulking guns at temperatures above 40 degrees F (or frost-free application at temperatures above 10 degrees F with minimum solid content of 85 percent of the total volume. Sealant is to dry with a tough, durable surface skin which permits it to remain soft and pliable underneath, providing a weather-tight joint. No migratory staining is permitted on painted or unpainted metal, stone, glass, vinyl, or wood.

Prime all joints to receive sealants with a compatible one-component or two-component primer as recommended by the metal panel manufacturer.

2.8.5.2 Shop-Applied

Sealant for shop-applied caulking must be an approved gun grade, non-sag one component polysulfide or silicone conforming to ASTM C920, Type II, and with a curing time to ensure the sealant's plasticity at the time of field erection.

2.8.5.3 Field-Applied

See Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS for sealant requirements.

2.8.5.4 Tape Sealant

Pressure sensitive, 100 percent solid with a release paper backing; permanently elastic, non-sagging, non-toxic and non-staining as approved by the metal panel manufacturer.

2.9 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

2.9.1 Fabrication

Shop fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim where practicable to comply with recommendations in SMACNA 1793 that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.

Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.

2.10 FINISHES

2.10.1 General

Comply with NAAMM AMP 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

2.10.2 Appearance of Finished Work

Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Before erection proceeds, examine with the erector present, the concrete foundation dimensions, concrete and masonry bearing surfaces, anchor bolt size and placement, survey slab elevation, locations of bearing plates, and other embedments to receive structural framing with the metal building manufacturer's templates and drawings before erecting any steel components for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

Examine primary and secondary framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural and metal panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal building manufacturer, UL, ASTM, ASCE 7-16 and as required by the building code for the geographical area where construction will take place.

Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal roof or wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before metal roof or wall panel installation.

Submit to the Contracting Officer a written report, endorsed by Erector, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

Proceed with erection only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

Provide temporary shoring, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep the structural framing secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loading or loads equal in intensity of the building design loads. Remove temporary support systems when permanent structural framing, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.

Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of interfering with insulation attachment and

performance.

Miscellaneous Framing: Install sub-purlins, girts, angles, furring, and other miscellaneous support members or anchorage for the metal roof or wall panels, doors, windows, roof curbs, ventilators and louvers according to metal building manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ERECTION OF STRUCTURAL FRAMING

Erect metal building system according to manufacturer's written erection instructions, approved shop drawings and other erection documents in accordance with MBMA MBSM - "Metal Building Systems Manual".

Do not field cut, drill, or alter structural members without written approval from metal building system manufacturer's professional engineer and the Contracting Officer.

Set structural framing accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 325 specifications. Maintain structural stability of frame during erection.

Clean and roughen concrete and masonry bearing surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.

Align and adjust structural framing before permanent bolt-up and connections. Perform necessary adjustments and alignment to compensate for changes or discrepancies in elevations.

Maintain erection tolerances of structural framing in accordance with AISC 360.

3.4 METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

Provide metal wall panels of full length from sill to eave as indicated, unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping limitations. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, in accordance with MBMA MBSM.

Erect wall panel system in accordance with the approved erection drawings, the printed instructions and safety precautions of the metal building manufacturer.

Sheets are not to be subjected to overloading, abuse, or undue impact. Do not install bent, chipped, or defective sheets.

Sheets must be erected true and plumb and in exact alignment with the horizontal and vertical edges of the building, securely anchored, and with the indicated eave, and sill.

Work is to allow for thermal movement of the wall panel, movement of the building structure, and to provide permanent freedom from noise due to wind pressure.

Field cutting metal wall panels by torch is not permitted.

3.5 ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION

Provide metal roof panels of full length from eave to ridge or eave to wall as indicated, unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping

limitations. Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place in accordance with NRCA RoofMan and MBMA MBSM.

Erect roofing system in accordance with the approved erection drawings, the printed instructions and safety precautions of the metal building manufacturer.

Sheets are not to be subjected to overloading, abuse, or undue impact. Do not install bent, chipped, or defective sheets.

Sheets must be erected true and plumb and in exact alignment with the horizontal and vertical edges of the building, securely anchored, and with the indicated rake and eave overhang.

Work must allow for thermal movement of the roofing, movement of the building structure, and provide permanent freedom from noise due to wind pressure.

Field cutting metal roof panels by torch is not permitted.

Roofing sheets must be laid with corrugations in the direction of the roof slope. End laps of exterior roofing must not be less than 8 inches; the side laps of standard exterior corrugated sheets must be not less than 2-1/2 corrugations.

Do not permit storage, walking, wheeling, or trucking directly on applied roofing materials. Provide temporary walkways, runways, and platforms of smooth clean boards or planks as necessary to avoid damage to the installed roofing materials, and to distribute weight to conform to the indicated live load limits of roof construction.

3.6 METAL PANEL FASTENER INSTALLATION

Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.

3.7 FLASHING, TRIM AND CLOSURE INSTALLATION

- a. Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA 1793. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- b. Sheet metalwork is to be accomplished to form weather-tight construction without waves, warps, buckles, fastening stresses or distortion, and allow for expansion and contraction. Cutting, fitting, drilling, and other operations in connection with sheet metal required to accommodate the work of other trades is to be performed by sheet metal mechanics.

3.8 DOOR AND FRAME INSTALLATION

Install doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation with metal panel flashings and other components. Caulk and seal perimeter of each door frame with elastomeric sealant compatible with metal panels. Comply with installation requirements in

Division 08 - OPENINGS.

3.9 WINDOW INSTALLATION

Install windows plumb, rigid, properly aligned, without warp or rack of frames or sash, and securely fastened in place according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation with metal panel flashings and other components. Caulk and seal perimeter of each window frame with elastomeric sealant compatible with for metal panels. Comply with installation requirements in Division 08 - OPENINGS.

3.10 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

3.10.1 General

Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weather-tight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

3.10.2 Dissimilar Metals

Where dissimilar metals contact one another or corrosive substrates are present, protect against galvanic action by painting dissimilar metal surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each surface, or by other permanent separation techniques as recommended by the metal building manufacturer.

3.10.3 Gutters and Downspouts

Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and install sheet metal roof drainage items to produce complete roof drainage system according to SMACNA 1793 recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof drainage system.

3.10.4 Insulation

Comply with performance requirements and manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install insulation concurrently with metal panel installation, in thickness indicated to cover entire roof and wall area, as specified in Division 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION.

3.10.5 Roof and Wall Accessories and Specialties

Install roof and wall accessories and specialties complete with necessary hardware, anchors, dampers, weather guards, rain caps, and equipment supports as specified in Division 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION, unless otherwise indicated.

3.11 CLEAN-UP AND PROTECTION

3.11.1 Structural Framing

Clean all exposed structural framing at completion of installation. Remove metal shavings, filings, bolts, and wires from work area. Remove grease and oil films, excess sealants, handling marks, contamination from steel wool, fittings and drilling debris and scrub the work clean. Exposed metal surfaces to be free of dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, solder or weld marks, and damage to the finish coating.

3.11.2 Metal Panels

Clean all exposed sheet metal work at completion of installation. Remove metal shavings, filings, nails, bolts, and wires from work area. Remove protective coverings/films, grease and oil films, excess sealants, handling marks, contamination from steel wool, fittings and drilling debris and scrub the work clean. Exposed metal surfaces to be free of dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, solder or weld marks, and damage to the finish coating.

3.11.3 Touch-Up Painting

After erection, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or re-prime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted structural framing and accessories. Clean and touch-up paint as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS, unless otherwise indicated.

3.12 WASTE MANAGEMENT

Dispose of construction waste in accordance with the requirements of Section 01 74 19 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL.

3.13 SPECIAL INSPECTION AND TESTING FOR SEISMIC-RESISTING SYSTEMS

Perform special inspections and testing for seismic-resisting systems and components in accordance with Section 01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS. When buildings are classified as Risk Category V, perform special inspections and testing in accordance with UFC 3-301-02.

3.14 WARRANTY

3.14.1 Manufacturer's Warranty

Submit all manufacturers' signed warranties to Contracting Officer prior to final commissioning and acceptance.

3.14.2 Contractor's Warranty For Installation

Submit warranty for installation to the Contracting Officer prior to final commissioning and acceptance.

3.14.3 Contractor's Five Year No Penal Sum Warranty

CONTRACTOR'S FIVE YEAR NO PENAL SUM WARRANTY
FOR
METAL BUILDING SYSTEM

FACILITY DESCRIPTION: _____

BUILDING NUMBER: _____

CORPS OF ENGINEERS CONTRACT NUMBER: _____

CONTRACTOR

CONTRACTOR: _____

ADDRESS: _____

POINT OF CONTACT: _____

TELEPHONE NUMBER: _____

OWNER

OWNER: _____

ADDRESS: _____

POINT OF CONTACT: _____

TELEPHONE NUMBER: _____

CONSTRUCTION AGENT

CONSTRUCTION AGENT: _____

ADDRESS: _____

POINT OF CONTACT: _____

—
TELEPHONE NUMBER: _____

CONTRACTOR'S FIVE YEAR NO PENAL SUM WARRANTY
FOR
METAL BUILDING SYSTEM
(continued)

THE METAL BUILDING SYSTEM INSTALLED ON THE ABOVE NAMED BUILDING IS WARRANTED BY _____ FOR A PERIOD OF 20 YEARS AGAINST WORKMANSHIP AND MATERIAL DEFICIENCIES, WIND DAMAGE AND STRUCTURAL FAILURE WITHIN PROJECT SPECIFIED DESIGN LOADS, AND LEAKAGE. THE METAL BUILDING SYSTEM COVERED UNDER THIS WARRANTY INCLUDES, BUT IS NOT LIMITED TO, THE FOLLOWING:

FRAMING AND STRUCTURAL MEMBERS, ROOFING AND SIDING PANELS AND SEAMS, INTERIOR OR EXTERIOR GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS, ACCESSORIES, TRIM, FLASHINGS AND MISCELLANEOUS BUILDING CLOSURE ITEMS SUCH AS DOORS AND WINDOWS (WHEN FURNISHED BY THE MANUFACTURER), CONNECTORS, COMPONENTS, AND FASTENERS, AND OTHER SYSTEM COMPONENTS AND ASSEMBLIES INSTALLED TO PROVIDE A WEATHERTIGHT SYSTEM; AND ITEMS SPECIFIED IN OTHER SECTIONS OF THESE SPECIFICATIONS THAT BECOME PART OF THE METAL BUILDING SYSTEM.

ALL MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP DEFICIENCIES, SYSTEM DETERIORATION CAUSED BY EXPOSURE TO THE ELEMENTS OR INADEQUATE RESISTANCE TO SPECIFIED SERVICE DESIGN LOADS, WATER LEAKS AND WIND UPLIFT DAMAGE MUST BE REPAIRED AS APPROVED BY THE CONTRACTING OFFICER.

ALL MATERIAL DEFICIENCIES, WIND DAMAGE, STRUCTURAL FAILURE AND LEAKAGE ASSOCIATED WITH THE METAL BUILDING SYSTEM COVERED UNDER THIS WARRANTY MUST BE REPAIRED AS APPROVED BY THE CONTRACTING OFFICER.

THIS WARRANTY COVERS THE ENTIRE COST OF REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT, INCLUDING ALL MATERIAL, LABOR, AND RELATED MARKUPS. THE ABOVE REFERENCED WARRANTY COMMENCED ON THE DATE OF FINAL ACCEPTANCE ON _____ AND WILL REMAIN IN EFFECT FOR STATED DURATION FROM THIS DATE.

SIGNED, DATED, AND NOTARIZED (BY COMPANY PRESIDENT)

(Company President)

(Date)

CONTRACTOR'S FIVE YEAR NO PENAL SUM WARRANTY
FOR
METAL BUILDING SYSTEM
(continued)

THE CONTRACTOR HEREBY SUPPLEMENTS THIS WARRANTY WITH WRITTEN WARRANTIES FROM THE MANUFACTURER AND/OR INSTALLER OF THE METAL BUILDING SYSTEM, WHICH IS SUBMITTED ALONG WITH THE CONTRACTOR'S WARRANTY. HOWEVER, THE CONTRACTOR IS ULTIMATELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THIS WARRANTY AS OUTLINED IN THE SPECIFICATIONS AND AS INDICATED IN THIS WARRANTY.

EXCLUSIONS FROM COVERAGE

1. NATURAL DISASTERS, ACTS OF GOD (LIGHTNING, FIRE, EXPLOSIONS, SUSTAINED WIND FORCES IN EXCESS OF THE DESIGN CRITERIA, EARTHQUAKES, AND HAIL).
2. ACTS OF NEGLIGENCE OR ABUSE OR MISUSE BY GOVERNMENT OR OTHER PERSONNEL, INCLUDING ACCIDENTS, VANDALISM, CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE, WAR, OR DAMAGE CAUSED BY FALLING OBJECTS.
3. DAMAGE BY STRUCTURAL FAILURE, SETTLEMENT, MOVEMENT, DISTORTION, WARPAGE, OR DISPLACEMENT OF THE BUILDING STRUCTURE OR ALTERATIONS MADE TO THE BUILDING.
4. CORROSION CAUSED BY EXPOSURE TO CORROSIVE CHEMICALS, ASH OR FUMES GENERATED OR RELEASED INSIDE OR OUTSIDE THE BUILDING FROM CHEMICAL PLANTS, FOUNDRIES, PLATING WORKS, KILNS, FERTILIZER FACTORIES, PAPER PLANTS, AND THE LIKE.
5. FAILURE OF ANY PART OF THE BUILDING SYSTEM DUE TO ACTIONS BY THE OWNER WHICH INHIBIT FREE DRAINAGE FROM THE ROOF, GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS; OR CONDITIONS WHICH CREATE PONDING WATER ON THE ROOF OR AGAINST THE BUILDING SIDING.
6. THIS WARRANTY APPLIES TO THE METAL BUILDING SYSTEM. IT DOES NOT INCLUDE ANY CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGE TO THE BUILDING INTERIOR OR CONTENTS WHICH IS COVERED BY THE WARRANTY OF CONSTRUCTION CLAUSE INCLUDED IN THIS CONTRACT.
7. THIS WARRANTY CANNOT BE TRANSFERRED TO ANOTHER OWNER WITHOUT WRITTEN CONSENT OF THE CONTRACTOR AND THIS WARRANTY AND THE CONTRACT PROVISIONS TAKE PRECEDENCE OVER ANY CONFLICTS WITH STATE STATUTES. REPORTS OF LEAKS AND BUILDING SYSTEM DEFICIENCIES MUST BE RESPONDED TO WITHIN 48 HOURS OF RECEIPT OF NOTICE BY TELEPHONE OR IN WRITING FROM EITHER THE OWNER, OR CONTRACTING OFFICER. EMERGENCY REPAIRS, TO PREVENT FURTHER ROOF LEAKS, MUST BE INITIATED IMMEDIATELY; A WRITTEN PLAN MUST BE SUBMITTED FOR APPROVAL TO REPAIR OR REPLACE THIS SSSMR SYSTEM WITHIN SEVEN CALENDAR DAYS. ACTUAL WORK FOR PERMANENT REPAIRS OR REPLACEMENT MUST BE STARTED WITHIN 30 DAYS AFTER RECEIPT OF NOTICE, AND COMPLETED WITHIN A REASONABLE TIME FRAME. IF THE CONTRACTOR FAILS TO ADEQUATELY RESPOND TO THE WARRANTY PROVISIONS, AS STATED

CONTRACTOR'S FIVE YEAR NO PENAL SUM WARRANTY
FOR
METAL BUILDING SYSTEM
(Exclusions from Coverage Continued)

POST A FRAMED COPY OF THIS WARRANTY IN THE MECHANICAL ROOM OR OTHER APPROVED
LOCATION DURING THE ENTIRE WARRANTY PERIOD.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 21 13 13

WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS, FIRE PROTECTION
08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B16.1	(2020) Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings Classes 25, 125, and 250
ASME B16.3	(2016) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300
ASME B16.4	(2021) Standard for Gray Iron Threaded Fittings; Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.21	(2016) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SANITARY ENGINEERING (ASSE)

ASSE 1013	(2011) Performance Requirements for Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventers and Reduced Pressure Fire Protection Principle Backflow Preventers - (ANSI approved 2010)
ASSE 1015	(2011) Performance Requirements for Double Check Backflow Prevention Assemblies and Double Check Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies - (ANSI approved 2010)

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA C104/A21.4	(2016) Cement-Mortar Lining for Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings for Water
AWWA C110/A21.10	(2012) Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings for Water
AWWA C111/A21.11	(2017) Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings
AWWA C203	(2008) Coal-Tar Protective Coatings and Linings for Steel Water Pipelines - Enamel and Tape - Hot-Applied
AWWA M14	(2015) Manual: Recommended Practice for

Backflow Prevention and Cross-Connection
Control

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A47/A47M	(1999; R 2018; E 2018) Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
ASTM A53/A53M	(2020) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A135/A135M	(2021) Standard Specification for Electric-Resistance-Welded Steel Pipe
ASTM A153/A153M	(2016a) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A183	(2014; R 2020) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Track Bolts and Nuts
ASTM A536	(1984; R 2019; E 2019) Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE	(updated on-line) Approval Guide http://www.approvalguide.com/
--------------	---

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-71	(2018) Gray Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends
-----------	---

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 13	(2022) Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems
NFPA 24	(2022) Standard for the Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances
NFPA 101	(2021) Life Safety Code
NFPA 291	(2022) Recommended Practice for Fire Flow Testing and Marking of Hydrants
NFPA 1963	(2019) Standard for Fire Hose Connections

NATIONAL INSTITUTE FOR CERTIFICATION IN ENGINEERING TECHNOLOGIES
(NICET)

NICET 1014-7	(2012) Program Detail Manual for Certification in the Field of Fire Protection Engineering Technology (Field
--------------	--

Code 003) Subfield of Automatic Sprinkler
System Layout

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 199	(2020) UL Standard for Safety Automatic Sprinklers for Fire-Protection Service
UL 262	(2004; Reprint Oct 2011) Gate Valves for Fire-Protection Service
UL 312	(2010; Reprint Mar 2018) UL Standard for Safety Check Valves for Fire-Protection Service
UL 405	(2013; Bul. 2020) UL Standard for Safety Fire Department Connection Devices
UL 668	(2004; Reprint Oct 2021) UL Standard for Safety Hose Valves for Fire-Protection Service
UL 789	(2004; Reprint May 2017) UL Standard for Safety Indicator Posts for Fire-Protection Service
UL 1767	(3013; Bul. 2015) UL Standard for Safety Early-Suppression Fast-Response Sprinklers
UL Fire Prot Dir	(2012) Fire Protection Equipment Directory

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide wet pipe sprinkler system in areas indicated on the drawings. Except as modified herein, the system must meet the requirements of NFPA 13 as modified by UFC 3-600-01. Pipe sizes which are not indicated on the Contract drawings must be determined by hydraulic calculations.

1.2.1 Hydraulic Design

1.2.1.1 Basis for Calculations

A waterflow test was performed on 03 August 2022 at Tora Bora Blvd. and resulted in a static pressure of 120 psi with a residual pressure of 119 psi while flowing 856 gpm. Perform a fire hydrant flow test prior to shop drawing submittal in accordance with NFPA 291. Results must include hydrant elevations relative to the building and hydrant number/identifiers for the tested hydrants, including which were flowed, which had a gauge. This information must be presented in a tabular form if multiple hydrants were flowed. The results must be included with the hydraulic calculations. Hydraulic calculations must be based on flow test obtained by the contractor. Hydraulic calculations must be based upon the Hazen-Williams formula with a "C" value noted in NFPA 13 for piping, and 100 for existing underground piping. The minimum residual pressure in a service lateral (lead-in) at the design flow rate must be 20 psi at the inlet to the backflow preventer.

1.2.1.2 Hydraulic Calculations

- a. Water supply curves and system requirements must be plotted on semi-logarithmic graph ($N^{1.85}$) paper so as to present a summary of the complete hydraulic calculation.
- b. Provide a summary sheet listing sprinklers in the design area and their respective hydraulic reference points, elevations, minimum discharge pressures and minimum flows. Elevations of hydraulic reference points (nodes) must be indicated.
- c. Documentation must identify each pipe individually and the nodes connected thereto. Indicate the diameter, length, flow, velocity, friction loss, number and type fittings, total friction loss in the pipe, equivalent pipe length and Hazen-Williams coefficient for each pipe.
- d. Where the sprinkler system is supplied by interconnected risers, the sprinkler system must be hydraulically calculated using the hydraulically most demanding single riser. The calculations must not assume the simultaneous use of more than one riser.
- e. All calculations must include the backflow preventer manufacturer's stated friction loss at the design flow or 8 psi for double check backflow preventer, whichever is greater.
- f. All calculations must be performed back to the actual location of the flow test, taking into account the direction of flow in the service main at the test location.
- g. For gridded systems, calculations must show peaking of demand area friction loss to verify that the hydraulically most demanding area is being used. A flow diagram indicating the quantity and direction of flows must be included.

1.2.1.3 Design Criteria

Hydraulically design the system to discharge a minimum density as indicated on the drawings. Hydraulic calculations must be in accordance with the Area/Density Method of NFPA 13. Add an allowance as indicated on the drawings for exterior hose streams to the sprinkler system demand at the point of connection to the existing water system.

1.2.2 Sprinkler Coverage

Sprinklers must be uniformly spaced on branch lines. Provide coverage throughout 100 percent of the building. This includes, but is not limited to, telephone rooms, electrical equipment rooms (regardless of the fire resistance rating of the enclosure), boiler rooms, switchgear rooms, transformer rooms, attached electrical vaults and other electrical and mechanical spaces. Coverage per sprinkler must be in accordance with NFPA 13. Provide sprinklers below all obstructions in accordance with NFPA 13. Exceptions are as follows:

- a. Sprinklers may be omitted from small rooms which are exempted for specific occupancies in accordance with NFPA 101.

1.2.3 Qualified Fire Protection Engineer (QFPE)

An individual who is a licensed professional engineer (P.E.) who has passed the fire protection engineering written examination administered by the National Council of Examiners for Engineering and Surveying (NCEES) and has relevant fire protection engineering experience. Services of the QFPE must include:

- a. Reviewing SD-02, SD-03, and SD-05 submittal packages for completeness and compliance with the provisions of this specification. Working (shop) drawings and calculations must be prepared by, or prepared under the immediate supervision of, the QFPE. The QFPE must affix their professional engineering stamp with signature to the shop drawings, calculations, and material data sheets, indicating approval prior to submitting the shop drawings to the DFPE.
- b. Provide a letter documenting that the SD-02, SD-03, and SD-05 submittal package has been reviewed and noting all outstanding comments.
- c. Performing in-progress construction surveillance prior to installation of ceilings (rough-in inspection).
- d. Witnessing pre-Government and final Government functional performance testing and performing a final installation review.
- e. Signing applicable certificates under SD-07.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Partial submittals and submittals not fully complying with NFPA 13 and this specification section must be returned disapproved without review. SD-02, SD-03 and SD-05 must be submitted simultaneously.

Shop drawings (SD-02), product data (SD-03) and calculations (SD-05) must be prepared by the designer and combined and submitted as one complete package. The QFPE must review the SD-02/SD-03/SD-05 submittal package for completeness and compliance with the Contract provisions prior to submission to the Government. The QFPE must provide a Letter of Confirmation that they have reviewed the submittal package for compliance with the contract provisions. This letter must include their professional engineer stamp and signature. Partial submittals and submittals not reviewed by the QFPE must be returned disapproved without review.

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Qualified Fire Protection Engineer (QFPE); G

Sprinkler System Designer; G

Sprinkler System Installer; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Shop Drawing; G

SD-03 Product Data

Pipe; G

Fittings; G

Valves, including gate, check, butterfly, and globe; G

Relief Valves; G

Sprinklers; G

Pipe Hangers and Supports; G

Sprinkler Alarm Switch; G

Valve Supervisory (Tamper) Switch; G

Fire Department Connection; G

Backflow Prevention Assembly; G

Air Vent; G

Nameplates; G

SD-05 Design Data

Hydraulic Calculations; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Test Procedures; G

SD-07 Certificates

Verification of Compliant Installation; G

Request for Government Final Test; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operating and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions; G

Spare Parts Data; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

As-built drawings

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Preconstruction Submittals

Within 36 days of contract award but no less than 14 days prior to commencing work on site, the prime Contractor must submit the following

for review and approval. SD-02, SD-03 and SD-05 submittals received prior to the review and approval of the qualifications will be returned Disapproved Without Review.

1.4.1.1 Shop Drawing

3 copies of the shop drawings, no later than 28 days prior to the start of system installation. Working drawings conforming to the requirements prescribed in NFPA 13 and must be no smaller than the Contract Drawings. Each set of drawings must include the following:

- a. A descriptive index with drawings listed in sequence by number. A legend sheet identifying device symbols, nomenclature, and conventions used in the package.
- b. Floor plans drawn to a scale not less than 1/8-inch equals 1-foot clearly showing locations of devices, equipment, risers, and other details required to clearly describe the proposed arrangement.
- c. Actual center-to-center dimensions between sprinklers on branch lines and between branch lines; from end sprinklers to adjacent walls; from walls to branch lines; from sprinkler feed mains, cross mains and branch lines to finished floor and roof or ceiling. A detail must show the dimension from the sprinkler and sprinkler deflector to the ceiling in finished areas.
- d. Longitudinal and transverse building sections showing typical branch line and cross main pipe routing, elevation of each typical sprinkler above finished floor and elevation of "cloud" or false ceilings in relation to the building ceilings.
- e. Plan and elevation views which establish that the equipment will fit the allotted spaces with clearance for installation and maintenance.
- f. Riser layout drawings drawn to a scale of not less than 1/2-inch equals 1-foot to show details of each system component, clearances between each other and from other equipment and construction in the room.
- g. Details of each type of riser assembly, pipe hanger, and restraint of underground water main at point-of-entry into the building, and electrical devices and interconnecting wiring. The dimension from the edge of vertical piping to the nearest adjacent wall(s) must be indicated on the drawings when vertical piping is located portions of the means of egress.
- h. Details of each type of pipe hanger and related components.

1.4.1.2 Product Data

3 copies of annotated catalog data to show the specific model, type, and size of each item. Catalog cuts must also indicate the NRTL listing. The data must be highlighted to show model, size, options, and other pertinent information, that are intended for consideration. Data must be adequate to demonstrate compliance with all contract requirements. Product data for all equipment must be combined into a single submittal.

1.4.1.3 Hydraulic Calculations

Calculations must be as outlined in NFPA 13 except that calculations must be performed by computer using software intended specifically for fire protection system design using the design data shown on the drawings.

1.4.1.4 Operating and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions

Provide six manuals and one pdf version on electronic media. The manuals must include the manufacturer's name, model number, parts list, list of parts and tools that should be kept in stock by the owner for routine maintenance, troubleshooting guide, and recommended service organization (including address and telephone number) for each item of equipment. Each service organization submitted must be capable of providing 4-hour on-site response to a service call on an emergency basis.

Submit spare parts data for each different item of material and equipment specified. The data must include a complete list of parts and supplies, and a list of parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced after 1-year and 3 years of service. Include a list of special tools and test equipment required for maintenance and testing of the products supplied.

1.4.2 Qualifications

1.4.2.1 Sprinkler System Designer

The sprinkler system designer must be certified as a Level IV Technician by National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) in the Water-Based Systems Layout subfield of Fire Protection Engineering Technology in accordance with NICET 1014-7.

1.4.2.2 Sprinkler System Installer

The sprinkler system installer must be regularly engaged in the installation of the type and complexity of system specified in the contract documents, and must have served in a similar capacity for at least three systems that have performed in the manner intended for a period of not less than 6 months.

1.4.3 Regulatory Requirements

Equipment and material must be listed or approved. Listed or approved, as used in this Section, means listed, labeled or approved by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) such as UL Fire Prot Dir or FM APP GUIDE. The omission of these terms under the description of an item or equipment described must not be construed as waiving this requirement. All listings or approvals by testing laboratories must be from an existing ANSI or UL published standard. The recommended practices stated in the manufacturer's literature or documentation are mandatory requirements.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect all equipment delivered and placed in storage from the weather, excessive humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. All pipes must be either capped or plugged until installed.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

Spare sprinklers and wrench(es) must be provided as spare parts in accordance with NFPA 13.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

2.1.1 Standard Products

Provide materials, equipment, and devices listed for fire protection service when so required by NFPA 13 or this specification. Select material from one manufacturer, where possible, and not a combination of manufacturers, for a classification of material. Material and equipment must be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products for at least 2 years prior to bid.

2.1.2 Nameplates

Major components of equipment must have the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, catalog number, date of installation, installing Contractor's name and address, and the contract number provided on a new name plate permanently affixed to the item or equipment. Nameplates must be etched metal or plastic, permanently attached by screws to control units, panels or adjacent walls.

2.1.3 Identification and Marking

Pipe and fitting markings must include name or identifying symbol of manufacturer and nominal size. Pipe must be marked with ASTM designation. Valves and equipment markings must have name or identifying symbol of manufacturer, specific model number, nominal size, name of device, arrow indicating direction of flow, and position of installation (horizontal or vertical), except if valve can be installed in either position. Markings must be included on the body casting or on an etched or stamped metal nameplate permanently on the valve or cover plate.

2.1.4 Pressure Ratings

Valves, fittings, couplings, alarm switches, and similar devices must be rated for the maximum working pressures that can be experienced in the system, but in no case less than 175 psi.

2.2 UNDERGROUND PIPING COMPONENTS

2.2.1 Pipe

Pipe must comply with NFPA 24. Minimum pipe size is 6 inches. Piping more than 5 feet outside the building walls must comply with Section 33 11 00 WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING. A continuous section of welded stainless steel fire water service piping from a point outside the building perimeter to a flanged fitting at least 1-foot above the finished floor within the building is acceptable.

2.2.2 Fittings and Gaskets

Fittings must be ductile-iron conforming to AWWA C110/A21.10 with cement mortar lining conforming to AWWA C104/A21.4. Gaskets must be suitable in

design and size for the pipe with which such gaskets are to be used. Gaskets for ductile-iron pipe joints must conform to AWWA C111/A21.11.

2.2.3 Gate Valve and Indicator Posts

Installation must comply with NFPA 24. Gate valves for use with indicator post must conform to UL 262. Indicator posts must conform to UL 789. Provide each indicator post with one coat of primer and two coats of red enamel paint.

2.2.4 Valve Boxes

Except where indicator posts are provided, for each buried valve, provide a cast-iron, ductile-iron, or plastic valve box of a suitable size. Plastic boxes must be constructed of acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) or inorganic fiber-reinforced black polyolefin. Provide cast-iron, ductile-iron, or plastic cover for valve box with the word "WATER" cast on the cover. The minimum box shaft diameter must be 5.25 inches. Coat cast-iron and ductile-iron boxes with bituminous paint applied to a minimum dry-film thickness of 10 mils.

2.2.5 Buried Utility Warning and Identification Tape

Provide detectable aluminum foil plastic backed tape or detectable magnetic plastic tape manufactured specifically for warning and identification of buried piping. Tape must be detectable by an electronic detection instrument. Provide tape, 3 inches minimum width, color coded for the utility involved with warning and identification imprinted in bold block letters continuously and repeatedly over the entire tape length. Warning and identification must read "CAUTION BURIED WATER PIPING BELOW" or similar wording. Use permanent code and letter coloring unaffected by moisture and other substances contained in trench backfill material.

2.3 ABOVEGROUND PIPING COMPONENTS

2.3.1 Steel Piping Components

2.3.1.1 Steel Pipe

Except as modified herein, steel pipe must be black as permitted by NFPA 13 and conform to the applicable provisions of ASTM A53/A53M, ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A153/A153M.

Steel pipe must be minimum Schedule 40 for sizes 2 inches and less; and minimum Schedule 10 for sizes larger than 2 inches. Steel piping with wall thickness less than Schedule 40 must not be threaded.

2.3.1.2 Fittings

Fittings must be welded, threaded, or grooved-end type. Threaded fittings must be cast-iron conforming to ASME B16.4, malleable-iron conforming to ASME B16.3 or ductile-iron conforming to ASTM A536. Plain-end fittings with mechanical couplings, fittings that use steel gripping devices to bite into the pipe, steel press fittings and field welded fittings are not permitted. Fittings, mechanical couplings, and rubber gaskets must be supplied by the same manufacturer. Threaded fittings must use Teflon tape or manufacturer's approved joint compound. Reducing couplings are not permitted except as allowed by NFPA 13.

2.3.1.3 Grooved Mechanical Joints and Fittings

Joints and fittings must be designed for not less than 175 psi service and the product of the same manufacturer. Field welded fittings must not be used. Fitting and coupling housing must be malleable-iron conforming to ASTM A47/A47M, Grade 32510; ductile-iron conforming to ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12. Rubber gasketed grooved-end pipe and fittings with mechanical couplings are permitted in pipe sizes 2 inches and larger. Gasket must be the flush type that fills the entire cavity between the fitting and the pipe. Nuts and bolts must be heat-treated steel conforming to ASTM A183 and must be cadmium-plated or zinc-electroplated.

2.3.1.4 Flanges

Flanges must conform to NFPA 13 and ASME B16.1. Gaskets must be non-asbestos compressed material in accordance with ASME B16.21, 1/16-inch thick, and full face or self-centering flat ring type.

2.3.2 Flexible Sprinkler Hose

The use of flexible hose is not permitted.

2.3.3 Pipe Hangers and Supports

Provide galvanized pipe hangers and supports in accordance with NFPA 13..

2.3.4 Valves

Provide valves of types approved for fire service. Valves must open by counterclockwise rotation.

2.3.4.1 Control Valve

Manually operated sprinkler control/gate valve must be outside stem and yoke (OS&Y) type and must be listed.

2.3.4.2 Check Valves

Check valves must comply with UL 312. Check valves 4 inches and larger must be of the swing type, have a clear waterway and meet the requirements of MSS SP-71, for Type 3 or 4. Inspection plate must be provided on valves larger than 6 inches.

2.3.4.3 Hose Valve

Valve must comply with UL 668.

2.3.5 Riser Check Valves

Provide riser check valve, pressure gauges and main drain.

2.4 ALARM INITIATING AND SUPERVISORY DEVICES

2.4.1 Sprinkler Alarm Switch

Vane or pressure-type flow switch(es). Connection of switch must be by the fire alarm installer. Vane type alarm actuating devices must have mechanical diaphragm controlled retard device adjustable from 10 to 60 seconds and must instantly recycle.

2.4.2 Valve Supervisory (Tamper) Switch

Switch must be integral to the control valve or suitable for mounting to the type of control valve to be supervised open. The switch must be tamper resistant and contain SPDT (Form C) contacts arranged to transfer upon removal of the housing cover or closure of the valve of more than two rotations of the valve stem.

2.5 BACKFLOW PREVENTION ASSEMBLY

Double-check valve assembly backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1013, ASSE 1015 and AWWA M14. Each check valve must have a drain. Backflow prevention assemblies must have current "Certificate of Approval from the Foundation for Cross-Connection Control and Hydraulic Research, FCCCHR List" and be listed for fire protection use. Listing of the specific make, model, design, and size in the FCCCHR List is acceptable as the required documentation.

2.5.1 Backflow Preventer Test Connection

Test connection must consist of a series of listed hose valves with 2 1/2-inch National Standard male hose threads with cap and chain.

2.6 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

Fire department connection must be projecting type with cast-brass body, matching wall escutcheon lettered "Auto Spkr" with a polished-brass finish. The connection must have individual self-closing clappers, caps with drip drains and chains. Female inlets must have 2 1/2-inch diameter American National Fire Hose Connection Screw Threads (NH) per NFPA 1963. Comply with UL 405.

2.7 SPRINKLERS

Sprinklers must comply with UL 199 and NFPA 13. Sprinklers with internal O-rings are not acceptable. Sprinklers in high heat areas including attic spaces or in close proximity to unit heaters must have temperature classification in accordance with NFPA 13. Extended coverage sprinklers are permitted for loading docks, and high-piled storage applications only.

2.7.1 Pendent Sprinkler

Pendent sprinkler must be recessed quick-response type with nominal K-factor of 5.6 for light hazard applications, 8.0 for ordinary hazard applications and in accordance with NFPA 13 for high piled, rack or shelved storage applications. Pendent sprinklers must have a polished chrome finish. Assembly must include an integral escutcheon.

2.7.2 Upright Sprinkler

Upright sprinkler must be brass quick-response type and have a nominal K-factor of 5.6 for light hazard applications, 8.0 for ordinary hazard applications and in accordance with NFPA 13 for high piled, rack or shelved storage applications.

2.7.3 Dry Sprinkler Assembly

Dry sprinkler assembly must be of the sidewall type as indicated. Assembly must include an integral escutcheon. Maximum length must not exceed maximum indicated in its listing. Sprinkler must have a polished chrome finish.

2.7.4 ESFR Sprinkler

ESFR sprinkler must be pendent or upright and comply with UL 1767. Nominal K-factor must be as required for the application in accordance with NFPA 13.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

2.8.1 Sprinkler Cabinet

Provide spare sprinklers in accordance with NFPA 13 and must be placed in a suitable metal or plastic cabinet of sufficient size to accommodate all the spare sprinklers and wrenches in designated locations. Spare sprinklers must be representative of, and in proportion to, the number of each type and temperature rating of the sprinklers installed as required by NFPA 13. At least one wrench of each type required must be provided.

2.8.2 Pendent Sprinkler Escutcheon

Escutcheon must be one-piece metallic type with a depth of less than 3/4-inch and suitable for installation on pendent sprinklers. The escutcheon must have a factory finish that matches the pendent sprinkler.

2.8.3 Pipe Escutcheon

Provide split hinge metal plates for piping entering walls, floors, and ceilings in exposed spaces. Provide polished stainless steel plates or chromium-plated finish on copper alloy plates in finished spaces. Provide paint finish on metal plates in unfinished spaces.

2.8.4 Sprinkler Guard

Listed guard must be a steel wire cage designed to encase the sprinkler and protect it from mechanical damage. Guards must be provided on sprinklers located within 7 feet of the floor. Provide sprinkler guards on sprinklers in mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, communication rooms and any other rooms with upright sprinklers where damage could occur as a result of ladder or maintenance work.

2.8.5 Relief Valve

Relief valves must be listed and installed at the riser in accordance with NFPA 13.

2.8.6 Air Vent

Air vents must be of the automatic type and piped to drain to the building exterior.

2.8.7 Identification Sign

Valve identification sign must be minimum 6 inches wide by 2 inches high

with enamel baked finish on minimum 18 gage steel or 0.024-inch aluminum with red letters on a white background or white letters on red background. Wording of sign must include, but not be limited to "main drain", "auxiliary drain", "inspector's test", "alarm test", "alarm line", and similar wording as required to identify operational components. Where there is more than one sprinkler system, signage must include specific details as to the respective system.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 VERIFYING ACTUAL FIELD CONDITIONS

Before commencing work, examine all adjoining work on which the contractor's work that is dependent for perfect workmanship according to the intent of this specification section, and report to the Contracting Officer's Representative a condition that prevents performance of first class work. No "waiver of responsibility" for incomplete, inadequate or defective adjoining work will be considered unless notice has been filed before submittal of a proposal.

3.2 INSTALLATION

The installation must be in accordance with the applicable provisions of NFPA 13, NFPA 24 and publications referenced therein. Locate sprinklers in a consistent pattern with ceiling grid, lights, and air supply diffusers. Install sprinkler system over and under ducts, piping and platforms when such equipment can negatively affect or disrupt the sprinkler discharge pattern and coverage.

- a. Piping offsets, fittings, and other accessories required must be furnished to provide a complete installation and to eliminate interference with other construction.
- b. Wherever the contractor's work interconnects with work of other trades the Contractor must coordinate with other Contractors to insure all Contractors have the information necessary so that they may properly install all necessary connections and equipment. Identify all work items needing access (dampers and similar equipment) that are concealed above hung ceilings by permanent color coded pins/tabs in the ceiling directly below the item.
- c. Provide required supports and hangers for piping, conduit, and equipment so that loading will not exceed allowable loadings of structure. Submittal of a bid must be a deemed representation that the contractor submitting such bid has ascertained allowable loadings and has included in his estimates the costs associated in furnishing required supports.

3.2.1 Waste Removal

At the conclusion of each day's work, clean up and stockpile on site all waste, debris, and trash which may have accumulated during the day as a result of work by the contractor and of his presence on the job. Sidewalks and streets adjoining the property must be kept broom clean and free of waste, debris, trash and obstructions caused by work of the contractor, which will affect the condition and safety of streets, walks, utilities, and property.

3.3 UNDERGROUND PIPING INSTALLATION

The fire protection water main must be laid, and joints anchored, in accordance with NFPA 24. Minimum depth of cover must be 4 feet or the frost line, whichever is deeper. The supply line must terminate inside the building with a flanged piece, the bottom of which must be set not less than 1-foot above the finished floor. A blind flange must be installed temporarily on top of the flanged piece to prevent the entrance of foreign matter into the supply line. A concrete thrust block must be provided at the elbow where the pipe turns up toward the floor. In addition, joints must be anchored in accordance with NFPA 24. Buried steel components must be provided with a corrosion protective coating in accordance with AWWA C203. Piping more than 5 feet outside the building walls must meet the requirements of Section 33 11 00 WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING.

3.4 ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSTALLATION

The methods of fabrication and installation of the aboveground piping must fully comply with the requirements and recommended practices of NFPA 13 and this specification section.

3.4.1 Protection of Piping Against Earthquake Damage

Seismic restraint is not required.

3.4.2 Piping in Exposed Areas

Install exposed piping without diminishing exit access widths, corridors or equipment access. Exposed horizontal piping, including drain piping, must be installed to provide maximum headroom.

3.4.3 Piping in Finished Areas

In areas with suspended or dropped ceilings and in areas with concealed spaces above the ceiling, piping must be concealed above ceilings. Piping must be inspected, hydrostatically tested and approved before being concealed. Risers and similar vertical runs of piping in finished areas must be concealed.

3.4.4 Pendent Sprinklers

- a. Drop nipples to pendent sprinklers must consist of minimum 1-inch pipe with a reducing coupling into which the sprinkler must be threaded.
- b. Where sprinklers are installed below suspended or dropped ceilings, drop nipples must be cut such that sprinkler ceiling plates or escutcheons are of a uniform depth throughout the finished space. The outlet of the reducing coupling must not extend below the underside of the ceiling.
- c. Recessed pendent sprinklers must be installed such that the distance from the sprinkler deflector to the underside of the ceiling must not exceed the manufacturer's listed range and must be of uniform depth throughout the finished area.
- d. Pendent sprinklers in suspended ceilings must be located in the center of the tile (plus or minus 2 inches).

- e. Dry pendent sprinklers must be of the required length to permit the sprinkler to be threaded directly into a branch line tee.
- f. Where the maximum static or flowing pressure, whichever is greater at the sprinkler, applied other than through the fire department connection, exceeds 100 psi and a branch line above the ceiling supplies sprinklers in a pendent position below the ceiling, the cumulative horizontal length of an unsupported armover to a sprinkler or sprinkler drop must not exceed 12 inches for steel pipe and 6 inches for copper tube.

3.4.5 Upright Sprinklers

Riser nipples or "sprigs" to upright sprinklers must contain no fittings between the branch line tee and the reducing coupling at the sprinkler.

3.4.6 Pipe Joints

Pipe joints must conform to NFPA 13, except as modified herein. Not more than four threads must show after joint is made up. Welded joints will be permitted, only if welding operations are performed as required by NFPA 13 at the Contractor's fabrication shop, not at the project construction site. Flanged joints must be provided where indicated or required by NFPA 13. Grooved pipe and fittings must be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's latest published specification according to pipe material, wall thickness and size. Grooved couplings, fittings and grooving tools must be products of the same manufacturer. For copper tubing, pipe and groove dimensions must comply with the tolerances specified by the coupling manufacturer. The diameter of grooves made in the field must be measured using a "go/no-go" gauge, vernier or dial caliper, narrow-land micrometer, or other method specifically approved by the coupling manufacturer for the intended application. Groove width and dimension of groove from end of pipe must be measured and recorded for each change in grooving tool setup to verify compliance with coupling manufacturer's tolerances.

3.4.7 Reducers

Reductions in pipe sizes must be made with one-piece tapered reducing fittings. When standard fittings of the required size are not manufactured, single bushings of the face or hex type will be permitted. Where used, face bushings must be installed with the outer face flush with the face of the fitting opening being reduced. Bushings cannot be used in elbow fittings, in more than one outlet of a tee, in more than two outlets of a cross, or where the reduction in size is less than 1/2-inch.

3.4.8 Pipe Penetrations

- a. Cutting structural members for passage of pipes or for pipe-hanger fastenings will not be permitted. Pipes that must penetrate concrete or masonry walls or concrete floors must be core-drilled and provided with pipe sleeves. Each sleeve must be Schedule 40 galvanized steel, ductile-iron or cast-iron pipe and extend through its respective wall or floor and be cut flush with each wall surface. Sleeves must provide required clearance between the pipe and the sleeve per NFPA 13. The space between the sleeve and the pipe must be firmly packed with mineral wool insulation.
- b. Where pipes and sleeves penetrate fire walls, fire partitions, or

floors, pipes/sleeves must be firestopped in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

- c. In penetrations that are not fire-rated or not a floor penetration, the space between the sleeve and the pipe must be sealed at both ends with plastic waterproof cement that will dry to a firm but pliable mass or with a mechanically adjustable segmented elastomer seal.

3.4.9 Escutcheons

Escutcheons must be provided for pipe penetration in finished areas of ceilings, floors and walls. Escutcheons must be securely fastened to the pipe at surfaces through which piping passes.

3.4.10 Inspector's Test Connection

Unless otherwise indicated, the test connection must consist of 1-inch pipe connected at the riser as a combination test and drain valve; a test valve located approximately 7 feet above the floor; a smooth bore brass outlet equivalent to the smallest orifice sprinkler used in the system; and a painted metal identification sign affixed to the valve with the words "Inspector's Test". All test connection piping must be inside of the building and penetrate the exterior wall at the location of the discharge orifice only. The discharge orifice must be located outside the building wall no more than 2 feet above finished grade, directed so as not to cause damage to adjacent construction or landscaping during full flow discharge, or to the sanitary sewer. Discharge to the exterior must not interfere with exiting from the facility. Water discharge or runoff must not cross the path of egress from the building. Do not discharge to the roof. Discharge to floor drains, janitor sinks or similar fixtures is not permitted.

Provide concrete splash blocks at all drain and inspector's test connection discharge locations if not discharging to a concrete surface. Splash blocks must be large enough to mitigate erosion and not become dislodged during a full flow of the drain. Ensure all discharged water drains away from the facility and does not cause property damage.

3.4.11 Backflow Preventer

Locate within the building or in a heated enclosure in locations subject to freezing. For heated enclosures, provide a low temperature supervisory alarm connected to the facility fire alarm system. Heat trace is not permitted to be used.

Install horizontal backflow preventers so that the bottom of the assembly is no greater than 24 inches above the finished floor/grade. Clearance around control valve handles must be minimum 6 inches above grade/finished floor and away from walls.

3.4.11.1 Test Connection

Provide downstream of the backflow prevention assembly UL 668 hose valves with 2.5-inch National Standard male hose threads with cap and chain. Provide one valve for each 250 gpm of system demand or fraction thereof. Provide a permanent sign in accordance with paragraph entitled "Identification Signs" which reads, "Test Valve". Indicate location of test header. If an exterior connection, provide a control valve inside a heated mechanical room to prevent freezing.

3.4.12 Drains

- a. Main drain piping must be provided to discharge at a safe point outside the building, no more than 2 feet above finished grade. Provide a concrete splash block at drain outlet. Discharge to the exterior must not interfere with exiting from the facility. Water discharge or runoff must not cross the path of egress from the building.
- b. Auxiliary drains must be provided as required by NFPA 13. Auxiliary drains are permitted to discharge to a floor drain if the drain is sized to accommodate full flow (min 40 gpm). Discharge to service sinks or similar plumbing fixtures is not permitted.

3.4.13 Installation of Fire Department Connection

Connection must be mounted on the exterior wall approximately 3 feet above finished grade adjacent to and on the sprinkler system side of the backflow preventer. The piping between the connection and the check valve must be provided with an automatic drip in accordance with NFPA 13 and piped to drain to the outside or a floor drain within the same room.

3.4.14 Identification Signs

Signs must be affixed to each control valve, inspector test valve, main drain, auxiliary drain, test valve, and similar valves as appropriate or as required by NFPA 13. Main drain test results must be etched into main drain identification sign. Hydraulic design data must be etched into the nameplates and permanently affixed to each sprinkler riser as specified in NFPA 13. Provide labeling on the surfaces of all feed and cross mains to show the pipe function (e.g., "Sprinkler System", "Fire Department Connection", "Standpipe") and normal valve position (e.g. "Normally Open", "Normally Closed"). For pipe sizes 4-inch and larger provide white painted stenciled letters and arrows, a minimum of 2 inches in height and visible from at least two sides when viewed from the floor. For pipe sizes less than 4-inch, provide white painted stenciled letters and arrows, a minimum of 0.75-inch in height and visible from the floor. Provide properly lettered and approved metal sign to elevator flow switch stating the circuits' voltage, and identify the switch as an "Elevator Power Shunt Flow Switch".

3.5 ELECTRICAL

Except as modified herein, electric equipment and wiring must be in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

3.6 PAINTING

Color code mark piping red as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.7.1 Test Procedures

Submit detailed test procedures, prepared and signed by the NICET Level III or IV Fire Sprinkler Technician, and the representative of the installing company, and reviewed by the QFPE 60 days prior to performing system

tests. Detailed test procedures must list all components of the installed system. Test procedures must include sequence of testing, time estimate for each test, and sample test data forms. The test data forms must be in a check-off format (pass/fail with space to add applicable test data; similar to the forms in NFPA 13). The test procedures and accompanying test data forms must be used for the pre-Government testing and the Government final testing.

- a. Provide space to identify the date and time of each test. Provide space to identify the names and signatures of the individuals conducting and witnessing each test.

3.7.2 Pre-Government Testing

3.7.2.1 Verification of Compliant Installation

Conduct inspections and tests to ensure that equipment is functioning properly. Tests must meet the requirements of paragraph entitled "Minimum System Tests" and "System Acceptance" as noted in NFPA 13. The Contractor and QFPE must be in attendance at the pre-Government testing to make necessary adjustments. After inspection and testing is complete, provide a signed Verification of Compliant Installation letter by the QFPE that the installation is complete, compliant with the specification and fully operable. The letter must include the names and titles of the witnesses to the pre-Government tests. Provide all completion documentation as required by NFPA 13 and the test reports noted below.

- a. NFPA 13 Aboveground Material and Test Certificate
- b. NFPA 13 Underground Material and Test Certificate

3.7.2.2 Request for Government Final Test

When the verification of compliant installation has been completed, submit a formal request for Government final test to the Contracting Officers Designated Representative (COR). Government final testing will not be scheduled until the COR has received copies of the request for Government final testing and Verification of Compliant Installation letter with all required reports. Government final testing will not be performed until after the connections to the building fire alarm system have been completed and tested to confirm communications are fully functional. Submit request for test at least 15 calendar days prior to the requested test date.

3.7.3 Correction of Deficiencies

If equipment was found to be defective or non-compliant with contract requirements, perform corrective actions and repeat the tests. Tests must be conducted and repeated if necessary until the system has been demonstrated to comply with all contract requirements.

3.7.4 Government Final Tests

The tests must be performed in accordance with the approved test procedures in the presence of the DFPE. Furnish instruments and personnel required for the tests. The following must be provided at the job site for Government Final Testing:

- a. The manufacturer's technical representative.

- b. The contractor's Qualified Fire Protection Engineer (QFPE).
- c. Marked-up red line drawings of the system as actually installed.

Government Final Tests will be witnessed by the contracting officers designated representative, Qualified Fire Protection Engineer (QFPE). At this time, all required tests noted in the paragraph "Minimum System Tests" must be repeated at their discretion.

3.8 MINIMUM SYSTEM TESTS

The system, including the underground water mains, and the aboveground piping and system components, must be tested to ensure that equipment and components function as intended. The underground and aboveground interior piping systems and attached appurtenances subjected to system working pressure must be tested in accordance with NFPA 13 and NFPA 24.

3.8.1 Underground Piping

3.8.1.1 Flushing

Underground piping must be flushed at a minimum of 10 fps in accordance with NFPA 24.

3.8.1.2 Hydrostatic Test

New underground piping must be hydrostatically tested in accordance with NFPA 24.

3.8.2 Aboveground Piping

3.8.2.1 Hydrostatic Test

Aboveground piping must be hydrostatically tested in accordance with NFPA 13. There must be no drop in gauge pressure or visible leakage when the system is subjected to the hydrostatic test. The test pressure must be read from a gauge located at the low elevation point of the system or portion being tested.

3.8.2.2 Backflow Prevention Assembly Forward Flow Test

Each backflow prevention assembly must be tested at system flow demand, including all applicable hose streams, as specified in NFPA 13. The Contractor must provide all equipment and instruments necessary to conduct a complete forward flow test, including 2.5-inch diameter hoses, playpipe nozzles or flow diffusers, calibrated pressure gauges, and pitot tube gauge. The Contractor must provide all necessary supports to safely secure hoses and nozzles during the test. At the system demand flow, the pressure readings and pressure drop (friction loss) across the assembly must be recorded. A metal placard must be provided on the backflow prevention assembly that lists the pressure readings both upstream and downstream of the assembly, total pressure drop, and the system test flow rate determined during the preliminary testing. The pressure drop must be compared to the manufacturer's data and the readings observed during the final inspections and tests.

3.8.3 Main Drain Flow Test

Following flushing of the underground piping, a main drain test must be made to verify the adequacy of the water supply. Static and residual pressures must be recorded on the certificate specified in paragraph SUBMITTALS.

3.9 SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE

Following acceptance of the system, as-built drawings and O&M manuals must be delivered to the Contracting Officer for review and acceptance. Submit six sets of detailed as-built drawings. The drawings must show the system as installed, including deviations from both the project drawings and the approved shop drawings. These drawings must be submitted within two weeks after the final acceptance test of the system. At least one set of as-built (marked-up) drawings must be provided at the time of, or prior to the final acceptance test.

- a. Provide one set of full size paper as-built drawings and schematics. The drawings must be prepared electronically and sized no less than the contract drawings. Furnish one set of CDs or DVDs containing software back-up and CAD based drawings in latest version of AutoCAD, DXF and portable document formats of as-built drawings and schematics.
- b. Provide operating and maintenance (O&M) instructions.

3.10 ONSITE TRAINING

Conduct a training course for the responding fire department and operating and maintenance personnel as designated by the Contracting Officer. Training must be performed on two separate days (to accommodate different shifts of Fire Department personnel) for a period of 4 hours of normal working time and must start after the system is functionally complete and after the final acceptance test. The on-site training must cover all of the items contained in the approved Operating and Maintenance Instructions.

Provide 14 day notice to base DPW for training. Schedule training for Tuesday, Wednesday or Thursday only.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 21 13 16

DRY PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS, FIRE PROTECTION
08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B16.1	(2020) Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings Classes 25, 125, and 250
ASME B16.3	(2016) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300
ASME B16.4	(2021) Standard for Gray Iron Threaded Fittings; Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.21	(2016) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A47/A47M	(1999; R 2018; E 2018) Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
ASTM A53/A53M	(2020) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A135/A135M	(2021) Standard Specification for Electric-Resistance-Welded Steel Pipe
ASTM A153/A153M	(2016a) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A183	(2014; R 2020) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Track Bolts and Nuts
ASTM A536	(1984; R 2019; E 2019) Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE	(updated on-line) Approval Guide http://www.approvalguide.com/
--------------	---

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-71 (2018) Gray Iron Swing Check Valves,
Flanged and Threaded Ends

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 13 (2022) Standard for the Installation of
Sprinkler Systems

NFPA 24 (2022) Standard for the Installation of
Private Fire Service Mains and Their
Appurtenances

NFPA 291 (2022) Recommended Practice for Fire Flow
Testing and Marking of Hydrants

NATIONAL INSTITUTE FOR CERTIFICATION IN ENGINEERING TECHNOLOGIES
(NICET)

NICET 1014-7 (2012) Program Detail Manual for
Certification in the Field of Fire
Protection Engineering Technology (Field
Code 003) Subfield of Automatic Sprinkler
System Layout

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 199 (2020) UL Standard for Safety Automatic
Sprinklers for Fire-Protection Service

UL 312 (2010; Reprint Mar 2018) UL Standard for
Safety Check Valves for Fire-Protection
Service

UL 668 (2004; Reprint Oct 2021) UL Standard for
Safety Hose Valves for Fire-Protection
Service

UL Fire Prot Dir (2012) Fire Protection Equipment Directory

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide dry pipe sprinkler system in areas indicated on the drawings.
Except as modified herein, the system must meet the requirements of NFPA 13
as modified by UFC 3-600-01. Dry pipe systems must utilize nitrogen.
Pipe sizes which are not indicated on the Contract drawings must be
determined by hydraulic calculations.

1.2.1 Hydraulic Design

1.2.1.1 Basis for Calculations

Perform a fire hydrant flow test prior to shop drawing submittal in
accordance with NFPA 291. Results must include hydrant elevations
relative to the building and hydrant number/identifiers for the tested
hydrants, including which were flowed, which had a gauge. This
information must be presented in a tabular form if multiple hydrants were

flowed. The results must be included with the hydraulic calculations. Hydraulic calculations must be based on flow test noted in this paragraph, unless verified by the NAVFAC Fire Protection Engineer and approved by Contracting Officer. Hydraulic calculations must be based upon the Hazen-Williams formula with a "C" value noted in NFPA 13 for piping, and 140 for existing underground piping. A "C" value of 120 is permitted to be used in hydraulic calculations when nitrogen is utilized.

1.2.1.2 Hydraulic Calculations

- a. Water supply curves and system requirements must be plotted on semi-logarithmic graph ($N^{1.85}$) paper so as to present a summary of the complete hydraulic calculation.
- b. Provide a summary sheet listing sprinklers in the design area and their respective hydraulic reference points, elevations, minimum discharge pressures and minimum flows. Elevations of hydraulic reference points (nodes) must be indicated.
- c. Documentation must identify each pipe individually and the nodes connected thereto. Indicate the diameter, length, flow, velocity, friction loss, number and type fittings, total friction loss in the pipe, equivalent pipe length and Hazen-Williams coefficient for each pipe.
- d. Where the sprinkler system is supplied by interconnected risers, the sprinkler system must be hydraulically calculated using the hydraulically most demanding single riser. The calculations must not assume the simultaneous use of more than one riser.
- e. All calculations must include the backflow preventer manufacturer's stated friction loss at the design flow or 8 psi for double check backflow preventer, whichever is greater.
- f. All calculations must be performed back to the actual location of the flow test, taking into account the direction of flow in the service main at the test location.

1.2.1.3 Design Criteria

Hydraulically design the system to the minimum criteria as indicated on the drawings. Hydraulic calculations must be in accordance with the Area/Density Method of NFPA 13. Add an allowance for exterior hose streams of 250 gpm to the sprinkler system demand at the point of connection to the existing water system.

1.2.2 Sprinkler Coverage

Sprinklers must be uniformly spaced on branch lines. Provide coverage throughout 100 percent of the area noted on the Contract drawings. Coverage per sprinkler must be in accordance with NFPA 13. Provide sprinklers below all obstructions in accordance with NFPA 13.

1.2.3 System Volume Limitations

Where the volume of an individual system piping exceeds 500 gallons, provide the dry pipe valve with a quick-opening device. The maximum system capacity controlled by one dry pipe valve must not exceed 750 gallons, unless it complies with the dry pipe system water delivery

calculations noted in NFPA 13.

1.2.4 Qualified Fire Protection Engineer (QFPE)

An individual who is a licensed professional engineer (P.E.) who has passed the fire protection engineering written examination administered by the National Council of Examiners for Engineering and Surveying (NCEES) and has relevant fire protection engineering experience. Services of the QFPE must include:

- a. Reviewing SD-02, SD-03, and SD-05 submittal packages for completeness and compliance with the provisions of this specification. Working (shop) drawings and calculations must be prepared by, or prepared under the immediate supervision of, the QFPE. The QFPE must affix their professional engineering stamp with signature to the shop drawings, calculations, and material data sheets, indicating approval prior to submitting the shop drawings to the DFPE.
- b. Provide a letter documenting that the SD-02, SD-03, and SD-05 submittal package has been reviewed and noting outstanding comments.
- c. Performing in-progress construction surveillance prior to installation of ceilings (rough-in inspection).
- d. Witnessing pre-Government and final Government functional performance testing and performing a final installation review.
- e. Signing applicable certificates under SD-07.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Partial submittals and submittals not fully complying with NFPA 13 and this specification section must be returned disapproved without review. SD-02, SD-03 and SD-05 must be submitted simultaneously.

Shop drawings (SD-02), product data (SD-03) and calculations (SD-05) must be prepared by the designer and combined and submitted as one complete package. The QFPE must review the SD-02/SD-03/SD-05 submittal package for completeness and compliance with the Contract provisions prior to submission to the Government. The QFPE must provide a Letter of Confirmation that they have reviewed the submittal package for compliance with the contract provisions. This letter must include their professional engineer stamp and signature. Partial submittals and submittals not reviewed by the QFPE must be returned disapproved without review.

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Qualified Fire Protection Engineer (QFPE); G

Sprinkler System Designer; G

Sprinkler System Installer; G

Nitrogen Generation System Commissioning Technician; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Shop Drawing; G

SD-03 Product Data

Pipe; G

Fittings; G

Valves, including gate, check, butterfly, and globe; G

Relief Valves; G

Sprinklers; G

Pipe Hangers and Supports; G

Sprinkler Alarm Switch; G

Valve Supervisory (Tamper) Switch; G

High/Low-Nitrogen Pressure Supervisory Switch; G

Nitrogen Generation System; G

Nameplates; G

Dry Pipe Valve; G

SD-05 Design Data

Hydraulic Calculations; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Test Procedures; G

SD-07 Certificates

Verification of Compliant Installation; G

Request for Government Final Test; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operating and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions; G

Spare Parts Data; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

As-built drawings

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Preconstruction Submittals

Within 36 days of contract award but no less than 14 days prior to commencing work on site, the primeContractor must submit the following for review and approval. SD-02, SD-03 and SD-05 submittals received prior to the review and approval of the qualifications must be returned Disapproved Without Review. All resultant delays are the sole responsibility of the prime Contractor.

1.4.1.1 Shop Drawing

6 copies of the shop drawings, no later than 28 days prior to the start of system installation. Working drawings conforming to the requirements prescribed in NFPA 13 and must be no smaller than the Contract Drawings. Each set of drawings must include the following:

1. A descriptive index with drawings listed in sequence by number. A legend sheet identifying device symbols, nomenclature, and conventions used in the package.
2. Floor plans drawn to a scale not less than 1/8-inch equals 1-foot clearly showing locations of devices, equipment, risers, electrical power connections and other details required to clearly describe the proposed arrangement.
3. Actual center-to-center dimensions between sprinklers on branch lines and between branch lines; from end sprinklers to adjacent walls; from walls to branch lines; from sprinkler feed mains, cross mains and branch lines to finished floor and roof or ceiling. A detail must show the dimension from the sprinkler and sprinkler deflector to the ceiling in finished areas.
4. Longitudinal and transverse building sections showing typical branch line and cross main pipe routing, elevation of each typical sprinkler above finished floor and elevation of "cloud" or false ceilings in relation to the building ceilings.
5. Plan and elevation views which establish that the equipment will fit the allotted spaces with clearance for installation and maintenance.
6. Riser layout drawings drawn to a scale of not less than 1/2-inch equals 1-foot to show details of each system component, clearances between each other and from other equipment and construction in the room.
7. Details of each type of riser assembly, pipe hanger, and restraint of underground water main at point-of-entry into the building, and electrical devices and interconnecting wiring. The dimension from the edge of vertical piping to the nearest adjacent wall(s) must be indicated on the drawings when vertical piping is located in stairs or other portions of the means of egress.
8. Details of each type of pipe hanger and related components.
9. The calculated volume of each system.

1.4.1.2 Product Data

6 copies of annotated catalog data to show the specific model, type, and size of each item. Catalog cuts must also indicate the NRTL listing. The data must be highlighted to show model, size, options, and other pertinent information, that are intended for consideration. Data must be adequate to demonstrate compliance with all contract requirements. Product data for all equipment must be combined into a single submittal.

1.4.1.3 Hydraulic Calculations

Calculations must be as outlined in NFPA 13 except that calculations must be performed by computer using software intended specifically for fire protection system design using the design data shown on the drawings.

1.4.1.4 Operating and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions

Provide six manuals and one pdf version on electronic media. The manuals must include the manufacturer's name, model number, parts list, list of parts and tools that should be kept in stock by the owner for routine maintenance, simplified wiring and controls diagrams, troubleshooting guide, and recommended service organization (including address and telephone number) for each item of equipment. Each service organization submitted must be capable of providing 4-hour on-site response to a service call on an emergency basis.

Submit spare parts data for each different item of material and equipment specified. The data must include a complete list of parts and supplies, and a list of parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced after 1-year and 3 years of service. Include a list of special tools and test equipment required for maintenance and testing of the products supplied.

1.4.2 Qualifications

1.4.2.1 Sprinkler System Designer

The sprinkler system designer must be certified as a Level IV Technician by National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) in the Water-Based Systems Layout subfield of Fire Protection Engineering Technology in accordance with NICET 1014-7.

1.4.2.2 Sprinkler System Installer

The sprinkler system installer must be regularly engaged in the installation of the type and complexity of system specified in the contract documents, and must have served in a similar capacity for at least three systems that have performed in the manner intended for a period of not less than 6 months.

1.4.2.3 Nitrogen Generation System Commissioning Technician

Commissioning technician of nitrogen generation system(s) must have one of the following qualifications. Qualifications must be provided prior to preliminary inspection and tests.

- a. Commissioning of nitrogen generation system must be carried out by technician employed by and certified by the nitrogen generation system manufacturer.

- b. In lieu of manufacturer's commissioning technician, the fire sprinkler contractor must provide proof their commissioning technician has manufacturer's certified training for the equipment being installed and proof of at least five previous installations of manufacturer's equipment where the contractor's commissioning technician has successfully conducted commissioning under the direct supervision of the manufacturer's commissioning representative. Contractor must provide proof the five supervised commissioning occurred AFTER contractor's commissioning agent has obtained the certified training. Commissioning carried out prior to factory training, or without supervision of manufacturer's technician or commissioning of other manufacturer's equipment does not qualify as applicable experience. Conduct preliminary inspections and testing does not qualify as applicable experience.

1.4.3 Regulatory Requirements

Equipment and material must be listed or approved. Listed or approved, as used in this Section, means listed, labeled or approved by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) such as UL Fire Prot Dir or FM APP GUIDE. The omission of these terms under the description of an item of equipment described must not be construed as waiving this requirement. All listings or approvals by testing laboratories must be from an existing ANSI or UL published standard. The recommended practices stated in the manufacturer's literature or documentation are mandatory requirements.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect all equipment delivered and placed in storage from the weather, excessive humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. All pipes must be either capped or plugged until installed.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

Spare sprinklers and wrench(es) must be provided as spare parts in accordance with NFPA 13.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

2.1.1 Standard Products

Provide materials, equipment, and devices listed for fire protection service when so required by NFPA 13 or this specification. Select material from one manufacturer, where possible, and not a combination of manufacturers, for a particular classification of materials. Material and equipment must be the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products for at least 2 years prior to bid.

2.1.2 Nameplates

Major components of equipment must have the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, catalog number, date of installation, installing Contractor's name and address, and the contract number provided on a new name plate permanently affixed to the item or equipment. Nameplates must be etched metal or plastic, permanently

attached by screws to control units, panels or adjacent walls.

2.1.3 Identification and Marking

Pipe and fitting markings must include name or identifying symbol of manufacturer and nominal size. Pipe must be marked with ASTM designation. Valves and equipment markings must have name or identifying symbol of manufacturer, specific model number, nominal size, name of device, arrow indicating direction of flow, and position of installation (horizontal or vertical), except if valve can be installed in either position. Markings must be included on the body casting or on an etched or stamped metal nameplate permanently on the valve or cover plate.

2.1.4 Pressure Ratings

Valves, fittings, couplings, alarm switches, and similar devices must be rated for the maximum working pressures that can be experienced in the system, but in no case less than 175 psi.

2.2 ABOVEGROUND PIPING COMPONENTS

2.2.1 Steel Piping Components

2.2.1.1 Steel Pipe

Except as modified herein, steel pipe must be black as permitted by NFPA 13 and conform to the applicable provisions of ASTM A53/A53M, ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A153/A153M.

Steel pipe must be Schedule 40 only. Grooved pipe must be cut-grooved.

2.2.1.2 Fittings

Fittings must be welded, threaded, or grooved-end type. Threaded fittings must be cast-iron conforming to ASME B16.4, malleable-iron conforming to ASME B16.3 or ductile-iron conforming to ASTM A536. Plain-end fittings with mechanical couplings, fittings that use steel gripping devices to bite into the pipe, steel press fittings and field welded fittings are not permitted. Fittings, mechanical couplings, and rubber gaskets must be supplied by the same manufacturer. Threaded fittings must use Teflon tape or manufacturer's approved joint compound. Reducing couplings are not permitted except as allowed by NFPA 13.

2.2.1.3 Grooved Mechanical Joints and Fittings

Joints and fittings must be designed for not less than 175 psi service and the product of the same manufacturer. Field welded fittings must not be used. Fitting and coupling housing must be malleable-iron conforming to ASTM A47/A47M, Grade 32510; ductile-iron conforming to ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12. Rubber gasketed grooved-end pipe and fittings with mechanical couplings are permitted in pipe sizes 2 inches and larger. Gasket must be of silicon compound and listed for dry fire protection systems. Gasket must be the flush type that fills the entire cavity between the fitting and the pipe. Nuts and bolts must be heat-treated steel conforming to ASTM A183 and must be cadmium-plated or zinc-electroplated.

2.2.1.4 Flanges

Flanges must conform to NFPA 13 and ASME B16.1. Gaskets must be

non-asbestos compressed material in accordance with ASME B16.21, 1/16-inch thick, and full face or self-centering flat ring type.

2.2.2 Pipe Hangers and Supports

Provide galvanized pipe hangers and supports in accordance with NFPA 13..

2.2.3 Valves

Provide valves of types approved for fire service. Valves must open by counterclockwise rotation.

2.2.3.1 Control Valve

Manually operated sprinkler control/gate valve must be outside stem and yoke (OS&Y) type and must be listed.

2.2.3.2 Check Valves

Check valves must comply with UL 312. Check valves 4 inches and larger must be of the swing type, have a clear waterway and meet the requirements of MSS SP-71, for Type 3 or 4. Inspection plate must be provided on valves larger than 6 inches.

2.2.3.3 Hose Valve

Valve must comply with UL 668.

2.3 DRY PIPE VALVE ASSEMBLY

The dry pipe valve must be a listed, latching differential type be complete with trim piping, valves, fittings, pressure gauges, priming water fill cup, velocity drip check, drip cup, and other ancillary components as required for proper operation. The assembly must include a quick-opening device by the same manufacturer as the dry pipe valve for systems over 500 gallons in capacity and in all cases when needed to achieve the timed test requirements in part 3 of this specification section.

2.4 SUPERVISORY NITROGEN SYSTEM

Provide a nitrogen supply system in accordance with NFPA 13. The connection pipe from the nitrogen generator must not be less than 1/2-inch in diameter and must enter the system above the priming water level of the dry pipe valve. Install a check valve in the system supply nitrogen piping from the generator. A shutoff valve of the renewable disc type must be installed upstream of this check valve. The nitrogen supply system must be sized to pressurize the sprinkler system to 40 psi within 20 minutes.

2.4.1 Nitrogen Generation System

The nitrogen generation system (NGS) must be installed with a compressor sized appropriately for the application and capable of achieving system pressure within 30 minutes in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 13. The nitrogen generation system must be designed to achieve a nitrogen concentration of 98% or greater and maintain that concentration within the fire sprinkler system continuously. The output nitrogen quality must be confirmed by using a gas stream analyzer. Where multiple dry pipe

sprinkler risers are present, provide a manifold adjacent to the dry pipe sprinkler risers. Manifold system must include automatic vent and air maintenance devices for each sprinkler system riser. Nitrogen generation system requires a dedicated, hardwired 120V AC power supply.

2.4.1.1 Design of Nitrogen Generation System

Design the system so all equipment is installed within the confines of the riser room with the exception of a connection for a manual or automatic gas analyzer. Provide a system that is capable of delivering a minimum of 98 percent nitrogen composition throughout all of the system piping within 14 days from the commencement of the inerting process. Provide membrane type nitrogen generators that provide "instant on-instant off" nitrogen gas production without the need for nitrogen storage tanks. The complete nitrogen generator system must be self-contained and skid mounted with "drop-in" operability with a simple one step direct connection of the nitrogen gas supply line to each zone/riser. Provide an automatic "fill and purge" breathing process. This must be done while the sprinkler system is fully functional and must not alter the design performance of the sprinkler system. A process that involves continuous venting of the piping network is not permitted. Air maintenance devices used in conjunction with the nitrogen generation system must be listed for use on sprinkler systems. At the riser and at the end of each zone, provide a connection for a automatic gas analyzer.

2.4.1.2 Nitrogen Air Compressor

Air compressors to be used in conjunction with the nitrogen generator must be capable of the following:

- a. Capable of producing a continuous stream of compressed air at 100+ psig.
- b. Capable of automatic cut in and cut out.
- c. Equipped with an on-board after-cooler.
- d. Equipped with an on-board automatic water blow down system.
- e. Equipped with vibration dampening system.
- f. Equipped with an air storage tank to provide continuous delivery of compressed air to the nitrogen generator.
- g. Rated for continuous duty service.
- h. Compressors less than 3.0 hp must be an oil-less design.
- i. Oil-less compressors must be such that the manufacturer has designed the oil-less compressor to provide 5000 hours of continuous duty service before requiring a gasket and seal rebuild.

2.4.1.3 Nitrogen Venting Device

The functional component of the nitrogen venting device for use in the "fill and purge" breathing process must:

- a. Be NRTL listed for use on sprinkler systems.

- b. Not require plumbing to drain.
- c. Close automatically at the completion of the nitrogen inerting process without manual intervention.
- d. Be installed on each zone in the riser room.

2.4.1.4 Supervision of Nitrogen Generator

Nitrogen generator must be able to provide the following monitoring options:

- a. Power supply "on" for nitrogen generators.
- b. Power supply "on" for compressor.
- c. Amp draw for compressor.
- d. Line pressure (psig).
- e. Nitrogen purity at discharge (sample port for use with automatic gas analyzer).

2.4.2 Nitrogen Pressure Maintenance Device

Device must be a pressure regulator that automatically reduces supply air pressure to the minimum pressure required to be maintained in the piping system. The device must have a cast bronze body and valve housing complete with diaphragm assembly, spring, filter, ball check to prevent backflow, 1/16-inch restriction to prevent rapid pressurization of the system, and adjustment screw. The device must be capable of reducing maximum inlet pressure of 100 psi to a fixed outlet pressure adjustable to 10 psi.

2.5 ALARM INITIATING AND SUPERVISORY DEVICES

2.5.1 Sprinkler Alarm Switch

pressure-type flow switch(es). Connection of switch must be by the fire alarm installer.

2.5.2 High/Low-Nitrogen Pressure Supervisory Switch

Each dry pipe valve must be provided with a nitrogen pressure switch connected to the control unit. The pressure switch must supervise the nitrogen pressure in the system and set to activate at 10 psi above the dry pipe valve trip point pressure (low) and 10 psi above normal nitrogen pressure (high). The switch must have an adjustable range between 5 and 80 psi. The switch must have screw terminal connection and capable of being wired for normally open or normally closed circuit.

2.5.3 Valve Supervisory (Tamper) Switch

Switch must be integral to the control valve or suitable for mounting to the type of control valve to be supervised open. The switch must be tamper resistant and contain SPDT (Form C) contacts arranged to transfer upon removal of the housing cover or closure of the valve of more than two rotations of the valve stem.

2.6 SPRINKLERS

Sprinklers must comply with UL 199 and NFPA 13. Sprinklers with internal O-rings are not acceptable. Sprinklers in high heat areas including attic spaces or in close proximity to unit heaters must have temperature classification in accordance with NFPA 13. Extended coverage sprinklers are permitted for loading docks, residential occupancies and high-piled storage applications only.

2.6.1 Upright Sprinkler

Upright sprinkler must be brass with a nominal K-factor of 8.0.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

2.7.1 Pipe Escutcheon

Provide split hinge metal plates for piping entering walls, floors, and ceilings in exposed spaces. Provide polished stainless steel plates or chromium-plated finish on copper alloy plates in finished spaces. Provide paint finish on metal plates in unfinished spaces.

2.7.2 Sprinkler Guard

Listed guard must be a steel wire cage designed to encase the sprinkler and protect it from mechanical damage. Guards must be provided on sprinklers located within 7 feet of the floor.

2.7.3 Relief Valve

Relief valves must be listed and installed at their riser in accordance with NFPA 13.

2.7.4 Identification Sign

Valve identification sign must be minimum 6 inches wide by 2 inches high with enamel baked finish on minimum 18 gage steel or 0.024-inch aluminum with red letters on a white background or white letters on red background. Wording of sign must include, but not be limited to "main drain", "auxiliary drain", "inspector's test", "alarm test", "alarm line", and similar wording as required to identify operational components. Where there is more than one sprinkler system, signage must include specific details as to the respective system.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 VERIFYING ACTUAL FIELD CONDITIONS

Before commencing work, examine all adjoining work on which the contractor's work that is dependent for perfect workmanship according to the intent of this specification section, and report to the Contracting Officer's Representative a condition which prevents performance of first class work. No "waiver of responsibility" for incomplete, inadequate or defective adjoining work will be considered unless notice has been filed before submittal of a proposal.

3.2 INSTALLATION

The installation must be in accordance with the applicable provisions of

NFPA 13, NFPA 24 and publications referenced therein. Locate sprinklers in a consistent pattern with ceiling grid, lights, and air supply diffusers. Install sprinkler system over and under ducts, piping and platforms when such equipment can negatively affect or disrupt the sprinkler discharge pattern and coverage.

- a. Piping offsets, fittings, and other accessories required must be furnished to provide a complete installation and to eliminate interference with other construction.
- b. Wherever the contractor's work interconnects with work of other trades the Contractor must coordinate with other Contractors to insure all Contractors have the information necessary so that they may properly install all necessary connections and equipment. Identify all work items needing access (dampers and similar equipment) concealed above hung ceilings by permanent color coded pins/tabs in the ceiling directly below the item.
- c. Provide required supports and hangers for piping, conduit, and equipment so that loading will not exceed allowable loadings of structure. Submittal of a bid must be a deemed representation that the contractor submitting such bid has ascertained allowable loadings and has included in his estimates the costs associated in furnishing required supports.

3.2.1 Waste Removal

At the conclusion of each day's work, clean up and stockpile on site all waste, debris, and trash which may have accumulated during the day as a result of work by the contractor and of his presence on the job. Sidewalks and streets adjoining the property must be kept broom clean and free of waste, debris, trash and obstructions caused by work of the contractor, which will affect the condition and safety of streets, walks, utilities, and property.

3.3 ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSTALLATION

The methods of fabrication and installation of the aboveground piping must fully comply with the requirements and recommended practices of NFPA 13 and this specification section.

3.3.1 Protection of Piping Against Earthquake Damage

Seismic restraint is not required.

3.3.2 Piping in Exposed Areas

Install exposed piping without diminishing exit access widths, corridors or equipment access. Exposed horizontal piping, including drain piping, must be installed to provide maximum headroom.

3.3.3 Piping in Finished Areas

In areas with suspended or dropped ceilings and in areas with concealed spaces above the ceiling, piping must be concealed above ceilings. Piping must be inspected, hydrostatically tested and approved before being concealed. Risers and similar vertical runs of piping in finished areas must be concealed.

3.3.4 Upright Sprinklers

Riser nipples or "sprigs" to upright sprinklers must contain no fittings between the branch line tee and the reducing coupling at the sprinkler.

3.3.5 Pipe Joints

Pipe joints must conform to NFPA 13, except as modified herein. Not more than four threads must show after joint is made up. Welded joints will be permitted, only if welding operations are performed as required by NFPA 13 at the Contractor's fabrication shop, not at the project construction site. Flanged joints must be provided where indicated or required by NFPA 13. Grooved pipe and fittings must be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's latest published specification according to pipe material, wall thickness and size. Grooved couplings, fittings and grooving tools must be products of the same manufacturer. For copper tubing, pipe and groove dimensions must comply with the tolerances specified by the coupling manufacturer. The diameter of grooves made in the field must be measured using a "go/no-go" gauge, vernier or dial caliper, narrow-land micrometer, or other method specifically approved by the coupling manufacturer for the intended application. Groove width and dimension of groove from end of pipe must be measured and recorded for each change in grooving tool setup to verify compliance with coupling manufacturer's tolerances.

3.3.6 Reducers

Reductions in pipe sizes cannot be made with one-piece tapered reducing fittings. When standard fittings of the required size are not manufactured, single bushings of the face or hex type will be permitted. Where used, face bushings must be installed with the outer face flush with the face of the fitting opening being reduced. Bushings must not be used in elbow fittings, in more than one outlet of a tee, in more than two outlets of a cross, or where the reduction in size is less than 1/2-inch.

3.3.7 Pipe Penetrations

- a. Cutting structural members for passage of pipes or for pipe-hanger fastenings will not be permitted. Pipes that must penetrate concrete or masonry walls or concrete floors must be core-drilled and provided with pipe sleeves. Each sleeve must be Schedule 40 galvanized steel, ductile-iron or cast-iron pipe and extend through its respective wall or floor and be cut flush with each wall surface. Sleeves must provide required clearance between the pipe and the sleeve per NFPA 13. The space between the sleeve and the pipe must be firmly packed with mineral wool insulation.
- b. Where pipes and sleeves penetrate fire walls, fire partitions, or floors, pipes/sleeves must be firestopped in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.
- c. In penetrations that are not fire-rated or not a floor penetration, the space between the sleeve and the pipe must be sealed at both ends with plastic waterproof cement that will dry to a firm but pliable mass or with a mechanically adjustable segmented elastomer seal.

3.3.8 Escutcheons

Escutcheons must be provided for pipe penetration in finished areas of

ceilings, floors and walls. Escutcheons must be securely fastened to the pipe at surfaces through which piping passes.

3.3.9 Inspector's Test Connection

Unless otherwise indicated, the test connection must consist of 1-inch pipe connected to the remote branch line; a test valve located approximately 7 feet above the floor; a smooth bore brass outlet equivalent to the smallest orifice sprinkler used in the system; and a painted metal identification sign affixed to the valve with the words "Inspector's Test". All test connection piping must be inside of the building and penetrate the exterior wall at the location of the discharge orifice only. The discharge orifice must be located outside the building wall no more than 2 feet above finished grade, directed so as not to cause damage to adjacent construction or landscaping during full flow discharge, or to the sanitary sewer. Discharge to the exterior must not interfere with exiting from the facility. Water discharge or runoff must not cross the path of egress from the building. Do not discharge to the roof. Discharge to floor drains, janitor sinks or similar fixtures is not permitted.

Provide concrete splash blocks at all drain and inspector's test connection discharge locations if not discharging to a concrete surface. Splash blocks must be large enough to mitigate erosion and not become dislodged during a full flow of the drain. Ensure all discharged water drains away from the facility and does not cause property damage.

3.3.10 Drains

- a. Main drain piping must be provided to discharge at a safe point outside the building, no more than 2 feet above finished grade. Provide a concrete splash block at drain outlet. Discharge to the exterior must not interfere with exiting from the facility. Water discharge or runoff must not cross the path of egress from the building.
- b. Auxiliary drains must be provided as required by NFPA 13. Auxiliary drains are permitted to discharge to a floor drain if the drain is sized to accommodate full flow (min 40 gpm). Discharge to service sinks or similar plumbing fixtures is not permitted.

3.3.11 Identification Signs

Signs must be affixed to each control valve, inspector test valve, main drain, auxiliary drain, test valve, and similar valves as appropriate or as required by NFPA 13. Main drain test results must be etched into main drain identification sign. Hydraulic design data must be etched into the nameplates and permanently affixed to each sprinkler riser as specified in NFPA 13. Provide labeling on the surfaces of all feed and cross mains to show the pipe function (e.g., "Sprinkler System", "Fire Department Connection", "Standpipe") and normal valve position (e.g. "Normally Open", "Normally Closed"). For pipe sizes 4-inch and larger provide white painted stenciled letters and arrows, a minimum of 2 inches in height and visible from at least two sides when viewed from the floor. For pipe sizes less than 4-inch, provide white painted stenciled letters and arrows, a minimum of 0.75-inch in height and visible from the floor.

3.4 ELECTRICAL

Except as modified herein, electric equipment and wiring must be in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Alarm signal wiring connected to the building fire alarm control system must be by the fire alarm installer.

3.5 PAINTING

Color code mark piping red as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.6.1 Test Procedures

Submit detailed test procedures, prepared and signed by the NICET Level IV Fire Sprinkler Technician, and the representative of the installing company, and reviewed by the QFPE 60 days prior to performing system tests. Detailed test procedures must list all components of the installed system. Test procedures must include sequence of testing, time estimate for each test, and sample test data forms. The test data forms must be in a check-off format (pass/fail with space to add applicable test data; similar to the forms in NFPA 13.) The test procedures and accompanying test data forms must be used for the pre-Government testing and the Government final testing.

- a. Provide space to identify the date and time of each test. Provide space to identify the names and signatures of the individuals conducting and witnessing each test.

3.6.2 Pre-Government Testing

3.6.2.1 Verification of Compliant Installation

Conduct inspections and tests to ensure that equipment is functioning properly. Tests must meet the requirements of paragraph entitled "Minimum System Tests" and "System Acceptance" as noted in NFPA 13. The Contractor and QFPE must be in attendance at the pre-Government testing to make necessary adjustments. After inspection and testing is complete, provide a signed Verification of Compliant Installation letter by the QFPE that the installation is complete, compliant with the specification and fully operable. The letter must include the names and titles of the witnesses to the pre-Government tests. Provide all completion documentation as required by NFPA 13 and the test reports noted below.

- a. NFPA 13 Aboveground Material and Test Certificate

3.6.2.2 Request for Government Final Test

When the verification of compliant installation has been completed, submit a formal request for Government final test to the Designated Fire Protection Engineer (DFPE). Government final testing will not be scheduled until the DFPE has received copies of the request for Government final testing and Verification of Compliant Installation letter with all required reports. Government final testing will not be performed until after the connections to the building fire alarm system have been completed and tested to confirm communications are fully functional. Submit request for test at least 15 calendar days prior to the requested

test date.

3.6.3 Correction of Deficiencies

If equipment was found to be defective or non-compliant with contract requirements, perform corrective actions and repeat the tests. Tests must be conducted and repeated if necessary until the system has been demonstrated to comply with all contract requirements.

3.6.4 Government Final Tests

The tests must be performed in accordance with the approved test procedures in the presence of the DFPE. Furnish instruments and personnel required for the tests. The following must be provided at the job site for Government Final Testing:

- a. The manufacturer's technical representative.
- b. The contractor's Qualified Fire Protection Engineer (QFPE).
- c. Marked-up red line drawings of the system as actually installed.

Government Final Tests will be witnessed by the Designated Fire Protection Engineer, and the Qualified Fire Protection Engineer (QFPE). At this time, all required tests noted in the paragraph "Minimum System Tests" must be repeated at their discretion.

3.7 MINIMUM SYSTEM TESTS

The system, including the underground water mains, and the aboveground piping and system components, must be tested to ensure that equipment and components function as intended. The underground and aboveground interior piping systems and attached appurtenances subjected to system working pressure must be tested in accordance with NFPA 13 and NFPA 24.

3.7.1 Aboveground Piping

3.7.1.1 Hydrostatic Test

Aboveground piping must be hydrostatically tested in accordance with NFPA 13. There must be no drop in gauge pressure or visible leakage when the system is subjected to the hydrostatic test. The test pressure must be read from a gauge located at the low elevation point of the system or portion being tested.

3.7.1.2 Air Pressure Test

As specified in NFPA 13, an air pressure leakage test at 50 psi must be conducted for 24 hours. There must be no drop in gauge pressure in excess of 1.5 psi for the 24 hours. This air pressure test is in addition to the required hydrostatic test.

3.7.2 Dry Pipe Valve Trip Test

Each dry pipe valve must be trip-tested by reducing normal system nitrogen pressure through operation of the inspector's test connection. Systems equipped with quick-opening devices must first be tested without the operation of the quick-opening device and then with it in operation. Test results will be witnessed and recorded. Test results must include the

number of seconds elapsed between the time the test valve is opened and tripping of the dry valve; trip-point nitrogen pressure of the dry pipe valve; water pressure prior to valve tripping; and number of seconds elapsed between time the inspector's test valve is opened and water reaches the orifice. The delivery of water from the dry pipe valve to the system test connection must not exceed 60 seconds, regardless of system size. Water delivery times must be measured starting at the normal nitrogen pressure on the system.

3.7.3 Main Drain Flow Test

Following flushing of the underground piping, a main drain test must be made to verify the adequacy of the water supply. Static and residual pressures must be recorded on the certificate specified in paragraph SUBMITTALS.

3.7.4 Supervisory Nitrogen System Test

System supervisory nitrogen pressure must be reduced from the normal system pressure to the point at which a low-pressure alarm is sounded. Nitrogen pressure must be restored to verify trouble signal restoration. Automatic start/stop features of nitrogen generator must be tested.

3.8 SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE

Following acceptance of the system, as-built drawings and O&M manuals must be delivered to the Contracting Officer for review and acceptance. Submit six sets of detailed as-built drawings. The drawings must show the system as installed, including deviations from both the project drawings and the approved shop drawings. These drawings must be submitted within two weeks after the final acceptance test of the system. At least one set of as-built (marked-up) drawings must be provided at the time of, or prior to the final acceptance test.

- a. Provide one set of full size paper as-built drawings and schematics. The drawings must be prepared electronically and sized no less than the contract drawings. Furnish one set of CDs or DVDs containing software back-up and CAD based drawings in latest version of AutoCAD, DXF and portable document formats of as-built drawings and schematics.
- b. Provide operating and maintenance (O&M) instructions.

3.9 ONSITE TRAINING

Conduct a training course for the responding fire department and operating and maintenance personnel as designated by the Contracting Officer. Training must be performed on two separate days (to accommodate different shifts of Fire Department personnel) for a period of 4 hours of normal working time and must start after the system is functionally complete and after the final acceptance test. The on-site training must cover all of the items contained in the approved Operating and Maintenance Instructions.

Provide 14 day notice to base DPW for training. Schedule training for Tuesday, Wednesday or Thursday only.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 00 00

PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE

11/15, CHG 4: 05/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4 (2015; R 2020) Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems

ANSI Z124.1.2 (2005) Plastic Bathtub And Shower Units

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME A112.6.1M (1997; R 2017) Floor Affixed Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use

ASME A112.14.1 (2003; R 2017) Backwater Valves

ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 (2018) Plumbing Supply Fittings

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 (2018; ERTA 2018) Standard for Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures and Hydraulic Requirements for Water Closets and Urinals

ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 (2017; Errata 2017) Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures

ASME A112.36.2M (1991; R 2017) Cleanouts

ASME B1.20.1 (2013; R 2018) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)

ASME B16.5 (2020) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 Through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard

ASME B16.15 (2018) Cast Copper Alloy Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250

ASME B16.18 (2018) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings

ASME B16.21 (2016) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges

ASME B16.24 (2016) Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 150, 300, 600, 900, 1500, and 2500

ASME B31.5	(2020) Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components
ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments
ASME BPVC SEC IV	(2017) BPVC Section IV-Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers
ASME CSD-1	(2016) Control and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SANITARY ENGINEERING (ASSE)

ASSE 1010	(2004) Performance Requirements for Water Hammer Arresters (ANSI approved 2004)
ASSE 1016	(2017) Performance Requirements for Automatic Compensating Valves For Individual Showers And Tub/Shower Combinations
ASSE 1017	(2017) Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated Mixing Valves for Hot Water Distribution Systems - (ANSI approved 2010)
ASSE 1019	(2011; R 2016) Performance Requirements for Wall Hydrant with Backflow Protection and Freeze Resistance
ASSE 1037	(2015; R 2020) Performance Requirements for Pressurized Flushing Devices for Plumbing Fixtures
ASSE 1070	(2015) Performance Requirements for Water Temperature Limiting Devices

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA 10084	(2017) Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater
AWWA B300	(2018) Hypochlorites
AWWA B301	(2018) Liquid Chlorine
AWWA C651	(2014) Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains
AWWA C652	(2019) Disinfection of Water-Storage Facilities

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A74	(2021) Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
ASTM A105/A105M	(2021) Standard Specification for Carbon

Steel Forgings for Piping Applications

ASTM A193/A193M	(2020) Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service and Other Special Purpose Applications
ASTM A515/A515M	(2017) Standard Specification for Pressure Vessel Plates, Carbon Steel, for Intermediate- and Higher-Temperature Service
ASTM A516/A516M	(2017) Standard Specification for Pressure Vessel Plates, Carbon Steel, for Moderate- and Lower-Temperature Service
ASTM B32	(2020) Standard Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B42	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B88	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM B117	(2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B306	(2020) Standard Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)
ASTM B813	(2016) Standard Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
ASTM B828	(2016) Standard Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C1540	(2020) Standard Specification for Heavy-Duty Shielded Couplings Joining Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D2564	(2012) Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems
ASTM D2665	(2014) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D2855	(2015) Standard Practice for Making Solvent-Cemented Joints with Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D3139	(2019) Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes

Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals

ASTM D3212	(2020) Standard Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM D3311	(2017) Standard Specification for Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV) Plastic Fittings Patterns
ASTM E1	(2014) Standard Specification for ASTM Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers
ASTM F462	(2014) Consumer Safety Specification for Slip-Resistant Bathing Facilities
ASTM F446	(2019) Standard Consumer Safety Specification for Grab Bars and Accessories Installed in the Bathing Area
ASTM F477	(2014) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe
ASTM F1760	(2016; R 2020) Standard Specification for Coextruded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-Pressure Plastic Pipe Having Reprocessed-Recycled Content

COPPER DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION (CDA)

CDA A4015	(2016; 14/17) Copper Tube Handbook
-----------	------------------------------------

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC A117.1 COMM	(2017) Standard And Commentary Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
ICC IPC	(2021) International Plumbing Code

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-25	(2018) Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions
MSS SP-58	(2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation
MSS SP-80	(2019) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves
MSS SP-110	(2010) Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
(1000 Volts Maximum)

NEMA MG 1 (2016) Motors and Generators - Revision
1: 2018; Includes 2021 Updates to Parts
0, 1, 7, 12, 30, and 31

NEMA MG 11 (1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for
Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A (2021) Standard for the Installation of
Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

NSF INTERNATIONAL (NSF)

NSF 372 (2016) Drinking Water System Components -
Lead Content

NSF/ANSI 14 (2020) Plastics Piping System Components
and Related Materials

NSF/ANSI 61 (2020) Drinking Water System Components -
Health Effects

PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS ASSOCIATION (PPFA)

PPFA Fire Man (2016) Firestopping: Plastic Pipe in Fire
Resistive Construction

PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE INSTITUTE (PDI)

PDI WH 201 (2010) Water Hammer Arresters Standard

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)

SAE J1508 (2009) Hose Clamp Specifications

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)

PL 93-523 (1974; A 1999) Safe Drinking Water Act

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

10 CFR 430 Energy Conservation Program for Consumer
Products

40 CFR 141.80 National Primary Drinking Water
Regulations; Control of Lead and Copper;
General Requirements

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 174 (2004; Reprint Feb 2021) UL Standard for
Safety Household Electric Storage Tank
Water Heaters

UL 430	(2015; Reprint Sep 2021) UL Standard for Safety Waste Disposers
UL 499	(2014; Reprint Feb 2016) UL Standard for Safety Electric Heating Appliances
UL 1951	(2011; Reprint Jun 2020) UL Standard for Safety Electric Plumbing Accessories

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified elsewhere.

Section 23 05 48.00 40 VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Plumbing System; G

Detail drawings consisting of schedules, performance charts, instructions, diagrams, and other information to illustrate the requirements and operations of systems that are not covered by the Plumbing Code. Detail drawings for the complete plumbing system including piping layouts and locations of connections; dimensions for roughing-in, foundation, and support points; schematic diagrams and wiring diagrams or connection and interconnection diagrams. Detail drawings shall indicate clearances required for maintenance and operation. Where piping and equipment are to be supported other than as indicated, details shall include loadings and proposed support methods. Mechanical drawing plans, elevations, views, and details, shall be drawn to scale.

SD-03 Product Data

Backflow Prevention Assemblies; G

Fixtures

List of installed fixtures with manufacturer, model, and flow rate.

Flush Valve Water Closets;G

WaterSense Label for Flush Valve Water Closet; S

Flush Valve Urinals;G
WaterSense Label for Urinal; S
Wall Hung Lavatories;G
Countertop Lavatories;G
Mop Sinks;G
Electric Water Coolers; G
Label for Electric Water Cooler; S
Plastic Shower Stalls;G
WaterSense Label for Showerhead; S
Water Heaters; G
Pumps; G
Plumbing System

Diagrams, instructions, and other sheets proposed for posting.
Manufacturer's recommendations for the installation of bell and
spigot and hubless joints for cast iron soil pipe.

SD-06 Test Reports

Tests, Flushing and Disinfection

Test reports in booklet form showing all field tests performed to adjust each component and all field tests performed to prove compliance with the specified performance criteria, completion and testing of the installed system. Each test report shall indicate the final position of controls.

Test of Backflow Prevention Assemblies; G.

Certification of proper operation shall be as accomplished in accordance with state regulations by an individual certified by the state to perform such tests. If no state requirement exists, the Contractor shall have the manufacturer's representative test the device, to ensure the unit is properly installed and performing as intended. The Contractor shall provide written documentation of the tests performed and signed by the individual performing the tests.

SD-07 Certificates

Materials and Equipment

Where equipment is specified to conform to requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, the design, fabrication, and installation shall conform to the code.

Bolts

Written certification by the bolt manufacturer that the bolts furnished comply with the specified requirements.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Plumbing System; G

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.4 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Specified materials and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products. Specified equipment shall essentially duplicate equipment that has performed satisfactorily at least two years prior to bid opening. Standard products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2 year period.

1.4.1 Service Support

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. These service organizations shall be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.4.2 Manufacturer's Nameplate

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

1.4.3 Modification of References

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction", or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.4.3.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions shall be considered mandatory, the word "should" shall be interpreted as "shall." Reference to the "code official" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For Navy owned property, references to the "owner" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" shall be interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contractor."

1.4.3.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project. References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, shall be applied appropriately by the Contracting Officer as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, store, and protect equipment and materials to prevent damage before and during installation in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Replace damaged or defective items.

1.6 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

Unless otherwise required herein, plumbing work shall be in accordance with ICC IPC.

1.8 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

The Contractor shall become familiar with details of the work, verify dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.9 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

When specified in other sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the specified equipment or system. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and shall be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work.

Instruction shall be given during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished shall be as specified in the individual section. When more than 4 man-days of instruction are specified, use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction. Use other time for instruction with the equipment or system.

When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instruction to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

1.10 ACCESSIBILITY OF EQUIPMENT

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Materials for various services shall be in accordance with TABLES I and II. Pipe schedules shall be selected based on service requirements. Pipe fittings shall be compatible with the applicable pipe materials. Plastic pipe, fittings, and solvent cement shall meet NSF/ANSI 14 and shall be NSF listed for the service intended. Pipe threads (except dry seal) shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Material or equipment containing a weighted average of greater than 0.25 percent lead shall not be used in any potable water system intended for human consumption, and shall be certified in accordance with NSF/ANSI 61, Annex G or NSF 372. In line devices such as water meters, building valves, check valves, meter stops, valves, fittings and back flow preventers shall comply with PL 93-523 and NSF/ANSI 61, Section 8. End point devices such as drinking water fountains, lavatory faucets, kitchen and faucets, ice makers, supply stops and end point control valves used to dispense water for drinking must meet the requirements of NSF/ANSI 61, Section 9.

2.1.1 Pipe Joint Materials

Hubless cast-iron soil pipe shall not be used underground. Solder containing lead shall not be used with copper pipe. Cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Institute. Joints and gasket materials shall conform to the following:

Solder containing lead shall not be used with copper pipe.

- a. Flange Gaskets: Gaskets shall be made of non-asbestos material in accordance with ASME B16.21. Gaskets shall be flat, 1/16 inch thick, and contain Aramid fibers bonded with Styrene Butadiene Rubber (SBR) or Nitro Butadiene Rubber (NBR). Gaskets shall be the full face or self centering flat ring type. Gaskets used for hydrocarbon service shall be bonded with NBR.
- b. Solder Material: Solder metal shall conform to ASTM B32.
- c. Solder Flux: Flux shall be liquid form, non-corrosive, and conform to ASTM B813, Standard Test 1.
- d. PTFE Tape: PTFE Tape, for use with Threaded Metal or Plastic Pipe.
- e. Flexible Elastomeric Seals: ASTM D3139, ASTM D3212 or ASTM F477.
- f. Plastic Solvent Cement for PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D2564 and ASTM D2855.
- g. Flanged fittings including, but not limited to, flanges, bolts, nuts and bolt patterns shall be in accordance with ASME B16.5 class 150 and shall have the manufacturer's trademark affixed in accordance with MSS SP-25. Flange material shall conform to ASTM A105/A105M. Blind flange material shall conform to ASTM A516/A516M cold service and ASTM A515/A515M for hot service. Bolts shall be high strength or intermediate strength with material conforming to ASTM A193/A193M.
- h. Copper tubing shall conform to ASTM B88, Type L and K.

2.1.2 Miscellaneous Materials

Miscellaneous materials shall conform to the following:

- a. Water Hammer Arrestor: PDI WH 201. Water hammer arrester shall be diaphragm or piston type.
- b. Hose Clamps: SAE J1508.
- c. Supports for Off-The-Floor Plumbing Fixtures: ASME A112.6.1M.
- d. Metallic Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M.
- e. Plumbing Fixture Setting Compound: A preformed flexible ring seal molded from hydrocarbon wax material. The seal material shall be nonvolatile nonasphaltic and contain germicide and provide watertight, gastight, odorproof and verminproof properties.
- f. Hypochlorites: AWWA B300.
- g. Liquid Chlorine: AWWA B301.
- h. Gauges - Pressure and Vacuum Indicating Dial Type - Elastic Element: ASME B40.100.
- i. Thermometers: ASTM E1. Mercury shall not be used in thermometers.

2.1.3 Pipe Insulation Material

Insulation shall be as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

2.2 PIPE HANGERS, INSERTS, AND SUPPORTS

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58.

2.3 VALVES

Valves shall be provided on supplies to equipment and fixtures. Valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall be bronze with threaded bodies for pipe and solder-type connections for tubing. Pressure ratings shall be based upon the application. Valves shall conform to the following standards:

Description	Standard
Bronze Ball Valves Threaded and Solder Joint Ends	MSS SP-110
Bronze Angle, and Check Valves	MSS SP-80
Backwater Valves	ASME A112.14.1

Vacuum Relief Valves	ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4
Water Heater Drain Valves	ASME BPVC SEC IV, Part HLW-810: Requirements for Potable-Water Heaters Bottom Drain Valve
Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems	ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4
Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves for Automatically Fired Hot Water Boilers	ASME CSD-1 Safety Code No., Part CW, Article 5

2.3.1 Backwater Valves

Valves shall have cast-iron bodies with cleanouts large enough to permit removal of interior parts. Valves shall be of the flap type, hinged or pivoted, with revolving disks. Hinge pivots, disks, and seats shall be nonferrous metal. Disks shall be slightly open in a no-flow no-backwater condition. Cleanouts shall extend to finished floor and be fitted with threaded countersunk plugs.

2.3.2 Wall Hydrants (Frostproof)

ASSE 1019 with vacuum-breaker backflow preventer shall have a nickel-bronze wall plate or flange with nozzle and detachable key handle. A brass or bronze operating rod shall be provided within a galvanized iron casing of sufficient length to extend through the wall so that the valve is inside the building, and the portion of the hydrant between the outlet and valve is self-draining. A brass or bronze valve with coupling and union elbow having metal-to-metal seat shall be provided. Valve rod and seat washer shall be removable through the face of the hydrant. The hydrant shall have 3/4 inch exposed hose thread on spout and 3/4 inch male pipe thread on inlet.

2.3.3 Relief Valves

Water heaters and hot water storage tanks shall have a combination pressure and temperature (P&T) relief valve. The pressure relief element of a P&T relief valve shall have adequate capacity to prevent excessive pressure buildup in the system when the system is operating at the maximum rate of heat input. The temperature element of a P&T relief valve shall have a relieving capacity which is at least equal to the total input of the heaters when operating at their maximum capacity. Relief valves shall be rated according to ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Relief valves for systems where the maximum rate of heat input is less than 200,000 Btuh shall have 3/4 inch minimum inlets, and 3/4 inch outlets. The discharge pipe from the relief valve shall be the size of the valve outlet.

2.3.4 Thermostatic Mixing Valves

- a. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valve at Water Heater (MV-1):

- (1) Standard: ASSE 1017.
 - (2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - (3) Type: Exposed-mounted, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
 - (4) Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
 - (5) Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
 - (6) Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
 - (7) Valve Finish: Rough bronze.
 - (8) Piping Finish: Copper.
 - (9) Tempered Water Setting: 130 deg F.
- b. Individual-Fixture, Mixing Valves for Faucets (P-3, P-3A, P-4 and P-4B):
- (1) Standard: ASSE 1070, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
 - (2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - (3) Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
 - (4) Temperature Control: Adjustable.
 - (5) Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
 - (6) Finish: Chrome-plated bronze.
 - (7) Mixing valve to be part of faucet package.

2.4 FIXTURES

Fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall be in accordance with ICC A117.1 COMM nonabsorbent, hard-burned, and vitrified throughout the body shall be provided. Porcelain enameled ware shall have specially selected, clear white, acid-resisting enamel coating evenly applied on surfaces. No fixture will be accepted that shows cracks, crazes, blisters, thin spots, or other flaws. Fixtures shall be equipped with appurtenances such as traps, faucets, stop valves, and drain fittings. Each fixture and piece of equipment requiring connections to the drainage system shall be equipped with a trap. Brass expansion or toggle bolts capped with acorn nuts shall be provided for supports, and polished chromium-plated pipe, valves, and fittings shall be provided where exposed to view. Fixtures with the supply discharge below the rim shall be equipped with backflow preventers. Internal parts of flush valves and flushometer valves, shower mixing valves, shower head face plates, pop-up stoppers of lavatory waste drains, shall be copper alloy with all visible surfaces chrome plated.

2.4.1 Automatic Controls

Provide automatic, sensor operated faucets and flush valves to comply with ASSE 1037 and UL 1951 for lavatory faucets, urinals, and water closets. Flushing and faucet systems shall consist of solenoid-activated valves with light beam sensors. Flush valve for water closet shall include an override pushbutton. Flushing devices shall be provided as described in paragraph FIXTURES AND FIXTURE TRIMMINGS.

2.4.2 Flush Valve Water Closets (P-1 and P-1A)

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, white vitreous china, siphon jet, elongated bowl, floor-mounted, floor outlet. Top of toilet seat height above floor shall be 14 to 15 inches, except 17 to 19 inches for wheelchair water closets. Provide wax bowl ring including plastic sleeve. Provide white solid plastic elongated open-front seat.

Water flushing volume of the water closet and flush valve combination shall not exceed 1.28 gallons per flush. Water closets must meet the EPA WaterSense product definition specified in http://www.epa.gov/watersense/partners/product_program_specs.html and must be EPA WaterSense labeled products. Provide data identifying WaterSense label for flush valve water closet.

Provide large diameter flush valve including angle control-stop valve, vacuum breaker, tail pieces, slip nuts, and wall plates; exposed to view components shall be chromium-plated. Flush valves shall be nonhold-open type. Mount flush valves not less than 11 inches above the fixture. Mounted height of flush valve shall not interfere with the hand rail in ADA stalls. Provide solenoid-activated flush valves including electrical-operated light-beam-sensor to energize the solenoid.

Flush valve sensor to be wall mounted, recessed with multi-use electrical hard wired transformer.

2.4.3 Flush Valve Urinals (P-2)

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, white vitreous china, wall-mounted, wall outlet, siphon jet, integral trap, and extended side shields. Provide urinal with the rim 17 inches above the floor. Water flushing volume of the urinal and flush valve combination shall not exceed 0.125 gallons per flush. Urinals must meet the specifications of http://www.epa.gov/watersense/partners/product_program_specs.html and must be EPA WaterSense labeled products. Provide data identifying WaterSense label for urinal. Provide ASME A112.6.1M concealed chair carriers with vertical steel pipe supports. Provide large diameter flush valve including angle control-stop valve, vacuum breaker, tail pieces, slip nuts, and wall plates; exposed to view components shall be chromium-plated.

Provide solenoid-activated flush valve with electrically operated light-beam-sensor to energize the solenoid. Flush valve sensor to be wall mounted, recessed with multi-use electrical hard wired transformer.

2.4.4 Wall Hung Lavatories (P-3A)

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, white vitreous china, straight back type, minimum dimensions of 19 inches, wide by 17 inches front to rear, with supply openings for use with top mounted centerset faucets, and openings for concealed arm carrier installation. Provide aerator with faucet. Provide lavatory faucets and accessories meeting the flow rate and product

requirements of the paragraph LAVATORIES. Provide ASME A112.6.1M concealed chair carriers with vertical steel pipe supports and concealed arms for the lavatory. Mount lavatory with the front rim 34 inches above floor and with 29 inches minimum clearance from bottom of the front rim to floor. Provide top-mounted solenoid-activated lavatory faucets including electrical-operated light-beam-sensor to energize the solenoid. Provide individual ASSE 1070 mixing valve to supply single (90%) tempered water connection to sensor faucet.

2.4.5 Countertop Lavatories (P-3)

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, white vitreous china, self-rimming, minimum dimensions of 19 inches wide by 17 inches front to rear, with supply openings for use with top mounted centerset faucets. Furnish template and mounting kit by lavatory manufacturer. Provide aerator with faucet. Provide lavatory faucets and accessories meeting the flow rate and product requirements of the paragraph LAVATORIES. Mount counter with the top surface 34 inches above floor and with 29 inches minimum clearance from bottom of the counter face to floor. Provide top-mounted solenoid-activated lavatory faucets including electrical-operated light-beam-sensor to energize the solenoid. Provide individual ASSE 1070 mixing valve to supply single (90%) tempered water connection to sensor faucet.

2.4.6 Kitchenette Sinks (P-4)

ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 18 gage stainless steel under counter mounted with integral mounting clips for installation, minimum dimensions of 21 inches wide by 16 inches front to rear, with undersides fully sound deadened, with supply openings for use with top mounted washerless sink faucets with hose spray, and with 3.5 inch drain outlet. Water flow rate shall not exceed 1.5 gpm when measured at a flowing water pressure of 60 psi. Provide stainless steel drain outlets and stainless strainers. Provide .5 horsepower, UL 430 waste disposer. Provide top mounted sink faucet, three hole deck mount with single lever side valve and side sprayer. Swing gooseneck spout 8 inches center to center.

2.4.7 Mothers Room Sink (P-4A)

Sink bowl to be integral with countertop, specified by Architect. Provide with top mounted washerless sink faucets with hose spray, and with 3.5 inch drain outlet. Water flow rate shall not exceed 2.2 gpm when measured at a flowing water pressure of 60 psi. Provide stainless steel drain outlets and stainless strainers. Provide top mounted sink faucet, three hole deck mount with single lever side valve and side sprayer. Swing gooseneck spout 8 inches center to center.

2.4.8 Precast Terrazzo Mop Sinks (P-5)

Terrazzo shall be made of marble chips cast in white portland cement to produce 3000 psi minimum compressive strength 7 days after casting. Provide floor outlet copper alloy body drain cast integral with terrazzo, with polished stainless steel strainers. 24 inches by 24 inches by 10 inches high. Provide chrome plated back wall mounted faucet with lever handles, atmospheric vacuum breaker, spout with pail hook, wall brace and 3/4" male threaded outlet. Straight inlet supply arms 8 inches on center.

2.4.9 Electric Water Coolers With Integral Bottle Filler (P-6)

AHRI 1010, provide with dual height wall-mounted bubbler style with ASME A112.6.1M concealed chair carrier, air-cooled condensing unit, 8 gph minimum capacity, water filter, stainless steel oval shaded splash receptor, and all stainless steel cabinet, with 27 inch minimum knee clearance from front bottom of unit to floor and 36 inch maximum spout height above floor and bottle filler. Bubblers shall also be controlled by touch pads one on each front of both the cabinets. Bottle filler shall include electronic sensor for no touch activation with automatic 20 second shut-off timer. Bottle filler flow rate to be 1.5 gpm with a laminar flow.

Provide electric water cooler that is Energy Star labeled. Provide data identifying Energy Star label for electric water cooler.

2.4.10 Plastic Shower Stalls (P-7)

- (1) General: PMMA shower enclosure with faucet and receptor and appurtenances.
- (2) Standard: ANSI Z124.1.2.
- (3) Type: One-piece unit with top.
- (4) Style: ABA, barrier free, commercial.
- (6) Nominal Size and Shape: 40 by 36 inches square.
- (7) Color: White.
- (8) Bathing Surface: Slip resistant according to ASTM F462.
- (9) Outlet: Shower drain NPS 2 outlet.
- (10) Shower Rod and Curtain: Required.
- (11) Grab Bar: ASTM F446.
- (12) Seat: Fold up type.
- (13) Description: Single-handle, thermostatic mixing valve with hot- and cold-water indicators; check stops; and hand held detachable shower head.
- (14) Faucet:
 - (a) Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and ASSE 1016.
 - (b) Body Material: Solid brass.
 - (c) Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 - (d) Maximum Flow Rate: 1.5 gpm.
 - (e) Mounting: Concealed.
 - (f) Operation: Single-handle, rotate control.
 - (g) Antiscald Device: Integral with mixing valve.
 - (h) Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.
- (15) Shower Head:

- (a) Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1
- (b) Type: Hand held shower system with on/off control, metal hose, and 32 inch glide rail.
- (c) Shower Head Material: Metallic with chrome-plated finish.
- (d) Spray Pattern: Fixed.
- (e) Integral Volume Control: Not required.
- (f) Shower-Arm, Flow-Control Fitting: Not required.
- (g) Temperature Indicator: Integral with faucet.
- (h) Provide WaterSense labeled showerhead with a maximum flow rate of (1.5 gpm). Provide data identifying WaterSense label for showerhead.

2.4.11 Precast Terrazzo Mop Sinks

Terrazzo shall be made of marble chips cast in white portland cement to produce 3000 psi minimum compressive strength 7 days after casting. Provide floor or wall outlet copper alloy body drain cast integral with terrazzo, with polished stainless steel strainers.

2.5 TRAPS

Unless otherwise specified, traps shall be copper-alloy adjustable tube type with slip joint inlet and swivel. Traps shall be without a cleanout. Tubes shall be copper alloy with walls not less than 0.032 inch thick within commercial tolerances, except on the outside of bends where the thickness may be reduced slightly in manufacture by usual commercial methods. Inlets shall have rubber washer and copper alloy nuts for slip joints above the discharge level. Swivel joints shall be below the discharge level and shall be of metal-to-metal type as required for the application. Nuts shall have flats for wrench grip. Outlets shall have internal pipe thread, except that when required for the application, the outlets shall have sockets for solder-joint connections. The depth of the water seal shall be not less than 2 inches. The interior diameter shall be not more than 1/8 inch over or under the nominal size, and interior surfaces shall be reasonably smooth throughout. A copper alloy "P" trap assembly consisting of an adjustable "P" trap and threaded trap wall nipple with cast brass wall flange shall be provided for lavatories. The assembly shall be a standard manufactured unit and may have a rubber-gasketed swivel joint.

2.5.1 Deep Seal Traps

Provide deep seal traps for all floor drains and shower drains. Minimum 5-inch water seal.

2.6 WATER HEATERS

Water heater types and capacities shall be as indicated. Each water heater shall have replaceable anodes. Each primary water heater shall have controls with an adjustable range that includes 90 to 160 degrees F. Hot water systems utilizing recirculation systems shall be tied into building off-hour controls. The thermal efficiencies and standby heat losses shall conform to TABLE III in PART 3 of this Section for each type of water heater specified. A factory pre-charged expansion tank shall be installed on the cold water supply to each water heater. Expansion tanks shall be specifically designed for use on potable water systems and shall be rated for 200 degrees F water temperature and 150 psi working pressure. The expansion tank size and acceptance volume shall be as indicated.

2.6.1 Automatic Storage Type

2.6.1.1 Electric Type

Electric type water heaters shall conform to UL 174.

2.6.2 Electric Instantaneous Water Heaters (Tankless)

UL 499 and UL listed flow switch activated, tankless electric instantaneous water heater for wall mounting below sink or lavatory.

2.7 PUMPS

2.7.1 Circulating Pumps

Domestic hot water circulating pumps shall be electrically driven, single-stage, centrifugal, with mechanical seals, suitable for the intended service. Pump and motor shall be supported by the piping on which it is installed. The shaft shall be one-piece, heat-treated, corrosion-resisting steel with impeller and smooth-surfaced housing of bronze. Provide with Aqua-Stat and timer pump controls.

Motor shall be totally enclosed, fan-cooled and shall have sufficient horsepower for the service required. Each pump motor shall be equipped with an across-the-line magnetic controller in a NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure with "START-STOP" switch in cover.

Integral size motors shall be premium efficiency type in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Pump motors smaller than 1 hp Fractional horsepower pump motors shall have integral thermal overload protection in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Guards shall shield exposed moving parts.

2.8 DOMESTIC WATER SERVICE METER

Water metering inside the building for energy consumption management. Water meters for incoming water service will be disc type meters, AWWA C700, NSF/ANSI 61 and 372. Meter housing construction, lead free bronze alloy. Meter to have encoder for data output to interface with the building DDC system. Meter to have integral strainer on inlet side connection.

2.9 ELECTRICAL WORK

Provide electrical motor driven equipment specified complete with motors, motor starters, and controls as specified herein and in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Provide high efficiency type, single-phase, fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors, including motors that are part of a system, corresponding to the applications in accordance with NEMA MG 11. Provide motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1 and of sufficient size to drive the load at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor.

Motors shall be rated for continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Motor duty requirements shall allow for maximum frequency start-stop operation and minimum encountered interval between start and stop. Motor torque shall be capable of accelerating the connected load within 20

seconds with 80 percent of the rated voltage maintained at motor terminals during one starting period. Motor bearings shall be fitted with grease supply fittings and grease relief to outside of the enclosure.

Controllers and contactors shall have auxiliary contacts for use with the controls provided. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and any control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown, shall be provided. For packaged equipment, the manufacturer shall provide controllers, including the required monitors and timed restart.

Power wiring and conduit for field installed equipment shall be provided under and conform to the requirements of Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS PIPING ITEMS

2.10.1 Escutcheon Plates

Provide one piece or split hinge metal plates for piping entering floors, walls, and ceilings in exposed spaces. Provide chromium-plated on copper alloy plates or polished stainless steel finish in finished spaces. Provide paint finish on plates in unfinished spaces.

2.10.2 Pipe Sleeves

Provide where piping passes entirely through walls, ceilings, roofs, and floors. Sleeves are not required where drain, waste, and vent (DWV) piping passes through concrete floor slabs located on grade, except where penetrating a membrane waterproof floor.

2.10.2.1 Sleeves in Masonry and Concrete

Provide steel pipe sleeves or schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe sleeves. Sleeves are not required where drain, waste, and vent (DWV) piping passes through concrete floor slabs located on grade. Core drilling of masonry and concrete may be provided in lieu of pipe sleeves when cavities in the core-drilled hole are completely grouted smooth.

2.10.2.2 Sleeves Not in Masonry and Concrete

Provide 26 gage galvanized steel sheet or PVC plastic pipe sleeves.

2.10.3 Pipe Hangers (Supports)

Provide MSS SP-58 Type 1 with adjustable type steel support rods, except as specified or indicated otherwise. Attach to steel joists with Type 19 or 23 clamps and retaining straps. Attach to Steel W or S beams with Type 21, 28, 29, or 30 clamps. Attach to steel angles and vertical web steel channels with Type 20 clamp with beam clamp channel adapter. Attach to horizontal web steel channel and wood with drilled hole on centerline and double nut and washer. Attach to concrete with Type 18 insert or drilled expansion anchor. Provide Type 40 insulation protection shield for insulated piping.

2.10.4 Nameplates

Provide 0.125 inch thick melamine laminated plastic nameplates, black matte finish with white center core, for equipment, gages, thermometers,

and valves; valves in supplies to faucets will not require nameplates. Accurately align lettering and engrave minimum of 0.25 inch high normal block lettering into the white core. Minimum size of nameplates shall be 1.0 by 2.5 inches. Key nameplates to a chart and schedule for each system. Frame charts and schedules under glass and place where directed near each system. Furnish two copies of each chart and schedule.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Piping located in air plenums shall conform to NFPA 90A requirements. Piping located in shafts that constitute air ducts or that enclose air ducts shall be noncombustible in accordance with NFPA 90A. Installation of plastic pipe where in compliance with NFPA may be installed in accordance with PPFA Fire Man. The plumbing system shall be installed complete with necessary fixtures, fittings, traps, valves, and accessories. Water and drainage piping shall be extended 5 feet outside the building, unless otherwise indicated. A full port ball valve and drain shall be installed on the water service line inside the building approximately 6 inches above the floor from point of entry. Piping shall be connected to the exterior service lines or capped or plugged if the exterior service is not in place. Sewer and water pipes shall be laid in separate trenches, except when otherwise shown. Exterior underground utilities shall be at least 12 inches below the average local frost depth or as indicated on the drawings. If trenches are closed or the pipes are otherwise covered before being connected to the service lines, the location of the end of each plumbing utility shall be marked with a stake or other acceptable means. Valves shall be installed with control no lower than the valve body.

3.1.1 Water Pipe, Fittings, and Connections

3.1.1.1 Utilities

The piping shall be extended to fixtures, outlets, and equipment. The hot-water and cold-water piping system shall be arranged and installed to permit draining. The supply line to each item of equipment or fixture, except faucets, flush valves, or other control valves which are supplied with integral stops, shall be equipped with a shutoff valve to enable isolation of the item for repair and maintenance without interfering with operation of other equipment or fixtures. Supply piping to fixtures, faucets, hydrants, shower heads, and flushing devices shall be anchored to prevent movement.

3.1.1.2 Cutting and Repairing

The work shall be carefully laid out in advance, and unnecessary cutting of construction shall be avoided. Damage to building, piping, wiring, or equipment as a result of cutting shall be repaired by mechanics skilled in the trade involved.

3.1.1.3 Protection of Fixtures, Materials, and Equipment

Pipe openings shall be closed with caps or plugs during installation. Fixtures and equipment shall be tightly covered and protected against dirt, water, chemicals, and mechanical injury. Upon completion of the work, the fixtures, materials, and equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned, adjusted, and operated. Safety guards shall be provided for exposed

rotating equipment.

3.1.1.4 Mains, Branches, and Runouts

Piping shall be installed as indicated. Pipe shall be accurately cut and worked into place without springing or forcing. Structural portions of the building shall not be weakened. Aboveground piping shall run parallel with the lines of the building, unless otherwise indicated. Branch pipes from service lines may be taken from top, bottom, or side of main, using crossover fittings required by structural or installation conditions. Supply pipes, valves, and fittings shall be kept a sufficient distance from other work and other services to permit not less than 1/2 inch between finished covering on the different services. Bare and insulated water lines shall not bear directly against building structural elements so as to transmit sound to the structure or to prevent flexible movement of the lines. Water pipe shall not be buried in or under floors unless specifically indicated or approved. Changes in pipe sizes shall be made with reducing fittings. Use of bushings will not be permitted except for use in situations in which standard factory fabricated components are furnished to accommodate specific accepted installation practice. Change in direction shall be made with fittings, except that bending of pipe 4 inches and smaller will be permitted, provided a pipe bender is used and wide sweep bends are formed. The center-line radius of bends shall be not less than six diameters of the pipe. Bent pipe showing kinks, wrinkles, flattening, or other malformations will not be acceptable.

3.1.1.5 Pipe Drains

Pipe drains indicated shall consist of 3/4 inch hose bibb with renewable seat and full port ball valve ahead of hose bibb. At other low points, 3/4 inch brass plugs or caps shall be provided. Disconnection of the supply piping at the fixture is an acceptable drain.

3.1.1.6 Expansion and Contraction of Piping

Allowance shall be made throughout for expansion and contraction of water pipe. Each hot-water and hot-water circulation riser shall have expansion loops or other provisions such as offsets and changes in direction where indicated and required. Risers shall be securely anchored as required or where indicated to force expansion to loops. Branch connections from risers shall be made with ample swing or offset to avoid undue strain on fittings or short pipe lengths. Horizontal runs of pipe over 50 feet in length shall be anchored to the wall or the supporting construction about midway on the run to force expansion, evenly divided, toward the ends. Sufficient flexibility shall be provided on branch runouts from mains and risers to provide for expansion and contraction of piping. Flexibility shall be provided by installing one or more turns in the line so that piping will spring enough to allow for expansion without straining. If mechanical grooved pipe coupling systems are provided, the deviation from design requirements for expansion and contraction may be allowed pending approval of Contracting Officer.

3.1.1.7 Commercial-Type Water Hammer Arresters

Commercial-type water hammer arresters shall be provided on hot- and cold-water supplies and shall be located as generally indicated, with precise location and sizing to be in accordance with PDI WH 201. Water hammer arresters, where concealed, shall be accessible by means of access doors or removable panels. Commercial-type water hammer arresters shall

conform to ASSE 1010. Vertical capped pipe columns will not be permitted.

3.1.2 Joints

Installation of pipe and fittings shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Mitering of joints for elbows and notching of straight runs of pipe for tees will not be permitted. Joints shall be made up with fittings of compatible material and made for the specific purpose intended.

3.1.2.1 Threaded

Threaded joints shall have American Standard taper pipe threads conforming to ASME B1.20.1. Only male pipe threads shall be coated with graphite or with an approved graphite compound, or with an inert filler and oil, or shall have a polytetrafluoroethylene tape applied.

3.1.2.2 Unions and Flanges

Unions, flanges and mechanical couplings shall not be concealed in walls, ceilings, or partitions. Unions shall be used on pipe sizes 2-1/2 inches and smaller; flanges shall be used on pipe sizes 3 inches and larger.

3.1.2.3 Cast Iron Soil, Waste and Vent Pipe

Hubless gasketed clamp joints for soil, waste and vent piping shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.1.2.4 Copper Tube and Pipe

- a. Soldered. Soldered joints shall be made with flux and are only acceptable for piping 2 inches and smaller. Soldered joints shall conform to ASME B31.5 and CDA A4015. Soldered joints shall not be used in compressed air piping between the air compressor and the receiver.

3.1.2.5 Plastic Pipe

PVC pipe shall have joints made with solvent cement elastomeric.

3.1.2.6 Other Joint Methods

3.1.3 Dissimilar Pipe Materials

Connections between ferrous and non-ferrous copper water pipe shall be made with dielectric unions or flange waterways. Dielectric waterways shall have temperature and pressure rating equal to or greater than that specified for the connecting piping. Waterways shall have metal connections on both ends suited to match connecting piping. Dielectric waterways shall be internally lined with an insulator specifically designed to prevent current flow between dissimilar metals. Dielectric flanges shall meet the performance requirements described herein for dielectric waterways. Connecting joints between plastic and metallic pipe shall be made with transition fitting for the specific purpose.

3.1.4 Pipe Sleeves and Flashing

Pipe sleeves shall be furnished and set in their proper and permanent location.

3.1.4.1 Sleeve Requirements

Unless indicated otherwise, provide pipe sleeves meeting the following requirements:

- a. Secure sleeves in position and location during construction. Provide sleeves of sufficient length to pass through entire thickness of walls, ceilings, roofs, and floors.
- b. A modular mechanical type sealing assembly may be installed in lieu of a waterproofing clamping flange and caulking and sealing of annular space between pipe and sleeve. The seals shall consist of interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill the annular space between the pipe and sleeve using galvanized steel bolts, nuts, and pressure plates. The links shall be loosely assembled with bolts to form a continuous rubber belt around the pipe with a pressure plate under each bolt head and each nut. After the seal assembly is properly positioned in the sleeve, tightening of the bolt shall cause the rubber sealing elements to expand and provide a watertight seal between the pipe and the sleeve. Each seal assembly shall be sized as recommended by the manufacturer to fit the pipe and sleeve involved.
- c. Sleeves shall not be installed in structural members, except where indicated or approved. Rectangular and square openings shall be as detailed. Each sleeve shall extend through its respective floor, or roof, and shall be cut flush with each surface, except for special circumstances. Pipe sleeves passing through floors in wet areas such as mechanical equipment rooms, lavatories, kitchens, and other plumbing fixture areas shall extend a minimum of 4 inches above the finished floor.
- d. Unless otherwise indicated, sleeves shall be of a size to provide a minimum of 1/4 inch clearance between bare pipe or insulation and inside of sleeve or between insulation and inside of sleeve. Sleeves in bearing walls and concrete slab on grade floors shall be steel pipe or cast-iron pipe. Sleeves in nonbearing walls or ceilings may be steel pipe, cast-iron pipe, galvanized sheet metal with lock-type longitudinal seam, or plastic.
- e. Except as otherwise specified, the annular space between pipe and sleeve, or between jacket over insulation and sleeve, shall be sealed as indicated with sealants conforming to ASTM C920 and with a primer, backstop material and surface preparation as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS. The annular space between pipe and sleeve, between bare insulation and sleeve or between jacket over insulation and sleeve shall not be sealed for interior walls which are not designated as fire rated.
- f. Sleeves through below-grade walls in contact with earth shall be recessed 1/2 inch from wall surfaces on both sides. Annular space between pipe and sleeve shall be filled with backing material and sealants in the joint between the pipe and wall as specified above. Sealant selected for the earth side of the wall shall be compatible with dampproofing/waterproofing materials that are to be applied over the joint sealant. Pipe sleeves in fire-rated walls shall conform to the requirements in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.1.4.2 Waterproofing

Waterproofing at floor-mounted water closets shall be accomplished by forming a flashing guard from soft-tempered sheet copper. The center of the sheet shall be perforated and turned down approximately 1-1/2 inches to fit between the outside diameter of the drainpipe and the inside diameter of the cast-iron or steel pipe sleeve. The turned-down portion of the flashing guard shall be embedded in sealant to a depth of approximately 1-1/2 inches; then the sealant shall be finished off flush to floor level between the flashing guard and drainpipe. The flashing guard of sheet copper shall extend not less than 8 inches from the drainpipe and shall be lapped between the floor membrane in a solid coating of bituminous cement. If cast-iron water closet floor flanges are used, the space between the pipe sleeve and drainpipe shall be sealed with sealant and the flashing guard shall be upturned approximately 1-1/2 inches to fit the outside diameter of the drainpipe and the inside diameter of the water closet floor flange. The upturned portion of the sheet fitted into the floor flange shall be sealed.

3.1.4.3 Pipe Penetrations of Slab on Grade Floors

Where pipes, fixture drains, floor drains, cleanouts or similar items penetrate slab on grade floors, except at penetrations of floors with waterproofing membrane as specified in paragraphs FLASHING REQUIREMENTS and WATERPROOFING, a groove 1/4 to 1/2 inch wide by 1/4 to 3/8 inch deep shall be formed around the pipe, fitting or drain. The groove shall be filled with a sealant as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.1.4.4 Pipe Penetrations

Provide sealants for all pipe penetrations. All pipe penetrations shall be sealed to prevent infiltration of air, insects, and vermin.

3.1.5 Fire Seal

Where pipes pass through fire walls, fire-partitions, fire-rated pipe chase walls or floors above grade, a fire seal shall be provided as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.1.6 Supports

3.1.6.1 General

Hangers used to support piping 2 inches and larger shall be fabricated to permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load. Pipe guides and anchors shall be installed to keep pipes in accurate alignment, to direct the expansion movement, and to prevent buckling, swaying, and undue strain. Piping subjected to vertical movement when operating temperatures exceed ambient temperatures shall be supported by variable spring hangers and supports or by constant support hangers. In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, a clip or clamp shall be used where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members shall not exceed the hanger and support spacing required for an individual pipe in the multiple pipe run. Threaded sections of rods shall not be formed or bent.

3.1.6.2 Pipe Supports and Structural Bracing, Seismic Requirements

Piping and attached valves shall be supported and braced to resist seismic

loads as specified in Section 23 05 48.00 40 VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT. Structural steel required for reinforcement to properly support piping, headers, and equipment, but not shown, shall be provided. Material used for supports shall be as specified in Section 05 12 00 STRUCTURAL STEEL.

3.1.6.3 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Installation of pipe hangers, inserts and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 except as modified herein.

- a. Types 5, 12, and 26 shall not be used.
- b. Type 3 shall not be used on insulated pipe.
- c. Type 18 inserts shall be secured to concrete forms before concrete is placed. Continuous inserts which allow more adjustment may be used if they otherwise meet the requirements for type 18 inserts.
- d. Type 19 and 23 C-clamps shall be torqued per MSS SP-58 and shall have both locknuts and retaining devices furnished by the manufacturer. Field-fabricated C-clamp bodies or retaining devices are not acceptable.
- e. Type 20 attachments used on angles and channels shall be furnished with an added malleable-iron heel plate or adapter.
- f. Type 24 may be used only on trapeze hanger systems or on fabricated frames.
- g. Type 39 saddles shall be used on insulated pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or higher. Type 39 saddles shall be welded to the pipe.
- h. Type 40 shields shall:
 - (1) Be used on insulated pipe less than 4 inches.
 - (2) Be used on insulated pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or less.
 - (3) Have a high density insert for all pipe sizes. High density inserts shall have a density of 8 pcf or greater.
- i. Horizontal pipe supports shall be spaced as specified in MSS SP-58 and a support shall be installed not over 1 foot from the pipe fitting joint at each change in direction of the piping. Pipe supports shall be spaced not over 5 feet apart at valves. Operating temperatures in determining hanger spacing for PVC or CPVC pipe shall be 120 degrees F for PVC and 180 degrees F for CPVC. Horizontal pipe runs shall include allowances for expansion and contraction.
- j. Vertical pipe shall be supported at each floor, except at slab-on-grade, at intervals of not more than 15 feet nor more than 8 feet from end of risers, and at vent terminations. Vertical pipe risers shall include allowances for expansion and contraction.
- k. Type 35 guides using steel, reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) or graphite slides shall be provided to allow longitudinal pipe

movement. Slide materials shall be suitable for the system operating temperatures, atmospheric conditions, and bearing loads encountered. Lateral restraints shall be provided as needed. Where steel slides do not require provisions for lateral restraint the following may be used:

- (1) On pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or higher, a Type 39 saddle, welded to the pipe, may freely rest on a steel plate.
 - (2) On pipe less than 4 inches a Type 40 shield, attached to the pipe or insulation, may freely rest on a steel plate.
 - (3) On pipe 4 inches and larger carrying medium less than 60 degrees F a Type 40 shield, attached to the pipe or insulation, may freely rest on a steel plate.
- l. Pipe hangers on horizontal insulated pipe shall be the size of the outside diameter of the insulation. The insulation shall be continuous through the hanger on all pipe sizes and applications.
 - m. Where there are high system temperatures and welding to piping is not desirable, the type 35 guide shall include a pipe cradle, welded to the guide structure and strapped securely to the pipe. The pipe shall be separated from the slide material by at least 4 inches or by an amount adequate for the insulation, whichever is greater.
 - n. Hangers and supports for plastic pipe shall not compress, distort, cut or abrade the piping, and shall allow free movement of pipe except where otherwise required in the control of expansion/contraction.

3.1.6.4 Structural Attachments

Attachment to building structure concrete and masonry shall be by cast-in concrete inserts, built-in anchors, or masonry anchor devices. Inserts and anchors shall be applied with a safety factor not less than 5. Supports shall not be attached to metal decking. Supports shall not be attached to the underside of concrete filled floor or concrete roof decks unless approved by the Contracting Officer. Masonry anchors for overhead applications shall be constructed of ferrous materials only.

3.1.7 Pipe Cleanouts

Pipe cleanouts shall be the same size as the pipe except that cleanout plugs larger than 4 inches will not be required. A cleanout installed in connection with cast-iron soil pipe shall consist of a long-sweep 1/4 bend or one or two 1/8 bends extended to the place shown. An extra-heavy cast-brass or cast-iron ferrule with countersunk cast-brass head screw plug shall be caulked into the hub of the fitting and shall be flush with the floor. Cleanouts in connection with other pipe, where indicated, shall be T-pattern, 90-degree branch drainage fittings with cast-brass screw plugs, except plastic plugs shall be installed in plastic pipe. Plugs shall be the same size as the pipe up to and including 4 inches. Cleanout tee branches with screw plug shall be installed at the foot of soil and waste stacks, at the foot of interior downspouts, on each connection to building storm drain where interior downspouts are indicated, and on each building drain outside the building. Cleanout tee branches may be omitted on stacks in single story buildings with slab-on-grade construction or where less than 18 inches of crawl space is provided under the floor. Cleanouts on pipe concealed in partitions shall

be provided with chromium plated bronze, nickel bronze, nickel brass or stainless steel flush type access cover plates. Round access covers shall be provided and secured to plugs with securing screw. Square access covers may be provided with matching frames, anchoring lugs and cover screws. Cleanouts in finished walls shall have access covers and frames installed flush with the finished wall. Cleanouts installed in finished floors subject to foot traffic shall be provided with a chrome-plated cast brass, nickel brass, or nickel bronze cover secured to the plug or cover frame and set flush with the finished floor. Heads of fastening screws shall not project above the cover surface. Where cleanouts are provided with adjustable heads, the heads shall be cast iron or plastic.

3.2 WATER HEATERS

3.2.1 Relief Valves

No valves shall be installed between a relief valve and its water heater or storage tank. The P&T relief valve shall be installed where the valve actuator comes in contact with the hottest water in the heater. Whenever possible, the relief valve shall be installed directly in a tapping in the tank or heater; otherwise, the P&T valve shall be installed in the hot-water outlet piping. A vacuum relief valve shall be provided on the cold water supply line to the hot-water storage tank or water heater and mounted above and within 6 inches above the top of the tank or water heater.

3.2.2 Heat Traps

Piping to and from each water heater shall be routed horizontally and downward a minimum of 2 feet before turning in an upward direction.

3.2.3 Connections to Water Heaters

Connections of metallic pipe to water heaters shall be made with dielectric unions or flanges.

3.2.4 Expansion Tank

A pre-charged expansion tank shall be installed on the cold water supply between the water heater inlet and the cold water supply shut-off valve. The Contractor shall adjust the expansion tank air pressure, as recommended by the tank manufacturer, to match incoming water pressure.

3.3 FIXTURES AND FIXTURE TRIMMINGS

Polished chromium-plated pipe, valves, and fittings shall be provided where exposed to view. Angle stops, straight stops, stops integral with the faucets, or concealed type of lock-shield, and loose-key pattern stops for supplies with threaded, sweat or solvent weld inlets shall be furnished and installed with fixtures. Where connections between copper tubing and faucets are made by rubber compression fittings, a beading tool shall be used to mechanically deform the tubing above the compression fitting. Exposed traps and supply pipes for fixtures and equipment shall be connected to the rough piping systems at the wall, unless otherwise specified under the item. Floor and wall escutcheons shall be as specified. Drain lines and hot water lines of fixtures for handicapped personnel shall be insulated and do not require polished chrome finish. Plumbing fixtures and accessories shall be installed within the space shown.

3.3.1 Fixture Connections

Where space limitations prohibit standard fittings in conjunction with the cast-iron floor flange, special short-radius fittings shall be provided. Connections between earthenware fixtures and flanges on soil pipe shall be made gastight and watertight with a closet-setting compound or neoprene gasket and seal. Use of natural rubber gaskets or putty will not be permitted. Fixtures with outlet flanges shall be set the proper distance from floor or wall to make a first-class joint with the closet-setting compound or gasket and fixture used.

3.3.2 Flushometer Valves

Flushometer valves shall be secured to prevent movement by anchoring the long finished top spud connecting tube to wall adjacent to valve with approved metal bracket. Flushometer valves for water closets shall be installed 39 inches above the floor, except at water closets intended for use by the physically handicapped where flushometer valves shall be mounted at approximately 30 inches above the floor and arranged to avoid interference with grab bars. In addition, for water closets intended for handicap use, the flush valve handle shall be installed on the wide side of the enclosure.

3.3.3 Height of Fixture Rims Above Floor

Lavatories shall be mounted with rim 31 inches above finished floor. Wall-hung drinking fountains and water coolers shall be installed with rim 42 inches above floor. Wall-hung service sinks shall be mounted with rim 28 inches above the floor. Installation of fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall be in accordance with ICC A117.1 COMM.

3.3.4 Fixture Supports

Fixture supports for off-the-floor lavatories, urinals, water closets, and other fixtures of similar size, design, and use, shall be of the chair-carrier type. The carrier shall provide the necessary means of mounting the fixture, with a foot or feet to anchor the assembly to the floor slab. Adjustability shall be provided to locate the fixture at the desired height and in proper relation to the wall. Support plates, in lieu of chair carrier, shall be fastened to the wall structure only where it is not possible to anchor a floor-mounted chair carrier to the floor slab.

3.3.4.1 Support for Steel Stud Frame Partitions

Chair carrier shall be used. The anchor feet and tubular uprights shall be of the heavy duty design; and feet (bases) shall be steel and welded to a square or rectangular steel tube upright. Wall plates, in lieu of floor-anchored chair carriers, shall be used only if adjoining steel partition studs are suitably reinforced to support a wall plate bolted to these studs.

3.3.5 Backflow Prevention Devices

Plumbing fixtures, equipment, and pipe connections shall not cross connect or interconnect between a potable water supply and any source of nonpotable water. Backflow preventers shall be installed where indicated and in accordance with ICC IPC at all other locations necessary to

preclude a cross-connect or interconnect between a potable water supply and any nonpotable substance. In addition backflow preventers shall be installed at all locations where the potable water outlet is below the flood level of the equipment, or where the potable water outlet will be located below the level of the nonpotable substance. Backflow preventers shall be located so that no part of the device will be submerged. Backflow preventers shall be of sufficient size to allow unrestricted flow of water to the equipment, and preclude the backflow of any nonpotable substance into the potable water system. Bypass piping shall not be provided around backflow preventers. Access shall be provided for maintenance and testing. Each device shall be a standard commercial unit.

3.3.6 Access Panels

Access panels shall be provided for concealed valves and controls, or any item requiring inspection or maintenance. Access panels shall be of sufficient size and located so that the concealed items may be serviced, maintained, or replaced. Access panels shall be as specified in Section 08 31 00 ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS.

3.3.7 Traps

Each trap shall be placed as near the fixture as possible, and no fixture shall be double-trapped. Traps installed on cast-iron soil pipe shall be cast iron. Traps installed on copper tubing shall be recess-drainage pattern, or brass-tube type. Traps installed on plastic pipe may be plastic conforming to ASTM D3311. Traps for acid-resisting waste shall be of the same material as the pipe.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS

3.4.1 Identification Tags

Identification tags made of brass, engraved laminated plastic, or engraved anodized aluminum, indicating service and valve number shall be installed on valves, except those valves installed on supplies at plumbing fixtures. Tags shall be 1-3/8 inch minimum diameter, and marking shall be stamped or engraved. Indentations shall be black, for reading clarity. Tags shall be attached to valves with No. 12 AWG, copper wire, chrome-plated beaded chain.

3.4.2 Pipe Color Code Marking

Color code marking of piping shall be as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.5 ESCUTCHEONS

Escutcheons shall be provided at finished surfaces where bare or insulated piping, exposed to view, passes through floors, walls, or ceilings, except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms. Escutcheons shall be fastened securely to pipe or pipe covering and shall be satin-finish, corrosion-resisting steel, polished chromium-plated zinc alloy, or polished chromium-plated copper alloy. Escutcheons shall be either one-piece or split-pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or setscrew.

3.6 PAINTING

Painting of pipes, hangers, supports, and other iron work, either in concealed spaces or exposed spaces, is specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.6.1 Painting of New Equipment

New equipment painting shall be factory applied or shop applied, and shall be as specified herein, and provided under each individual section.

3.6.1.1 Factory Painting Systems

Manufacturer's standard factory painting systems may be provided subject to certification that the factory painting system applied will withstand 125 hours in a salt-spray fog test. Salt-spray fog test shall be in accordance with ASTM B117, and for that test the acceptance criteria shall be as follows: immediately after completion of the test, the paint shall show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, or cracking, and no loss of adhesion; and the specimen shall show no signs of rust creepage beyond 0.125 inch on either side of the scratch mark.

The film thickness of the factory painting system applied on the equipment shall not be less than the film thickness used on the test specimen. If manufacturer's standard factory painting system is being proposed for use on surfaces subject to temperatures above 120 degrees F, the factory painting system shall be designed for the temperature service.

3.6.1.2 Shop Painting Systems for Metal Surfaces

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F shall be cleaned to bare metal.

Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Color of finish coat shall be aluminum or light gray.

- a. Temperatures Less Than 120 Degrees F: Immediately after cleaning, the metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F shall receive one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil per coat.
- b. Temperatures Between 120 and 400 Degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F shall receive two coats of 400 degrees F heat-resisting enamel applied to a total minimum thickness of 2 mils.
- c. Temperatures Greater Than 400 Degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures greater than 400 degrees F shall receive two coats of 600 degrees F heat-resisting paint applied to a total minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

3.7 TESTS, FLUSHING AND DISINFECTION

3.7.1 Plumbing System

The following tests shall be performed on the plumbing system in accordance with ICC IPC, except that the drainage and vent system final test shall include the smoke test. The Contractor has the option to perform a peppermint test in lieu of the smoke test. If a peppermint test is chosen, the Contractor must submit a testing procedure and reasons for choosing this option in lieu of the smoke test to the Contracting Officer for approval.

- a. Drainage and Vent Systems Test. The final test shall include a smoke test.
- b. Building Sewers Tests.
- c. Water Supply Systems Tests.

3.7.1.1 Test of Backflow Prevention Assemblies

Backflow prevention assembly shall be tested using gauges specifically designed for the testing of backflow prevention assemblies.

Backflow prevention assembly test gauges shall be tested annually for accuracy in accordance with the requirements of State or local regulatory agencies. If there is no State or local regulatory agency requirements, gauges shall be tested annually for accuracy in accordance with the requirements of University of Southern California's Foundation of Cross Connection Control and Hydraulic Research or the American Water Works Association Manual of Cross Connection (Manual M-14), or any other approved testing laboratory having equivalent capabilities for both laboratory and field evaluation of backflow prevention assembly test gauges. Report form for each assembly shall include, as a minimum, the following:

Data on Device	Data on Testing Firm
Type of Assembly	Name
Manufacturer	Address
Model Number	Certified Tester
Serial Number	Certified Tester No.
Size	Date of Test
Location	
Test Pressure Readings	Serial Number and Test Data of Gauges

If the unit fails to meet specified requirements, the unit shall be repaired and retested.

3.7.2 Defective Work

If inspection or test shows defects, such defective work or material shall be replaced or repaired as necessary and inspection and tests shall be repeated. Repairs to piping shall be made with new materials. Caulking of screwed joints or holes will not be acceptable.

3.7.3 System Flushing

3.7.3.1 During Flushing

Before operational tests or disinfection, potable water piping system shall be flushed with potable water. Sufficient water shall be used to produce a water velocity that is capable of entraining and removing debris in all portions of the piping system. This requires simultaneous operation of all fixtures on a common branch or main in order to produce a flushing velocity of approximately 4 fps through all portions of the piping system. In the event that this is impossible due to size of system, the Contracting Officer (or the designated representative) shall specify the number of fixtures to be operated during flushing. Contractor shall provide adequate personnel to monitor the flushing operation and to ensure that drain lines are unobstructed in order to prevent flooding of the facility. Contractor shall be responsible for any flood damage resulting from flushing of the system. Flushing shall be continued until entrained dirt and other foreign materials have been removed and until discharge water shows no discoloration. All faucets and drinking water fountains, to include any device considered as an end point device by NSF/ANSI 61, Section 9, shall be flushed a minimum of 0.25 gallons per 24 hour period, ten times over a 14 day period.

3.7.3.2 After Flushing

System shall be drained at low points. Strainer screens shall be removed, cleaned, and replaced. After flushing and cleaning, systems shall be prepared for testing by immediately filling water piping with clean, fresh potable water. Any stoppage, discoloration, or other damage to the finish, furnishings, or parts of the building due to the Contractor's failure to properly clean the piping system shall be repaired by the Contractor. When the system flushing is complete, the hot-water system shall be adjusted for uniform circulation. Flushing devices and automatic control systems shall be adjusted for proper operation according to manufacturer's instructions. Flow rates on fixtures must not exceed those stated in PART 2 of this Section. Unless more stringent local requirements exist, lead levels shall not exceed limits established by 40 CFR 141.80 (c)(1). The water supply to the building shall be tested separately to ensure that any lead contamination found during potable water system testing is due to work being performed inside the building.

3.7.4 Operational Test

Upon completion of flushing and prior to disinfection procedures, the Contractor shall subject the plumbing system to operating tests to demonstrate satisfactory installation, connections, adjustments, and functional and operational efficiency. Such operating tests shall cover a period of not less than 8 hours for each system and shall include the following information in a report with conclusion as to the adequacy of the system:

- a. Time, date, and duration of test.

- b. Water pressures at the most remote and the highest fixtures.
- c. Operation of each fixture and fixture trim.
- d. Operation of each valve, hydrant, and faucet.
- e. Pump suction and discharge pressures.
- f. Temperature of each domestic hot-water supply.
- g. Operation of each floor drain by flooding with water.
- h. Operation of each vacuum breaker and backflow preventer.

3.7.5 Disinfection

After all system components are provided and operational tests are complete, the entire domestic hot- and cold-water distribution system shall be disinfected. Before introducing disinfecting chlorination material, entire system shall be flushed with potable water until any entrained dirt and other foreign materials have been removed.

Water chlorination procedure shall be in accordance with AWWA C651 and AWWA C652 as modified and supplemented by this specification. The chlorinating material shall be hypochlorites or liquid chlorine. The chlorinating material shall be fed into the water piping system at a constant rate at a concentration of at least 50 parts per million (ppm). Feed a properly adjusted hypochlorite solution injected into the system with a hypochlorinator, or inject liquid chlorine into the system through a solution-feed chlorinator and booster pump until the entire system is completely filled.

Test the chlorine residual level in the water at 6 hour intervals for a continuous period of 24 hours. If at the end of a 6 hour interval, the chlorine residual has dropped to less than 25 ppm, flush the piping including tanks with potable water, and repeat the above chlorination procedures. During the chlorination period, each valve and faucet shall be opened and closed several times.

After the second 24 hour period, verify that no less than 25 ppm chlorine residual remains in the treated system. The 24 hour chlorination procedure must be repeated until no less than 25 ppm chlorine residual remains in the treated system.

Upon the specified verification, the system including tanks shall then be flushed with potable water until the residual chlorine level is reduced to less than one part per million. During the flushing period, each valve and faucet shall be opened and closed several times.

Take additional samples of water in disinfected containers, for bacterial examination, at locations specified by the Contracting Officer. Test these samples for total coliform organisms (coliform bacteria, fecal coliform, streptococcal, and other bacteria) in accordance with AWWA 10084. The testing method used shall be EPA approved for drinking water systems and shall comply with applicable local and state requirements.

Disinfection shall be repeated until bacterial tests indicate the

absence of coliform organisms (zero mean coliform density per 100 milliliters) in the samples for at least 2 full days. The system will not be accepted until satisfactory bacteriological results have been obtained.

3.8 POSTED INSTRUCTIONS

Framed instructions under glass or in laminated plastic, including wiring and control diagrams showing the complete layout of the entire system, shall be posted where directed. Condensed operating instructions explaining preventive maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system shall be prepared in typed form, framed as specified above for the wiring and control diagrams and posted beside the diagrams. The framed instructions shall be posted before acceptance testing of the systems.

3.9 PERFORMANCE OF WATER HEATING EQUIPMENT

Standard rating condition terms are as follows:

EF = Energy factor, minimum overall efficiency.

ET = Minimum thermal efficiency with 70 degrees F delta T.

SL = Standby loss is maximum (Btu/h) based on a 70 degrees F temperature difference between stored water and ambient requirements.

V = Rated volume in gallons

Q = Nameplate input rate in kW (Btu/h)

3.9.1 Storage Water Heaters

3.9.1.1 Electric

- a. Storage capacity of 60 gallons shall have a minimum energy factor (EF) of 0.93 or higher per FEMP requirements.
- b. Storage capacity of 60 gallons or more shall have a minimum energy factor (EF) of 0.91 or higher per FEMP requirements.

3.10 TABLES

TABLE I				
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR DRAINAGE, WASTE, VENT AND CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING SYSTEMS				
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE C
1	Cast iron soil pipe and fittings, hub and spigot, ASTM A74 with compression gaskets. Pipe and fittings shall be marked with the CISPI trademark. Couplings are heavy duty ASTM C1540.		X	
2	Polyvinyl Chloride plastic drain, waste and vent pipe and fittings, ASTM D2665, (Sch 40) ASTM F1760	X		
3	Copper drainage tube (DWV) ASTM B306			X
SERVICE: A - Underground Building Soil, Waste and Storm Drain B - Aboveground Soil, Waste, Vent, Drain In Buildings C - Condensate Drain Aboveground * - Hard Temper				

TABLE II			
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS			
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B
1	Seamless copper, pipe, ASTM B42, Type K.	X	

TABLE II			
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS			
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B
2	Bronze flanged fittings, ASME B16.24 for use with Items 3		X
3	Seamless copper pipe, ASTM B42 Type L and K.		X
4	Cast bronze threaded fittings, ASME B16.15 for use with Items 3	X	X
5	Fittings: brass or bronze; ASME B16.15, and ASME B16.18 ASTM B828		X
6	Cast copper, alloy soldier joint pressure fittings, ASME B16.18	X	X
	SERVICE: A - Cold Water Service Belowground B - Hot and Cold Water Distribution 180 degrees F Maximum Aboveground		

TABLE III				
STANDARD RATING CONDITIONS AND MINIMUM PERFORMANCE RATINGS FOR WATER HEATING EQUIPMENT				
FUEL	STORAGE CAPACITY GALLONS	INPUT RATING	TEST PROCEDURE	REQUIRED PERFORMANCE
A. STORAGE WATER HEATERS				
Elect.	60 min.		10 CFR 430	EF = 0.91
TERMS: EF = Energy factor, minimum overall efficiency. ET = Minimum thermal efficiency with 70 degrees F delta T. SL = Standby loss is maximum Btu/h based on a 70 degree F temperature difference between stored water and ambient requirements. V = Rated storage volume in gallons Q = Nameplate input rate in Btu/h				

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 03 00.00 20

BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

08/10, CHG 3: 08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B31.9 (2020) Building Services Piping

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B117 (2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

COPPER DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION (CDA)

CDA A4015 (2016; 14/17) Copper Tube Handbook

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1 (2016) Motors and Generators - Revision 1: 2018; Includes 2021 Updates to Parts 0, 1, 7, 12, 30, and 31

NEMA MG 10 (2017) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Fixed Frequency Medium AC Squirrel-Cage Polyphase Induction Motors

NEMA MG 11 (1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section applies to all sections of Divisions: 21, FIRE SUPPRESSION; 22, PLUMBING; and 23, HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING of this project specification, unless specified otherwise in the individual section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Material and Equipment Qualifications

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. Standard products must have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product must have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2 year period.

1.3.2 Service Support

The equipment items must be supported by service organizations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. These service organizations must be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.3.3 Manufacturer's Nameplate

For each item of equipment, provide a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

1.3.4 Modification of References

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction", or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.3.4.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions must be considered mandatory, the word "should" is interpreted as "must." Reference to the "code official" must be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For Navy owned property, references to the "owner" must be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" must be interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" must be interpreted to mean the "Contractor."

1.3.4.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project. References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, must be applied appropriately by the Contracting Officer as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, store, and protect equipment and materials to prevent damage before and during installation in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Replace damaged or defective items.

1.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

Design and provide supports and anchorage for all hanging equipment. Include details in product submittals for the applicable equipment.

Equipment bracing is required for hanging overhead equipment weighing 31 pounds or more in the Office/Administration Building. Design all equipment mountings to resist forces of 0.5 times the equipment weight in any horizontal direction and 1.5 times the equipment weight in the downward direction. Submit equipment bracing and design calculations with the equipment.

1.6 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Electrical installations must conform to IEEE C2, NFPA 70, and requirements specified herein.

- a. Provide motors, controllers, integral disconnects, contactors, and controls with their respective pieces of equipment, except controllers indicated as part of motor control centers. Provide electrical equipment, including motors and wiring, as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown. For packaged equipment, include manufacturer provided controllers with the required monitors and timed restart.
- b. For single-phase motors, provide high-efficiency type, fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors, including motors that are part of a system, in accordance with NEMA MG 11. Provide premium efficiency type integral size motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1.
- c. For polyphase motors, provide squirrel-cage medium induction motors, including motors that are part of a system, and that meet the efficiency ratings for premium efficiency motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Select premium efficiency polyphase motors in accordance with NEMA MG 10.
- d. Provide motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1 and of sufficient size to drive the load at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Provide motors rated for continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Provide motor duty that allows for maximum frequency start-stop operation and minimum encountered interval between start and stop. Provide motor torque capable of accelerating the connected load within 20 seconds with 80 percent of the rated voltage maintained at motor terminals during one starting period. Provide motor starters complete with thermal overload protection and other necessary appurtenances. Fit motor bearings with grease supply fittings and grease relief to outside of the enclosure.

- e. Where two-speed or variable-speed motors are indicated, solid-state variable-speed controllers are allowed to accomplish the same function. Use solid-state variable-speed controllers for motors rated 10 hp or less and adjustable frequency drives for larger motors. Provide variable frequency drives for motors.

1.6.1 New Work

Provide electrical components of mechanical equipment, such as motors, motor starters (except starters/controllers which are indicated as part of a motor control center), control or push-button stations, float or pressure switches, solenoid valves, integral disconnects, and other devices functioning to control mechanical equipment, as well as control wiring and conduit for circuits rated 100 volts or less, to conform with the requirements of the section covering the mechanical equipment. Extended voltage range motors are not to be permitted. The interconnecting power wiring and conduit, control wiring rated 120 volts (nominal) and conduit, the motor control equipment forming a part of motor control centers, and the electrical power circuits must be provided under Division 26, except internal wiring for components of package equipment must be provided as an integral part of the equipment. When motors and equipment furnished are larger than sizes indicated, provide any required changes to the electrical service as may be necessary and related work as a part of the work for the section specifying that motor or equipment.

1.6.2 High Efficiency Motors

1.6.2.1 High Efficiency Single-Phase Motors

Unless otherwise specified, single-phase fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors must be high efficiency types corresponding to the applications listed in NEMA MG 11.

1.6.2.2 High Efficiency Polyphase Motors

Unless otherwise specified, polyphase motors must be selected based on high efficiency characteristics relative to the applications as listed in NEMA MG 10. Additionally, polyphase squirrel-cage medium induction motors with continuous ratings must meet or exceed energy efficient ratings in accordance with Table 12-6C of NEMA MG 1.

1.6.3 Three-Phase Motor Protection

Provide controllers for motors rated one 1 horsepower and larger with electronic phase-voltage monitors designed to protect motors from phase-loss, undervoltage, and overvoltage. Provide protection for motors from immediate restart by a time adjustable restart relay.

1.7 SHORT CIRCUIT CURRENT RATING

All mechanical equipment requiring power connections shall be provided with short circuit current rating (SCCR) as indicated in the contract documents. SCCR of all equipment must be coordinated with the overcurrent protection for that equipment and reviewed/coordinated with the electrical contractor. Equipment submittals for all equipment with power connectors must include the SCCR.

1.8 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

When specified in other sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the specified equipment or system. Instructors must be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and must be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work.

Instruction must be given during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished must be as specified in the individual section. When more than 4 man-days of instruction are specified, use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction. Use other time for instruction with the equipment or system.

When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instruction to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

1.9 ACCESSIBILITY

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

1.10 WELDING

1.10.1 Report of Prior Installations

Submit a Certificate of Full Approval or a current Certificate of Approval for each design, size, and make of backflow preventer being provided for the project. Certificate shall be from the Foundation for Cross-Connection Control and Hydraulic Research, University of Southern California, and shall attest that this design, size, and make of backflow preventer has satisfactorily passed the complete sequence of performance testing and evaluation for the respective level of approval. A Certificate of Provisional Approval is not acceptable in lieu of the above.

1.10.2 Welding Procedures

Before performing welding, submit three copies of welding procedure specification for all metals to be used in the work, together with proof of welder's qualification as outlines in ASME B31.9.

For industrial ventilation and exhaust systems, qualify each welder or welding operator by tests using equipment, welding procedures and a base metal and electrode or filler wire from the same compatible group number that will be encountered in the applicable welding test procedures. Welders or welding operators who make acceptable procedure qualification test welds will be considered performance qualified for the welding procedure used. Determine performance qualification in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Notify the Contracting Officer 24 hours in advance as to the time and place of tests and wherever practical perform the tests at the work site.

1.10.3 Welder's Qualifications

Before welder or operator performs welding, submit three copies of Welder's Performance Qualification Record in conformance with ASME B31.9 showing that the welder was tested under the approved procedure specification submitted by the Contractor. In addition, submit each welder's assigned number, letter, or symbol used to identify the work of the welder.

1.10.4 Identification of Welder's Work

Ensure that each welder's assigned number, letter or symbol is affixed immediately upon completion of the weld. To welders making defective welds after passing a qualification test, give a requalification test. Upon failing to pass the test, do not permit welder to work in this contract.

1.10.5 Previous Qualifications

Welding procedures, welders, and welding operators previously qualified by test may be accepted for this contract without requalification subject to the approval and provided that all the conditions specified in ASME B31.9 are met before a procedure can be used.

1.11 BRAZING AND SOLDERING

1.11.1 Brazing Procedure

ASME B31.9. Brazing procedure for joints shall be as outlined in CDA A4015.

1.12 COORDINATION AND IDENTIFICATION

- a. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- b. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- c. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- d. All valves with actuators located above ceiling shall be identified by a label on the ceiling grid.

1.13 SAFETY STANDARDS

1.13.1 Welding

Safety in welding and cutting of pipe shall conform to AWS Z49.1.

1.13.2 Guards

Couplings, motor shafts, gears and other moving parts shall be guarded, in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1910.219. Guards shall be cast iron or expanded metal. Guard parts shall be rigid and removable without disassembling the guarded unit.

1.14 COORDINATION

- a. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- b. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided and all existing conditions.

1.15 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

Prepare and submit coordination drawings to 1/4 inch = 1 inch scale or larger. Detail major elements, components, and systems of mechanical and electrical equipment materials in relationship with all trades including structural and architectural elements of work and building components. Show space requirements for installation access. Indicate if sequence and coordination of installation are important to the efficient flow of the work. Indicate on drawings where conflicts or clearance issue problems exist between various trades. Include the following:

- (1) Planned piping layout, including valve and specialty location and valve stem movement. Include pipe sizes, insulation thickness, top and bottom elevations, and dimensions from walls or column lines.
- (2) Planned duct systems layout, including, duct sizes, insulation thickness, elbow radii and duct accessories (volume dampers, motor operated dampers, fire/smoke dampers, terminal units and air devices. Include top and bottom elevations and dimensions from walls or column lines.
- (3) Where the following impact installation/coordination, provide details as appropriate:
 - (a) Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
 - (b) Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
 - (c) Fittings.
 - (d) Reinforcement and spacing.
 - (e) Seam and joint construction.
 - (f) Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
 - (g) Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
 - (h) Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
 - (i) Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.
- (4) Clearances for installing and maintaining insulation.
- (5) Clearances for servicing and maintaining equipment, including space for equipment disassembly required for periodic maintenance.

- (6) Equipment service connections and support details.
- (7) Fire-rated wall and floor penetrations. Include shaft and slab opening requirements.
- (8) Floor plans, elevations, and details to indicate penetrations in floors, walls and ceilings.
- (9) Composite Reflected ceiling plans to coordinate and integrate installation of air devices, light fixtures, communications systems, sprinklers, and other ceiling mounted devices.
- (10) Coordination drawing effort shall include all necessary trades such as structural, architectural, sheet metal, plumber, sprinkler, electrical and voice/data.

Contractor shall develop coordination drawings independent of construction document electronic files. Simply modifying construction documents shall NOT be acceptable.

1.16 DUCTWORK SHOP DRAWINGS

a. Shop Drawings:

- (1) Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
- (2) Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
- (3) Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
- (4) Elevation of top and bottom of ducts.
- (5) Dimensions of main all duct runs from building grid lines.
- (6) Fittings.
- (7) Reinforcement and spacing.
- (8) Seam and joint construction.
- (9) Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
- (10) Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
- (11) Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
- (12) Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

b. Delegated-Design Submittal:

- (1) Sheet metal thicknesses.
- (2) Joint and seam construction and sealing.

(3) Reinforcement details and spacing.

(4) Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PAINTING OF NEW EQUIPMENT

New equipment painting must be factory applied or shop applied, and must be as specified herein, and provided under each individual section.

3.1.1 Factory Painting Systems

Manufacturer's standard factory painting systems may be provided subject to certification that the factory painting system applied will withstand 125 hours in a salt-spray fog test, except that equipment located outdoors must withstand 500 hours in a salt-spray fog test. Salt-spray fog test must be in accordance with ASTM B117, and for that test the acceptance criteria must be as follows: immediately after completion of the test, the paint must show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, or cracking, and no loss of adhesion; and the specimen must show no signs of rust creepage beyond 0.125 inch on either side of the scratch mark.

The film thickness of the factory painting system applied on the equipment must not be less than the film thickness used on the test specimen. If manufacturer's standard factory painting system is being proposed for use on surfaces subject to temperatures above 120 degrees F, the factory painting system must be designed for the temperature service.

3.1.2 Shop Painting Systems for Metal Surfaces

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F must be cleaned to bare metal.

Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Color of finish coat must be aluminum or light gray.

- a. Temperatures Less Than 120 Degrees F: Immediately after cleaning, the metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F must receive one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil per coat.
- b. Temperatures Between 120 and 400 Degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F must receive two coats of 400 degrees F heat-resisting enamel applied to a total minimum

thickness of 2 mils.

- c. Temperatures Greater Than 400 Degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures greater than 400 degrees F must receive two coats of 600 degrees F heat-resisting paint applied to a total minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 05 48.00 40

VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

08/15

PART 1 GENERAL

Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION applies to work specified in this section to the extent applicable.

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ACOUSTICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA (ASA)

ASA S2.71 (1983; R 2006) Guide to the Evaluation of Human Exposure to Vibration in Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE HVAC APP IP HDBK (2016) HVAC Applications Handbook, I-P Edition

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M (2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-125 (2010) Gray Iron and Ductile Iron In-Line, Spring-Loaded, Center-Guided Check Valves

NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL BALANCING BUREAU (NEBB)

NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS (2015) Procedural Standards for TAB (Testing, Adjusting and Balancing) Environmental Systems

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910 Occupational Safety and Health Standards

1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS applies to work specified in this section to the extent applicable.

Ensure all vibration-control apparatus is the product of a single manufacturing source, where possible. Human exposure levels should be considered using ASA S2.71 and NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS.

Scheduled isolation mounting is in inches and is a minimum static deflection.

Spans referred to in Part 3, "Vibration-Isolation Systems Application," means longest bay dimension.

Determine exact mounting sizes and number of isolators by the isolator manufacturer based on equipment that will be installed. Check equipment revolutions per minute (rpm) and spring deflections to verify that resonance cannot occur.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Coordination Drawings; G, AE

Shop Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device component required. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements. Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads for interlocking snubbers.

Vibration Isolators; G, AE

Bases; G, AE

Pipe and Duct Vibration Isolation; G, AE

SD-05 Design Data

Delegated Design Submittal; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Vibration Device; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Welding Certificate; G, AE

Testing Agency Qualifications; G, AE

1.4 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

Prepare and submit coordination drawings to 1/4 inch = 1 inch scale or larger. Detail major elements, components, and systems of mechanical and electrical equipment materials in relationship with all trades including structural and architectural elements of work and building components. Show space requirements for installation access. Indicate if sequence and coordination of installation are important to the efficient flow of the work. Indicate on drawings where conflicts or clearance issue problems exist between various trades. Include the following:

- (1) Planned piping layout, including valve and specialty location and valve stem movement. Include pipe sizes, insulation thickness, top and bottom elevations, and dimensions from walls or column lines.
- (2) Planned duct systems layout, including, duct sizes, insulation thickness, elbow radii and duct accessories (volume dampers, motor operated dampers, fire/smoke dampers, terminal units and air devices. Include top and bottom elevations and dimensions from walls or column lines.
 - (a) Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
 - (b) Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
 - (c) Fittings.
 - (d) Reinforcement and spacing.
 - (e) Seam and joint construction.
 - (f) Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
 - (g) Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.
- (3) Clearances for installing and maintaining insulation.
- (4) Clearances for servicing and maintaining equipment, including space for equipment disassembly required for periodic maintenance.
- (5) Equipment service connections and support details.
- (6) Sizes and locations of housekeeping pads.
- (7) Coordination drawing effort shall include all necessary trades such as structural, architectural, sheet metal, plumber, sprinkler, and electrical.

Contractor shall develop coordination drawings independent of construction document electronic files. Simply modifying construction documents shall NOT be acceptable.

1.5 SHOP DRAWINGS

- a. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- b. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

1.6 DELEGATED DESIGN SUBMITTAL

For each vibration isolation device.

- a. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- b. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight, and operation, required to select vibration isolators for designing vibration isolation bases.
- c. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

1.6.1 Vibration Isolation

For each vibration isolation device.

- a. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. For fabrication and installation details for piping hangers and support systems.
 - (1) Hangers. Include product data for components.
 - (2) Slotted support systems.
- b. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for piping systems.
 - (1) Include design calculations and details of hangers.

1.6.2 Hangers and Supports

Product Data: For each type of product.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- a. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910 and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- b. Welding Certificate Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.8 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Refer to drawing S-001 for a full list of design loads and criteria.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 Equipment Vibration Isolation

Design for vibration isolation using ASHRAE HVAC APP IP HDBK, Chapter 48, as applicable to the following sections.

2.1.1 Materials

Ensure rubber is natural rubber and elastomer is chloroprene. Shore A durometer measurement of both materials and range between 40 and 60.

Inorganic materials such as precompressed, high-density, fibrous glass encased in a resilient moisture-impervious membrane may be used in lieu of specified natural rubber and elastomers. Where this substitution is made, ensure specified deflections are modified by the manufacturing source to accommodate physical characteristics of inorganic materials and to provide equal or better vibration isolation.

Ensure weather-exposed metal vibration-isolator parts are corrosion protected. Chloroprene coat springs.

2.1.2 Vibration Isolators

Provide the following isolator mountings:

Type A: Elastomeric Isolation Pads: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area. Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment. Pad material shall be oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties. Surface pattern shall be smooth or waffle pattern with infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers and with non-slip characteristics in all horizontal directions. Elastomer loading is not to exceed 40 pounds per square inch (psi). Ensure minimum overall thickness is 1 inch. Maximum deflections up to 0.25-inch are allowed.

Type B: Double deflection elastomeric isolation mounts: Elastomer-in-shear with molded-in steel reinforcement in top and bottom. Top plate shall be encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded. Baseplate shall be encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure. Elastomeric material shall be molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material. Maximum deflections up to 0.50 inch are allowed.

Type C: Open Spring Isolators: Free-standing laterally stable open-spring type for deflections over 0.50 inch. The outside diameter of each spring shall be equal to or greater than 90 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load. Minimum additional travel shall be 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load. Lateral stiffness shall be more than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness. Overload capacity shall support 200 percent of rated load,

fully compressed, without deformation or failure. Baseplates shall be factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig and shall be threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment

Type D: Housed Spring Isolators: Free standing, laterally stable, open spring isolators in two-part telescoping housing. The outside spring diameter of each spring shall be no less than 90 percent of the compressed height of the spring at a rated load. Minimum additional travel shall be 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load. Lateral stiffness shall be more than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness. Support shall be 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure. Two-part telescoping housing shall be a steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig. Top housing with attachment and leveling bolt.

Type E: Housed, Restrained Spring Isolators: Free standing, laterally stable, open spring isolators with vertical-limit stop restraint in two part telescoping housing. Two-part telescoping housing shall be a steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment. Outside spring diameter shall be not less than 90 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load. Minimum additional travel shall be 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load. Lateral stiffness shall be more than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness. Support shall be 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

Type F: Elastomeric hangers: Elastomeric mount in a steel frame with upper and lower steel hanger rods. Steel frame fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency. Dampening element shall be molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

Type G: Spring Hangers: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert hanger with spring and insert in compression steel frame fabricated with a connection to threaded hanger rod and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency. Outside spring diameter of each spring shall be not less than 90 percent of the required deflection at rated load. Lateral stiffness shall be more than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness. Support shall be 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure. Elastomeric element shall be molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame. Adjustable vertical stop shall be steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.

Type H: Air spring Isolators: Freestanding, single or multiple, compressed air bellows. Bellows assembly shall be upper and lower powder-coated steel sections connected by a replaceable, flexible, nylon-reinforced neoprene bellows or similar elastomeric material. 3 Hz maximum natural frequency. 25 to 100 psig operating pressure range. Burst pressure shall be at least three times manufacturer's published maximum operating pressure. Provide with tank valves. Provide facilities for dead-level adjustment and height control of supported equipment.

2.1.1.3 Bases

Provide the following bases:

Type U: Unit isolators without rails, structural-steel bases, or inertia blocks.

Type R: Rails: Factory fabricated, welded, mill-rolled structural steel, of sufficient dimension to preclude deflection at midpoint of unsupported span in excess of 1/1,440th of the span between isolators, power transmission, component misalignment, and any overhung weight. Structural steel shapes, plates, and bars shall comply with ASTM A36/A36M. Rails shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps. Where Type R bases are specified and the equipment proposed requires additional base support, use a Type S base.

Type S: Steel Bases: Factory fabricated, welded, mill-rolled structural steel with closed-perimeter configuration, isolators attached to outrigger supports.

Ensure height of steel members is sufficient to provide stiffness required to maintain equipment manufacturer's recommended alignment and duty efficiency of power-transmission components. Ensure height of steel member does not result in member deflection at midpoint of unsupported span of more than 1/1,440th of the span between isolators. Minimum height is 5 inches. Structural steel shapes, plates, and bars shall comply with ASTM A36/A36M. Rails shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

Type CIB: Concrete Inertia Base: Factory fabricated, welded, mill-rolled structural-steel perimeters, welded-in No. 4 reinforcing bars 8 inches on center each way near the bottom of the block, outrigger-isolator mounting provisions, anchor bolts, and be filled with 3,000 psi cured-strength concrete.

Configure rectangular inertia bases to accommodate equipment supported.

Ensure minimum thickness of inertia base, in addition to providing suitable mass, is sufficient to provide stiffness to maintain equipment manufacturer's recommended alignment and duty efficiency of power-transmission components, and is sufficient to result in base deflection at midpoint of unsupported span of not more than 1/1,440th of the span between isolators. Verify minimum thickness, the preceding requirements notwithstanding, is 8 percent of the longest base dimension.

Ensure pumps with flexible couplings does not have inertia bases less than 8 inches thick, and the minimum mass of concrete inertia block is equal in weight to supported equipment. Structural steel shapes, plates, and bars shall comply with ASTM A36/A36M. Rails shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps. Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

2.2 PIPE AND DUCT VIBRATION ISOLATION

2.2.1 Suspended Pipe and Duct

Type I: Provide isolators with in-series contained steel springs and preformed fibrous-glass or chloroprene-elastomer elements for connecting to building-structure attachments. Load devices by supported system during operating conditions to produce a minimum spring and elastomer static deflection of 1 inch and 3/8 inch, respectively.

Type J: Provide isolators with contained chloroprene-elastomer elements for connecting to building-structure attachments. Load devices by supported system during operating conditions to produce a minimum elastomer static deflection of 3/8 inch.

Type K: Provide isolators with elastomers mounted on floor-supported columns or directly on the floor. Load devices by supported system during operating conditions to produce a minimum elastomer static deflection of 3/8 inch.

2.2.1.1 Floor-Mounted Piping

Type L: Provide isolators with springs mounted on floor-supported columns or directly on the floor. Load devices by supported system during operating conditions to produce a minimum spring static deflection of 1 inch.

2.2.1.2 Vertical Piping

Type M: Provide isolators which are pipe base-support devices with one or more contained steel springs. Load devices by supported system during operating conditions to produce a minimum static deflection of 1 inch. Equip devices with precompression and vertical-limit features, as well as a minimum 1/4-inch thick elastomer sound pad and isolation washers, for mounting to floor.

Type N: Provide isolators which are elastomer mounted baseplate and riser pipe-guide devices, with contained double acting elastomer elements which under rated load have a minimum static deflection of 3/8 inch. Size isolator to accommodate thermal insulation within the stationary guide ring.

2.2.1.3 Resilient Pipe Guides

Type O: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch thick neoprene.

Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- a. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- b. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- c. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 VIBRATION DEVICE INSTALLATION

- a. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
- b. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST IN PLACE CONCRETE.
- c. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- d. Piping Restraints:
 - (1) Comply with requirements in MSS SP-125.
 - (2) Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
 - (3) Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- e. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- f. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- g. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- h. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- i. Drilled-in Anchors:
 - (1) Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items

prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.

- (2) Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
- (3) Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
- (4) Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
- (5) Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
- (6) Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.3 VIBRATION-ISOLATION SYSTEMS APPLICATION

Vibration isolation design per ASHRAE HVAC APP IP HDBK.

3.3.1 Centrifugal Pump Locations

TYPE EQUIPMENT	BASEMENT BELOW-GRADE PROVISIONS*	ON\ABOVE GRADE 20-FOOT FLOOR-SPAN PROVISIONS*	ON\ABOVE GRADE 30-FOOT FLOOR-SPAN PROVISIONS*	ON\ABOVE GRADE 40-FOOT FLOOR-SPAN PROVISIONS*
Close-couple through 5 hp	None	-R-0.35	C-S-1.0	C-S-1.0
Bedplate- mounted through 5 hp	None	C-CIB-1.0	C-CIB-1.5	C-CIB-1.75
7-1/2 hp	None	C-CIB-1.0	C-CIB-1.75	C-CIB-2.5

*TYPE OF MOUNTING, BASE, AND MINIMUM DEFLECTION IN INCHES

3.3.2 Air-Moving Device Locations

Vibration-isolation provisions apply to housed and unhoused free-standing fans of any pressure rating, located in field-erected, field- or factory-fabricated units.

TYPE	BASEMENT	ON\ABOVE GRADE 20-FOOT	ON\ABOVE GRADE 30-FOOT	ON\ABOVE GRADE 40-FOOT
<u>EQUIPMENT</u>	<u>BELOW-GRADE PROVISIONS*</u>	<u>FLOOR-SPAN PROVISIONS*</u>	<u>FLOOR-SPAN PROVISIONS*</u>	<u>FLOOR-SPAN PROVISIONS*</u>
Through 20 hp 200 to 300 rpm	B-U-0.35	C-S-2.5	C-S-2.5	C-S-3.5
300 to 500 rpm	B-U-0.35	C-S-1.75	C-S-1.75	C-S-2.5
500 rpm and over	B-U-0.35	C-S-1.0	C-S-1.5	C-S-1.75
Over 20 hp 250 to 300 rpm	B-U-0.35	C-S-2.75	C-CIB-3.5	C-CIB-5.0
300 to 500 rpm	B-U-0.35	C-S-1.75	C-CIB-2.5	C-CIB-3.5
500 rpm and over	B-U-0.35	C-S-1.0	C-CIB-1.75	C-CIB-2.5

*TYPE OF MOUNTING, BASE, AND MINIMUM DEFLECTION IN INCHES

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- a. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections:
 - (1) Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - (2) Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
 - (3) Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
 - (4) Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
 - (5) Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
 - (6) Measure isolator restraint clearance.
 - (7) Measure isolator deflection.
 - (8) Verify snubber minimum clearances.
 - (9) Test and adjust restrained-air-spring isolator controls and safeties.

- b. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- c. Prepare and submit vibration control devices test and inspection reports. Include in test reports allowable deflection and measured deflection also meeting referenced standards within this section.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- a. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- b. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

3.6 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASE INSTALLATION

Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST IN PLACE CONCRETE. Ensure rails, structural steel bases, and concrete inertia blocks are raised not less than 1 inch above the floor and are level when equipment supported is under operating load.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 05 93

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 62.1 (2019; ADD A-G 2021; Errata 3 2021)
Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air
Quality

ASHRAE 111 (2008) MEASUREMENT, TESTING, ADJUSTING,
AND BALANCING OF BUILDING HVAC SYSTEMS

ASSOCIATED AIR BALANCE COUNCIL (AABC)

AABC MN-1 (2002; 6th ed) National Standards for
Total System Balance

AABC MN-4 (1996) Test and Balance Procedures

NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL BALANCING BUREAU (NEBB)

NEBB MASV (2006) Procedural Standards for
Measurements and Assessment of Sound and
Vibration

NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS (2015) Procedural Standards for TAB
(Testing, Adjusting and Balancing)
Environmental Systems

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1780 (2002) HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting
and Balancing, 3rd Edition

SMACNA 1858 (2004) HVAC Sound And Vibration Manual -
First Edition

SMACNA 1972 CD (2012) HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual -
2nd Edition

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- a. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council
- b. COTR: Contracting Officer's Technical Representative

- c. DALT: Duct air leakage test
- d. DALT'd: Duct air leakage tested
- e. HVAC: Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning; or heating, ventilating, and cooling
- f. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau
- g. Out-of-tolerance data: Pertains only to field acceptance testing of Final DALT or TAB report. When applied to DALT work, this phase means "a leakage rate measured during DALT field acceptance testing which exceeds the leakage rate allowed by SMACNA Leak Test Manual for an indicated duct construction and sealant class." "a leakage rate measured during DALT field acceptance testing which exceeds the leakage rate allowed by Appendix D REQUIREMENTS FOR DUCT AIR LEAK TESTING." When applied to TAB work this phase means "a measurement taken during TAB field acceptance testing which does not fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the original measurement reported on the TAB Report for a specific parameter."
- h. Season of maximum heating load: The time of year when the outdoor temperature at the project site remains within plus or minus 30 degrees Fahrenheit of the project site's winter outdoor design temperature, throughout the period of TAB data recording.
- i. Season of maximum cooling load: The time of year when the outdoor temperature at the project site remains within plus or minus 5 degrees Fahrenheit of the project site's summer outdoor design temperature, throughout the period of TAB data recording.
- j. Season 1, Season 2: Depending upon when the project HVAC is completed and ready for TAB, Season 1 is defined, thereby defining Season 2. Season 1 could be the season of maximum heating load, or the season of maximum cooling load.
- k. Sound measurements terminology: Defined in AABC MN-1, NEBB MASV, or SMACNA 1858 (TABB).
- l. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing (of HVAC systems)
- m. TAB'd: HVAC Testing/Adjusting/Balancing procedures performed
- n. TAB Agency: TAB Firm
- o. TAB team field leader: TAB team field leader
- p. TAB team supervisor: TAB team engineer
- q. TAB team technicians: TAB team assistants
- r. TAB team field leader: TAB team field leader
- s. TAB team supervisor: TAB team engineer
- t. TAB team technicians: TAB team assistants
- u. TABB: Testing Adjusting and Balancing Bureau

1.2.1 Similar Terms

In some instances, terminology differs between the Contract and the TAB Standard primarily because the intent of this Section is to use the industry standards specified, along with additional requirements listed herein to produce optimal results.

The following table of similar terms is provided for clarification only. Contract requirements take precedent over the corresponding AABC, NEBB, or TABB requirements where differences exist.

SIMILAR TERMS			
Contract Term	AABC Term	NEBB Term	TABB Term
TAB Standard	National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems	Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Environmental Systems	International Standards for Environmental Systems Balance
TAB Specialist	TAB Engineer	TAB Supervisor	TAB Supervisor
Systems Readiness Check	Construction Phase Inspection	Field Readiness Check & Preliminary Field Procedures	Field Readiness Check & Prelim. Field Procedures

1.3 WORK DESCRIPTION

The work includes duct air leakage testing (DALT) and testing, adjusting, and balancing (TAB) of new heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air distribution systems including equipment and performance data, ducts, and piping which are located within, on, under, between, and adjacent to buildings, including records of existing conditions.

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the TAB procedural standard recommended by the TAB trade association that approved the TAB Firm's qualifications. Comply with requirements of AABC MN-1, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, or SMACNA 1780 (TABB) as supplemented and modified by this specification section. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB procedural standards are considered mandatory.

Conduct DALT and TAB of the indicated existing systems and equipment and submit the specified DALT and TAB reports for approval. Conduct DALT testing in compliance with the requirements specified in SMACNA 1972 CD, except as supplemented and modified by this section. Conduct DALT and TAB work in accordance with the requirements of this section.

1.3.1 Air Distribution Systems

Test, adjust, and balance systems (TAB) in compliance with this section. Obtain Contracting Officer's written approval before applying insulation to exterior of air distribution systems as specified under Section 23 07 00

THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

1.3.2 TAB SCHEMATIC DRAWINGS

Show the following information on TAB Schematic Drawings:

1. A unique number or mark for each piece of equipment or terminal.
2. Air quantities at air terminals.
3. Air quantities and temperatures in air handling unit schedules.
4. Ductwork Construction and Leakage Testing Table that defines the DALT test requirements, including each applicable HVAC duct system ID or mark, duct pressure class, duct seal class, and duct leakage test pressure. Refer to mechanical drawings.

The Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Specialist must review the Contract Plans and Specifications and advise the Contracting Officer of any deficiencies that would prevent the effective and accurate TAB of the system, including records of existing conditions, and systems readiness check. The TAB Specialist must provide a Design Review Report individually listing each deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper system operation. The Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Specialist must review the Contract Plans and Specifications and advise the Contracting Officer of any deficiencies that would prevent the effective and accurate TAB of the system, including records of existing conditions, and systems readiness check. The TAB Specialist must provide a Design Review Report individually listing each deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper system operation.

Submit three copies of the TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms to the Contracting Officer, no later than 21 business days prior to the start of TAB field measurements.

1.3.3 Related Requirements

Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION applies to work specified in this section.

Specific requirements relating to Reliability Centered Maintenance (RCM) principals and Predictive Testing and Inspection (PTI), by the construction contractor to detect latent manufacturing and installation defects must be followed as part of the Contractor's Quality Control program. Refer to the paragraph SUSTAINABILITY for detailed requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Qualification Data; G, AE

Within 30 business days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

Contract Documents Examination Report; G, AE

Within 45 business days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

Strategies and Procedures Plan; G, AE

Within 60 business days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Report Forms; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Instrument Calibration Reports; G, AE

Include instruments type and make, serial number, application, dates of calibration.

SD-06 Test Reports

Preliminary TAB Report; G, AE

Final TAB Report; G, AE

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- a. TAB Contractor Qualification Data: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC NEBB or TABB.
 - (1) TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC NEBB or TABB.
 - (2) TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.
- b. TAB Conference: Meet with Government's COR and Commissioning Authority on approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians. Provide 14 business days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
 - (1) Agenda Items:
 - (a) The Contract Documents examination report.
 - (b) The TAB plan.
 - (c) Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
 - (d) Coordination of documentation and communication flow.
- c. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:

- (1) Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
 - (2) Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- d. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by the Government.
 - e. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration Reports: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."
 - f. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
 - g. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.5.1 Test Reports

1.5.1.1 Certified TAB Reports

Submit: TAB Report for Season 1 and TAB Report for Season 2 in the following manner:

- a. Report format: Submit the completed pre-field data forms approved in the pre-field TAB Engineering Report completed by TAB field team, reviewed and certified by the TAB supervisor. Bind the report with a waterproof front and back cover. Include a table of contents identifying by page number the location of each report. Report forms and report data must be typewritten. Handwritten report forms or report data are not acceptable.
- b. Temperatures: On each TAB report form reporting TAB work accomplished on HVAC thermal energy transfer equipment, include the indoor and outdoor dry bulb temperature range and indoor and outdoor wet bulb temperature range within which the TAB data was recorded.
- c. Static Pressure Profiles: Report static pressure profiles for air duct systems including: AHU-1 thru AHU-8. Report static pressure data for all supply, return, relief, exhaust and outside air ducts for the systems listed. Include the following in the static pressure report data, in addition to AABC/NEBB/TABB required data:
 - (1) Report supply fan, return fan, and discharge static pressures.
 - (2) Report static pressure drop across DX coils, electric resistance heating coils installed in unit cabinetry or the system ductwork.
 - (3) Report static pressure drop across outside air, return air, and supply air automatic control dampers, both proportional and two-position, installed in unit cabinetry.
 - (4) Report static pressure drop across air filters, acoustic silencers, moisture eliminators, air flow straighteners, air flow measuring stations or other pressure drop producing specialty items installed in unit cabinetry, or in the system ductwork. Examples of these specialty items are smoke detectors, white sound generators, RF shielding, wave guides, security bars, blast

valves, small pipes passing through ductwork, and duct mounted humidifiers.

Do not report static pressure drop across duct fittings provided for the sole purpose of conveying air, such as elbows, transitions, offsets, plenums, manual dampers, and branch takes-offs.

(5) Report static pressure drop across outside air and relief/exhaust air louvers.

(6) Report static pressure readings of supply air, return air, exhaust/relief air, and outside air in duct at the point where these ducts connect to each air moving unit.

- d. Instruments: List the types of instruments actually used to measure the tab data. Include in the listing each instrument's unique identification number, calibration date, and calibration expiration date.

Instrumentation, used for taking wet bulb temperature readings must provide accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent at the measured face velocities. Submit instrument manufacturer's literature to document instrument accuracy performance is in compliance with that specified.

- e. Certification: Include the typed name of the TAB supervisor and the dated signature of the TAB supervisor.

- f. Performance Curves: The TAB Supervisor must include, in the TAB Reports, factory pump curves and fan curves for pumps and fans TAB'd on the job.

- g. Calibration Curves: The TAB Supervisor must include, in the TAB Reports, a factory calibration curve for installed flow control balancing valves, flow venturi's and flow orifices TAB'd on the job.

1.6 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- a. Notice: Provide 14 business days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.
- b. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
- c. Refer to drawing G-002 for full phasing notes and phasing criteria.

1.7 WARRANTY

Furnish workmanship and performance warranty for the DALT and TAB system work performed for a period not less than 5 years from the date of Government acceptance of the work; issued directly to the Government. Include provisions that if within the warranty period the system shows evidence of major performance deterioration, or is significantly out of tolerance, resulting from defective TAB or DALT workmanship, the corrective repair or replacement of the defective materials and correction of the defective workmanship is the responsibility of the TAB firm. Perform corrective action that becomes necessary because of defective materials and workmanship while system TAB and DALT is under warranty 7 days after notification, unless additional time is approved by the

Contracting Officer. Failure to perform repairs within the specified period of time constitutes grounds for having the corrective action and repairs performed by others and the cost billed to the TAB firm. The Contractor must also provide a 5 year contractor installation warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS

Comply with requirements of this section as specified in Appendix A WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS.

3.2 PRE-DALT/TAB MEETING

Meet with the Contracting Officer's technical representative (COTR) and the designing engineer of the HVAC systems to develop a mutual understanding relative to the details of the DALT work and TAB work requirements. Ensure that the TAB supervisor is present at this meeting. Requirements to be discussed include required submittals, work schedule, and field quality control.

3.3 DALT PROCEDURES

3.3.1 Instruments, Consumables and Personnel

Provide instruments, consumables and personnel required to accomplish the DALT field work. Follow the same basic procedure specified below for TAB Field Work, including maintenance and calibration of instruments, accuracy of measurements, preliminary procedures, field work, workmanship and treatment of deficiencies. Calibrate and maintain instruments in accordance with manufacturer's written procedures.

3.3.2 Advance Notice of Pre-Final DALT Field Work Advance Notice of Pre-Final DALT Field Work

On completion of the installation of each duct system indicated to be DALT'd, notify the Contracting Officer in writing prior to the COTR's duct selection field visit.

3.3.3 Ductwork To Be DALT'd

From each duct system indicated as subject to DALT, the COTR will randomly select sections of each completed duct system for testing by the Contractor's TAB Firm. The sections selected will not exceed 30 percent of the total measured linear footage of duct systems indicated as subject to DALT. Sections of duct systems subject to DALT will include 30 percent of main ducts, branch main ducts, branch ducts and plenums for supply, return, exhaust, and plenum ductwork.

It is acceptable for an entire duct system to be DALT'd instead of disassembling that system in order to DALT only the 30 percent portion specified above.

3.3.4 DALT Testing

Perform DALT on the HVAC duct sections of each system as selected by the COTR. Use the duct class, seal class, leakage class and the leak test pressure data indicated on the drawings, to comply with the procedures specified in SMACNA 1972 CD.

In spite of specifications of SMACNA 1972 CD to the contrary, DALT ductwork of construction class of 3-inch water gauge static pressure and below if indicated to be DALT'd. Complete DALT work on the COTR selected ductwork within 48 hours after the particular ductwork was selected for DALT. Separately conduct DALT work for large duct systems to enable the DALT work to be completed in 48 hours.

3.3.5 Completed Pre-Final DALT Report

After completion of the DALT work, prepare a Pre-final DALT Report meeting the additional requirements specified in Appendix B REPORTS - DALT and TAB. Data required by those data report forms shall be furnished by the TAB team. Prepare the report neatly and legibly; the Pre-final DALT report shall provide the basis for the Final DALT Report.

TAB supervisor shall review, approve and sign the Pre-Final DALT Report and submit this report within one day of completion of DALT field work. Verbally notify the COTR that the field check of the Pre-Final DALT Report data can commence. After completion of the DALT work, prepare a Pre-final DALT Report using the reporting forms specified. TAB team to furnish data required by those data report forms. Prepare the report neatly and legibly; the Pre-final DALT report is the basis for the Final DALT Report. TAB supervisor must review and certify the Pre-final DALT Report and submit this report within one day of completion of DALT field work. Verbally notify the COTR that the field check of the Pre-final DALT Report data can commence.

3.3.6 Quality Assurance - COTR DALT Field Acceptance Testing

In the presence of the COTR and TAB team field leader, verify for accuracy Pre-final DALT Report data selected by the COTR. For each duct system, this acceptance testing shall be conducted on a maximum of 50 percent of the duct sections DALT'd.

Further, if any data on the Pre-final DALT report form for a given duct section is out-of-tolerance, then field acceptance testing shall be conducted on data for one additional duct section, preferably in the same duct system, in the presence of the COTR.

3.3.7 Certified Final DALT Report

On successful completion of all field checks of the Pre-final DALT Report data for all systems, the TAB Supervisor is to assemble, review, certify and submit the Final DALT Report to the Contracting Officer for approval. On successful completion of all field checks of the Pre-Final DALT Report data for all systems, the TAB Supervisor shall assemble, review, approve, sign and submit the Final DALT Report in compliance with Appendix B REPORTS - DALT and TAB to the Contracting Officer for approval.

3.3.8 Prerequisite for TAB Field Work

Do not commence TAB field work prior to the completion and approval, for

all systems, of the Final DALT Report.

3.4 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS EXAMINATION REPORT

Submit typed report describing omissions and deficiencies in the HVAC system's design that would preclude the TAB team from accomplishing the TAB work requirements of this section. Provide a complete explanation including supporting documentation detailing the design deficiency. State that no deficiencies are evident if that is the case.

3.5 STRATEGIES AND PROCEDURES PLAN

- a. Strategy: Describe the method of approach to the TAB field work from start to finish. Include in this description a complete methodology for accomplishing each seasonal TAB field work session.
- b. Air System Diagrams: Use the contract drawings and duct fabrication drawings if available to provide air system diagrams in the report showing the location of all terminal outlet supply, return, exhaust and transfer registers, grilles and diffusers. Use a key numbering system on the diagrams which identifies each outlet contained in the outlet airflow report sheets. Show intended locations of all traverses and static pressure readings.
- c. Procedural steps: Delineate fully the intended procedural steps to be taken by the TAB field team to accomplish the required TAB work of each air distribution system and each water distribution system. Include intended procedural steps for TAB work for subsystems and system components.

3.6 EXAMINATION

- a. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- b. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- c. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- d. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- e. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - (1) Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - (2) Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in

AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

- f. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- g. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- h. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- i. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- j. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- k. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- l. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- m. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- n. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.7 PREPARATION

- a. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- b. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
 - (1) Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
 - (2) Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
 - (3) Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - (4) Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
 - (5) Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
 - (6) Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
 - (7) Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.

- (8) Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.8 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- a. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
 - (1) Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- b. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - (1) After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - (2) Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 23 07 00 "THERMAL INSULATION OF MECHANICAL SYSTEMS."
 - (3) Do not cut or penetrate grease exhaust ductwork connected to Type 1 kitchen exhaust hoods.
- c. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- d. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.9 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- a. Prepare test reports for fans. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures.
- b. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- c. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- d. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements. Utilize existing test ports if available.
- e. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- f. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- g. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- h. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- i. Check for airflow blockages.

- j. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- k. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- a. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - (1) Measure total airflow.
 - (2) Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
 - (a) Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
 - (b) Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - (c) Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
 - (3) Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
 - (a) Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
 - (4) Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
 - (5) Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 - (6) Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 - (7) Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- b. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
 - (1) Measure airflow of submain ducts in penthouse.
 - (a) Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure

airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.

- (2) Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
- (3) Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR DOMESTIC WATER SYSTEMS

- a. Prepare test reports for pumps and other equipment. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required equipment flow rates with system design flow rates.
- b. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings piping layouts.
- c. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare domestic water systems for testing and balancing as follows:
 - (1) Check expansion tank for proper setting.
 - (2) Check water heater for proper discharge temperature setting.
 - (3) Check remotest point of outlet for adequate pressure.
 - (4) Check flow-control valves for proper position.
 - (5) Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor controllers.
 - (6) Verify that motor controllers are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
 - (7) Check that air has been purged from the system.
- d. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of each piece of equipment.
- e. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of pressure-reducing valves.
- f. Check settings and operation of automatic temperature-control valves, self-contained control valves, and pressure-reducing valves. Record final settings.
- g. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER CIRCULATING INLINE PUMP

- a. Balance system with manual or automatic balancing valves by setting at design flow.
 - (1) Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - (2) Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.

(3) Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

b. Adjust pump to deliver total design flow.

(1) Measure pump TDH as follows:

- (a) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
- (b) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
- (c) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
- (d) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.

(2) Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

(3) Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.

(4) Verify final system conditions as follows:

- (a) Re-measure and confirm that total flow is within design.
- (b) Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.
- (c) Mark final settings.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

a. Motors 1/8 <Insert value> HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

- (1) Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
- (2) Motor horsepower rating.
- (3) Motor rpm.
- (4) Phase and hertz.
- (5) Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
- (6) Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
- (7) Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
- (8) Service factor and frame size.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR WATER HEATERS

a. Electric Water Heaters:

- (1) Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
- (2) Measure and record water flow.

- (3) Measure and record pressure drop.
- (4) Measure and Record relief valve(s) pressure setting.
- (5) Capacity: Calculate in Btu/h (kW) of heating output.
- (6) Efficiency: Calculate operating efficiency for comparison to submitted equipment.

3.15 TAB PROCEDURES

3.15.1 TAB Field Work

Test, adjust, and balance the HVAC systems until measured flow rates (air and water flow) are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents.

That is, comply with the requirements of AABC MN-1 and AABC MN-4, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, NEBB MASV, or SMACNA 1780 (TABB) and SMACNA 1858 (TABB), except as supplemented and modified by this section.

Test, adjust, and balance the HVAC systems until measured flow rates (air and water flow) are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents. Conduct TAB work, including measurement accuracy, and sound measurement work in conformance with the AABC MN-1 and AABC MN-4, or NEBB TABES and NEBB MASV, or SMACNA 1780 (used by TABB) and SMACNA 1858 sound measurement procedures, except as supplemented and modified by this section. The only water flow and air flow reporting which can be deferred until the Season 2 is that data which would be affected in terms of accuracy due to outside ambient conditions.

3.15.2 Preliminary Procedures

Use the approved pre-field engineering report as instructions and procedures for accomplishing TAB field work. TAB engineer is to locate, in the field, test ports required for testing. It is the responsibility of the sheet metal contractor to provide and install test ports as required by the TAB engineer.

3.15.3 TAB Air Distribution Systems

3.15.3.1 Units With Coils

Report heating and cooling performance capacity tests for coils for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity. Submit the following data and calculations with the coil test reports:

- a. For air handlers with capacities greater than 7.5 tons (90,000 Btu) cooling, such as factory manufactured units, central built-up units and rooftop units, conduct capacity tests in accordance with AABC MN-4, procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Do not determine entering and leaving wet and dry bulb temperatures by single point measurement, but by the average of multiple readings in compliance with paragraph 3.5-5, "Procedures", (in subparagraph d.) of AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Submit part-load coil performance data from the coil manufacturer converting test conditions to design conditions; use the data for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity in compliance with AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing," paragraph 3.5.7, "Actual Capacity Vs. Design Capacity" (in subparagraph c.).

3.15.3.2 Air Handling Units

Air handling unit systems including fans (air handling unit fans, exhaust fans and winter ventilation fans), coils, ducts, plenums, mixing boxes, terminal units, variable air volume boxes, and air distribution devices for supply air, return air, outside air, mixed air relief air, and makeup air.

3.15.3.3 Return/Exhaust Air Fans

Return/Exhaust air fan system including fan ducts, plenums, registers, diffusers, grilles, and louvers for supply air, return air, exhaust air, outside air, and mixed air.

3.15.4 Procedures For Motors

- a. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 - (1) Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - (2) Motor horsepower rating.
 - (3) Motor rpm.
 - (4) Efficiency rating.
 - (5) Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 - (6) Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 - (7) Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- b. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.15.5 TAB Work on Performance Tests With Seasonal Limitations

3.15.5.1 Season Of Maximum Load

Visit the contract site for at least two TAB work sessions for season 1 and Season 2 field measures. Visit the contract site during the season of maximum heating load and visit the contract site during the season of maximum cooling load, the goal being to TAB the operational performance of the heating systems and cooling systems under their respective maximum outdoor environment-caused loading. During the seasonal limitations, TAB the operational performance of the heating systems and cooling systems. Visit the contract site for at least two TAB work sessions for TAB field measurements.

3.15.5.2 Ambient Temperatures

On each tab report form used for recording data, record the outdoor and indoor ambient dry bulb temperature range and the outdoor and indoor ambient wet bulb temperature range within which the report form's data was recorded. Record these temperatures at beginning and at the end of data taking.

3.15.6 Workmanship

Conduct TAB work on the HVAC systems until measured flow rates are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents. This TAB work includes adjustment of balancing valves, balancing dampers, and sheaves. Further, this TAB work includes changing out fan sheaves and pump impellers if required to obtain air and water flow rates specified or indicated. If, with these adjustments and equipment changes, the specified or indicated design flow rates cannot be attained, contact the Contracting Officer for direction.

3.15.7 Deficiencies

Strive to meet the intent of this section to maximize the performance of the equipment as designed and installed. However, if deficiencies in equipment design or installation prevent TAB work from being accomplished within the range of design values specified in the paragraph WORKMANSHIP, provide written notice as soon as possible to the Contractor and the Contracting Officer describing the deficiency and recommended correction.

Responsibility for correction of installation deficiencies is the Contractor's. If a deficiency is in equipment design, call the TAB team supervisor for technical assistance. Responsibility for reporting design deficiencies to Contractor is the TAB team supervisor's.

3.15.8 TAB Reports

Additional requirements for TAB Reports are specified in Appendix B
REPORTS - TAB

After completion of the TAB field work, prepare the TAB field data for TAB supervisor's review and certification, using the reporting forms approved in the pre-field engineering report. Data required by those approved data report forms is to be furnished by the TAB team. Except as approved otherwise in writing by the Contracting Officer, the TAB work and thereby the TAB report is considered incomplete until the TAB work is accomplished to within the accuracy range specified in the paragraph WORKMANSHIP.

3.15.8.1 Final Report

- a. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 - (1) Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - (2) Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

- (3) Prepare and submit preliminary TAB report (pencil copy) and final TAB report.
- b. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
 - (1) Pump curves.
 - (2) Manufacturers' test data.
 - (3) Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 - (4) Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
- c. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
 - (1) Title page.
 - (2) Name and address of the TAB contractor.
 - (3) Project name.
 - (4) Project location.
 - (5) Architect's name and address.
 - (6) Engineer's name and address.
 - (7) Contractor's name and address.
 - (8) Report date.
 - (9) Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 - (10) Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 - (11) Summary of contents including the following:
 - (a) Indicated versus final performance.
 - (b) Notable characteristics of systems.
 - (c) Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 - (12) Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 - (13) Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 - (14) Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 - (15) Test conditions for fans performance forms including the following:
 - (a) Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - (b) Conditions of filters.

- (c) Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - (d) Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - (e) Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - (f) Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - (g) Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - (h) Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- d. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
 - (1) Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 - (2) Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 - (3) Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 - (4) Terminal units.
 - (5) Balancing stations.
 - (6) Position of balancing devices.
 - (7) Airflow balance system diagram.
 - (8) Space pressurization diagram.
- e. Air-Handling-Unit, Terminal Unit, and Heating and Ventilating Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
 - (1) Unit Data:
 - (a) Unit identification.
 - (b) Location.
 - (c) Make and type.
 - (d) Model number and unit size.
 - (e) Manufacturer's serial number.
 - (f) Unit arrangement and class.
 - (g) Discharge arrangement.
 - (h) Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - (i) Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - (j) Number, make, and size of belts.
 - (k) Number, type, and size of filters.
 - (2) Motor Data:
 - (a) Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - (b) Horsepower and rpm.
 - (c) Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - (d) Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - (e) Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - (f) Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - (3) Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- (a) Total air flow rate in cfm.
- (b) Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- (c) Fan rpm.
- (d) Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- (e) Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- (f) Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- (g) Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- (h) Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- (i) Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- (j) Return airflow in cfm.
- (k) Outdoor-air damper position.
- (l) Return-air damper position.
- (m) Relief damper position.

f. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

(1) Coil Data:

- (a) System identification.
- (b) Location.
- (c) Coil type.
- (d) Number of rows.
- (e) Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- (f) Make and model number.
- (g) Face area in sq. ft.
- (h) Tube size in NPS.
- (i) Tube and fin materials.
- (j) Circuiting arrangement.

(2) Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- (a) Air flow rate in cfm.
- (b) Average face velocity in fpm.
- (c) Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- (d) Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- (e) Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- (f) Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- (g) Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.

i. Fan Test Reports: For supply and return fans, include the following:

(1) Fan Data:

- (a) System identification.
- (b) Location.
- (c) Make and type.
- (d) Model number and size.
- (e) Manufacturer's serial number.
- (f) Arrangement and class.
- (g) Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- (h) Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

(2) Motor Data:

- (a) Motor make, and frame type and size.
- (b) Horsepower and rpm.
- (c) Volts, phase, and hertz.
- (d) Full-load amperage and service factor.

- (e) Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - (f) Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - (g) Number, make, and size of belts.
- (3) Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - (a) Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - (b) Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - (c) Fan rpm.
 - (d) Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - (e) Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- j. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
 - (1) Report Data:
 - (a) System and air-handling-unit number.
 - (b) Location and zone.
 - (c) Traverse air temperature in deg F.
 - (d) Duct static pressure in inches wg.
 - (e) Duct size in inches.
 - (f) Duct area in sq. ft..
 - (g) Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
 - (h) Indicated velocity in fpm.
 - (i) Actual air flow rate in cfm.
 - (j) Actual average velocity in fpm.
 - (k) Barometric pressure in psig.
- l. Air Balance Test Report:
 - (1) Test, balance, and document that the airflow rates indicated on Air Flow Balance Schedule on drawing M-606 are within tolerance for all modes of operation.
 - (2) Measure space pressure relative to atmosphere and adjacent spaces. Develop space pressurization drawing/map for all modes of operation.
 - (3) Document and record damper settings, air flow measuring station readings, hood exhaust airflow readings, and fan speeds for all exhaust, supply, return fans and exhaust, supply, return, relief, and outside air flow rates. Conduct testing for all modes of operation.
- m. Instrument Calibration Reports:
 - (1) Report Data:
 - (a) Instrument type and make.
 - (b) Serial number.
 - (c) Application.
 - (d) Dates of use.
 - (e) Dates of calibration.

3.15.9 Quality Assurance - COTR TAB Field Acceptance Testing

3.15.9.1 TAB Field Acceptance Testing

During the field acceptance testing, verify, in the presence of the COTR, random selections of data (water, air quantities, air motion, sound level readings) recorded in the TAB Report. Points and areas for field acceptance testing are to be selected by the COTR. Measurement and test procedures are the same as approved for TAB work for the TAB Report.

Field acceptance testing includes verification of TAB Report data recorded for the following equipment groups:

Group 1: All coils, heat transfer Packages, pumps, fan arrays and air handling units.

Further, if any data on the TAB Report is found not to fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the TAB Report data, additional data verification is required in the presence of the COTR. Verify TAB Report data for one additional piece of equipment in that group. Continue this additional group data verification until out-of-tolerance data ceases to be found.

3.15.9.2 Additional COTR TAB Field Acceptance Testing

If any of the acceptance testing measurements for a given equipment group is found not to fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the TAB Report data, terminate data verification for all affected data for that group. The affected data for the given group will be disapproved. Make the necessary corrections and prepare a revised TAB Report. Reschedule acceptance testing of the revised report data with the COTR.

Further, if any data on the TAB Report for a given field acceptance test group is out-of-tolerance, then field test data for one additional field test group as specified herein. Continue this increase field test work until out-of-tolerance data ceases to be found. This additional field testing is up and above the original 25 percent of the of reported data entries to be field tested.

If there are no more similar field test groups from which to choose, additional field testing from another, but different, type of field testing group must be tested.

3.15.9.3 Prerequisite for Approval

Compliance with the field acceptance testing requirements of this section is a prerequisite for the final Contracting Officer approval of the TAB Report submitted.

3.16 INSPECTIONS

a. Initial Inspection:

(1) After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.

(2) Check the following for each system:

- (a) Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
- (b) Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
- (c) Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
- (d) Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
- (e) Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

b. Final Inspection:

- (1) After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Government COR.
- (2) The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Government COR.
- (3) Government COR shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- (4) If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- (5) If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

c. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:

- (1) Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
- (2) If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.

d. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.17 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- a. Within 90 business days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

3.18 MARKING OF SETTINGS

Upon the final TAB work approval, permanently mark the settings of HVAC adjustment devices including valves, gauges, splitters, and dampers so

that adjustment can be restored if disturbed at any time. Provide permanent markings clearly indicating the settings on the adjustment devices which result in the data reported on the submitted TAB report.

3.19 MARKING OF TEST PORTS

The TAB team is to permanently and legibly mark and identify the location points of the duct test ports. If the ducts have exterior insulation, make these markings on the exterior side of the duct insulation. Show the location of test ports on the as-built mechanical drawings with dimensions given where the test port is covered by exterior insulation.

3.20 APPENDICES

Appendix A WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS
Appendix B REPORTS - TAB
Appendix C TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE

Appendix A

WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS

The Contractor is responsible for ensuring compliance with all requirements of this specification section. However, the following delineation of specific work items is provided to facilitate and co-ordinate execution of the various work efforts by personnel from separate organizations.

1. Contractor

- a. HVAC documentation: Provide pertinent contract documentation to the TAB Firm, to include the following: the contract drawings and specifications; copies of the approved submittal data for all HVAC equipment, air distribution devices, and air/water measuring/balancing devices; the construction work schedule; and other applicable documents requested by the TAB Firm. Provide the TAB Firm copies of contract revisions and modifications as they occur.
- b. Schedules: Ensure the requirements specified under the paragraph "TAB Schedule" are met.
- c. Pre-TAB meeting: Arrange and conduct the Pre-TAB meeting. Ensure that a representative is present for the sheet metal contractor, the mechanical contractor, the electrical contractor, and the automatic temperature controls contractor.
- d. Coordinate Support: Provide and coordinate support personnel required by the TAB Firm in order to accomplish the TAB field work. Support personnel may include factory representatives, HVAC controls installers, HVAC equipment mechanics, sheet metal workers, pipe fitters, and insulators. Ensure support personnel are present at the work site at the times required.
- e. Correct Deficiencies: Ensure the notifications of Construction Deficiencies are provided as specified herein. Refer to the paragraph CONSTRUCTION DEFICIENCIES. Correct each deficiency as soon as practical with the Contracting Officer, and submit revised schedules and other required documentation.
- f. Pre-TAB Work Checklists: Complete check out and debugging of HVAC equipment, ducts, and controls prior to the TAB engineer arriving at the project site to begin the TAB work. Debugging includes searching for and eliminating malfunctioning elements in the HVAC system installations, and verifying all adjustable devices are functioning as designed. Include as pre-TAB work checklist items, the deficiencies pointed out by the TAB team supervisor in the design review report.

Prior to the TAB field team's arrival, ensure completion of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the TAB team supervisor's TAB Work Procedures Summary. Do not allow the TAB team to commence TAB field work until all of the following are completed.

- g. Give Notice of Testing: Submit advance notice of proportional balancing, Season 1, and Season 2 TAB field work accompanied by completed prerequisite HVAC Work List

- h. Ensure the duct and piping systems are properly insulated and vapor sealed upon the successful completion and acceptance of the TAB work.

2. TAB Team Supervisor

- a. Overall management: Supervise and manage the overall TAB team work effort, including preliminary and technical TAB procedures and TAB team field work.
- b. Schedule: Ensure the requirements specified under the paragraph "TAB Schedule" are met.
- c. Submittals: Provide the submittals specified herein.
- d. TAB meeting: Attend meeting with Contractor. Ensure TAB personnel that will be involved in the TAB work under this contract attend the meeting.
- e. Design Review Report: Submit typed report describing omissions and deficiencies in the HVAC system's design that would preclude the TAB team from accomplishing the TAB work requirements of this section. Provide a complete explanation including supporting documentation detailing the design deficiency. State that no deficiencies are evident if that is the case.
- f. Support required: Specify the technical support personnel required from the Contractor other than the TAB agency; such as factory representatives for temperature controls or for complex equipment. Inform the Contractor in writing of the support personnel needed and when they are needed. Furnish the notice as soon as the need is anticipated, either with the design review report, or the TAB Procedures Summary, the during the TAB field work.

Ensure the Contractor is properly notified and aware of all support personnel needed to perform the TAB work. Maintain communication with the Contractor regarding support personnel throughout the duration of the TAB field work, including the TAB field acceptance testing checking.

Ensure all inspections and verifications for the Pre-TAB Checklists are completely and successfully conducted before TAB field work is performed.

- g. Technical Assistance: Provide technical assistance to the TAB field work.
- h. Deficiencies Notification: Ensure the notifications of Construction Deficiencies are provided as specified herein. Comply with requirements of the paragraph CONSTRUCTION DEFICIENCIES. Resolve each deficiency as soon as practical and submit revised schedules and other required documentation.
- i. Procedures: Develop the required TAB procedures for systems or system components not covered in the TAB Standard.

3. TAB Team Field Leader

- a. Field manager: Manage, in the field, the accomplishment of the work specified in Part 3, EXECUTION.

- b. Full time: Be present at the contract site when TAB field work is being performed by the TAB team; ensure day-to-day TAB team work accomplishments are in compliance with this section.
- c. Prerequisite HVAC work: Do not bring the TAB team to the contract site until a copy of the prerequisite HVAC work list, with all work items certified by the Contractor to be working as designed, reaches the office of the TAB Agency.

Appendix B

REPORTS - TAB

All submitted documentation must be typed, neat, and organized. All reports must have a waterproof front and back cover, a title page, a certification page, sequentially numbered pages throughout, and a table of contents. Tables, lists, and diagrams must be titled. Generate and submit for approval the following documentation:

1. TAB Work Execution Schedule

Submit a detailed schedule indicating the anticipated calendar date for each submittal and each portion of work required under this section. For each work entry, indicate the support personnel (such as controls provider, HVAC mechanic, etc.) that are needed to accomplish the work. Arrange schedule entries chronologically.

2. TAB Procedures Summary

Submit a detailed narrative describing all aspects of the TAB field work to be performed. Include the following:

- a. A list of the intended procedural steps for the TAB field work from start to finish. Indicate how each type of data measurement will be obtained. Include what Contractor support personnel are required for each step, and the tasks they need to perform.
- b. A list of the project's submittals that are needed by the TAB Firm in order to meet this Contract's requirements.
- c. The schematic drawings to be used in the required reports, which may include building floor plans, mechanical room plans, duct system plans, and equipment elevations. Indicate intended TAB measurement locations, including where test ports need to be provided by the Contractor.
- d. The data presentation forms to be used in the report, with the preliminary information and initial design values filled in.
- e. A list of TAB instruments to be used, edited for this project, to include the instrument name and description, manufacturer, model number, scale range, published accuracy, most recent calibration date, and what the instrument will be used for on this project.
- f. A thorough checklist of the work items and inspections that need to be accomplished before DALT field work can be performed. The Contractor must complete, submit, and receive approval of the Completed Pre-Final DALT Work Checklist before DALT field work can be accomplished.
- g. A thorough checklist of the work items and inspections that need to be accomplished before the TAB field work can be performed. The Contractor must complete, submit, and receive approval of the Completed Pre-TAB Work Checklist before the TAB field work can be accomplished.
- h. A thorough checklist of the work items and inspections that need to be accomplished before the Season 2 TAB field work can be performed. The

Contractor must complete, submit, and receive approval of the Completed Season 2 Pre-TAB Work Checklist before the Season 2 TAB field work can be accomplished.

- i. The checklists specified above shall be individually developed and tailored specifically for the work under this contract. Refer to NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, Section III, "Preliminary TAB Procedures" under the paragraphs titled, "Air Distribution System Inspection" and "Hydronic Distribution System Inspection" for examples of items to include in the checklists.

3. Design Review Report

Submit report containing the following information:

- a. Review the contract specifications and drawings to verify that the TAB work can be successfully accomplished in compliance with the requirements of this section. Verify the presence and location of permanently installed test ports and other devices needed, including gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow control devices, circuit setters, balancing valves, and manual volume dampers.
- b. Submit a typed report describing omissions and deficiencies in the HVAC system's design that would preclude the TAB team from accomplishing the TAB work requirements of this section. Provide a complete explanation including supporting documentation detailing the design deficiency. If no deficiencies are evident, state so in the report.

4. TAB Reports: Submit TAB Report for Proportional Balancing, Season 1, and Season 2 in the following manner:

- a. Procedure Summary: Submit a copy of the approved TAB Procedures Summary. When applicable, provide notations describing how actual field procedures differed from the procedures listed.
- b. Report format: Submit the completed data forms approved in the pre-field TAB Engineering Report completed by TAB field team, reviewed, approved and signed by the TAB supervisor. Bind the report with a waterproof front and back cover. Include a table of contents identifying by page number the location of each report. Report forms and report data shall be typewritten. Handwritten report forms or report data are not acceptable.
- c. Temperatures: On each TAB report form reporting TAB work accomplished on HVAC thermal energy transfer equipment, include the indoor and outdoor dry bulb temperature range and indoor and outdoor wet bulb temperature range within which the TAB data was recorded.
- d. Air System Diagrams: Provided updated diagrams with final installed locations of all terminals and devices, any numbering changes, and actual test locations.
- e. Air Static Pressure Profiles: Report static pressure profiles for air duct systems including: AHU-1 thru AHU-8. Report static pressure data for all supply, return, relief, exhaust and outside air ducts for the systems listed. The static pressure report data shall include, in addition to AABC or NEBB or TABB required data, the following:

- (1) Report supply fan, return fan, relief fan, and exhaust fan inlet and discharge static pressures.
- (2) Report static pressure drop across electric resistance heating coils and heat reclaim devices installed in unit cabinetry or the system ductwork.
- (3) Report static pressure drop across outside air, return air, and supply air automatic control dampers, both proportional and two-position, installed in unit cabinetry.
- (4) Report static pressure drop across air filters, acoustic silencers, moisture eliminators, air flow straighteners, air flow measuring stations or other pressure drop producing specialty items installed in unit cabinetry, or in the system ductwork. Examples of these specialty items are smoke detectors, white sound generators, RF shielding, wave guides, security bars, blast valves, small pipes passing through ductwork, and duct mounted humidifiers.

Do not report static pressure drop across duct fittings provided for the sole purpose of conveying air, such as elbows, transitions, offsets, plenums, manual dampers, and branch takes-offs.

- (5) Report static pressure drop across outside air and relief/exhaust air louvers.
 - (6) Report static pressure readings of supply air, return air, exhaust/relief air, and outside air in duct at the point where these ducts connect to each air moving unit.
- f. Instruments: List the types of instruments actually used to measure the tab data. Include in the listing each instrument's unique identification number, calibration date, and calibration expiration date.

Instrumentation, used for taking wet bulb temperature readings shall provide accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent at the measured face velocities. Submit instrument manufacturer's literature to document instrument accuracy performance is in compliance with that specified.

- g. Performance Curves: The TAB Supervisor shall include, in the TAB Reports, factory pump curves and fan curves for pumps and fans TAB'd on the job.
- h. Calibration Curves: The TAB Supervisor shall include, in the TAB Reports, a factory calibration curve for installed flow control balancing valves, flow venturis and flow orifices TAB'd on the job.
- i. Data From TAB Field Work: After completion of the TAB field work, prepare the TAB field data for TAB supervisor's review and approval signature, using the reporting forms approved in the pre-field engineering report. Data required by those approved data report forms shall be furnished by the TAB team. Except as approved otherwise in writing by the Contracting Officer, the TAB work and thereby the TAB report shall be considered incomplete until the TAB work is accomplished to within the accuracy range specified in the paragraph WORKMANSHIP.

Appendix C

TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE

Perform the following items of work in the order listed adhering to the dates schedule specified below. Include the major items listed in this schedule in the project network analysis schedule required by Section 01 32 01.00 10 PROJECT SCHEDULE.

Submit TAB Agency and TAB Personnel Qualifications: Within 42 calendar days after date of contract award.

Submit the TAB Work Execution Schedule: within 14 business days after receipt of the TAB agency and TAB personnel qualifications approval. Revise and re-submit this schedule 28 days prior to the commencement of TAB Season 1 work and TAB Season 2 work.

Submit the TAB Work Procedures Summary: within 14 business days after receipt of the initial approved TAB Work Execution Schedule.

Meet with the COTR at the TAB Meeting: Within 28 business days after receipt of the approved initial TAB Execution Schedule.

Submit Design Review Report: Within 56 calendar days after the receipt of the approved initial TAB Work Execution Schedule.

Advance Notice of Season 1 TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 14 business days prior to Season 1 TAB Field Work, submit advance notice of TAB field work accompanied by completed Season 1 Pre-TAB Work Checklist.

Season 1 TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 84 calendar days prior to CCD, and when the ambient temperature is within Season 1 limits, accomplish Season 1 TAB field work.

Submit Season 1 TAB Report: Within 14 business days after completion of Season 1 TAB field work, submit initial Season 1 TAB report.

Season 1 Quality Assurance - COTR TAB Field Check: 30 calendar days after initial Season 1 TAB report is approved by the Contracting Officer, conduct Season 1 field check.

Complete Season 1 TAB Work: Prior to CCD, complete all TAB work except Season 2 TAB work and submit final.

Receive the approved TAB report: Within 21 calendar days, receive the report from Contracting Officer approved TAB report.

Advance Notice of Season 2 TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 126 calendar days after CCD, submit advance notice of Season 2 TAB field work accompanied by completed Season 2 Pre-TAB Work Checklist.

Season 2 TAB Field Work: Within 14 business days after date of advance notice of Season 2 TAB field work and when the ambient temperature is within Season 2 limits, accomplish Season 2 TAB field work.

Submit Season 2 TAB Report: Within 14 business days after completion

of Season 2 TAB field work, submit Season 2 TAB report.

Season 2 Quality Assurance - COTR TAB Field Checks: 28 calendar days after the Season 2 TAB report is approved by the Contracting Officer, conduct Season 2 field check.

Complete Season 2 TAB Work: Within 14 calendar days after the completion of Season 2 TAB field data check, complete all TAB work.

Receive the approved TAB report: Within calendar 21 days, receive the report from Contracting Officer.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 07 00

THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS
02/13, CHG 7: 05/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only. At the discretion of the Government, the manufacturer of any material supplied will be required to furnish test reports pertaining to any of the tests necessary to assure compliance with the standard or standards referenced in this specification.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2019) Energy Standard for
Buildings Except Low-Rise
Residential Buildings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A167 (2011) Standard Specification for
Stainless and Heat-Resisting
Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and
Strip

ASTM A580/A580M (2018) Standard Specification for
Stainless Steel Wire

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM C195 (2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for
Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement

ASTM C450 (2008) Standard Practice for Fabrication
of Thermal Insulating Fitting Covers for
NPS Piping, and Vessel Lagging

ASTM C534/C534M (2020a) Standard Specification for
Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular
Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular
Form

ASTM C547 (2019) Standard Specification for Mineral
Fiber Pipe Insulation

ASTM C553 (2013; R 2019) Standard Specification for
Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation
for Commercial and Industrial Applications

ASTM C612 (2014; R 2019) Standard Specification for
Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal

Insulation

ASTM C647	(2008; R 2013) Properties and Tests of Mastics and Coating Finishes for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C755	(2019b) Standard Practice for Selection of Water Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C795	(2008; R 2018) Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C921	(2010; R 2015) Standard Practice for Determining the Properties of Jacketing Materials for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C1136	(2021) Standard Specification for Flexible, Low Permeance Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C1710	(2011) Standard Guide for Installation of Flexible Closed Cell Preformed Insulation in Tube and Sheet Form
ASTM D2863	(2019) Standard Test Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-Like Combustion of Plastics (Oxygen Index)
ASTM D5590	(2000; R 2010; E 2012) Standard Test Method for Determining the Resistance of Paint Films and Related Coatings to Fungal Defacement by Accelerated Four-Week Agar Plate Assay
ASTM E84	(2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E96/E96M	(2021) Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials
ASTM E2231	(2019) Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers
--------------------	--

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36 (2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)

ISO 2758 (2014) Paper - Determination of Bursting Strength

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-58 (2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation

MIDWEST INSULATION CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (MICA)

MICA Insulation Stds (8th Ed) National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A (2021) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

NFPA 90B (2021) Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-A-3316 (1987; Rev C; Am 2 1990) Adhesives, Fire-Resistant, Thermal Insulation

MIL-A-24179 (1969; Rev A; Am 2 1980; Notice 1 1987; Notice 2 2020) Adhesive, Flexible Unicellular-Plastic Thermal Insulation

MIL-PRF-19565 (1988; Rev C) Coating Compounds, Thermal Insulation, Fire- and Water-Resistant, Vapor-Barrier

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 94	(2013; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances
UL 723	(2018) UL Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
UL 2818	(2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 General

Provide field-applied insulation and accessories on mechanical systems as specified herein; factory-applied insulation is specified under the piping, duct or equipment to be insulated.

1.2.2 Recycled Materials

Provide thermal insulation containing recycled materials to the extent practicable, provided that the materials meet all other requirements of this section. The minimum recycled material content of the following insulation are:

Rock Wool	75 percent slag of weight
Fiberglass	20-25 percent glass cullet by weight
Rigid Foam	9 percent recovered material

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

Submit the three SD types, SD-02 Shop Drawings, SD-03 Product Data, and SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions at the same time for each system.

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Equipment Insulation Systems and Associated Accessories

Recycled content for insulation materials; S

SD-03 Product Data

Pipe Insulation Systems; G, AE

Duct Insulation Systems; G, AE

Equipment Insulation Systems; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor air quality for adhesives; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Pipe Insulation Systems; G, AE

Duct Insulation Systems; G, AE

Equipment Insulation Systems; G, AE

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Installer Qualification

Qualified installers shall have successfully completed three or more similar type jobs within the last 5 years.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Materials shall be delivered in the manufacturer's unopened containers. Materials delivered and placed in storage shall be provided with protection from weather, humidity, dirt, dust and other contaminants. The Contracting Officer may reject insulation material and supplies that become dirty, dusty, wet, or contaminated by some other means. Packages or standard containers of insulation, jacket material, cements, adhesives, and coatings delivered for use, and samples required for approval shall have manufacturer's stamp or label attached giving the name of the manufacturer and brand, and a description of the material, date codes, and approximate shelf life (if applicable). Insulation packages and containers shall be asbestos free.

1.7 COORDINATION

- a. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide materials which are the standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Submit a complete list of materials, including manufacturer's descriptive technical literature, performance data, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. The product number, k-value, thickness and furnished accessories including adhesives, sealants and jackets for each mechanical system requiring insulation shall be included. The product data must be copyrighted, have an identifying or publication number, and shall have been published prior to the issuance date of this solicitation. Materials furnished under this section shall be submitted together in a booklet.

2.1.1 Insulation System

Provide insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA National Insulation Standards plates as supplemented by this specification. Provide field-applied insulation for heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air distribution systems and piping systems that are located within, on, under, and adjacent to buildings; and for plumbing systems. Provide CFC and HCFC free insulation.

2.1.2 Surface Burning Characteristics

Unless otherwise specified, insulation must have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flame spread, and smoke developed indexes, shall be determined by ASTM E84 or UL 723. Test insulation in the same density and installed thickness as the material to be used in the actual construction. Prepare and mount test specimens according to ASTM E2231.

2.2 MATERIALS

Provide insulation that meets or exceeds the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1 - IP. Insulation exterior shall be cleanable, grease resistant, non-flaking and non-peeling. Materials shall be compatible and shall not contribute to corrosion, soften, or otherwise attack surfaces to which applied in either wet or dry state. Materials to be used on stainless steel surfaces shall meet ASTM C795 requirements. Calcium silicate shall not be used on cold water systems. Materials shall be asbestos free. Provide product recognized under UL 94 (if containing plastic) and listed in FM APP GUIDE.

2.2.1 Adhesives

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168 (HVAC duct sealants must meet limit requirements of "Other" category within SCAQMD Rule 1168 sealants table). Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content

requirements of GS-36. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for adhesives.

2.2.1.1 Mineral Fiber Insulation Cement

Cement shall be in accordance with ASTM C195.

2.2.1.2 Lagging Adhesive

Lagging is the material used for thermal insulation, especially around a cylindrical object. This may include the insulation as well as the cloth/material covering the insulation. To resist mold/mildew, lagging adhesive shall meet ASTM D5590 with 0 growth rating. Lagging adhesives shall be nonflammable and fire-resistant and shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Adhesive shall be MIL-A-3316, Class 1, pigmented white or red and be suitable for bonding fibrous glass cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for bonding cotton brattice cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for sealing edges of and bonding glass tape to joints of fibrous glass board; for bonding lagging cloth to thermal insulation; or Class 2 for attaching fibrous glass insulation to metal surfaces. Lagging adhesives shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for pipe and duct insulation.

2.2.1.3 Contact Adhesive

Adhesives may be any of, but not limited to, the neoprene based, rubber based, or elastomeric type that have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. The adhesive shall not adversely affect, initially or in service, the insulation to which it is applied, nor shall it cause any corrosive effect on metal to which it is applied. Any solvent dispersing medium or volatile component of the adhesive shall have no objectionable odor and shall not contain any benzene or carbon tetrachloride. The dried adhesive shall not emit nauseous, irritating, or toxic volatile matters or aerosols when the adhesive is heated to any temperature up to 212 degrees F. The dried adhesive shall be nonflammable and fire resistant. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179, Type II, Class I. Provide product listed in FM APP GUIDE.

2.2.1.4 FSK Jacket Adhesive

Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

- a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- c. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
- d. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from

Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.2.1.5 Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive

Comply with MIL-A-24179, Type I, Class I.

2.2.2 Caulking

ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use A.

2.2.3 Corner Angles

Nominal 0.016 inch aluminum 1 by 1 inch with factory applied kraft backing. Aluminum shall be ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3105, or 5005.

2.2.4 Fittings

Fabricated Fittings are the prefabricated fittings for flexible elastomeric pipe insulation systems in accordance with ASTM C1710. Together with the flexible elastomeric tubes, they provide complete system integrity for retarding heat gain and controlling condensation drip from refrigeration systems. Flexible elastomeric, fabricated fittings provide thermal protection (0.25 k) and condensation resistance (0.05 Water Vapor Transmission factor). For satisfactory performance, properly installed protective vapor retarder/barriers and vapor stops shall be used on high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications to reduce movement of moisture through or around the insulation to the colder interior surface.

2.2.5 Finishing Cement

ASTM C450: Mineral fiber hydraulic-setting thermal insulating and finishing cement. All cements that may come in contact with Austenitic stainless steel must comply with ASTM C795.

2.2.6 Fibrous Glass Cloth and Glass Tape

Fibrous glass cloth, with 20X20 maximum mesh size, and glass tape shall have maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Tape shall be 4 inch wide rolls. Class 3 tape shall be 4.5 ounces/square yard. Elastomeric Foam Tape: Black vapor-retarder foam tape with acrylic adhesive containing an anti-microbial additive.

2.2.7 Flexible Elastomeric Insulation

Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II for sheet materials.

2.2.8 Staples

Outward clinching type monel ASTM A167, Type 304 or 316 stainless steel.

2.2.9 Jackets

2.2.9.1 Aluminum Jackets

Aluminum jackets shall be corrugated, embossed or smooth sheet, 0.016 inch nominal thickness; ASTM B209, Temper H14, Temper H16, Alloy 3003, 5005,

or 3105. Corrugated aluminum jacket shall not be used outdoors. Aluminum jacket securing bands shall be Type 304 stainless steel, 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide for pipe under 12 inch diameter and 3/4 inch wide for pipe over 12 inch and larger diameter. Aluminum jacket circumferential seam bands shall be 2 by 0.016 inch aluminum matching jacket material. Bands for insulation below ground shall be 3/4 by 0.020 inch thick stainless steel, or fiberglass reinforced tape. The jacket may, at the option of the Contractor, be provided with a factory fabricated Pittsburgh or "Z" type longitudinal joint. When the "Z" joint is used, the bands at the circumferential joints shall be designed by the manufacturer to seal the joints and hold the jacket in place.

2.2.9.2 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Jackets

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacket and fitting covers shall have high impact strength, ultraviolet (UV) resistant rating or treatment and moderate chemical resistance with minimum thickness 0.030 inch.

2.2.9.3 Vapor Barrier/Weatherproofing Jacket

Vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket shall be laminated self-adhesive, greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or greater than 8 ply (minimum 2.9 mils adhesive); with 0.0000 permeability when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M, using the water transmission rate test method; heavy duty, white or natural; and UV resistant. Flexible Elastomeric exterior foam with factory applied, UV Jacket made with a cold weather acrylic adhesive. Construction of laminate designed to provide UV resistance, high puncture, tear resistance and excellent Water Vapor Transmission (WVT) rate.

2.2.9.4 Vapor Barrier/Vapor Retarder

Apply the following criteria to determine which system is required.

- a. On ducts, piping and equipment operating below 95 degrees F or located outside shall be equipped with a vapor barrier.
- b. Ducts, pipes and equipment that are located inside and that always operate above 95 degrees F shall be installed with a vapor retarder where required as stated in paragraph VAPOR RETARDER REQUIRED.

2.2.10 Vapor Retarder Required

ASTM C921, Type I, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except concealed ductwork, where a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Minimum tensile strength, 35 pounds/inch width. ASTM C921, Type II, minimum puncture resistance 25 Beach units, tensile strength minimum 20 pounds/inch width. Jackets used on insulation exposed in finished areas shall have white finish suitable for painting without sizing. Based on the application, insulation materials that require manufacturer or fabricator applied pipe insulation jackets are cellular glass, when all joints are sealed with a vapor barrier mastic, and mineral fiber. All non-metallic jackets shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flexible elastomerics require (in addition to vapor barrier skin) vapor retarder jacketing for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

2.2.10.1 White Vapor Retarder All Service Jacket (ASJ)

ASJ is for use on hot/cold pipes, ducts, or equipment indoors or outdoors if covered by a suitable protective jacket. The product shall meet all physical property and performance requirements of ASTM C1136, Type I, except the burst strength shall be a minimum of 85 psi. ASTM D2863 Limited Oxygen Index (LOI) shall be a minimum of 31.

In addition, neither the outer exposed surface nor the inner-most surface contacting the insulation shall be paper or other moisture-sensitive material. The outer exposed surface shall be white and have an emittance of not less than 0.80. The outer exposed surface shall be paintable.

2.2.10.2 Field-Applied Jackets

- a. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- b. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.2.10.3 Tapes

- a. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - (1) Width: 3 inches.
 - (2) Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - (3) Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - (4) Elongation: 2 percent.
 - (5) Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - (6) FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

2.2.10.4 Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier Mastic Coatings

2.2.10.4.1 Vapor Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be self adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed white jacket for use on hot/cold pipes. Permeability shall be less than 0.02 when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M. Products shall meet UL 723 or ASTM E84 flame and smoke requirements and shall be UV resistant.

2.2.10.4.2 Vapor Retarder

The vapor retarder coating shall be fire and water resistant and appropriately selected for either outdoor or indoor service. Color shall be white. The water vapor permeance of the compound shall be in accordance with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions. The coating shall be nonflammable, fire resistant type. To resist mold/mildew, coating shall meet ASTM D5590 with 0 growth rating. Coating shall meet MIL-PRF-19565 Type II (if selected for indoor service) and be Qualified Products Database listed. All other application

and service properties shall be determined pursuant to ASTM C647.

2.2.10.5 Laminated Film Vapor Retarder

ASTM C1136, Type I, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except concealed ductwork; where Type II, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Vapor retarder shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flexible Elastomeric exterior foam with factory applied UV Jacket. Construction of laminate designed to provide UV resistance, high puncture, tear resistance and an excellent WVT rate.

2.2.10.6 Vapor Barrier/Weather Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be greater than 3 ply self adhesive laminate -white vapor barrier jacket- superior performance (less than 0.0000 permeability when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M). Vapor barrier shall meet UL 723 or ASTM E84 25 flame and 50 smoke requirements; and UV resistant. Minimum burst strength 185 psi in accordance with ISO 2758. Tensile strength 68 lb/inch width (PSTC-1000). Tape shall be as specified for laminated film vapor barrier above.

2.2.11 Vapor Retarder Not Required

ASTM C921, Type II, Class D, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except ductwork, where Type IV, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.10, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Jacket shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.2.12 Wire

Soft annealed ASTM A580/A580M Type 302, 304 or 316 stainless steel, 16 or 18 gauge.

2.2.13 Insulation Bands

Insulation bands shall be 1/2 inch wide; 26 gauge stainless steel.

2.2.14 Insulation Pins and Hangers

a. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

- (1) Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
- (2) Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- (3) Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and

substrates.

- b. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

- (1) Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

2.2.14.1 Sealants

- a. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

- (1) Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - (2) Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - (3) Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - (4) Color: Aluminum.

2.2.15 Sealants

Sealants shall be chosen from the butyl polymer type, the styrene-butadiene rubber type, or the butyl type of sealants. Sealants shall have a maximum permeance of 0.02 perms based on Procedure B for ASTM E96/E96M, and a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.3 PIPE INSULATION SYSTEMS

Conform insulation materials to Table 1 and minimum insulation thickness as listed in Table 2 and meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1 - IP. Limit pipe insulation materials to those listed herein and meeting the following requirements:

2.3.1 Aboveground Cold Pipeline (-30 to 60 deg. F)

Insulation for outdoor, indoor, exposed or concealed applications, shall be as follows:

2.3.1.1 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Closed-cell, foam- or expanded-rubber materials containing anti-microbial additive, complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Grade 1, Type I or II. Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials. Type II, Grade 1, for sheet materials. Type I and II shall have vapor retarder/vapor barrier skin on one or both sides of the insulation, and require an additional exterior vapor retarder covering for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

2.3.2 Aboveground Hot Pipeline (Above 60 deg. F)

Insulation for outdoor, indoor, exposed or concealed applications shall meet the following requirements. Supply the insulation with manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket/vapor barrier.

2.3.2.1 Mineral Fiber

ASTM C547, Types I, II or III, supply the insulation with manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket.

2.3.2.2 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Closed-cell, foam- or expanded-rubber materials containing anti-microbial additive, complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Grade 1, Type I or II to 220 degrees F service. Type I for tubular materials. Type II for sheet materials.

2.4 DUCT INSULATION SYSTEMS

2.4.1 Field Applied Insulation

Provide insulation according to manufacturer's duct and insulation recommendations for insulation with insulation manufacturer's standard reinforced fire-retardant vapor barrier, with identification of installed thermal resistance (R) value and out-of-package R value.

2.4.1.1 Rigid Insulation (Duct Board)

Calculate the minimum thickness in accordance with ASHRAE 90.1.

- a. Rigid Insulation (Ducts In Mechanical Room outside and in warehouse area.

Rigid mineral fiber in accordance with ASTM C612, Class 2 (maximum surface temperature 400 deg F), 6 pcf per average, 1-1/2 inch thick, Type IA, IB, II, III, IV.

2.4.1.2 Mineral-Fiber Insulation

Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin 0.75 pcf per average, 1-1/2 in thick. Comply with ASTM C553 Type II ASTM C1290, Type III. Provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket.

2.4.1.3 Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation

Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket.

2.4.2 Duct Insulation Jackets

2.4.2.1 All-Purpose Jacket

Provide insulation with insulation manufacturer's standard reinforced fire-retardant jacket with or without integral vapor barrier as required by the service. In warehouse and mechanical room locations, provide jacket with a white surface suitable for field painting.

2.4.2.2 Metal Jackets (Ducts Outside)

2.4.2.2.1 Aluminum Jackets

ASTM B209, Temper H14, minimum thickness of 27 gauge (0.016 inch), with

factory-applied polyethylene and kraft paper moisture barrier on inside surface. Provide smooth surface jackets for jacket outside dimension 8 inches and larger. Provide corrugated surface jackets for jacket outside dimension 8 inches and larger. Provide stainless steel bands, minimum width of 1/2 inch.

2.4.2.3 Vapor Barrier/Weatherproofing Jacket

Vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket shall be laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or greater than 8 ply (minimum 2.9 mils adhesive), heavy duty white or natural).

2.4.3 Weatherproof Duct Insulation

Provide ASTM C534/C534M Grade 1, Type II, flexible elastomeric cellular insulation, and weatherproofing as specified in manufacturer's instruction. Multi-ply, Polymeric Blend Laminate Jacketing: Construction of laminate designed to provide UV resistance, high puncture, tear resistance and an excellent WVT rate.

2.5 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SYSTEMS

Insulate equipment and accessories as specified in Tables 5 and 6. Increase the specified insulation thickness for equipment where necessary to equal the thickness of angles or other structural members to make a smooth, exterior surface.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION - GENERAL

Apply insulation to unheated and uncooled piping and equipment. Do not compress flexible elastomeric cellular insulation at joists, studs, columns, ducts, and hangers. The insulation must not pull apart after a one hour period; replace any insulation found to pull apart after one hour.

3.1.1 Installation

Except as otherwise specified, material shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions. Insulation materials shall not be applied until tests specified in other sections of this specification are completed. Material such as rust, scale, dirt and moisture shall be removed from surfaces to receive insulation. Insulation shall be kept clean and dry. Insulation shall not be removed from its shipping containers until the day it is ready to use and shall be returned to like containers or equally protected from dirt and moisture at the end of each workday. Insulation that becomes dirty shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to use. If insulation becomes wet or if cleaning does not restore the surfaces to like new condition, the insulation will be rejected, and shall be immediately removed from the jobsite. Joints shall be staggered on multi layer insulation. Mineral fiber thermal insulating cement shall be mixed with demineralized water when used on stainless steel surfaces. Insulation, jacketing and accessories shall be installed in accordance with MICA Insulation Stds plates except where modified herein or on the drawings.

3.1.2 Firestopping

Where pipes and ducts pass through fire walls, fire partitions, above grade floors, and fire rated chase walls, the penetration shall be sealed with fire stopping materials as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING. The protection of ducts at point of passage through firewalls must be in accordance with NFPA 90A and/or NFPA 90B. All other penetrations, such as piping, conduit, and wiring, through firewalls must be protected with a material or system of the same hourly rating that is listed by UL, FM, or a NRTL.

3.1.3 Installation of Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Install flexible elastomeric cellular insulation with seams and joints sealed with rubberized contact adhesive. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall not be used on surfaces greater than 220 degrees F. Stagger seams when applying multiple layers of insulation. Protect insulation exposed to weather and not shown to have vapor barrier weatherproof jacketing with two coats of UV resistant finish or PVC or metal jacketing as recommended by the manufacturer after the adhesive is dry and cured.

3.1.3.1 Adhesive Application

Apply a brush coating of adhesive to both butt ends to be joined and to both slit surfaces to be sealed. Allow the adhesive to set until dry to touch but tacky under slight pressure before joining the surfaces. Insulation seals at seams and joints shall not be capable of being pulled apart one hour after application. Insulation that can be pulled apart one hour after installation shall be replaced.

3.1.3.2 Adhesive Safety Precautions

Use natural cross-ventilation, local (mechanical) pickup, and/or general area (mechanical) ventilation to prevent an accumulation of solvent vapors, keeping in mind the ventilation pattern must remove any heavier-than-air solvent vapors from lower levels of the workspaces. Gloves and spectacle-type safety glasses are recommended in accordance with safe installation practices.

3.1.4 Welding

No welding shall be done on piping, duct or equipment without written approval of the Contracting Officer. The capacitor discharge welding process may be used for securing metal fasteners to duct.

3.1.5 Pipes/Ducts/Equipment That Require Insulation

Insulation is required on all pipes, ducts, or equipment, except for omitted items as specified.

3.2 PIPE INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

Install pipe insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA Insulation Std's plates as supplemented by the manufacturer's published installation instructions.

3.2.1 Pipe Insulation

3.2.1.1 General

Pipe insulation shall be installed on aboveground hot and cold pipeline systems as specified below to form a continuous thermal retarder/barrier, including straight runs, fittings and appurtenances unless specified otherwise. Installation shall be with full length units of insulation and using a single cut piece to complete a run. Cut pieces or scraps abutting each other shall not be used. Pipe insulation shall be omitted on the following:

- a. Pipe used solely for fire protection.
- b. Chromium plated pipe to plumbing fixtures. However, fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall have the hot water supply and drain, including the trap, insulated where exposed.
- c. Sanitary drain lines.
- d. Air chambers.
- e. Adjacent insulation.
- f. ASME stamps.
- g. Access plates of fan housings.
- h. Cleanouts or handholes.

3.2.1.2 Pipes Passing Through Walls, Roofs, and Floors

Pipe insulation shall be continuous through the sleeve.

Provide an aluminum jacket or vapor barrier/weatherproofing self adhesive jacket (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, greater than 3 ply standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed with factory applied moisture retarder over the insulation wherever penetrations require sealing.

3.2.1.2.1 Penetrate Interior Walls

The aluminum jacket or vapor barrier/weatherproofing - self adhesive jacket (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed shall extend 2 inches beyond either side of the wall and shall be secured on each end with a band.

3.2.1.2.2 Penetrating Exterior Walls

Continue the aluminum jacket required for pipe exposed to weather through the sleeve to a point 2 inches beyond the interior surface of the wall.

3.2.1.2.3 Penetrating Roofs

Insulate pipe as required for interior service to a point flush with the top of the flashing and sealed with flashing sealant. Tightly butt the insulation for exterior application to the top of flashing and interior insulation. Extend the exterior aluminum jacket 2 inches down beyond the

end of the insulation to form a counter flashing. Seal the flashing and counter flashing underneath with metal jacketing/flashing sealant.

3.2.1.2.4 Hot Water Pipes Supplying Lavatories or Other Similar Heated Service

Terminate the insulation on the backside of the finished wall. Protect the insulation termination with two coats of vapor barrier coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch applied with glass tape embedded between coats (if applicable). Extend the coating out onto the insulation 2 inches and seal the end of the insulation. Overlap glass tape seams 1 inch. Caulk the annular space between the pipe and wall penetration with approved fire stop material. Cover the pipe and wall penetration with a properly sized (well fitting) escutcheon plate. The escutcheon plate shall overlap the wall penetration at least 3/8 inches.

3.2.1.2.5 Domestic Cold Water Pipes Supplying Lavatories or Other Similar Cooling Service

Terminate the insulation on the finished side of the wall (i.e., insulation must cover the pipe throughout the wall penetration). Protect the insulation with two coats of weather barrier mastic (breather emulsion type weatherproof mastic impermeable to water and permeable to air) with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch. Extend the mastic out onto the insulation 2 inches and shall seal the end of the insulation. The annular space between the outer surface of the pipe insulation and caulk the wall penetration with an approved fire stop material having vapor retarder properties. Cover the pipe and wall penetration with a properly sized (well fitting) escutcheon plate. The escutcheon plate shall overlap the wall penetration by at least 3/8 inches.

3.2.1.3 Pipes Passing Through Hangers

Insulation, whether hot or cold application, shall be continuous through hangers. All horizontal pipes 2 inches and smaller shall be supported on hangers with the addition of a Type 40 protection shield to protect the insulation in accordance with MSS SP-58. Whenever insulation shows signs of being compressed, or when the insulation or jacket shows visible signs of distortion at or near the support shield, insulation inserts as specified below for piping larger than 2 inches shall be installed, or factory insulated hangers (designed with a load bearing core) can be used.

3.2.1.3.1 Horizontal Pipes Larger Than 2 Inches at 60 Degrees F and Above

Supported on hangers in accordance with MSS SP-58, and Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

3.2.1.3.2 Horizontal Pipes Larger Than 2 Inches and Below 60 Degrees F

Supported on hangers with the addition of a Type 40 protection shield in accordance with MSS SP-58. An insulation insert of cellular glass, prefabricated insulation pipe hangers, or perlite above 80 degrees F shall be installed above each shield. The insert shall cover not less than the bottom 180-degree arc of the pipe. Inserts shall be the same thickness as the insulation, and shall extend 2 inches on each end beyond the protection shield. When insulation inserts are required in accordance with the above, and the insulation thickness is less than 1 inch, wooden or cork dowels or blocks may be installed between the pipe and the shield to prevent the weight of the pipe from crushing the insulation, as an

option to installing insulation inserts. The insulation jacket shall be continuous over the wooden dowel, wooden block, or insulation insert.

3.2.1.3.3 Vertical Pipes

Supported with either Type 8 or Type 42 riser clamps with the addition of two Type 40 protection shields in accordance with MSS SP-58 covering the 360-degree arc of the insulation. An insulation insert of cellular glass or calcium silicate shall be installed between each shield and the pipe. The insert shall cover the 360-degree arc of the pipe. Inserts shall be the same thickness as the insulation, and shall extend 2 inches on each end beyond the protection shield. When insulation inserts are required in accordance with the above, and the insulation thickness is less than 1 inch, wooden or cork dowels or blocks may be installed between the pipe and the shield to prevent the hanger from crushing the insulation, as an option instead of installing insulation inserts. The insulation jacket shall be continuous over the wooden dowel, wooden block, or insulation insert. The vertical weight of the pipe shall be supported with hangers located in a horizontal section of the pipe. When the pipe riser is longer than 30 feet, the weight of the pipe shall be additionally supported with hangers in the vertical run of the pipe that are directly clamped to the pipe, penetrating the pipe insulation. These hangers shall be insulated and the insulation jacket sealed as indicated herein for anchors in a similar service.

3.2.1.3.4 Inserts

Covered with a jacket material of the same appearance and quality as the adjoining pipe insulation jacket, overlap the adjoining pipe jacket 1-1/2 inches, and seal as required for the pipe jacket. The jacket material used to cover inserts in flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall conform to ASTM C1136, Type 1, and is allowed to be of a different material than the adjoining insulation material.

3.2.1.4 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Pipe Insulation

Flexible elastomeric cellular pipe insulation shall be tubular form for pipe sizes 6 inches and less. Grade 1, Type II sheet insulation used on pipes larger than 6 inches shall not be stretched around the pipe. On pipes larger than 12 inches, the insulation shall be adhered directly to the pipe on the lower 1/3 of the pipe. Seams shall be staggered when applying multiple layers of insulation. Sweat fittings shall be insulated with miter-cut pieces the same size as on adjacent piping. Screwed fittings shall be insulated with sleeved fitting covers fabricated from miter-cut pieces and shall be overlapped and sealed to the adjacent pipe insulation. Type II requires an additional exterior vapor retarder/barrier covering for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

3.2.1.5 Pipes in high abuse areas.

In high abuse areas such as janitor closets and traffic areas in warehouse, equipment rooms, and mechanical rooms, provide welded PVC, aluminum or flexible laminate cladding (comprised of elastomeric, plastic or metal foil laminate) laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket, - less than 0.0000 permeability; (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed) aluminum jackets shall be utilized. Pipe insulation to the 6 foot level shall be protected.

3.2.1.6 Pipe Insulation Material and Thickness

Pipe insulation materials must be as listed in Table 1 and must meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1 - IP.

TABLE 1					
Insulation Material for Piping					
Service					
	Material	Specification	Type	Class	VR/VB Req'd
Cold Domestic Water Piping, Makeup Water & Drinking Fountain Drain Piping					
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Hot Domestic Water Supply & Recirculating Piping (Max 200 F)					
	Mineral Fiber	ASTM C547	I	1	No
Refrigerant Suction Piping (35 degrees F nominal)					
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Exposed Lavatory Drains, Exposed Domestic Water Piping & Drains to Areas for Handicapped Personnel					
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Condensate Drain Located Inside Building					
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Note: VR/VB = Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier					

TABLE 2						
Piping Insulation Thickness (inch) Do not use integral wicking material in Chilled drinking water applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.						
Service						
	Material	Tube And Pipe Size (inch)				
		<1	1-<1.5	1.5-<4	4-<8	> or = >8
Cold Domestic Water Piping, Makeup Water & Drinking Fountain Drain Piping						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Hot Domestic Water Supply & Recirculating Piping (Max 200 F)						
	Mineral Fiber	1	1	1	1.5	N/A
Refrigerant Suction Piping (35 degrees F nominal)						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Exposed Lavatory Drains, Exposed Domestic Water Piping & Drains to Areas for Handicapped Personnel						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	0.5	0.5	0.5	N/A	N/A
Condensate Drain Located Inside Building						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A

3.2.2 Aboveground Cold Pipelines

The following cold pipelines for minus 30 to plus 60 degrees F, shall be insulated in accordance with Table 2 except those piping listed in subparagraph Pipe Insulation in PART 3 as to be omitted. This includes but is not limited to the following:

- a. Make-up water.
- b. Horizontal and vertical portions of interior roof drains.
- c. Refrigerant suction lines.
- d. Air conditioner condensate drains.
- e. Exposed lavatory drains and domestic water lines serving plumbing fixtures for handicap persons.
- f. Domestic cold and chilled drinking water.

3.2.2.1 Insulation Material and Thickness

Insulation thickness for cold pipelines shall be determined using Table 2.

3.2.2.2 Field applied Jacket

Insulation shall be covered with a factory applied vapor retarder jacket/vapor barrier or field applied seal welded PVC jacket or greater than 3 ply laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed for use with Mineral Fiber, Insulated Pipe. Insulation inside the building, to be protected with an aluminum jacket or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, Embossed Silver, White & Black, shall have the insulation and vapor retarder jacket installed as specified herein. The aluminum jacket or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, embossed silver, White & Black, shall be installed as specified for piping exposed to weather, except sealing of the laps of the aluminum jacket is not required. In high abuse areas such as janitor closets and traffic areas in equipment rooms, and mechanical rooms, aluminum jackets or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, embossed silver, white & black, shall be provided for pipe insulation to the 6 ft level.

3.2.2.3 Installing Insulation for Straight Runs Hot and Cold Pipe

Apply insulation to the pipe with tight butt joints. Seal all butted joints and ends with joint sealant and seal with a vapor retarder coating, greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape or PVDC adhesive tape.

3.2.2.3.1 Longitudinal Laps of the Jacket Material

Overlap not less than 1-1/2 inches. Provide butt strips 3 inches wide for circumferential joints.

3.2.2.3.2 Laps and Butt Strips

Secure with adhesive and staple on 4 inch centers if not factory self-sealing. If staples are used, seal in accordance with paragraph STAPLES below. Note that staples are not required with cellular glass systems.

3.2.2.3.3 Factory Self-Sealing Lap Systems

May be used when the ambient temperature is between 40 and 120 degrees F during installation. Install the lap system in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Use a stapler only if specifically recommended by the manufacturer. Where gaps occur, replace the section or repair the gap by applying adhesive under the lap and then stapling.

3.2.2.3.4 Staples

Coat all staples, including those used to repair factory self-seal lap systems, with a vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater

than 3 ply laminate jacket - 0.0000 perm adhesive tape. Coat all seams, except those on factory self-seal systems, with vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.

3.2.2.3.5 Breaks and Punctures in the Jacket Material

Patch by wrapping a strip of jacket material around the pipe and secure it with adhesive, staple, and coat with vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape. Extend the patch not less than 1-1/2 inches past the break.

3.2.2.3.6 Penetrations Such as Thermometers

Fill the voids in the insulation and seal with vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.

3.2.2.3.7 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Pipe Insulation

Install by slitting the tubular sections and applying them onto the piping or tubing. Alternately, whenever possible slide un-slit sections over the open ends of piping or tubing. Secure all seams and butt joints and seal with adhesive. When using self seal products only the butt joints shall be secured with adhesive. Push insulation on the pipe, never pulled. Stretching of insulation may result in open seams and joints. Clean cut all edges. Rough or jagged edges of the insulation are not be permitted. Use proper tools such as sharp knives. Do not stretch Grade 1, Type II sheet insulation around the pipe when used on pipe larger than 6 inches. On pipes larger than 12 inches, adhere sheet insulation directly to the pipe on the lower 1/3 of the pipe.

3.2.2.4 Insulation for Fittings and Accessories

- a. Pipe insulation shall be tightly butted to the insulation of the fittings and accessories. The butted joints and ends shall be sealed with joint sealant and sealed with a vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- b. Precut or preformed insulation shall be placed around all fittings and accessories and shall conform to MICA plates except as modified herein: 5 for anchors; 10, 11, and 13 for fittings; 14 for valves; and 17 for flanges and unions. Insulation shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation, including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity. Where precut/preformed is unavailable, rigid preformed pipe insulation sections may be segmented into the shape required. Insulation of the same thickness and conductivity as the adjoining pipe insulation shall be used. If nesting size insulation is used, the insulation shall be overlapped 2 inches or one pipe diameter. Elbows insulated using segments shall conform to MICA Tables 12.20 "Mitered Insulation Elbow". Submit a booklet containing completed MICA Insulation Stds plates detailing each insulating system for each pipe, duct, or equipment insulating system, after approval of materials and prior to applying insulation.
- c. Upon completion of insulation installation on flanges, unions, valves, anchors, fittings and accessories, terminations, seams, joints and

insulation not protected by factory vapor retarder jackets or PVC fitting covers shall be protected with PVDC or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape or two coats of vapor retarder coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch, applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape seams shall overlap 1 inch. The coating shall extend out onto the adjoining pipe insulation 2 inches. Fabricated insulation with a factory vapor retarder jacket shall be protected with either greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or PVDC adhesive tape or two coats of vapor retarder coating with a minimum thickness of 1/16 inch and with a 2 inch wide glass tape embedded between coats. Where fitting insulation butts to pipe insulation, the joints shall be sealed with a vapor retarder coating and a 4 inch wide ASJ tape which matches the jacket of the pipe insulation.

- d. Anchors attached directly to the pipe shall be insulated for a sufficient distance to prevent condensation but not less than 6 inches from the insulation surface.
- e. Insulation shall be marked showing the location of unions, strainers, and check valves.

3.2.2.5 PVC Fitting Covers

At the option of the Contractor, premolded, one or two piece PVC fitting covers may be used in lieu of the vapor retarder and embedded glass tape. Factory precut or premolded insulation segments shall be used under the fitting covers for elbows. Insulation segments shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity. The covers shall be secured by PVC vapor retarder tape, adhesive, seal welding or with tacks made for securing PVC covers. Seams in the cover, and tacks and laps to adjoining pipe insulation jacket, shall be sealed with vapor retarder tape to ensure that the assembly has a continuous vapor seal.

3.2.3 Piping Exposed to Weather

Piping exposed to weather shall be insulated and jacketed as specified for the applicable service inside the building. After this procedure, a laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed aluminum jacket, stainless steel or PVC jacket shall be applied.

PVC jacketing requires no factory-applied jacket beneath it, however an all service jacket shall be applied if factory applied jacketing is not furnished. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation exposed to weather shall be treated in accordance with paragraph INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION in PART 3.

3.2.3.1 Aluminum Jacket

The jacket for hot piping may be factory applied. The jacket shall overlap not less than 2 inches at longitudinal and circumferential joints and shall be secured with bands at not more than 12 inch centers. Longitudinal joints shall be overlapped down to shed water and located at 4 or 8 o'clock positions. Joints on piping 60 degrees F and below shall be sealed with metal jacketing/flashing sealant while overlapping to

prevent moisture penetration. Where jacketing on piping 60 degrees F and below abuts an un-insulated surface, joints shall be caulked to prevent moisture penetration. Joints on piping above 60 degrees F shall be sealed with a moisture retarder.

3.2.3.2 Insulation for Fittings

Flanges, unions, valves, fittings, and accessories shall be insulated and finished as specified for the applicable service. Two coats of breather emulsion type weatherproof mastic (impermeable to water, permeable to air) recommended by the insulation manufacturer shall be applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape overlaps shall be not less than 1 inch and the adjoining aluminum jacket not less than 2 inches. Factory preformed aluminum jackets may be used in lieu of the above. Molded PVC fitting covers shall be provided when PVC jackets are used for straight runs of pipe. PVC fitting covers shall have adhesive welded joints and shall be weatherproof laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability, (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed, and UV resistant).

3.3 DUCT INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

Install duct insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA Insulation Stds plates as supplemented by the manufacturer's published installation instructions. Duct insulation minimum thickness and insulation level must be as listed in Table 3 and must meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1 - IP.

Except for oven hood exhaust duct insulation, corner angles shall be installed on external corners of insulation on ductwork in exposed finished spaces before covering with jacket.

3.3.1 Duct Insulation Minimum Thickness

Duct insulation minimum thickness in accordance with Table 4.

Table 4 - Minimum Duct Insulation (inches)	
Cold Air Ducts (supply and Return)	1.5
Ducts In Mechanical Room, Warehouse, Outside	1.5
Fresh Air Intake Ducts	1.5
Exhaust Ducts	1.5

3.3.2 Insulation and Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier for Cold Air Duct

Insulation and vapor retarder/vapor barrier shall be provided for the following cold air ducts and associated equipment.

- a. Supply ducts.
- b. Return air ducts.
- c. Flexible run-outs (field-insulated).

- d. Plenums.
- e. Fresh air intake ducts.
- f. Ducts exposed to weather.
- g. Combustion air intake ducts.

Insulation for rectangular ducts shall be flexible type where concealed, minimum density 3/4 pcf, and rigid type where exposed, minimum density 3 pcf. Insulation for both concealed or exposed round/oval ducts shall be flexible type, minimum density 3/4 pcf or a semi rigid board, minimum density 3 pcf, formed or fabricated to a tight fit, edges beveled and joints tightly butted and staggered. Insulation for all exposed ducts shall be provided with either a white, paint-able, factory-applied Type I jacket or a field applied vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket coating finish as specified, the total field applied dry film thickness shall be approximately 1/16 inch. Insulation on all concealed duct shall be provided with a factory-applied Type I or II vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket. Duct insulation shall be continuous through sleeves and prepared openings except firewall penetrations. Duct insulation terminating at fire dampers, shall be continuous over the damper collar and retaining angle of fire dampers, which are exposed to unconditioned air and which may be prone to condensate formation. Duct insulation and vapor retarder/vapor barrier shall cover the collar, neck, and un-insulated surfaces of diffusers, registers and grills. Vapor retarder/vapor barrier materials shall be applied to form a complete unbroken vapor seal over the insulation. Sheet Metal Duct shall be sealed in accordance with Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION.

3.3.2.1 Installation on Concealed Duct

- a. For rectangular, oval or round ducts, flexible insulation shall be attached by applying adhesive around the entire perimeter of the duct in 6 inch wide strips on 12 inch centers.
- b. For rectangular and oval ducts, 24 inches and larger insulation shall be additionally secured to bottom of ducts by the use of mechanical fasteners. Fasteners shall be spaced on 16 inch centers and not more than 16 inches from duct corners.
- c. For rectangular, oval and round ducts, mechanical fasteners shall be provided on sides of duct risers for all duct sizes. Fasteners shall be spaced on 16 inch centers and not more than 16 inches from duct corners.
- d. Insulation shall be impaled on the mechanical fasteners (self stick pins) where used and shall be pressed thoroughly into the adhesive. Care shall be taken to ensure vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket joints overlap 2 inches. The insulation shall not be compressed to a thickness less than that specified. Insulation shall be carried over standing seams and trapeze-type duct hangers.
- e. Where mechanical fasteners are used, self-locking washers shall be installed and the pin trimmed and bent over.
- f. Jacket overlaps shall be secured with staples and tape as necessary to ensure a secure seal. Staples, tape and seams shall be coated with a

brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.

- g. Breaks in the jacket material shall be covered with patches of the same material as the vapor retarder jacket. The patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration in all directions and shall be secured with tape and staples. Staples and tape joints shall be sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- h. At jacket penetrations such as hangers, thermometers, and damper operating rods, voids in the insulation shall be filled and the penetration sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- i. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed and flashed with a reinforced vapor retarder coating finish or tape with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating. The coating shall overlap the adjoining insulation and un-insulated surface 2 inches. Pin puncture coatings shall extend 2 inches from the puncture in all directions.
- j. Where insulation standoff brackets occur, insulation shall be extended under the bracket and the jacket terminated at the bracket.

3.3.2.2 Installation on Exposed Duct Work

- a. For rectangular ducts, rigid insulation shall be secured to the duct by mechanical fasteners on all four sides of the duct, spaced not more than 12 inches apart and not more than 3 inches from the edges of the insulation joints. A minimum of two rows of fasteners shall be provided for each side of duct 12 inches and larger. One row shall be provided for each side of duct less than 12 inches. Mechanical fasteners shall be as corrosion resistant as G60 coated galvanized steel, and shall indefinitely sustain a 50 lb tensile dead load test perpendicular to the duct wall.
- b. Form duct insulation with minimum jacket seams. Fasten each piece of rigid insulation to the duct using mechanical fasteners. When the height of projections is less than the insulation thickness, insulation shall be brought up to standing seams, reinforcing, and other vertical projections and shall not be carried over. Vapor retarder/barrier jacket shall be continuous across seams, reinforcing, and projections. When height of projections is greater than the insulation thickness, insulation and jacket shall be carried over. Apply insulation with joints tightly butted. Neatly bevel insulation around name plates and access plates and doors.
- c. Impale insulation on the fasteners; self-locking washers shall be installed and the pin trimmed and bent over.
- d. Seal joints in the insulation jacket with a 4 inch wide strip of tape. Seal taped seams with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.
- e. Breaks and ribs or standing seam penetrations in the jacket material shall be covered with a patch of the same material as the jacket.

Patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration and shall be secured with tape and stapled. Staples and joints shall be sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.

- f. At jacket penetrations such as hangers, thermometers, and damper operating rods, the voids in the insulation shall be filled and the penetrations sealed with a flashing sealant.
- g. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed and flashed with a reinforced vapor retarder coating finish. The coating shall overlap the adjoining insulation and un-insulated surface 2 inches. Pin puncture coatings shall extend 2 inches from the puncture in all directions.
- h. Oval and round ducts, flexible type, shall be insulated with factory Type I jacket insulation with minimum density of 3/4 pcf, attached as in accordance with MICA standards.

3.3.3 Insulation for Warm Air Duct

3.3.3.1 Installation on Exposed Duct

- a. For rectangular ducts, the rigid insulation shall be secured to the duct by the use of mechanical fasteners on all four sides of the duct, spaced not more than 16 inches apart and not more than 6 inches from the edges of the insulation joints. A minimum of two rows of fasteners shall be provided for each side of duct 12 inches and larger and a minimum of one row for each side of duct less than 12 inches.
- b. Duct insulation with factory-applied jacket shall be formed with minimum jacket seams, and each piece of rigid insulation shall be fastened to the duct using mechanical fasteners. When the height of projection is less than the insulation thickness, insulation shall be brought up to standing seams, reinforcing, and other vertical projections and shall not be carried over the projection. Jacket shall be continuous across seams, reinforcing, and projections. Where the height of projections is greater than the insulation thickness, insulation and jacket shall be carried over the projection.
- c. Insulation shall be impaled on the fasteners; self-locking washers shall be installed and pin trimmed and bent over.
- d. Joints on jacketed insulation shall be sealed with a 4 inch wide strip of tape and brushed with vapor retarder coating.
- e. Breaks and penetrations in the jacket material shall be covered with a patch of the same material as the jacket. Patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration and shall be secured with adhesive and stapled.
- f. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed with tape and brushed with vapor retarder coating.
- g. Oval and round ducts, flexible type, shall be insulated with factory Type I jacket insulation, minimum density of 3/4 pcf attached by staples spaced not more than 16 inches and not more than 6 inches from the degrees of joints. Joints shall be sealed in accordance with item "d." above.

3.3.4 Ducts Handling Air for Dual Purpose

For air handling ducts for dual purpose below and above 60 degrees F, ducts shall be insulated as specified for cold air duct.

3.3.5 Duct Test Holes

After duct systems have been tested, adjusted, and balanced, breaks in the insulation and jacket shall be repaired in accordance with the applicable section of this specification for the type of duct insulation to be repaired.

3.3.6 Duct Exposed to Weather

3.3.6.1 Installation

Ducts exposed to weather shall be insulated and finished as specified for the applicable service for exposed duct inside the building. After the above is accomplished, the insulation shall then be further finished as detailed in the following subparagraphs.

3.3.6.2 Fittings

Fittings and other irregular shapes shall be finished as specified for rectangular ducts.

3.3.6.3 Rectangular Ducts

Two coats of weather barrier mastic reinforced with fabric or mesh for outdoor application shall be applied to the entire surface. Each coat of weatherproof mastic shall be 1/16 inch minimum thickness. The exterior shall be a metal jacketing applied for mechanical abuse and weather protection, and secured with screws or vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket less than 0.0000 permeability greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black, and embossed or greater than 8 ply, heavy duty white and natural. Membrane shall be applied overlapping material by 3 inches. No bands or caulking needed-see manufacturing recommend installation instructions.

3.4 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

Install equipment insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA Insulation Stds plates as supplemented by the manufacturer's published installation instructions.

3.4.1 General

Removable insulation sections shall be provided to cover parts of equipment that must be opened periodically for maintenance including vessel covers, fasteners, flanges and accessories. Equipment insulation shall be omitted on the following:

- a. Hand-holes.
- b. Boiler manholes.
- c. Cleanouts.
- d. ASME stamps.

- e. Manufacturer's nameplates.
- f. Duct Test/Balance Test Holes.

3.4.2 Insulation for Cold Equipment

Cold equipment below 60 degrees F: Insulation shall be furnished on equipment handling media below 60 degrees F including the following:

- a. Pumps.
- b. Refrigeration equipment parts that are not factory insulated.
- c. Drip pans under chilled equipment.
- d. Cold water storage tanks.
- e. Water softeners.
- f. Roof drain bodies.
- g. Air handling equipment parts that are not factory insulated.
- h. Expansion and air separation tanks.

3.4.2.1 Insulation Type

Insulation shall be suitable for the temperature encountered. Material and thicknesses shall be as shown in Table 5:

TABLE 5		
Insulation Thickness for Cold Equipment (inches)		
Equipment handling media at indicated temperature		
	Material	Thickness (inches)
35 to 60 degrees F		
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1
1 to 34 degrees F		
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1.5
Minus 30 to 0 degrees F		
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1.75

3.4.2.2 Pump Insulation

- a. Insulate pumps by forming a box around the pump housing. The box shall be constructed by forming the bottom and sides using joints that do not leave raw ends of insulation exposed. Joints between sides and between sides and bottom shall be joined by adhesive with lap strips

for rigid mineral fiber and contact adhesive for flexible elastomeric cellular insulation. The box shall conform to the requirements of MICA Insulation Stds plate No. 49 when using flexible elastomeric cellular insulation. Joints between top cover and sides shall fit tightly forming a female shiplap joint on the side pieces and a male joint on the top cover, thus making the top cover removable.

- b. Exposed insulation corners shall be protected with corner angles.
- c. Upon completion of installation of the insulation, including removable sections, two coats of vapor retarder coating shall be applied with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. A parting line shall be provided between the box and the removable sections allowing the removable sections to be removed without disturbing the insulation coating. Flashing sealant shall be applied to parting line, between equipment and removable section insulation, and at all penetrations.

3.4.2.3 Other Equipment

- a. Insulation shall be formed or fabricated to fit the equipment. To ensure a tight fit on round equipment, edges shall be beveled and joints shall be tightly butted and staggered.
- b. Insulation shall be secured in place with bands or wires at intervals as recommended by the manufacturer but not more than 12 inch centers except flexible elastomeric cellular which shall be adhered with contact adhesive. Insulation corners shall be protected under wires and bands with suitable corner angles.
- c. Cellular glass shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Joints and ends shall be sealed with joint sealant, and sealed with a vapor retarder coating.
- d. Insulation on heads of heat exchangers shall be removable. Removable section joints shall be fabricated using a male-female shiplap type joint. The entire surface of the removable section shall be finished by applying two coats of vapor retarder coating with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch.
- e. Exposed insulation corners shall be protected with corner angles.
- f. Insulation on equipment with ribs shall be applied over 6 by 6 inches by 12 gauge welded wire fabric which has been cinched in place, or if approved by the Contracting Officer, spot welded to the equipment over the ribs. Insulation shall be secured to the fabric with J-hooks and 2 by 2 inches washers or shall be securely banded or wired in place on 12 inch centers.

3.4.2.4 Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier

Upon completion of installation of insulation, penetrations shall be caulked. Two coats of vapor retarder coating or vapor barrier jacket shall be applied over insulation, including removable sections, with a layer of open mesh synthetic fabric embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. Flashing sealant or vapor barrier tape shall be applied to parting line between equipment and removable section insulation.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 09 00

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

02/19, CHG 3: 05/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Provide a complete Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, except for the Front End which is specified in Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION, suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as indicated and shown and in accordance with Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for LNS LonWorks systems or Niagara LonWorks systems and other referenced Sections.

1.1.1 Proprietary Systems

1.1.1.1 Proprietary Systems Exempted From Open Protocol Requirements

The following systems are specifically exempted from the open protocol requirements of Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

- a. A simple split (DX) system consisting of a single indoor unit and a single outdoor unit from the same manufacturer.
- b. Systems in Table I (previously approved by the designer in accordance with UFC 3-410-02).

TABLE I: Systems Approved to Use Proprietary Communications		
System	Px package outdoor/rooftop unit	

1.1.1.2 Implementation of Proprietary Systems

For proprietary systems exempted from open protocol requirements, a proprietary network and DDC hardware communicating via proprietary protocol are permitted. For these systems a building control network meeting the requirements of Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS must also be provided, along with a gateway or interface to connect the proprietary system to the open building control network.

The proprietary system gateway or interface must provide the required functionality as shown on the points schedule. Scheduling, alarming, trending, overrides, network inputs, network outputs and other protocol related requirements must be met on the open protocol control system as

specified in Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

1.1.1.2 System Requirements

Provide systems meeting the requirements this Section and other Sections referenced by this Section, and which have the following characteristics:

- a. The system implements the control sequences of operation shown in the Contract Drawings using DDC hardware to control mechanical and electrical equipment.
- b. The system meet the requirements of this specification as a stand-alone system and does not require connection to any other system.
- c. Control sequences reside in DDC hardware in the building. The building control network is not dependent upon connection to a Utility Monitoring and Control System (UMCS) Front End or to any other system for performance of control sequences. To the greatest extent practical, the hardware performs control sequences without reliance on the building network, unless otherwise pre-approved by the Contracting Officer.
- d. The hardware is installed such that individual control equipment can be replaced by similar control equipment from other equipment manufacturers with no loss of system functionality.
- e. All necessary documentation, configuration information, programming tools, programs, drivers, and other software are licensed to and otherwise remain with the Government such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.
- f. Sufficient documentation and data, including rights to documentation and data, are provided such that the Government or their agents can execute work to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.
- g. Hardware is installed and configured such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, and upgrades of individual hardware without further interaction with the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.

1.1.1.3 End to End Accuracy

Select products, install and configure the system such that the maximum error of a measured value as read from the DDC Hardware over the network is less than the maximum allowable error specified for the sensor or instrumentation.

1.1.1.4 Verification of Dimensions

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.1.5 Drawings

The Government will not indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required on the drawings. Carefully investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work to be performed, arrange such work accordingly, and provide all work necessary to meet such conditions.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified elsewhere:

- a. Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for LonWorks Systems using LNS.
- b. Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC
- c. Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEMS (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION
- d. Section 25 05 11.01 CYBERSECURITY FOR LOW IMPACT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) FACILITY RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS
- e. Section 01 91 00.15 10 TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 135 (2020; Errata 1-2 2021) BACnet-A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks

ASHRAE FUN IP (2021) Fundamentals Handbook, I-P Edition

CONSUMER ELECTRONICS ASSOCIATION (CEA)

CEA-709.1-D (2014) Control Network Protocol Specification

CEA-709.3 (1999; R 2015) Free-Topology Twisted-Pair Channel Specification

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C62.41 (1991; R 1995) Recommended Practice on Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4)
National Electrical Code

NFPA 90A (2021) Standard for the Installation of
Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-410-02 (2018; with Change 2, 2021) Direct Digital
Control for HVAC and Other Building
Control Systems

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 5085-3 (2006; Reprint Nov 20121) Low Voltage
Transformers - Part 3: Class 2 and Class 3
Transformers

1.4 DEFINITIONS

The following list of definitions includes terms used in Sections referenced by this Section and are included here for completeness. The definitions contained in this Section may disagree with how terms are defined or used in other documents, including documents referenced by this Section. The definitions included here are the authoritative definitions for this Section and all Sections referenced by this Section.

After each term the protocol related to that term is included in parenthesis.

1.4.1 Alarm Generation (All protocols)

Alarm Generation is the monitoring of a value, comparison of the value to alarm conditions and the creation of an alarm when the conditions set for the alarm are met. Note that this does NOT include delivery of the alarm to the final destination (such as a user interface) - see paragraph ALARM ROUTING in Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEM (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION.

1.4.2 Application Generic Controller (AGC) (LonWorks)

A device that is furnished with a (limited) pre-established application that also has the capability of being programmed. Further, the ProgramID and XIF file of the device are fixed. The programming capability of an AGC may be less flexible than that of a General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC).

1.4.3 Application Specific Controller (ASC) (LonWorks)

A device that is furnished with a pre-established built in application that is configurable but not re-programmable. An ASC has a fixed factory-installed application program (i.e Program ID) with configurable settings.

1.4.4 Binary (All protocols)

A two-state system where an "ON" condition is represented by a high signal level and an "OFF" condition is represented by a low signal level. 'Digital' is sometimes used interchangeably with 'binary'.

1.4.5 Binding (LonWorks)

The act of establishing communications between CEA-709.1-D devices by associating the output of a device to the input of another so that information is automatically (and regularly) sent.

1.4.6 Building Control Network (BCN) (All protocols)

The network connecting all DDC Hardware within a building (or specific group of buildings).

1.4.7 Building Point of Connection (BPOC) (All protocols)

A FPOC for a Building Control System. (This term is being phased out of use in preference for FPOC but is still used in some specifications and criteria. When it was used, it typically referred to a piece of control hardware. The current FPOC definition typically refers instead to IT hardware.)

1.4.8 Channel (LonWorks)

A portion of the control network consisting of one or more segments connected by repeaters. Channels are separated by routers. The device quantity limitation is dependent on the topology/media and device type. For example, a TP/FT-10 network with locally powered devices is limited to 128 devices per channel.

1.4.9 Configurable (All protocols)

A property, setting, or value is configurable if it can be changed via hardware settings on the device, via the use of engineering software or over the control network from the front end, and is retained through (after) loss of power.

Note this is more stringent than the ASHRAE 135 definition.

1.4.10 Configuration Property (LonWorks)

Controller parameter used by the application which is usually set during installation/testing and seldom changed. For example, the P and I settings of a P-I control loop. Also see paragraph STANDARD CONFIGURATION PROPERTY TYPE (SCPT).

1.4.11 Control Logic Diagram (All protocols)

A graphical representation of control logic for multiple processes that make up a system.

1.4.12 Digital Controller (All protocols)

An electronic controller, usually with internal programming logic and digital and analog input/output capability, which performs control functions.

1.4.13 Direct Digital Control (DDC) (All protocols)

Digital controllers performing control logic. Usually the controller directly senses physical values, makes control decisions with internal programs, and outputs control signals to directly operate switches, valves, dampers, and motor controllers.

1.4.14 Domain (LonWorks)

A grouping of up to 32,385 nodes that can communicate directly with each other. (Devices in different domains cannot communicate directly with each other.) See also Node Address.

1.4.15 Explicit Messaging (LonWorks)

A non-standard and often vendor (application) specific method of communication between devices where each message contains a message code that identifies the type of message and the devices use these codes to determine the action to take when the message is received.

1.4.16 External Interface File (XIF) (LonWorks)

A file which documents a device's external interface, specifically the number and types of LonMark objects, the number, types, directions, and connection attributes of network variables, and the number of message tags.

1.4.17 Field Point of Connection (FPOC) (All protocols)

The FPOC is the point of connection between the UMCS IP Network and the field control network (either an IP network, a non-IP network, or a combination of both). The hardware at this location which provides the connection is generally an IT device such as a switch, IP router, or firewall.

In general, the term "FPOC Location" means the place where this connection occurs, and "FPOC Hardware" means the device that provides the connection. Sometimes the term "FPOC" is used to mean either and its actual meaning (i.e. location or hardware) is determined by the context in which it is used.

1.4.18 Functional Profile (LonWorks)

A standard description, defined by LonMark, of one or more LonMark Objects used to classify and certify devices.

1.4.19 Gateway (All protocols)

A device that translates from one protocol application data format to another. Devices that change only the transport mechanism of the protocol - "translating" from TP/FT-10 to Ethernet/IP over IP for example - are not gateways as the underlying data format does not change. Gateways are also called Communications Bridges or Protocol Translators.

A Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway is one type of Gateway.

1.4.20 General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC) (LonWorks)

Unlike an ASC or AGC, a GPPC is not furnished with a fixed application

program and does not have a fixed ProgramID or XIF file. A GPPC can be (re-)programmed, usually using vendor-supplied software. When a change to the program affects the external interface (and the XIF file) the ProgramID will change.

1.4.21 IEEE 802.3 Ethernet (All protocols)

A family of local-area-network technologies providing high-speed networking features over various media, typically Cat 5, 5e or Cat 6 twisted pair copper or fiber optic cable.

1.4.22 Internet Protocol (IP, TCP/IP, UDP/IP) (All protocols)

A communication method, the most common use is the World Wide Web. At the lowest level, it is based on Internet Protocol (IP), a method for conveying and routing packets of information over various LAN media. Two common protocols using IP are User Datagram Protocol (UDP) and Transmission Control Protocol (TCP). UDP conveys information to well-known "sockets" without confirmation of receipt. TCP establishes connections, also known as "sessions", which have end-to-end confirmation and guaranteed sequence of delivery.

1.4.23 Input/Output (I/O) (All protocols)

Physical inputs and outputs to and from a device, although the term sometimes describes network or "virtual" inputs or outputs. See also "Points".

1.4.24 I/O Expansion Unit (All protocols)

An I/O expansion unit provides additional point capacity to a digital controller

1.4.25 IP subnet (All protocols)

A group of devices which share a defined range IP addresses. Devices on a common IP subnet can share data (including broadcasts) directly without the need for the traffic to traverse an IP router.

1.4.26 Local-Area Network (LAN) (All protocols)

A communication network that spans a limited geographic area and uses the same basic communication technology throughout.

1.4.27 Local Display Panels (LDPs) (All protocols)

A DDC Hardware with a display and navigation buttons, and must provide display and adjustment of points as shown on the Points Schedule and as indicated.

1.4.28 LonMark (LonWorks)

See paragraph LONMARK INTERNATIONAL. Also, a certification issued by LonMark International to CEA-709.1-D devices.

1.4.29 LonMark International (LonWorks)

Standards committee consisting of numerous independent product developers, system integrators and end users dedicated to determining and maintaining

the interoperability guidelines for LonWorks. Maintains guidelines for the interoperability of CEA-709.1-D devices and issues the LonMark Certification for CEA-709.1-D devices.

1.4.30 LonMark Interoperability Association (LonWorks)

See paragraph LONMARK INTERNATIONAL.

1.4.31 LonMark Object (LonWorks)

A collection of network variables, configuration properties, and associated behavior defined by LonMark International and described by a Functional Profile. It defines how information is exchanged between devices on a network (inputs from and outputs to the network).

1.4.32 LonWorks (LonWorks)

The term used to refer to the overall technology related to the CEA-709.1-D protocol (sometimes called "LonTalk"), including the protocol itself, network management, interoperability guidelines and products.

1.4.33 LonWorks Network Services (LNS) (LonWorks)

A network management and database standard for CEA-709.1-D devices.

1.4.34 LonWorks Network Services (LNS) Plug-in (LonWorks)

Software which runs in an LNS compatible software tool, typically a network configuration tool. Device configuration plug-ins provide a user friendly method to edit a device's configuration properties.

1.4.35 MAC Address (All protocols)

Media Access Control address. The physical device address that identifies a device on a Local Area Network.

1.4.36 Monitoring and Control (M&C) Software (All protocols)

The UMCS 'front end' software which performs supervisory functions such as alarm handling, scheduling and data logging and provides a user interface for monitoring the system and configuring these functions.

1.4.37 Network Variable (LonWorks)

See paragraph STANDARD NETWORK VARIABLE TYPE (SNVT).

1.4.38 Network Configuration Tool (LonWorks)

The software used to configure the control network and set device configuration properties. This software creates and modifies the control network database (LNS Database).

1.4.39 Node (LonWorks)

A device that communicates using the CEA-709.1-D protocol and is connected to a CEA-709.1-D network.

1.4.40 Node Address (LonWorks)

The logical address of a node on the network, consisting of a Domain number, Subnet number and Node number. Note that the "Node number" portion of the address is the number assigned to the device during installation and is unique within a subnet. This is not the factory-set unique Node ID (see Node ID).

1.4.41 Node ID (LonWorks)

A unique 48-bit identifier assigned (at the factory) to each CEA-709.1-D device. Sometimes called the Neuron ID.

1.4.42 Operator Configurable (All protocols)

Operator configurable values are values that can be changed from a single common front end user interface across multiple vendor systems.

For Niagara Framework Systems, a property, setting, or value is Operator Configurable when it is configurable from a Niagara Framework Front End.

For LNS LonWorks systems, Operator Configurable is defined the same as Configurable. See paragraph CONFIGURABLE.

1.4.43 Override (All protocols)

Changing the value of a point outside of the normal sequence of operation where the change has priority over the sequence and where there is a mechanism for releasing the change such that the point returns to the normal value. Overrides persist until released or overridden at the same or higher priority but are not required to persist through a loss of power.

Overrides are often used by operators to change values, and generally originate at a user interface (workstation or local display panel).

1.4.44 Packaged Equipment (All protocols)

Packaged equipment is a single piece of equipment provided by a manufacturer in a substantially complete and operable condition, where the controls (DDC Hardware) are factory installed, and the equipment is sold and shipped from the manufacturer as a single entity. Disassembly and reassembly of a large piece of equipment for shipping does not prevent it from being packaged equipment. Package units may require field installation of remote sensors. Packaged equipment is also called a "packaged unit".

Note industry may use the term "Packaged System" to mean a collection of equipment that is designed to work together where each piece of equipment is packaged equipment and there is a network that connects the equipment together. A "packaged system" of this type is NOT packaged equipment; it is a collection of packaged equipment, and each piece of equipment must individually meet specification requirements.

1.4.45 Packaged Unit (All protocols)

See packaged equipment.

1.4.46 Performance Verification Test (PVT) (All protocols)

The procedure for determining if the installed BAS meets design criteria prior to final acceptance. The PVT is performed after installation, testing, and balancing of mechanical systems. Typically the PVT is performed by the Contractor in the presence of the Government.

1.4.47 Polling (All protocols)

A device periodically requesting data from another device.

1.4.48 Points (All protocols)

Physical and virtual inputs and outputs. See also paragraph INPUT/OUTPUT (I/O).

1.4.49 Program ID (LonWorks)

An identifier (number) stored in the device that identifies the node manufacturer, functionality of device (application & sequence), transceiver used, and the intended device usage.

1.4.50 Proportional, Integral, and Derivative (PID) Control Loop (All protocols)

Three parameters used to control modulating equipment to maintain a setpoint. Derivative control is often not required for HVAC systems (leaving "PI" control).

1.4.51 Repeater (All protocols)

A device that connects two control network segments and retransmits all information received on one side onto the other.

1.4.52 Router (All protocols)

A device that connects two CEA-709.1-D channels (in a LonWorks system) and controls traffic between the two by retransmitting signals received from one side onto the other based on the signal destination. Routers are used to subdivide a LonWorks control network and to limit network traffic.

1.4.53 Segment (All protocols)

A 'single' section of a control network that contains no repeaters or routers. There is generally a limit on the number of devices on a segment, and this limit is dependent on the topology/media and device type. For example, in a LonWorks system a TP/FT-10 network with locally powered devices is limited to 64 devices per segment.

1.4.54 Service Pin (LonWorks)

A hardware push-button on a device which causes the device to broadcast a message (over the control network) containing its Node ID and Program ID.

1.4.55 Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT) (LonWorks)

Pronounced skip-it. A standard format type (maintained by LonMark International) for Configuration Properties.

1.4.56 Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT) (LonWorks)

Pronounced snivet. A standard format type (maintained by LonMark International) used to define data information transmitted and received by the individual nodes. The term SNVT is used in two ways. Technically it is the acronym for Standard Network Variable Type, and is sometimes used in this manner. However, it is often used to indicate the network variable itself (i.e. it can mean "a network variable of a standard network variable type"). In general, the intended meaning should be clear from the context.

1.4.57 Subnet (LonWorks)

Consists of a logical grouping of up to 127 nodes, where the logical grouping is defined by node addressing. Each subnet is assigned a number which is unique within the Domain. See also paragraph NODE ADDRESS.

1.4.58 TP/FT-10 (LonWorks)

A Free Topology Twisted Pair network defined by CEA-709.3. This is the most common media type for a CEA-709.1-D control network.

1.4.59 TP/XF-1250 (LonWorks)

A high speed (1.25 Mbps) twisted pair, doubly-terminated bus network defined by the LonMark Interoperability Guidelines. This media is typically used only as a backbone media to connect multiple TP/FT-10 networks.

1.4.60 User-defined Configuration Property Type (UCPT) (LonWorks)

Pronounced u-keep-it. A Configuration Property format type that is defined by the device manufacturer.

1.4.61 User-defined Network Variable Type (UNVT) (LonWorks)

A network variable format defined by the device manufacturer. Note that UNVTs create non-standard communications (other vendor's devices may not correctly interpret it) and may close the system and therefore are not permitted by this specification.

1.4.62 UMCS (All protocols)

UMCS stands for Utility Monitoring and Control System. The term refers to all components by which a project site monitors, manages, and controls real-time operation of HVAC and other building systems. These components include the UMCS "front-end" and all field building control systems connected to the front-end. The front-end consists of Monitoring and Control Software (user interface software), browser-based user interfaces and network infrastructure.

The network infrastructure (the "UMCS Network"), is an IP network connecting multiple building or facility control networks to the Monitoring and Control Software.

1.4.63 UMCS Network (All protocols)

The UMCS Network connects multiple building or facility control networks to the Monitoring and Control Software.

1.5 PROJECT SEQUENCING

TABLE II: PROJECT SEQUENCING lists the sequencing of submittals as specified in paragraph SUBMITTALS (denoted by an 'S' in the 'TYPE' column) and activities as specified in PART 3 EXECUTION (denoted by an 'E' in the 'TYPE' column). TABLE II does not specify overall project milestone and completion dates.

- a. Sequencing for Submittals: The sequencing specified for submittals is the deadline by which the submittal must be initially submitted to the Government. Following submission there will be a Government review period as specified in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES. If the submittal is not accepted by the Government, revise the submittal and resubmit it to the Government within 14 business days of notification that the submittal has been rejected. Upon resubmittal there will be an additional Government review period. If the submittal is not accepted the process repeats until the submittal is accepted by the Government.
- b. Sequencing for Activities: The sequencing specified for activities indicates the earliest the activity may begin.
- c. Abbreviations: In TABLE II the abbreviation AAO is used for 'after approval of' and 'ACO' is used for 'after completion of'.

TABLE II. PROJECT SEQUENCING			
ITEM #	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY OR DEADLINE FOR
1	S	Existing Conditions Report	
2	S	DDC Contractor Design Drawings	
3	S	Manufacturer's Product Data	
4	S	Pre-construction QC Checklist	
5	E	Install Building Control System	AAO #1 thru #4
6	E	Start-Up and Start-Up Testing	ACO #5
7	S	Post-Construction QC Checklist	21 business days ACO #6
8	S	Programming Software Configuration Software Niagara Framework Engineering Tool Niagara Framework Wizards XIF Files LNS Plug-Ins	21 business days ACO #6

TABLE II. PROJECT SEQUENCING			
ITEM #	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY OR DEADLINE FOR
9	S	Draft As-Built Drawings Draft LNS Database	21 business days ACO #6
10	S	Start-Up Testing Report	21 business days ACO #6
11	S	PVT Procedures	21 business days before schedule start of #12 and AAO #10
12	S,E	Execute PVT PVT Testing Activities	AAO #9 and #11As indicated in PART 3 of this Section
13	S	PVT Report	21 business days ACO #12 As indicated in PART 3 of this Section
14	S	Controller Application Programs Controller Configuration Settings Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Backups Final LNS Database	21 business days AAO #13
15	S	Final As-Built Drawings	21 business days AAO #13
16	S	O&M Instructions	AAO #15
17	S	Training Documentation	AAO #10 and 21 business days before scheduled start of #18
18	E	Training	AAO #16 and #17
19	S	Closeout QC Checklist	ACO #18

1.6 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification.

Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

DDC Contractor Design Drawings; G, AE

Final As-Built Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Programming Software; G

Controller Application Programs; G

Configuration Software; G

Controller Configuration Settings; G

Manufacturer's Product Data; G

XIF files; G

Draft LNS Database; G

Final LNS Database; G

LNS Plug-ins; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Pre-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G

Post-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G

Start-Up Testing Report; G

PVT Procedures; G

PVT Report; G

Control Contractor's Performance Verification Testing Plan; G

Equipment Supplier's Performance Verification Testing Plan; G

Endurance Testing Results; G

Performance Verification Test Report; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions; G, AE

Training Documentation; G, AE

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Enclosure Keys; G

Closeout Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G

1.7 DATA PACKAGE AND SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

Technical data packages consisting of technical data and computer software (meaning technical data which relates to computer software) which are specifically identified in this project and which may be defined/required in other specifications must be delivered strictly in accordance with the CONTRACT CLAUSES and in accordance with the Contract Data Requirements List, DD Form 1423. Data delivered must be identified by reference to the particular specification paragraph against which it is furnished. All submittals not specified as technical data packages are considered 'shop drawings' under the Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (FARS) and must contain no proprietary information and be delivered with unrestricted rights.

1.8 SOFTWARE FOR DDC HARDWARE AND GATEWAYS

Provide all software related to the programming and configuration of DDC Hardware and Gateways as indicated. License all Software to the project site. The term "controller" as used in these requirements means both DDC Hardware and Gateways.

1.8.1 Programming Software

For each type of General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC), provide the programming software in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. For each type of Application Generic Controller (AGC) provided as part of without a configuration and programming Wizard, provide the programming and configuration software in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Submit hard copies of user manuals for each software with the software submittal.

Submit Programming Software on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Submit 3 hard copies of the software user manual for each piece of software.

1.8.2 Controller Application Programs

For each General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC), provide copies of the application program as source code compatible with the programming software for that GPPC in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. For each Application Generic Controller (AGC), provide copies of the application program as source code compatible with the programming and configuration tool (LNS plug-in) for that AGC in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Submit Controller Application Programs on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Include on the CD-ROM a list or table of contents clearly indicating which application program is associated with each device. Submit 2 copies of the Controller Application Programs CD-ROM.

1.8.3 LNS Plug-Ins (for LNS-based LonWorks systems)

Provide LNS Plug-ins in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS

DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for each Application Specific Controller and each Application Generic Controller. For LNS Plug-ins distributed under a license, license the Plug-In to the project site. Submit hard copy manuals, if available, for each plug-in provided as part of the LNS- Plug-Ins submittal.

Submit LNS Plug-ins on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Include on the CD-ROM a list or table of contents clearly indicating which files are associated with each device.

1.9 QUALITY CONTROL CHECKLISTS

The QC Checklist for LNS-Based LonWorks Systems in APPENDIX A of this Section must be completed by the Contractor's Chief Quality Control (QC) Representative and submitted as indicated.

The QC Representative must verify each item indicated and initial in the space provided to indicate that the requirement has been met. The QC Representative must sign and date the Checklist prior to submission to the Government.

1.9.1 Pre-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Pre-Construction QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Pre-Construction QC Checklist.

1.9.2 Post-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Post-Construction QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Post-Construction QC Checklist.

1.9.3 Closeout Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Closeout QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Closeout QC Checklist.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Provide products meeting the requirements of Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for LNS LonWorks systems or Niagara LonWorks systems, other referenced Sections, and this Section.

2.1 GENERAL PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

Units of the same type of equipment must be products of a single manufacturer. Each major component of equipment must have the manufacturer's name and address, and the model and serial number in a conspicuous place. Materials and equipment must be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of these and similar products. The standard products must have been in a satisfactory commercial or industrial use for two years prior to use on this project. The two year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. DDC Hardware not meeting the two-year field service requirement is acceptable provided it has been successfully used by the Contractor in a minimum of two previous projects. The equipment items must be supported by a service organization. Items of the same type and purpose must be identical,

including equipment, assemblies, parts and components.

2.2 PRODUCT DATA

Provide manufacturer's product data sheets documenting compliance with product specifications for each product provided under Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS, or this Section. Provide product data for all products in a single indexed compendium, organized by product type.

For all LonWorks hardware: for each manufacturer, model and version (revision) of DDC Hardware indicate the type or types of DDC Hardware the product is being provided as in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS

Submit Manufacturer's Product Data on CD-ROM.

2.2.1 XIF Files

Provide External Interface Files (XIF Files) for DDC Hardware in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Submit external interface files (XIF files) as a technical data package for each model of DDC Hardware provided under this specification. Submit XIF files on CD-ROM.

2.3 OPERATION ENVIRONMENT

Unless otherwise specified, provide products rated for continuous operation under the following conditions:

- a. Pressure: Pressure conditions normally encountered in the installed location.
- b. Vibration: Vibration conditions normally encountered in the installed location.
- c. Temperature:
 - (1) Products installed indoors: Ambient temperatures in the range of 32 to 112 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
 - (2) Products installed outdoors or in unconditioned indoor spaces: Ambient temperatures in the range of -35 to +151 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
- d. Humidity: 10 to 95 percent relative humidity, noncondensing and humidity conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

2.4 WIRELESS CAPABILITY

Products incorporating any wireless capability (including but not limited to radio frequency (RF), infrared and optical), are not allowed.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

Enclosures supplied as an integral (pre-packaged) part of another product are acceptable. Provide two Enclosure Keys for each lockable enclosure on a single ring per enclosure with a tag identifying the enclosure the keys operate. Provide enclosures meeting the following minimum requirements:

2.5.1 Outdoors

For enclosures located outdoors, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 4 requirements.

2.5.2 Mechanical and Electrical Rooms

For enclosures located in mechanical or electrical rooms, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 2 requirements.

2.5.3 Other Locations

For enclosures in other locations including but not limited to occupied spaces, above ceilings, and in plenum returns, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 1 requirements.

2.6 WIRE AND CABLE

Provide wire and cable meeting the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A in addition to the requirements of this specification and referenced specifications.

2.6.1 Terminal Blocks

For terminal blocks which are not integral to other equipment, provide terminal blocks which are insulated, modular, feed-through, clamp style with recessed captive screw-type clamping mechanism, suitable for DIN rail mounting, and which have enclosed sides or end plates and partition plates for separation.

2.6.2 Control Wiring for Binary Signals

For Control Wiring for Binary Signals, provide 18 AWG copper or thicker wire rated for 300-volt service.

2.6.3 Control Wiring for Analog Signals

For Control Wiring for Analog Signals, provide 18 AWG or thicker, copper, single- or multiple-twisted wire meeting the following requirements:

- a. minimum 2 inch lay of twist
- b. 100 percent shielded pairs
- c. at least 300-volt insulation
- d. each pair has a 20 AWG tinned-copper drain wire and individual overall pair insulation
- e. cables have an overall aluminum-polyester or tinned-copper cable-shield tape, overall 20 AWG tinned-copper cable drain wire, and overall cable insulation.

2.6.4 Power Wiring for Control Devices

For 24-volt circuits, provide insulated copper 18 AWG or thicker wire rated for 300 VAC service. For 120-volt circuits, provide 14 AWG or thicker stranded copper wire rated for 600-volt service.

2.6.5 Transformers

Provide UL 5085-3 approved transformers. Select transformers sized so that the connected load is no greater than 80 percent of the transformer rated capacity.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Fully install and test the control system in accordance Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for LNS LonWorks systems or Niagara LonWorks systems, and this Section.

3.1.1 Dielectric Isolation

Provide dielectric isolation where dissimilar metals are used for connection and support. Install control system in a manner that provides clearance for control system maintenance by maintaining access space required to calibrate, remove, repair, or replace control system devices. Install control system such that it does not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

3.1.2 Penetrations in Building Exterior

Make all penetrations through and mounting holes in the building exterior watertight.

3.1.3 Device Mounting Criteria

Install devices in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as indicated and shown. Provide a weathershield for all devices installed outdoors. Provide clearance for control system maintenance by maintaining access space required to calibrate, remove, repair, or replace control system devices. Provide clearance for mechanical and electrical system maintenance; do not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

3.1.4 Labels and Tags

Key all labels and tags to the unique identifiers shown on the As-Built drawings. For labels exterior to protective enclosures provide engraved plastic labels mechanically attached to the enclosure or DDC Hardware. Labels inside protective enclosures may be attached using adhesive, but must not be hand written. For tags, provide plastic or metal tags mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire.

a. Label all Enclosures and DDC Hardware.

b. Tag Airflow measurement arrays (AFMA) with flow rate range for signal

output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMA flow coefficient.

- c. Tag duct static pressure taps at the location of the pressure tap

3.1.5 Surge Protection

3.1.5.1 Power-Line Surge Protection

Protect equipment connected to AC circuits to withstand power-line surges in accordance with IEEE C62.41. Do not use fuses for surge protection.

3.1.5.2 Surge Protection for Transmitter and Control Wiring

Protect DDC hardware against or provided DDC hardware capable of withstanding surges induced on control and transmitter wiring installed outdoors and as shown. Protect equipment against the following two waveforms:

- a. A waveform with a 10-microsecond rise time, a 1000-microsecond decay time and a peak current of 60 amps.
- b. A waveform with an 8-microsecond rise time, a 20-microsecond decay time and a peak current of 500 amperes.

3.2 DRAWINGS AND CALCULATIONS

Provide drawings in the form and arrangement indicated and shown. Use the same abbreviations, symbols, nomenclature and identifiers shown. Assign a unique identifier as shown to each control system element on a drawing. When packaging drawings, group schedules by system. When space allows, it is permissible to include multiple schedules for the same system on a single sheet. Except for drawings covering all systems, do not put information for different systems on the same sheet.

Submit hardcopy drawings on A3 17 by 11 inches sheets, and electronic drawings in PDF format. In addition, submit electronic drawings in editable Excel format for all drawings that are tabular, including but not limited to the Point Schedule and Equipment Schedule.

- a. Submit DDC Contractor Design Drawings consisting of each drawing indicated with pre-construction information depicting the intended control system design and plans. Submit DDC Contractor Design Drawings as a single complete package: 3 copies on CD-ROM.
- b. Submit Draft As-Built Drawings consisting of each drawing indicated updated with as-built data for the system prior to PVT. Submit Draft As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 3 copies on CD-ROM.
- c. Submit Final As-Built Drawings consisting of each drawing indicated updated with all final as-built data. Final As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 3 hard copies and 3 copies on CD-ROM.

3.2.1 Sample Drawings

Sample drawings in electronic format are available at the Whole Building Design Guide page for this section:

<http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-23-09-00>

These drawings may prove useful in demonstrating expected drawing formatting and example content and are provided for illustrative purposes

only. Note that these drawings do not meet the content requirements of this Section and must be completed to meet project requirements.

3.2.2 Drawing Index and Legend

Provide an HVAC Control System Drawing Index showing the name and number of the building, military site, State or other similar designation, and Country. In the Drawing Index, list all Contractor Design Drawings, including the drawing number, sheet number, drawing title, and computer filename when used. In the Design Drawing Legend, show and describe all symbols, abbreviations and acronyms used on the Design Drawings. Provide a single Index and Legend for the entire drawing package.

3.2.3 Thermostat and Occupancy Sensor Schedule

Provide a thermostat and occupancy sensor schedule containing each thermostat's unique identifier, room identifier and control features and functions as shown. Provide a single thermostat and occupancy sensor schedule for the entire project.

3.2.4 Valve Schedule

Provide a valve schedule containing each valve's unique identifier, size, flow coefficient Kv (Cv), pressure drop at specified flow rate, spring range, positive positioner range, actuator size, close-off pressure to torque data, dimensions, and access and clearance requirements data. In the valve schedule include actuator selection data supported by calculations of the force required to move and seal the valve, access and clearance requirements. Provide a single valve schedule for the entire project.

3.2.5 Damper Schedule

Provide a damper schedule containing each damper's unique identifier, type (opposed or parallel blade), nominal and actual sizes, orientation of axis and frame, direction of blade rotation, actuator size and spring ranges, operation rate, positive positioner range, location of actuators and damper end switches, arrangement of sections in multi-section dampers, and methods of connecting dampers, actuators, and linkages. Include the AMCA 511 maximum leakage rate at the operating static-pressure differential for each damper in the Damper Schedule. Provide a single damper schedule for the entire project.

3.2.6 Project Summary Equipment Schedule

Provide a project summary equipment schedule containing the manufacturer, model number, part number and descriptive name for each control device, hardware and component provided under this specification. Provide a single project equipment schedule for the entire project.

3.2.7 Equipment Schedule

Provide system equipment schedules containing the unique identifier, manufacturer, model number, part number and descriptive name for each control device, hardware and component provided under this specification. Provide a separate equipment schedule for each HVAC system.

3.2.8 Occupancy Schedule

Provide an occupancy schedule drawing containing the same fields as the occupancy schedule Contract Drawing with Contractor updated information. Provide a single occupancy schedule for the entire project.

3.2.9 DDC Hardware Schedule

Provide a single DDC Hardware Schedule for the entire project and including following information for each device.

3.2.9.1 DDC Hardware Identifier

The Unique DDC Hardware Identifier for the device.

3.2.9.2 HVAC System

The system "name" used to identify a specific system (the name used on the system schematic drawing for that system).

3.2.9.3 LonWorks Device Information

3.2.9.3.1 Network Address

The LonWorks Domain, Subnet and Node address for the device.

3.2.9.3.2 Unique Node ID

The Unique 48-bit Node ID associated with the device. (Also referred to as the Neuron ID for some devices)

3.2.10 Points Schedule

Provide a Points Schedule in tabular form for each HVAC system, with the indicated columns and with each row representing a hardware point, network point or configuration point in the system.

- a. When a Points Schedule was included in the Contract Drawing package, use the same fields as the Contract Drawing with updated information in addition to the indicated fields.
- b. When Point Schedules are included in the contract package, items requiring contractor verification or input have been shown in angle brackets ("<" and ">"), such as <___> for a required entry or <value> for a value requiring confirmation. Complete all items in brackets as well as any blank cells. Do not modify values which are not in brackets without approval.

Points Schedule Columns must include:

3.2.10.1 Point Name

The abbreviated name for the point using the indicated naming convention.

3.2.10.2 Description

A brief functional description of the point such as "Supply Air Temperature".

3.2.10.3 DDC Hardware Identifier

The Unique DDC Hardware Identifier shown on the DDC Hardware Schedule and used across all drawings for the DDC Hardware containing the point.

3.2.10.4 Settings

The value and units of any setpoints, configured setpoints, configuration parameters, and settings related to each point.

3.2.10.5 Range

The range of values, including units, associated with the point, including but not limited to a zone temperature setpoint adjustment range, a sensor measurement range, occupancy values for an occupancy input, or the status of a safety.

3.2.10.6 Input or Output (I/O) Type

The type of input or output signal associated with the point. Use the following abbreviations for entries in this column:

- a. AI: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Analog Input
- b. AO: The value is output as a hardware (physical) Analog Output
- c. BI: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Binary Input
- d. BO: The value is output as a hardware (physical) Binary Output
- e. PULSE: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Pulse Accumulator Input
- f. NET-IN: The value is provided from the network (generally from another device). Use this entry only when the value is received from another device as part of scheduling or as part of a sequence of operation, not when the value is received on the network for supervisory functions such as trending, alarming, override or display at a user interface.
- g. NET-OUT: The value is provided to another controller over the network. Use this entry only when the value is transmitted to another device as part of scheduling or as part of a sequence of operation, not when the value is transmitted on the network for supervisory functions such as trending, alarming, override or display at a user interface.

3.2.10.7 Object and Property Information

The Object Type and Instance Number for the Object associated with the point. If the value of the point is not in the Present_Value Property, then also provide the Property ID for the Property containing the value of the point. Any point that is displayed at the front end or on an LDP, is trended, is used by another device on the network, or has an alarm condition must be documented here.

3.2.10.8 Primary Point Information: SNVT Name

The name of the SNVT used for the point. Any point that is displayed at

the front end or on an LDP, is trended, is used by another device on the network, or has an alarm condition must be documented here.

3.2.10.9 Primary Point Information: SNVT Type

The SNVT type used by the point. Provide this information whenever SNVT Name is required.

3.2.10.10 Network Data Exchange Information (Gets Data From, Sends Data To)

Provide the DDC Hardware Identifier of other DDC Hardware the point is shared with.

3.2.10.11 Override Information (Object Type and Instance Number)

For each point requiring an Override and not residing in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, indicate if the Object for the point is Commandable or, if the use of a separate Object was specifically approved by the Contracting Officer, provide the Object Type and Instance Number of the Object to be used in overriding the point.

3.2.10.12 Override Information (SNVT Name and Type)

For each point requiring an Override and not residing in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, indicate the SNVT Name and SNVT Type of the network variable used for the override.

3.2.10.13 Trend Object Information

For each point requiring a trend, indicate if the trend is Local or Remote, the trend Object type and the trend Object instance number. For remote trends provide the DDC Hardware Identifier for the device containing the trend Object in the Points Schedule notes.

3.2.10.14 Alarm Information

Indicate the Alarm Generation Type, Event Enrollment Object Instance Number, and Notification Class Object Instance Number for each point requiring an alarm. (Note that not all alarms will have Event Enrollment Objects.)

3.2.10.15 Configuration Information

Indicate the means of configuration associated with each point. For points in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, indicate the point within the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway used to configure the value. For other points:

- a. For Operator Configurable Points indicate Object and Property information (Name, Type, Identifiers) containing the configurable value. Indicate whether the property is writable always, or only when Out_Of_Service is TRUE.
- b. For Configurable Points indicate the Object and Property information as for Operator Configurable points, or identification of the configurable settings from within the engineering software for the device or identification of the hardware settings on the device.
- c. Indicate "Plug-In" if the point is configurable via an LNS plug-in.

Indicate "Niagara Framework Wizard" if the point is configurable via a Niagara Framework Wizard.

- d. If the point is not configurable through an LNS plug-in a Niagara Framework Wizard, indicate the network variable or configuration property used to configure the value.

3.2.11 Riser Diagram

The Riser Diagram of the Building Control Network may be in tabular form, and must show all DDC Hardware and all Network Hardware, including network terminators. For each item, provide the unique identifier, common descriptive name, physical sequential order (previous and next device on the network), room identifier and location within room. A single riser diagram must be submitted for the entire system.

3.2.12 Control System Schematics

Provide control system schematics in the same form as the control system schematic Contract Drawing with Contractor updated information. Provide a control system schematic for each HVAC system.

3.2.13 Sequences of Operation

Provide HVAC control system sequence of operation and control logic diagrams in the same format as the Contract Drawings. Within these drawings, refer to devices by their unique identifiers. Submit sequences of operation and control logic diagrams for each HVAC system.

3.2.14 Controller, Motor Starter and Relay Wiring Diagram

Provide controller wiring diagrams as functional wiring diagrams which show the interconnection of conductors and cables to each controller and to the identified terminals of input and output devices, starters and package equipment. Show necessary jumpers and ground connections and the labels of all conductors. Identify sources of power required for control systems and for packaged equipment control systems back to the panel board circuit breaker number, controller enclosures, magnetic starter, or packaged equipment control circuit. Show each power supply and transformer not integral to a controller, starter, or packaged equipment. Show the connected volt-ampere load and the power supply volt-ampere rating. Provide wiring diagrams for each HVAC system.

3.3 CONTROLLER TUNING

Tune each controller in a manner consistent with that described in the ASHRAE FUN IP and in the manufacturer's instruction manual. Tuning must consist of adjustment of the proportional, integral, and where applicable, the derivative (PID) settings to provide stable closed-loop control. Each loop must be tuned while the system or plant is operating at a high gain (worst case) condition, where high gain can generally be defined as a low-flow or low-load condition. Upon final adjustment of the PID settings, in response to a change in controller setpoint, the controlled variable must settle out at the new setpoint with no more than two (2) oscillations above and below setpoint. Upon settling out at the new setpoint the controller output must be steady. With the exception of naturally slow processes such as zone temperature control, the controller must settle out at the new setpoint within five (5) minutes. Set the controller to its correct setpoint and record and submit the final PID

configuration settings with the O&M Instructions and on the associated Points Schedule.

3.4 START-UP

3.4.1 Start-Up Test

Perform the following startup tests for each control system to ensure that the described control system components are installed and functioning per this specification.

Adjust, calibrate, measure, program, configure, set the time schedules, and otherwise perform all necessary actions to ensure that the systems function as indicated and shown in the sequence of operation and other contract documents.

3.4.1.1 Systems Check

An item-by-item check must be performed for each HVAC system

3.4.1.1.1 Step 1 - System Inspection

With the system in unoccupied mode and with fan hand-off-auto switches in the OFF position, verify that power and main air are available where required and that all output devices are in their failsafe and normal positions. Inspect each local display panel to verify that all displays indicate shutdown conditions.

3.4.1.1.2 Step 2 - Calibration Accuracy Check

Perform a two-point accuracy check of the calibration of each HVAC control system sensing element and transmitter by comparing the value from the test instrument to the network value provided by the DDC Hardware. Use digital indicating test instruments, such as digital thermometers, motor-driven psychrometers, and tachometers. Use test instruments with accuracy at least twice as accurate as the specified sensor accuracy and with calibration traceable to National Institute of Standards and Technology standards. Check one the first check point in the bottom one-third of the sensor range, and the second in the top one-third of the sensor range. Verify that the sensing element-to-DDC readout accuracies at two points are within the specified product accuracy tolerances, and if not recalibrate or replace the device and repeat the calibration check.

3.4.1.1.3 Step 3 - Actuator Range Check

With the system running, apply a signal to each actuator through the DDC Hardware controller. Verify proper operation of the actuators and positioners for all actuated devices and record the signal levels for the extreme positions of each device. Vary the signal over its full range, and verify that the actuators travel from zero stroke to full stroke within the signal range. Where applicable, verify that all sequenced actuators move from zero stroke to full stroke in the proper direction, and move the connected device in the proper direction from one extreme position to the other. For valve actuators and damper actuators, perform the actuator range check under normal system pressures.

3.4.1.2 Weather Dependent Test

Perform weather dependent test procedures in the appropriate climatic

season.

3.4.2 Start-Up Testing Report

Submit 4 copies of the Start-Up Testing Report. The report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package documenting the results of the tests performed and certifying that the system is installed and functioning per this specification, and is ready for the Performance Verification Test (PVT).

3.4.3 Draft LNS Database

Upon completion of the Start-Up Test, submit the Draft LNS Database reflecting the system as installed and configured at the completion of the Start-Up and Start-Up-Testing. The Draft LNS Database must be a complete, fully commissioned LNS database for the complete control network provided under this specification. The Draft LNS database submittal must consist of the entire folder structure of the LNS database (e.g. c:\Lm\DB\{database name}). For versions of LNS which use credits, the provided LNS Database must include all device credits.

Submit two copies of the fully commissioned, valid draft LNS Database (including all LNS credits) as a Technical Data Package. Submit each copy on a CD-ROM and clearly mark the CD-ROM identifying it as the LNS Database for the work covered under this specification and with the date of the most recent database modification.

3.5 PERFORMANCE VERIFICATION TEST (PVT)

3.5.1 PVT Procedures

Prepare PVT Procedures explaining step-by-step, the actions and expected results that will demonstrate that the control system performs in accordance with the sequences of operation, and other contract documents. Submit 4 copies of the PVT Procedures. The PVT Procedures may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.5.1.1 Sensor Accuracy Checks

Include a one-point accuracy check of each sensor in the PVT procedures.

3.5.1.2 Temporary Trending Hardware

Unless trending capability exists within the building control system or the building control system is connected to a UMCS or other system which can perform trending, temporarily install hardware on the building control network to perform trending during the endurance test as indicated. Remove the temporary hardware at the completion of all commissioning activities.

3.5.1.3 Endurance Test

Include a minimum of two-week endurance test as part of the PVT during which the system is operated continuously. Perform Endurance Test prior to functional performing test (as part of the commissioning prerequisites) and post construction.

Use the building control system Trend Log or Trend Log Multiple Objects to trend all points shown as requiring a trend on the Point Schedule for the

entire endurance test. If insufficient buffer capacity exists to trend the entire endurance test, upload trend logs during the course of the endurance test to ensure that no trend data is lost.

Use the building control system Niagara Trend Log Objects to trend all points shown as requiring a trend on the Point Schedule for the entire endurance test. If insufficient buffer capacity exists to trend the entire endurance test, upload trend logs during the course of the endurance test to ensure that no trend data is lost. The PVT must include a methodology to measure and record the network bandwidth usage on each TP/FT-10 channel during the endurance test.

Use the existing trending capabilities or the Temporary Trending Hardware as indicated to trend all points shown as requiring a trend on the Point Schedule for the entire endurance test. The PVT must include a methodology to measure and record the network bandwidth usage on each TP/FT-10 channel during the endurance test.

3.5.1.4 PVT Equipment List

Include in the PVT procedures a control system performance verification test equipment list that lists the equipment to be used during performance verification testing. For each piece of equipment, include manufacturer name, model number, equipment function, the date of the latest calibration, and the results of the latest calibration

3.5.2 PVT Execution

Demonstrate compliance of the control system with the contract documents. Using test plans and procedures approved by the Government, software capable of reading and writing COV Notification Subscriptions, Notification Class Recipient List Properties, event enrollments, demonstrate all physical and functional requirements of the project. Show, step-by-step, the actions and results demonstrating that the control systems perform in accordance with the sequences of operation. Do not start the performance verification test until after receipt of written permission by the Government, based on Government approval of the PVT Plan and Draft As-Builts and completion of balancing. UNLESS GOVERNMENT WITNESSING OF A TEST IS SPECIFICALLY WAIVED BY THE GOVERNMENT, PERFORM ALL TESTS WITH A GOVERNMENT WITNESS. Do not conduct tests during scheduled seasonal off periods of base heating and cooling systems. If the system experiences any failures during the endurance test portion of the PVT, repair the system repeat the endurance test portion of the PVT until the system operates continuously and without failure for the specified endurance test period.

3.5.3 PVT Report

Prepare and submit a PVT report documenting all tests performed during the PVT and their results. Include all tests in the PVT procedures and any additional tests performed during PVT. Document test failures and repairs conducted with the test results.

Submit four copies of the PVT Report. The PVT Report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.5.4 Final LNS Database

Submit a Final LNS Database consisting of the complete, fully commissioned

LNS database for the complete control network provided under this specification. Provide the the entire folder structure of the LNS database (e.g. c:\Lm\DB\{database name}. For versions of LNS which use credits, include all device credits in the provided LNS Database.

Submit two copies of the fully commissioned, valid as-built LNS Database (including all LNS credits) for the complete control network provided under this specification as a Technical Data Package. Submit each copy on CD-ROM and clearly mark the CD-ROM identifying it as the LNS Database for the work covered under this specification and with the date of the most recent database modification.

3.6 PERFORMANCE VERIFICATION TESTING

3.6.1 General

PVT testing must demonstrate compliance of controls work with contract document requirements and must be performed by the Controls Contractor and Equipment Suppliers. No less than 14 calendar days prior to start of controls system installation, meet with the Contracting Office's technical representative (COTR) , the Contractor's QA representative, the Contractor's Controls Contractor representative, and the control system Owner to develop a mutual understanding relate to the details of the PVT work requirements, including required submittals, work schedule, and field quality control.

3.6.2 Performance Verification Testing and Commissioning

PVT testing is a Government quality assurance function that includes systems trending and field tests. Commissioning is a quality control function that is the Commissioning Team's responsibility to the extent required by this contract.

3.6.3 Performance Verification Testing of Equipment with Packaged Controls

Controls Contractor and Equipment Supplier(s) must share and coordinate PVT testing responsibilities for equipment provided with on-board factory packaged controls such as handling unit.

3.6.3.1 Controls Contractor Responsibilities

The Controls Contractor must provide a PVT Plan separate from Equipment Supplier's performance verification testing plan, perform endurance testing, and perform PVT testing concurrent with Equipment Suppliers' testing for equipment provided with on-board factory packaged controls to demonstrate the following:

- a. Equipment enabling and disabling.
- b. Equipment standard and optional control points necessary to accomplish functionality regardless if specified in contract documents or not.
- c. Equipment standard and optional alarms critical to safe operation regardless if specified in contract documents or not.
- d. All control points added by Controls Contractor in addition to onboard factory packaged controls regardless if specified in contract documents or not.

Refer to paragraphs titled "Performance Verification Test Plan" and "Endurance Testing" for additional information.

3.6.3.2 Equipment Supplier Responsibilities

Each Equipment Supplier must provide PVT Plans separate from Controls Contractor's plans and perform PVT testing concurrent with Controls Contractor's testing for their equipment provided with on-board factory packaged controls to demonstrate the following:

- a. Equipment standard and optional control features necessary to accomplish functionality regardless if specified in contract documents or not.
- b. Equipment standard and optional operation modes necessary to accomplish functionality regardless if specified in contract documents or not.
- c. Equipment standard and optional alarm conditions for safe operation regardless if specified in contract documents or not.

Refer to all paragraphs under paragraph titled "Performance Verification Testing" except for section titled "Endurance Testing" for additional information.

3.6.4 Sequencing of Performance Verification Testing Activities

PVT activities must be sequenced with major activities listed below for Test and Balance (TAB) Contractor, Equipment Suppliers, Commissioning Specialists, and others to demonstrate fully functioning systems. Complete the items in TABLE III: SEQUENCING OF PVT TESTING ACTIVITIES as schedule activities or milestones.

TABLE III: SEQUENCING OF PVT TESTING ACTIVITIES	
SEQUENCE	ITEM
1	Submission, review, and approval of Control Contractors PVT Plans.
2	Submission, review, and approval of Equipment Suppliers PVT Plans.
3	Submission, review, and approval of certified final Test and Balance Report.
4	Conduct commissioning functional performance tests.
5	Submission, review, and approval of all of the Commissioning Specialists completed functional performance tests.
6	Request Contracting Officer to allow beginning of Government-witnessed PVT testing.
7	Contracting Officers approval to begin PVT testing.
8	Conduct PVT field work.
9	Governments verbal approval of PVT field work for all systems.

TABLE III: SEQUENCING OF PVT TESTING ACTIVITIES	
SEQUENCE	ITEM
10	Conduct Test and Balance verification field work.
11	Governments written approval of Test and Balance verification field work.
12	Submission, review, and approval of endurance testing.
13	Governments written approval of PVT field work for all systems.
14	Facility acceptance recommendation.
15	Submission, review, and approval of Control Contractors PVT Report.
16	Submission, review, and approval of Equipment Suppliers PVT Report.
17	Conduct applicable re-testing and seasonal testing within 10 months of beneficial occupancy.

3.6.4.1 PVT Testing for Multi-Phase Construction

For air moving systems except outside air systems serving multiple phases, all major activities listed in TABLE III through Government's verbal approval of Test and Balance verification field work can be completed by phase if all ductwork construction is completed for that phase.

For primary systems such as HVAC systems, air systems serving multiple phases, all major activities listed listed in TABLE III through Government's verbal approval of Test and Balance verification field work for all air moving systems served by that primary system for that phase must be completed prior to conducting PVT field work for that primary system.

3.6.5 Control Contractor's Performance Verification Testing Plan

Submit a detailed PVT Plan of the proposed control systems testing in this contract for approval prior to its use. Develop and use a single PVT Plan for each system with a unique control sequence. Systems sharing an identical control sequence can be tested using copies of the PVT Plan intended for these systems.

PVT Plans must include system-based, step-by-step test methods demonstrating system performs in accordance with contract document requirements. The Government may provide sample PVT Plans upon request. PVT Plans must include the following:

- a. Control sequences from contract documents segmented such that each control algorithm, operation mode, and alarm condition is immediately followed by numbered test methods required to initiate a response, expected response, space for comments, and "pass" or "fail" indication for each expected response.
- b. PVT Plans with control sequences from contract documents that are not

segmented into parts will not be accepted.

- c. Indication where assisting personnel are required such as Mechanical Contractor.
- d. Signature and date lines for the Contractor's PVT administrator, Contractor's quality assurance representative, and Contracting Officer's representative acknowledging completion of testing.

3.6.6 Performance Verification Testing Sample Size

PVT testing sample sizes will be as follows:

- a. 100-Percent of the following systems:
 - (1) primary systems including, but not limited to HVAC systems
 - (2) air handling unit systems including all associated fans except for remote exhaust air fans
- b. 30-Percent of each set of systems with a shared identical control sequence for systems such as:
 - (1) air terminal units
 - (2) exhaust air fans
 - (3) terminal equipment such as fan coil units and unit heaters

3.6.6.1 Selection of Systems to Test

For sample sets less than 100-percent, the Government will choose which systems will be tested. The Government may require additional testing if previous testing results are inconsistent or demonstrate improper system control as follows:

- a. An additional 25-percent after five-percent failure rate of first sample set.
- b. 100-percent after any failures occurring in additional sample set.

3.6.7 Conducting Performance Verification Testing

At least 15 days prior to preferred test date, request the Contracting Officer to allow the beginning of Government-witnessed PVT testing. Provide an estimated time table required to perform testing of each system. Furnish personnel, equipment, instrumentation, and supplies necessary to perform all aspects of testing. Testing personnel must be regularly employed in the testing and calibration of control systems. After receipt of Contracting Officer's approval to begin testing, perform PVT testing using project's as-built (shop) control system drawings, project's design drawings, and approved PVT Plans.

During testing, identify deficiencies that do not meet contract document requirements. Deficiencies must be investigated, corrected with corrections documented, and re-tested at a later date following procedures for the initial PVT testing. The Government may require re-testing of any control system components affected by the original failed test.

3.6.8 Endurance Testing

3.6.8.1 General

Conduct endurance testing in conjunction with the PVT to demonstrate control loop stability and accuracy. For all control loops tested, record trend data of the control variables over time, demonstrating that the control loop responds to a sudden change of the control variable set point without excessive overshoot or undershoot. Conduct endurance testing for each system subject to PVT testing. Systems must be operating as normally anticipated during occupancy throughout endurance testing.

Endurance testing results must clearly demonstrate control loop stability and accuracy. Controlled loop outputs must be stable and accurately maintain each setpoint.

3.6.8.2 Hardware

Use hardware provided in this contract for testing for testing if available when endurance testing begins. If unavailable, the Contractor must provide suitable hardware for required testing.

If insufficient buffer capacity exists to trend the entire endurance test, upload trend data during the course of endurance testing to ensure all trend data is retained. Lost trend data will require retesting of all control points for affected system(s).

3.6.8.3 Endurance Testing Results Format

Submit endurance testing results for each tested system in a graphical format complete with clear indication of value(s) for y-axis, value for x-axis, and legend identifying each trended control point. The number of control points contained on a single graph must be such that all control points can be clearly visible. Control points must be logically grouped such that related points appear on a single graph. In addition, submit a separate comma separated value (CSV) file of raw trend data for each trended system. Each trended control point in CSV file must be clearly identified.

For control points recorded based on change of value, change of value for recording data must be clearly identified for each control point.

3.6.8.4 Endurance Testing Start, Duration, and Frequency

Trending of all control points for a given system must start at an identical date and time regardless of the basis of data collection. Duration of all endurance tests must be at least two-week.

Unless specified otherwise for control points recorded based on time, frequency of data collection must be 15-minutes. Frequency of data collection for specific types of control points is as follows:

3.6.8.4.1 Points Trended at One Minute Intervals

- a. Temperature for supply air, return air, mixed air, supply water, and return water
- b. Temperature for outside air, supply air, return air and exhaust air entering and leaving energy recovery device

- c. Flow for supply air, return air, outside air, and HVAC
- d. Flow for exhaust air associated with energy recovery
- e. Relative humidity for outside air and return air
- f. Relative humidity for outside air, supply air, return air and exhaust air entering and leaving energy recovery device
- g. Command and status for control dampers and control valves
- h. Speed for fans and pumps
- i. Pressure for fans and pumps

3.6.8.4.2 Points Trended at 15 Minute Intervals

- a. Temperature and relative humidity for zones
- b. Temperature and relative humidity for outside air not associated with energy recovery
- c. Command and status for equipment
- d. Pressure relative to the outside for facility

3.6.8.5 Trended Control Points

Trended control points for each system must demonstrate each system performs in accordance with contract document requirements. Trended control points must include, but not be limited to, control points listed in contract document points list.

Minimum control points that are required to be trended for selected systems are listed below. These control points must be trended as applicable to this contract in addition to control points necessary to demonstrate systems perform in accordance with contract document requirements and those listed in contract document's points list.

3.6.8.5.1 Air Handling Unit, Heating and Ventilating Unit

- a. Outside air actual dry-bulb temperature
- b. Outside air actual relative humidity
- c. Outside air setpoint and actual airflow
- d. Minimum outside air control damper command
- e. Economizer outside air control damper command
- f. Facility setpoint and actual relative pressure
- g. Return air actual dry-bulb temperature
- h. Return air actual relative humidity
- i. Return air control damper command

- j. Relief air control damper command
- h. Relief air fan actual speed
- i. Mixed air setpoint and setpoint and actual temperature
- j. Preheat coil leaving air setpoint and actual temperature
- k. Preheat coil control actuator command
- l. Cooling coil leaving air setpoint and actual temperature
- m. Cooling coil control valve command
- n. Supply air fan actual speed
- o. Discharge air actual temperature
- p. Supply air fan setpoint and actual static pressure

3.6.8.5.2 Air Terminal Units (VAVs)

- a. Zone setpoint and actual dry-bulb temperature
- b. Zone actual relative humidity
- c. Control damper command
- e. Heating coil command
- f. Airflow actual value
- g. Leaving air actual temperature

3.6.8.6 Endurance Testing Sample Size

Endurance Testing sample sizes were as follows:

- a. 100-Percent of the following systems:
 - (1) primary systems including, but not limited to HVAC systems
 - (2) air handling unit systems including all associated fans except for remote exhaust air fans
 - (3) H&V including all associated fans except for remote exhaust air fans
- b. 20-Percent of each set of systems with a shared identical control sequence for systems such as:
 - (1) air terminal units
 - (2) exhaust air fans
 - (3) terminal equipment such as fan coil units and unit heaters

3.6.8.6.1 Selection of Systems to Test

For sample sets less than 100-percent, the Government will choose which systems will be tested. The Government may require additional testing if previous testing results are inconsistent or demonstrate improper system control as follows:

- a. An additional 25-percent after five-percent failure rate of first sample set.
- b. 100-percent after any failures occurring in additional sample set.

3.6.9 Performance Verification Test Report

Submit a PVT Report after receiving Government's written approval of PVT field work that is intended to document test results and final control system sequences and settings prior to turnover. The PVT Report must contain the following:

- a. Executive summary that briefly discusses results of each system's endurance testing and PVT testing and conclusions for each system.
- b. Endurance testing for each system.
- c. Completed PVT Plan for each system used during testing that includes hand written field notes and participant signatures.
- d. Blank PVT Plan for each system approved prior to testing that is edited to reflect changes occurring during testing. Edits must be typed and must reflect changes to control sequences from contract documents, must reflect changes to numbered test methods required to initiate a response, and must reflect changes to expected response. Only one blank PVT Plan is required for each set of systems sharing an identical control sequence, such as air terminal units, exhaust air fans, fan coil units and unit heaters.
- e. Written certification that the installation and testing of all systems are complete and meet all contract document requirements.

3.7 FINAL LNS DATABASE

Submit a Final LNS Database consisting of the complete, fully commissioned LNS database for the complete control network provided under this specification. Provide the the entire folder structure of the LNS database (e.g. c:\Lm\DB\{database name}). For versions of LNS which use credits, include all device credits in the provided LNS Database.

Submit two copies of the fully commissioned, valid as-built LNS Database (including all LNS credits) for the complete control network provided under this specification as a Technical Data Package. Submit each copy on CD-ROM and clearly mark the CD-ROM identifying it as the LNS Database for the work covered under this specification and with the date of the most recent database modification.

3.8 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) INSTRUCTIONS

Provide HVAC control System Operation and Maintenance Instructions which include:

- a. "Data Package 3" as indicated in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA for each piece of control equipment.
- b. "Data Package 4" as described in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA for all air compressors.
- c. HVAC control system sequences of operation formatted as indicated.
- d. Procedures for the HVAC system start-up, operation and shut-down including the manufacturer's supplied procedures for each piece of equipment, and procedures for the overall HVAC system.
- e. As-built HVAC control system detail drawings formatted as indicated.
- f. Routine maintenance checklist. Provide the routine maintenance checklist arranged in a columnar format, where the first column lists all installed devices, the second column states the maintenance activity or that no maintenance required, the third column states the frequency of the maintenance activity, and the fourth column is used for additional comments or reference.
- g. Qualified service organization list, including at a minimum company name, contact name and phone number.
- h. Start-Up Testing Report.
- i. Performance Verification Test (PVT) Procedures and Report.

Submit 2 copies of the Operation and Maintenance Instructions, indexed and in booklet form. The Operation and Maintenance Instructions may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.9 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Provide services, materials and equipment as necessary to maintain the entire system in an operational state as indicated for a period of one year from the date of final acceptance of the project. Minimize impacts on facility operations.

- a. The integration of the system specified in this section into a Utility Monitoring and Control System must not, of itself, void the warranty or otherwise alter the requirement for the one year maintenance and service period. Integration into a UMCS includes but is not limited to establishing communication between devices in the control system and the front end or devices in another system.
- b. The changing of configuration properties must not, of itself, void the warranty or otherwise alter the requirement for the one year maintenance and service period.

3.9.1 Description of Work

Provide adjustment and repair of the system including the manufacturer's required sensor and actuator (including transducer) calibration, span and range adjustment.

3.9.2 Personnel

Use only service personnel qualified to accomplish work promptly and

satisfactorily. Advise the Government in writing of the name of the designated service representative, and of any changes in personnel.

3.9.3 Scheduled Inspections

Perform two inspections at six-month intervals and provide work required. Perform inspections in June and December. During each inspection perform the indicated tasks:

- a. Perform visual checks and operational tests of equipment.
- b. Clean control system equipment including interior and exterior surfaces.
- c. Check and calibrate each field device. Check and calibrate 50 percent of the total analog inputs and outputs during the first inspection. Check and calibrate the remaining 50 percent of the analog inputs and outputs during the second major inspection. Certify analog test instrumentation accuracy to be twice the specified accuracy of the device being calibrated. Randomly check at least 25 percent of all binary inputs and outputs for proper operation during the first inspection. Randomly check at least 25 percent of the remaining binary inputs and outputs during the second inspection. If more than 20 percent of checked inputs or outputs failed the calibration check during any inspection, check and recalibrate all inputs and outputs during that inspection.
- d. Run system software diagnostics and correct diagnosed problems.
- e. Resolve any previous outstanding problems.

3.9.4 Scheduled Work

This work must be performed during regular working hours, Monday through Friday, excluding Federal holidays.

3.9.5 Emergency Service

The Government will initiate service calls when the system is not functioning properly. Qualified personnel must be available to provide service to the system. A telephone number where the service supervisor can be reached at all times must be provided. Service personnel must be at the site within 24 hours after receiving a request for service. The control system must be restored to proper operating condition as required per Section 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS.

3.9.6 Operation

After performing scheduled adjustments and repairs, verify control system operation as demonstrated by the applicable tests of the performance verification test.

3.9.7 Records and Logs

Keep dated records and logs of each task, with cumulative records for each major component, and for the complete system chronologically. Maintain a continuous log for all devices, including initial analog span and zero calibration values and digital points. Keep complete logs and provide logs for inspection onsite, demonstrating that planned and systematic

adjustments and repairs have been accomplished for the control system.

3.9.8 Work Requests

Record each service call request as received and include its location, date and time the call was received, nature of trouble, names of the service personnel assigned to the task, instructions describing what has to be done, the amount and nature of the materials to be used, the time and date work started, and the time and date of completion. Submit a record of the work performed within 5 days after work is accomplished.

3.9.9 System Modifications

Submit recommendations for system modification in writing. Do not make system modifications, including operating parameters and control settings, without prior approval of the Government.

3.10 TRAINING

Conduct a training course for a minimum of five (5) operating staff members designated by the Government in the maintenance and operation of the system, including specified hardware and software. Conduct 40 hours of training at the project site within 30 days after successful completion of the performance verification test. The Government reserves the right to make audio and visual recordings (using Government supplied equipment) of the training sessions for later use. Provide audiovisual equipment and other training materials and supplies required to conduct training. A training day is defined as 8 hours of classroom instruction, including two 15 minute breaks and excluding lunchtime, Monday through Friday, during the daytime shift in effect at the training facility.

3.10.1 Training Documentation

Prepare training documentation consisting of:

- a. Course Attendee List: Develop the list of course attendees in coordination with and signed by the Controls shop supervisor.
- b. Training Manuals: Provide training manuals which include an agenda, defined objectives for each lesson, and a detailed description of the subject matter for each lesson. When presenting portions of the course material by audiovisuals, deliver copies of those audiovisuals as a part of the printed training manuals.

3.10.2 Training Course Content

For guidance in planning the required instruction, assume that attendees will have a high school education, and are familiar with HVAC systems. During the training course, cover all of the material contained in the Operating and Maintenance Instructions, the layout and location of each controller enclosure, the layout of one of each type of equipment and the locations of each, the location of each control device external to the panels, the location of the compressed air station, preventive maintenance, troubleshooting, diagnostics, calibration, adjustment, commissioning, tuning, and repair procedures. Typical systems and similar systems may be treated as a group, with instruction on the physical layout of one such system. Present the results of the performance verification test and the Start-Up Testing Report as benchmarks of HVAC control system performance by which to measure operation and maintenance effectiveness.

3.10.3 Training Documentation Submittal Requirements

Submit hardcopy training manuals and all training materials on CD-ROM. Provide one hardcopy manual for each trainee on the Course Attendee List and 2 additional copies for archive at the project site. Provide 2 copies of the Course Attendee List with the archival copies. Training Documentation may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

APPENDIX A

<u>QC CHECKLIST FOR LNS-BASED LONWORKS SYSTEMS</u>		
<p>This checklist is not all-inclusive of the requirements of this specification and should not be interpreted as such.</p> <p>Instructions: Initial each item in the space provided (____) verifying that the requirement has been met.</p>		
<p>This checklist is for (circle one:)</p> <p>Pre-Construction QC Checklist Submittal</p> <p>Post-Construction QC Checklist Submittal</p> <p>Close-out QC Checklist Submittal</p>		
Items verified for Pre-Construction, Post-Construction and Closeout QC Checklist Submittals:		
1	All DDC Hardware is numbered on Control System Schematic Drawings.	____
2	Signal lines on Control System Schematic are labeled with the signal type.	____
3	Local Display Panel (LDP) Locations are shown on Control System Schematic drawings.	____
Items verified for Post-Construction and Closeout QC Checklist Submittals:		
4	All sequences are performed as specified using DDC Hardware.	____
5	Training schedule and course attendee list has been developed and coordinated with shops and submitted.	____
6	All DDC Hardware is installed on a TP/FT-10 Channel.	____
7	All Application Specific Controllers (ASCs) are LonMark certified.	____
8	Communication between DDC Hardware is only via CEA-709.1-D using SNVTs. Other protocols have not been used. Network variables other than SNVTs have not been used.	____
9	Explicit messaging has not been used.	____
10	Scheduling is performed in DDC Hardware meeting the Simple Schedule Functional Profile	____
Items verified for Closeout QC Checklist Submittal:		
11	Final As-built Drawings, including all Points Schedule drawings, accurately represent the final installed system.	____

<u>QC CHECKLIST FOR LNS-BASED LONWORKS SYSTEMS</u>		
12	Programming software has been submitted for all programmable controllers.	____
13	All software has been licensed to the Government.	
14	O&M Instructions have been completed and submitted.	____
15	Training course has been completed.	____
16	LonWorks Network Services (LNS) Database is up-to-date and accurately represents the final installed system.	____
17	LNS Plug-ins have been submitted for all Application Specific Controllers (ASCs).	____
18	Programming software has been submitted for all General Purpose Programmable Controllers (GPPCs) and all Application Generic Controllers (AGCs).	____
<hr/>		
	(QC Representative Signature)	(Date)

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 09 13

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC
11/15, CHG 2: 05/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This section provides for the instrumentation control system components excluding direct digital controllers, network controllers, gateways etc. that are necessary for a completely functional automatic control system. When combined with a Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, the Instrumentation and Control Devices covered under this section must be a complete system suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as specified and indicated.

- a. Install hardware to perform the control sequences as specified and indicated and to provide control of the equipment as specified and indicated.
- b. Install hardware such that individual control equipment can be replaced by similar control equipment from other equipment manufacturers with no loss of system functionality.
- c. Install and configure hardware such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, and upgrades of individual hardware without further interaction with the installing Contractor.
- d. Provide a complete, self-contained, and operation DDC system.

1.1.1 Verification of Dimensions

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.1.2 Drawings

The Government will not indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required on the drawings. Carefully investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work to be performed, arrange such work accordingly, and provide all work necessary to meet such conditions.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified elsewhere.

Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION

Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER
BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 500-D	(2018) Laboratory Methods of Testing Dampers for Rating
AMCA 511	(2010; R 2016) Certified Ratings Program for Air Control Devices

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B16.18	(2018) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.22	(2018) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.26	(2018) Standard for Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes
ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A269/A269M	(2015; R 2019) Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service
ASTM B32	(2020) Standard Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B75/B75M	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube
ASTM B88	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM E84	(2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 142	(2007; Errata 2014) Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems - IEEE Green Book
IEEE C62.41	(1991; R 1995) Recommended Practice on

Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power
Circuits

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
(1000 Volts Maximum)

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA
20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4)
National Electrical Code

NFPA 90A (2021) Standard for the Installation of
Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1966 (2020) HVAC Duct Construction Standards
Metal and Flexible, 4th Edition

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 5085-3 (2006; Reprint Nov 20121) Low Voltage
Transformers - Part 3: Class 2 and Class 3
Transformers

1.4 SUBMITTALS

SD-03 Product Data

DDC Performance Requirements; G, AE

Sensors and Instrumentation; G, AE

Dampers; G, AE

Actuators; G, AE

Desktop Workstations; G, AE

Portable Workstations; G, AE

Servers; G, AE

Printers; G, AE

Tubing; G, AE

Wire and Cable; G, AE

Weathershields; G, AE

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Comply with requirements for data packages in Section 01 78 23
OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA, except as supplemented and

modified in this specification.

1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Store and protect products from the weather, humidity, and temperature variations, dirt and dust, and other contaminants, within the storage condition limits published by the equipment manufacturer.

1.6 INPUT MEASUREMENT ACCURACY

Select, install and configure sensors, transmitters and DDC Hardware such that the maximum error of the measured value at the input of the DDC hardware is less than the maximum allowable error specified for the sensor or instrumentation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT

2.1.1 General Requirements

All products used to meet this specification must meet the indicated requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project. All products must meet the requirements both Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and this Section.

2.1.2 Operation Environment Requirements

Unless otherwise specified, provide products rated for continuous operation under the following conditions:

2.1.2.1 Pressure

Pressure conditions normally encountered in the installed location.

2.1.2.2 Vibration

Vibration conditions normally encountered in the installed location.

2.1.2.3 Temperature

- a. Products installed indoors: Ambient temperatures in the range of 32 to 112 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
- b. Products installed outdoors or in unconditioned indoor spaces: Ambient temperatures in the range of -35 to +151 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

2.1.2.4 Humidity

10 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing and also humidity conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

2.2 DDC PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- a. System Performance Objectives:

- (1) DDC system shall manage HVAC systems.
 - (2) DDC system control shall operate HVAC systems to achieve optimum operating costs while using least possible energy and maintaining specified performance.
 - (3) DDC system shall respond to power failures, HVAC equipment failures, and adverse and emergency conditions encountered through connected I/O points.
 - (4) DDC system shall operate while unattended by an operator and through operator interaction.
 - (5) DDC system shall record trends and transaction of events and produce report information such as performance, energy, occupancies, and equipment operation.
- b. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Products installed in ducts, equipment, shall comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- (1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - (2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- c. DDC System Speed:
- (1) Response Time of Connected I/O:
 - (a) AI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every five seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
 - (b) BI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every five seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
 - (c) AO points connected to DDC system shall begin to respond to controller output commands within one second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.
 - (d) BO point values connected to DDC system shall respond to controller output commands within one second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.
 - (2) Display of Connected I/O:
 - (a) Analog point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every five seconds for use by operator.
 - (b) Binary point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every five seconds for use by operator.
 - (c) Alarms of analog and digital points connected to DDC system shall be displayed within 30 seconds of activation or change of state.
 - (d) Graphic display refresh shall update within four seconds.
 - (e) Point change of values and alarms displayed from

workstation to workstation when multiple operators are viewing from multiple workstations shall not exceed graphic refresh rate indicated.

- d. Network Bandwidth: Design each network of DDC system to include at least 20 percent available spare bandwidth with DDC system operating under normal and heavy load conditions indicated. Calculate bandwidth usage, and apply a safety factor to ensure that requirement is satisfied when subjected to testing under worst case conditions.
- e. DDC System Data Storage:
 - (1) Include capability to archive not less than 24 consecutive months of historical data for all I/O points connected to system, including alarms, event histories, transaction logs, trends and other information indicated.
 - (2) Local Storage:
 - (a) Provide server with data storage indicated. Server(s) shall use IT industry standard database platforms and be capable of functions described in "DDC Data Access" Paragraph.
- f. DDC Data Access:
 - (1) When logged into the system, operator shall be able to also interact with any DDC controller connected to DDC system as required for functional operation of DDC system.
 - (2) System(s) shall be used for application configuration; for archiving, reporting and trending of data; for operator transaction archiving and reporting; for network information management; for alarm annunciation; and for operator interface tasks and controls application management.
- g. Future Expandability:
 - (1) DDC system size shall be expandable to an ultimate capacity of at least 1.5 times total I/O points indicated.
 - (2) Additional DDC controllers, I/O and associated wiring shall be all that is needed to achieve ultimate capacity. Initial network infrastructure shall be designed and installed to support ultimate capacity.
 - (3) Operator interfaces installed initially shall not require hardware and software additions and revisions for ultimate capacity.
- h. Input Point Displayed Accuracy: Input point displayed values shall meet following end-to-end overall system accuracy, including errors associated with meter, sensor, transmitter, lead wire or cable, and analog to digital conversion.
 - (1) Energy:
 - (a) Thermal: Within 3 percent of reading.
 - (b) Electric Power: Within 1 percent of reading.
 - (c) Requirements indicated on Drawings for meters not supplied

by utility.

(2) Flow:

- (a) Air: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
- (b) Air (Terminal Units): Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
- (c) Water: Within 2 percent of design flow rate.

(3) Moisture (Relative Humidity):

- (a) Air: Within 2 percent RH.
- (b) Space: Within 2 percent RH.
- (c) Outdoor: Within 2 percent RH.

(4) Pressure:

- (a) Air, Ducts and Equipment: 0.5 percent of instrument span.
- (b) Space: Within 0.5 percent of instrument span.

(5) Speed: Within 5 percent of reading.

(6) Temperature, Dew Point:

- (a) Air: Within 0.5 deg F.
- (b) Space: Within 0.5 deg F.
- (c) Outdoor: Within 2 deg F.

7. Temperature, Dry Bulb:

- (a) Air: Within 0.5 deg F.
- (b) Space: Within 0.5 deg F.
- (c) Outdoor: Within 1 deg F.
- (d) Temperature Difference: Within 0.25 deg F.

(8) Temperature, Wet Bulb:

- (a) Air: Within 0.5 deg F.
- (b) Space: Within 0.5 deg F.
- (c) Outdoor: Within 1 deg F.

i. Precision of I/O Reported Values: Values reported in database and displayed shall have following precision:

(1) Current:

- (a) Milliampere: Nearest 1/100th of a milliampere.
- (b) Amperes: Nearest 1/10th of an ampere up to 100 A; nearest ampere for 100 A and more.

(2) Energy:

(a) Electric Power:

- 1) Rate (Watts): Nearest 1/10th of a watt through 1000 W.
- 2) Rate (Kilowatts): Nearest 1/10th of a kilowatt through 1000 kW; nearest kilowatt above 1000 kW.
- 3) Usage (Kilowatt-Hours): Nearest kilowatt through 10,000 kW; nearest 10 kW between 10,000 and 100,000 kW; nearest 100 kW for above 100,000 kW.

- (3) Flow:
 - (a) Air: Nearest 1/10th of a cfm through 100 cfm; nearest cfm between 100 and 1000 cfm; nearest 10 cfm between 1000 and 10,000 cfm; nearest 100 cfm above 10,000 cfm.
 - (b) Water: Nearest 1/10th gpm through 100 gpm; nearest gpm between 100 and 1000 gpm; nearest 10 gpm between 1000 and 10,000 gpm; nearest 100 gpm above 10,000 gpm.
- (4) Moisture (Relative Humidity):
 - (a) Relative Humidity (Percentage): Nearest 1 percent.
- (5) Speed:
 - (a) Rotation (rpm): Nearest 1 rpm.
 - (b) Velocity: Nearest 1/10th fpm through 100 fpm; nearest fpm between 100 and 1000 fpm; nearest 10 fpm above 1000 fpm.
- (6) Position, Dampers and Valves (Percentage Open): Nearest 1 percent.
- (7) Pressure:
 - (a) Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th in. w.c..
 - (b) Space: Nearest 1/100th in. w.c..
- (8) Temperature:
 - (a) Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
 - (b) Outdoor: Nearest degree.
 - (c) Space: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
- (9) Voltage: Nearest 1/10 volt up to 100 V; nearest volt above 100 V.
- j. Control Stability: Control variables indicated within the following limits:
 - (1) Flow:
 - (a) Air, Ducts and Equipment, except Terminal Units: Within 2 percent of design flow rate.
 - (b) Air, Terminal Units: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
 - (2) Moisture (Relative Humidity):
 - (a) Air: Within 2 percent RH.
 - (b) Space: Within 2 percent RH.
 - (3) Pressure:
 - (a) Air, Ducts and Equipment: 0.5 percent of instrument span.
 - (b) Space: Within 0.5 percent of instrument span.
 - (4) Temperature, Dew Point:
 - (a) Air: Within 0.5 deg F.
 - (b) Space: Within 0.5 deg F.

- (5) Temperature, Dry Bulb:
 - (a) Air: Within 1 deg F.
 - (b) Space: Within 1 deg F.
- (6) Temperature, Wet Bulb:
 - (a) Air: Within 0.5 deg F.
 - (b) Space: Within 0.5 deg F.
- k. Environmental Conditions for Controllers, Gateways, and Routers:
 - (1) Products shall operate without performance degradation under ambient environmental temperature, pressure and humidity conditions encountered for installed location.
 - (a) If product alone cannot comply with requirement, install product in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, cooled and ventilated as required by product and application.
 - (2) Products shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Products not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures . Installed location shall dictate the following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
 - (a) Outdoors, Protected: Type 3.
 - (b) Outdoors, Unprotected: Type 4X.
 - (c) Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: Type 1.
 - (d) Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: Type 12.
 - (e) Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: Type 1.
 - (f) Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
 - 1) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 12.
 - (g) Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Not Exposed to Possible Condensation: Type 12.
 - (h) Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible Condensation: Type 4X.
- l. Environmental Conditions for Instruments and Actuators:
 - (1) Instruments and actuators shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.
 - (a) If instruments and actuators alone cannot comply with requirement, install instruments and actuators in protective enclosures that are isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, cooled and ventilated as required by instrument and application.
 - (2) Instruments, actuators and accessories shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless

more stringent requirements are indicated. Instruments and actuators not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Installed location shall dictate the following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:

- (a) Outdoors, Protected: Type 3.
- (b) Outdoors, Unprotected: Type 4X.
- (c) Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: Type 1.
- (d) Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: Type 12.
- (e) Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: Type 1.
- (f) Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
 - 1) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 12.
- (g) Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Not Exposed to Possible Condensation: Type 12.
- (h) Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible Condensation: Type 4X.

m. Electric Power Quality:

(1) Power-Line Surges:

- (a) Protect DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from power-line surges to comply with requirements of IEEE C62.41
- (b) Do not use fuses for surge protection.
- (c) Test protection in the normal mode and in the common mode, using the following two waveforms:
 - 1) 10-by-1000-mic.sec. waveform with a peak voltage of 1500 V and a peak current of 60 A.
 - 2) 8-by-20-mic.sec. waveform with a peak voltage of 1000 V and a peak current of 500 A.

(2) Power Conditioning:

- (a) Protect DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from irregularities and noise rejection. Characteristics of power-line conditioner shall be as follows:
 - 1) At 85 percent load, output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 1 percent of nominal when input voltage fluctuates between minus 20 percent to plus 10 percent of nominal.
 - 2) During load changes from zero to full load, output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 3 percent of nominal.
 - 3) Accomplish full correction of load switching disturbances within five cycles, and 95 percent correction within two cycles of onset of disturbance.
 - 4) Total harmonic distortion shall not exceed 3-1/2 percent at full load.
- (3) Ground Fault: Protect products from ground fault by providing suitable grounding. Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition.

n. Backup Power Source:

- (1) HVAC systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have associated DDC system products that control such systems and equipment also served from a backup power source.

o. UPS:

- (1) DDC system products powered by UPS units shall include the following:
 - (a) Desktop workstations.
 - (b) Servers.

p. Continuity of Operation after Electric Power Interruption:

- (1) Equipment and associated factory-installed controls, field-installed controls, electrical equipment, and power supply connected to building normal and backup power systems shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to operating state occurring immediately before loss of normal power, without need for manual intervention by operator when power is restored either through backup power source or through normal power if restored before backup power is brought online.

2.3 WEATHERSHIELDS

Provide weathershields constructed of galvanized steel painted white, unpainted aluminum, aluminum painted white, or white PVC.

2.4 TUBING

2.4.1 Copper

Provide ASTM B75/B75M or ASTM B88 rated tubing meeting the following requirements:

- a. For tubing 0.375 inch outside diameter and larger provide tubing with minimum wall thickness equal to ASTM B88, Type M.
- b. For tubing less than 0.375 inch outside diameter provide tubing with minimum wall thickness of 0.025 inch.
- c. For exposed tubing and tubing for working pressures greater than 30 psig provide hard copper tubing.
- d. Provide fittings which are ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22 solder type using ASTM B32 95-5 tin-antimony solder, or which are ASME B16.26 compression type.

2.4.2 Stainless Steel

For stainless steel tubing provide tubing conforming to ASTM A269/A269M.

2.5 WIRE AND CABLE

Provide wire and cable meeting the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A in addition to the requirements of this specification and referenced specifications.

2.5.1 Terminal Blocks

For terminal blocks which are not integral to other equipment, provide terminal blocks which are insulated, modular, feed-through, clamp style with recessed captive screw-type clamping mechanism, suitable for DIN rail mounting, and which have enclosed sides or end plates and partition plates for separation.

2.5.2 Control Wiring for Binary Signals

For Control Wiring for Binary Signals, provide 18 AWG copper or thicker wire rated for 300-volt service.

2.5.3 Control Wiring for Analog Signals

For Control Wiring for Analog Signals, provide 18 AWG or thicker, copper, single- or multiple-twisted wire meeting the following requirements:

- a. minimum 2 inch lay of twist
- b. 100 percent shielded pairs
- c. at least 300-volt insulation
- d. each pair has a 20 AWG tinned-copper drain wire and individual overall pair insulation
- e. cables have an overall aluminum-polyester or tinned-copper cable-shield tape, overall 20 AWG tinned-copper cable drain wire, and overall cable insulation.

2.5.4 Power Wiring for Control Devices

For 24-volt circuits, provide insulated copper 18 AWG or thicker wire rated for 300 VAC service. For 120-volt circuits, provide 14 AWG or thicker stranded copper wire rated for 600-volt service.

2.5.5 Transformers

Provide UL 5085-3 approved transformers. Select transformers sized so that the connected load is no greater than 80 percent of the transformer rated capacity.

2.6 DAMPERS

2.6.1 General

Provide factory manufactured galvanized steel dampers where indicated. Control dampers shall comply with SMACNA 1966 except as modified or supplemented by this specification. Published damper leakage rates and respective pressure drops shall have been verified by tests in compliance with AMCA 500-D requirements.

Provide damper assembly frames constructed of 0.064 inch minimum thickness galvanized steel channels with mitered and welded corners. Damper axles shall be 0.5 inches minimum diameter plated steel rods supported in the damper frame by stainless steel or bronze bearings. Blades mounted vertically shall be supported by thrust bearings.

Dampers shall be rated for not less than 2000 fpm air velocity. The pressure drop through each damper when full-open shall not exceed 0.04 inches water gage at 1000 fpm face velocity.

Provide the damper operating linkages outside of the air stream, including crank arms, connecting rods, and other hardware that transmits motion from the damper actuators to the dampers, shall be adjustable. Additionally, operating linkages shall be designed and constructed to have a 2 to 1 safety factor when loaded with the maximum required damper operating force. Linkages shall be brass, bronze, galvanized steel, or stainless steel.

For field-installed control dampers, a single damper section shall have blades no longer than 48 inches and no higher than 72 inches. The maximum damper blade width shall be 12 inches. Larger sized dampers shall be built using a combination of sections.

Frames shall be at least 2 inches wide. Flat blades shall have edges folded for rigidity. Blades shall be provided with compressible gasket seals along the full length of the blades to prevent air leakage when closed.

The damper frames shall be provided with jamb seals to minimize air leakage. Seals shall be suitable for an operating temperature range of minus 40 degrees F to 200 degrees F.

The leakage rate of each damper when full-closed shall be no more than 3 cfm per sq. foot of damper face area at 1.0 inches water gage static pressure.

2.6.2 Operating Linkages

For operating links external to dampers, such as crank arms, connecting rods, and line shafting for transmitting motion from damper actuators to dampers, provide links able to withstand a load equal to at least 300 percent of the maximum required damper-operating force without deforming. Rod lengths must be adjustable. Links must be brass, bronze, zinc-coated steel, or stainless steel. Working parts of joints and clevises must be brass, bronze, or stainless steel. Adjustments of crank arms must control the open and closed positions of dampers.

2.6.3 Damper Types

2.6.3.1 Flow Control Dampers

Provide parallel-blade or opposed blade type dampers for outside air, return air, relief air, exhaust, face and bypass dampers. Blades must have interlocking edges. The channel frames of the dampers must be provided with jamb seals to minimize air leakage. Unless otherwise indicated, dampers must meet AMCA 511 Class 1A requirements. Outside air damper seals must be suitable for an operating temperature range of -40 to +167 degrees F. Dampers must be rated at not less than 2000 ft/min air velocity.

2.6.3.2 Mechanical Rooms and Other Utility Space Ventilation Dampers

Provide utility space ventilation dampers as indicated. Unless otherwise indicated provide AMCA 511 class 1A dampers. Provide dampers rated at not

less than 1500 ft/min air velocity.

2.7 SENSORS AND INSTRUMENTATION

Unless otherwise specified, provide sensors and instrumentation which incorporate an integral transmitter. Sensors and instrumentation, including their transmitters, must meet the specified accuracy and drift requirements at the input of the connected DDC Hardware's analog-to-digital conversion.

2.7.1 Analog and Binary Transmitters

Provide transmitters which match the characteristics of the sensor. Transmitters providing analog values must produce a linear 4-20 mAdc, 0-10 Vdc signal corresponding to the required operating range and must have zero and span adjustment. Transmitters providing binary values must have dry contacts rated at 1A at 24 Volts AC.

2.7.2 Network Transmitters

Sensors and Instrumentation incorporating an integral network connection are considered DDC Hardware and must meet the DDC Hardware requirements of Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS when used in a Lonworks network.

2.7.3 Temperature Sensors

Provide the same sensor type throughout the project. Temperature sensors may be provided without transmitters. Where transmitters are used, the range must be the smallest available from the manufacturer and suitable for the application such that the range encompasses the expected range of temperatures to be measured. The end to end accuracy includes the combined effect of sensitivity, hysteresis, linearity and repeatability between the measured variable and the end user interface (graphic presentation) including transmitters if used.

2.7.3.1 Sensor Accuracy and Stability of Control

2.7.3.1.1 Conditioned Space Temperature

Plus or minus 0.5 degree F over the operating range.

2.7.3.1.2 Unconditioned Space Temperature

- a. Plus or minus 1 degree F over the range of 30 to 131 degrees F AND
- b. Plus or minus 1 degrees F over the rest of the operating range.

2.7.3.1.3 Duct Temperature

Plus or minus 0.5 degree F

2.7.3.1.4 Outside Air Temperature

- a. Plus or minus 2 degrees F over the range of -30 to +130 degrees F AND
- b. Plus or minus 1 degree F over the range of 30 to 130 degrees F.

2.7.3.2 Transmitter Drift

The maximum allowable transmitter drift: 0.25 degrees F per year.

2.7.3.3 Point Temperature Sensors

Point Sensors must be encapsulated in epoxy, series 300 stainless steel, anodized aluminum, or copper.

2.7.3.4 Temperature Sensor Details

- a. Room Type: Provide the sensing element components within a decorative protective cover suitable for surrounding decor. Provide room temperature sensors with timed override button, setpoint adjustment lever, digital temperature display. Provide a communication port for a portable operator interface like a notebook computer or PDA.

2.7.3.4.1 Duct Probe Type

Ensure the probe is long enough to properly sense the air stream temperature.

2.7.3.4.2 Duct Averaging Type

Continuous averaging sensors must be one foot in length for each 1 square foot of duct cross-sectional area, and a minimum length of 5 feet.

- a. Outside Air Type: Provide the sensing element on the building's north side with a protective weather shade that positions the sensor approximately 3 inches off the wall surface, does not inhibit free air flow across the sensing element, and protects the sensor from snow, ice, and rain.

2.7.4 Relative Humidity Sensor

Relative humidity sensors must use bulk polymer resistive or thin film capacitive type non-saturating sensing elements capable of withstanding a saturated condition without permanently affecting calibration or sustaining damage. The sensors must include removable protective membrane filters. Where required for exterior installation, sensors must be capable of surviving below freezing temperatures and direct contact with moisture without affecting sensor calibration. When used indoors, the sensor must be capable of being exposed to a condensing air stream (100 percent relative humidity) with no adverse effect to the sensor's calibration or other harm to the instrument. The sensor must be of the wall-mounted or duct-mounted type, as required by the application, and must be provided with any required accessories. Sensors used in duct high-limit applications must have a bulk polymer resistive sensing element. Duct-mounted sensors must be provided with a duct probe designed to protect the sensing element from dust accumulation and mechanical damage. Relative humidity (RH) sensors must measure relative humidity over a range of 0 percent to 100 percent with an accuracy of plus or minus 3 percent. RH sensors must function over a temperature range of 40 to 135 degrees F and must not drift more than 1 percent per year.

2.7.5 Carbon Dioxide (CO2) Sensors

Provide photometric type CO2 sensors with integral transducers and linear

output. Carbon dioxide (CO₂) sensors must measure CO₂ concentrations between 0 to 2000 parts per million (ppm) using non-dispersible infrared (NDIR) technology with an accuracy of plus or minus 50 ppm and a maximum response time of 1 minute. The sensor must be rated for operation at ambient air temperatures within the range of 32 to 122 degrees F and relative humidity within the range of 20 to 95 percent (non-condensing). The sensor must have a maximum drift of 2 percent per year. The sensor chamber must be manufactured with a non-corrosive material that does not affect carbon dioxide sample concentration. Duct mounted sensors must be provided with a duct probe designed to protect the sensing element from dust accumulation and mechanical damage. The sensor must have a calibration interval no less than 5 years.

2.7.6 Differential Pressure Instrumentation

2.7.6.1 Differential Pressure Sensors

Provide Differential Pressure Sensors with ranges as indicated or as required for the application. Pressure sensor ranges must not exceed the high end range indicated on the Points Schedule by more than 50 percent. The over pressure rating must be a minimum of 150 percent of the highest design pressure of either input to the sensor. The accuracy must be plus or minus 1 percent of full scale. The sensor must have a maximum drift of 2 percent per year

2.7.6.2 Differential Pressure Switch

Provide differential pressure switches with a user-adjustable setpoint which are sized for the application such that the setpoint is between 25 percent and 75 percent of the full range. The over pressure rating must be a minimum of 150 percent of the highest design pressure of either input to the sensor. The switch must have two sets of contacts and each contact must have a rating greater than it's connected load. Contacts must open or close upon rise of pressure above the setpoint or drop of pressure below the setpoint as indicated.

2.7.7 Flow Sensors

2.7.7.1 Airflow Monitoring Station (AFMS)

- a. Provide transducers for AFMS furnished with equipment.
- b. AFMSs shall contain an airflow straightener if required by the AFMS manufacturer's published installation instructions. The straightener shall be contained inside a flanged sheet metal casing, with the AFMS located as specified according to the published recommendation of the AFMS manufacturer. In the absence of published documentation, airflow straighteners shall be provided if there is any duct obstruction within 5 duct diameters upstream of the AFMS. Air-flow straighteners, where required, shall be constructed of 0.125 inch aluminum honeycomb and the depth of the straightener shall not be less than 1.5 inches.
- c. Resistance to airflow. The resistance to air flow through the AFMS, including the airflow straightener shall not exceed 0.08 inch water gauge at an airflow of 2,000 fpm. AFMS construction shall be suitable for operation at airflows of up to 5,000 fpm over a temperature range of 40 to 120 degrees F.
- d. Outside air temperature. In outside air measurement or in

low-temperature air delivery applications, the AFMA shall be certified by the manufacturer to be accurate as specified over a temperature range of -20 +120 degrees F.

- e. Pitot Tube AFMS. Each Pitot Tube AFMS shall contain an array of velocity sensing elements. The velocity sensing elements shall be of the multiple pitot tube type with averaging manifolds. The sensing elements shall be distributed across the duct cross section in the quantity and pattern specified by the published installation instructions of the AFMS manufacturer.
 - (1) Pitot Tube AFMA's for use in airflows over 600 fpm shall have an accuracy of +/- 5% over a range of 500 to 2,500 fpm.
 - (2) Pitot Tube AFMA's for use in airflows under 600 fpm shall have an accuracy of +/- 5% over a range of 125 to 2,500 fpm.
- f. Electronic AFMS. Each electronic AFMS shall consist of an array of velocity sensing elements of the resistance temperature detector (RTD) or thermistor type. The sensing elements shall be distributed across the duct cross section in the quantity and pattern specified by the published application data of the AFMS manufacturer. Electronic AFMSs shall have an accuracy of +/- 5% percent over a range of 125 to 2,500 fpm and the output shall be temperature compensated over a range of -20 to 160 degrees F.
- g. Fan Inlet AFMS shall be pitot tube or electronic type designed for mounting at fan inlet. Coordinate unit size and mounting with fan manufacturer.
- h. In addition to specified accuracies, AFMS used to measure outside air shall meet the requirements defined by LEED IEQ Credit 1, Outdoor Air Delivery Monitoring for outdoor air intake flow accuracy.

2.7.7.2 Orifice Plate

Orifice plate must be made of an austenitic stainless steel sheet of 0.125 inch nominal thickness with an accuracy of plus or minus 1 percent of full flow. The orifice plate must be flat within 0.002 inches. The orifice surface roughness must not exceed 20 micro-inches. The thickness of the cylindrical face of the orifice must not exceed 2 percent of the pipe inside diameter or 12.5 percent of the orifice diameter, whichever is smaller. The upstream edge of the orifice must be square and sharp. Where orifice plates are used, concentric orifice plates must be used in all applications except steam flow measurement in horizontal pipelines.

2.7.7.3 Flow Nozzle

Flow nozzle must be made of austenitic stainless steel with an accuracy of plus or minus 1 percent of full flow. The inlet nozzle form must be elliptical and the nozzle throat must be the quadrant of an ellipse. The thickness of the nozzle wall and flange must be such that distortion of the nozzle throat from strains caused by the pipeline temperature and pressure, flange bolting, or other methods of installing the nozzle in the pipeline must not cause the accuracy to degrade beyond the specified limit. The outside diameter of the nozzle flange or the design of the flange facing must be such that the nozzle throat must be centered accurately in the pipe.

2.7.7.4 Venturi Tube

Venturi tube must be made of cast iron or cast steel and must have an accuracy of plus or minus 1 percent of full flow. The throat section must be lined with austenitic stainless steel. Thermal expansion characteristics of the lining must be the same as that of the throat casting material. The surface of the throat lining must be machined to a plus or minus 50 micro inch finish, including the short curvature leading from the converging entrance section into the throat.

2.7.7.5 Annular Pitot Tube

Annular pitot tube must be made of austenitic stainless steel with an accuracy of plus or minus 2 percent of full flow and a repeatability of plus or minus 0.5 percent of measured value. The unit must have at least one static port and no less than four total head pressure ports with an averaging manifold.

2.7.7.6 Domestic Water Meter

- a. Provide meter inside building separate from the utility meter. Provide connection between this water meter and the Building Automation System (BAS)/DDC in order to monitor consumption.
- b. Turbine-Type Water Meters:
 - (1) Description:
 - (a) Standard: AWWA C701 and NSF/ANSI 61.
 - (b) Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
 - (c) Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
 - (d) Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - (e) Case: Bronze.
 - (f) End Connections for Meters NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - (g) End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.
- c. Compound-Type Water Meters:
 - (1) Description:
 - (a) Standard: AWWA C702 and NSF/ANSI 61.
 - (b) Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
 - (c) Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
 - (d) Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - (e) Case: Bronze.
 - (f) Pipe Connections: Flanged.
- d. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
- e. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

2.7.7.7 Vortex Shedding Flowmeter

Vortex Shedding Flowmeter accuracy must be within plus or minus 0.8 percent of the actual reading over the range of the meter. Steam meters must contain density compensation by direct measurement of temperature. Mass flow inferred from specified steam pressure are not acceptable. The flow meter body must be made of austenitic stainless steel and include a weather tight NEMA 4X electronics enclosure. The vortex shedding flowmeter body must not require removal from the piping in order to replace the shedding sensor.

2.7.7.8 Flow Switch

Flow switch must have a repetitive accuracy of plus or minus 10 percent of actual flow setting. Switch actuation must be adjustable over the operating flow range, and must be sized for the application such that the setpoint is between 25 percent and 75 percent of the full range. The switch must have Form C snap-action contacts, rated for the application. The flow switch must have non flexible paddle with magnetically actuated contacts and be rated for service at a pressure greater than the installed conditions. Flow switch for use in sewage system must be rated for use in corrosive environments encountered.

2.7.7.9 Gas Flow Meter

- a. Provide meter inside building, separate from the utility meter. Provide connection between this meter and Building Automation System (BAS)/DDC in order to monitor consumption.
- b. Gas flow meter must be diaphragm or bellows type (gas positive displacement meters) for flows up to 2500 SCFH and axial flow turbine type for flows above 2500 SCFH, designed specifically for natural gas supply metering, and rated for the pressure, temperature, and flow rates of the installation. Meter must have a minimum turndown ratio of 10 to 1 with an accuracy of plus or minus 1 percent of actual flow rate. The meter index must include a direct reading mechanical totalizing register and electrical impulse dry contact output for remote monitoring. The electrical impulse dry contact output must not require field adjustment or calibration. The electrical impulse dry contact output must have a minimum resolution of 100 cubic feet of gas per pulse and must not exceed 15 pulses per second at the design flow.

2.7.8 Electrical Instruments

Provide Electrical Instruments with an input range as indicated or sized for the application. Unless otherwise specified, AC instrumentation must be suitable for 60 Hz operation.

2.7.8.1 Current Transducers

Current transducers must accept an AC current input and must have an accuracy of plus or minus 2 percent of full scale. The device must have a means for calibration. Current transducers for variable frequency applications must be rated for variable frequency operation.

2.7.8.2 Current Sensing Relays (CSRs)

Current sensing relays (CSRs) must provide a normally-open contact with a

voltage and amperage rating greater than its connected load. Current sensing relays must be of split-core design. The CSR must be rated for operation at 200 percent of the connected load. Voltage isolation must be a minimum of 600 volts. The CSR must auto-calibrate to the connected load or be adjustable and field calibrated. Current sensors for variable frequency applications must be rated for variable frequency operation.

2.7.8.3 Voltage Transducers

Voltage transducers must accept an AC voltage input and have an accuracy of plus or minus 0.25 percent of full scale. The device must have a means for calibration. Line side fuses for transducer protection must be provided.

2.7.9 Occupancy Sensors

Refer to E-series drawings and specification 26 51 00 INTERIOR LIGHTING for occupancy sensors details.

2.7.10 Conductivity Sensor

Sensor must include local indicating meter and must be suitable for measurement of conductivity of water in potable water systems as indicated. Sensor must sense from 0 to 100 $\mu\text{S}/\text{cm}$ for potable water systems. Contractor must field verify the ranges for particular applications and adjust the range as required. The output must be temperature compensated over a range of 32 to 212 degrees F. The accuracy must be plus or minus 2 percent of the full scale reading. Sensor must have automatic zeroing and must require no periodic maintenance or recalibration.

2.7.11 Damper End Switches

Each end switch must be a hermetically sealed switch with a trip lever and over-travel mechanism. The switch enclosure must be suitable for mounting on the duct exterior and must permit setting the position of the trip lever that actuates the switch. The trip lever must be aligned with the damper blade.

End switches integral to an electric damper actuator are allowed as long as at least one is adjustable over the travel of the actuator.

2.7.12 Air Quality Sensors

Provide full spectrum air quality sensors using a hot wire element based on the Taguchi principle. The sensor must monitor a wide range of gaseous volatile organic components common in indoor air contaminants like paint fumes, solvents, cigarette smoke, and vehicle exhaust. The sensor must automatically compensate for temperature and humidity, have span and calibration potentiometers, operate on 24 VDC power with output of 0-10 VDC, and have a service rating of 32 to 140 degrees F and 5 to 95 percent relative humidity.

2.8 INDICATING DEVICES

All indicating devices must display readings in English (inch-pound) units.

2.8.1 Thermometers

Provide bi-metal type thermometers at locations indicated. Thermometers must have either 9 inch long scales or 3.5 inch diameter dials, with insertion, immersion, or averaging elements. Provide matching thermowells for pipe-mounted installations. Select scale ranges suitable for the intended service, with the normal operating temperature near the scale's midpoint. The thermometer's accuracy must be plus or minus 2 percent of the scale range.

2.8.1.1 Air-Duct Thermometers

Air-duct thermometers must have perforated stem guards and 45-degree adjustable duct flanges with locking mechanism.

2.8.2 Pressure Gauges

Provide pipe-mounted pressure gauges at the locations indicated. Gauges must conform to ASME B40.100 and have a 4 inch diameter dial and shutoff cock. Select scale ranges suitable for the intended service, with the normal operating pressure near the scale's midpoint. The gauge's accuracy must be plus or minus 2 percent of the scale range.

Gauges must be suitable for field or panel mounting as required, must have black legend on white background, and must have a pointer traveling through a 270-degree arc. Gauge range must be suitable for the application with an upper end of the range not to exceed 150 percent of the design upper limit. Accuracy must be plus or minus 3 percent of scale range. Gauges must meet requirements of ASME B40.100.

2.8.3 Low Differential Pressure Gauges

Gauges for low differential pressure measurements must be a minimum of 3.5 inch (nominal) size with two sets of pressure taps, and must have a diaphragm-actuated pointer, white dial with black figures, and pointer zero adjustment. Gauge range must be suitable for the application with an upper end of the range not to exceed 150 percent of the design upper limit. Accuracy must be plus or minus two percent of scale range.

2.9 OUTPUT DEVICES

2.9.1 Actuators

Actuators must be 24-volt powered, direct-drive and electric (electronic). All actuators must be normally open (NO), normally closed (NC) or fail-in-last-position (FILP) as indicated. Normally open and normally closed actuators must be of mechanical spring return type. Electric actuators must have an electronic cut off or other means to provide burnout protection if stalled. Actuators must have a visible position indicator. Electric actuators must provide position feedback to the controller as indicated. Actuators must smoothly and fully open or close the devices to which they are applied. Electric actuators must have a full stroke response time in both directions of 90 seconds or less at rated load. Electric actuators must be of the foot-mounted type with an oil-immersed gear train or the direct-coupled type. Where multiple electric actuators operate from a common signal, the actuators must provide an output signal identical to its input signal to the additional devices. All actuators must be rated for their operating environment. Actuators used outdoors must be designed and rated for outdoor use.

Actuators under continuous exposure to water, such as those used in sumps, must be submersible.

Actuators incorporating an integral network connection are considered DDC Hardware and must meet the DDC Hardware requirements of Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

2.9.1.1 Damper Actuators

Damper actuators must provide the torque necessary per damper manufacturer's instructions to modulate the dampers smoothly over its full range of operation and torque must be at least 6 inch-pounds/1 square foot of damper area for opposed blade dampers and 9 inch-pounds/1 square foot of damper area for parallel blade dampers.

2.9.1.2 Electric Actuators

Each actuator must have distinct markings indicating the full-open and full-closed position. Each actuator must deliver the torque required for continuous uniform motion and must have internal end switches to limit the travel, or be capable of withstanding continuous stalling without damage. Actuators must function properly within 85 to 110 percent of rated line voltage. Provide actuators with hardened steel running shafts and gears of steel or copper alloy. Fiber or reinforced nylon gears may be used for torques less than 16 inch-pounds..

- a. Two-position actuators must be single direction, spring return, or reversing type. Two position actuator signals may either be the control power voltage or line voltage as needed for torque or appropriate interlock circuits.
- b. Modulating actuators must be capable of stopping at any point in the cycle, and starting in either direction from any point. Actuators must be equipped with a switch for reversing direction, and a button to disengage the clutch to allow manual adjustments. Provide the actuator with a hand crank for manual adjustments, as applicable. Modulating actuator input signals can either be a 4 to 20 mAdc or a 0-10 VDC signal.
- c. Floating or pulse width modulation actuators are acceptable for non-fail safe applications unless indicated otherwise provided that the floating point control (timed actuation) must have a scheduled re-calibration of span and position no more than once a day and no less than once a week. The schedule for the re-calibration should not affect occupied conditions and be staggered between equipment to prevent falsely loading or unloading central plant equipment.

2.9.2 Relays

Relays must have contacts rated for the intended application, indicator light, and dust proof enclosure. The indicator light must be lit when the coil is energized and off when coil is not energized.

Control relay contacts must have utilization category and ratings selected for the application. Each set of contacts must incorporate a normally open (NO), normally closed (NC) and common contact. Relays must be rated for a minimum life of one million operations.

2.10 USER INPUT DEVICES

User Input Devices, including potentiometers, switches and momentary contact push-buttons. Potentiometers must be of the thumb wheel or sliding bar type. Momentary Contact Push-Buttons may include an adjustable timer for their output. User input devices must be labeled for their function.

2.11 MULTIFUNCTION DEVICES

Multifunction devices are products which combine the functions of multiple sensor, user input or output devices into a single product. Unless otherwise specified, the multifunction device must meet all requirements of each component device. Where the requirements for the component devices conflict, the multifunction device must meet the most stringent of the requirements.

2.11.1 Current Sensing Relay Command Switch

The Current Sensing Relay portion must meet all requirements of the Current Sensing Relay input device. The Command Switch portion must meet all requirements of the Relay output device except that it must have at least one normally-open (NO) contact.

Current Sensing Relays used for Variable Frequency Drives must be rated for Variable Frequency applications unless installed on the source side of the drive. If used in this situation, the threshold for showing status must be set to allow for the VFD's control power when the drive is not enabled and provide indication of operation when the drive is enabled at minimum speed.

2.11.2 Space Sensor Module

Space Sensor Modules must be multifunction devices incorporating a temperature sensor and one or more of the following as specified and indicated on the Space Sensor Module Schedule:

- a. A temperature indicating device.
- b. A User Input Device which must adjust a temperature setpoint output.
- c. A User Input Momentary Contact Button and an output to the control system indicating zone occupancy.
- d. A three position User Input Switch labeled to indicate heating, cooling and off positions ('HEAT-COOL-OFF' switch) and providing corresponding outputs to the control system.
- e. A two position User Input Switch labeled with 'AUTO' and 'ON' positions and providing corresponding output to the control system..
- f. A multi-position User Input Switch with 'OFF' and at least two fan speed positions and providing corresponding outputs to the control system.

Space Sensor Modules cannot contain mercury (Hg).

2.12 DESKTOP WORKSTATIONS

- a. Description: A tower or all-in-one computer designed for normal use at a single, semipermanent location.
- b. Performance Requirements:
 - (1) Performance requirements may dictate equipment exceeding minimum requirements indicated.
 - (2) Energy Star compliant.
- d. Personal Computer:
 - (1) Minimum Processor Speed: 2.8 GHz.
 - (2) RAM:
 - (a) Capacity: 4 GB.
 - (3) Hard Drive:
 - (a) Media: Rotating disc, nominal rotational speed of 7200 rpm.
 - (b) Number of Hard Drives: One.
 - (c) Capacity: 1TB.
 - (d) Cache Buffer Size: 512KB.
 - (4) Optical Drive:
 - (a) Type: 24x CD/DVD Rom.
 - (b) Reading Formats: Data, audio, recordable, and rewritable.
 - (5) At least four expansion slots of 32 bit.
 - (6) Video Card:
 - (a) Resolution: 1920 by 1200 pixels.
 - (7) Network Interface Card: Include card with connection, as applicable.
 - (a) 10-100-1000 base TX Ethernet with RJ45 connector port.
 - (b) 100 base FX Ethernet with SC or ST port.
- e. Keyboard:
 - (1) 101 enhanced keyboard.
 - (2) Full upper- and lowercase ASCII keyset, numeric keypad, dedicated cursor control keypad, and 12 programmable function keys.
- f. Pointing Device:
 - (1) Either a two- or three-button mouse.
- g. Flat Panel Display Monitor:
 - (1) Display:

- (a) Color display with minimum 21 inches diagonal viewable area.
- (b) Digital input signal.
- (c) Aspect Ratio: 16 to 9.
- (d) Antiglare display.
- (e) Response Time: 5 ms.
- (f) Dynamic Contrast Ratio: 50000 to 1.
- (g) Tilt adjustable base.
- (h) Energy Star compliant.
- (i) Resolution: 1920 by 1080 pixels at 60 Hz with pixel size of mm or smaller.
- (j) Number of Displays: One.

h. I/O Cabling: Include applicable cabling to connect I/O devices.2.9

2.13 PORTABLE WORKSTATIONS

a. Description: A self-contained computer designed to allow for normal use in different locations and conditions.

b. Performance Requirements:

- (1) Performance requirements may dictate equipment exceeding minimum requirements indicated.
- (2) Energy Star compliant.
- (3) Hardware and software shall support local down-loading to DDC controllers.
- (4) Data transfer rate to DDC controller shall be at network speed.

c. Processor:

- (1) Minimum Processor Speed: 2.8 GHz.
- (2) RAM:
 - (a) Capacity: 4 GB.
- (3) Hard Drive:
 - (a) Number of Hard Drives: One.
 - (b) Capacity: 1TB.

d. Input and Output Ports:

- (1) Serial port.
- (2) Shared port for external keyboard or mouse.
- (3) Four USB 3.0 ports.
- (4) Ethernet port.
- (5) HDMI port.
- (6) IEEE 1394 port.

e. Battery:

- (1) Capable of supporting operation of portable workstation for a minimum of 8 hours.
 - (2) Battery life of at least three years.
 - (3) Battery charge time of less than three hours.
- f. Keyboard:
 - (1) 85-key keyboard.
 - (2) Full upper- and lowercase ASCII keyset.
- g. Integral Pointing Device: Touchpad with two buttons. Gesture enabled.
- h. Display:
 - (1) 14 inches diagonal or larger high-definition WLED color display.
 - (2) Antiglare screen.
 - (3) 1920 by 1080 pixel resolution.
 - (4) Brightness: 300 nits.
- i. Network Interfaces:
 - (1) Network Interface Card: Include card with connection, as application.
 - (a) 10-100-1000 base TX Ethernet with RJ45 connector port.
 - (b) 100 base FX Ethernet with SC or ST port.
 - (2) Wireless:
 - (a) Internal with integrated antenna, capable of supporting 802.11 a/b/g/n.
- j. Digital Video Disc Rewrite Recorder (DVD+/-RW):
 - (1) Compatible with DVD disks and data, audio, recordable and rewritable compact disks.
 - (2) 160-ms access time.
- k. Accessories:
 - (1) Nylon carrying case.
 - (2) Docking station.
 - (3) Mobile broadband card.
 - (4) Wireless optical mouse.
 - (5) Category 6a patch cable. Minimum cable length shall be 6 ft.

2.14 SERVERS

- a. Description: x86 based permanently installed computer used for client-server computing.
- b. Mounting: Rack or Tower.
- c. Power: Single power supply, minimum 300 W.
- d. Performance Requirements:
 - (1) Performance requirements may dictate equipment exceeding minimum requirements indicated.
 - (2) Energy Star compliant.
 - (3). Minimum Processor Speed: 2.0 GHz.
 - (4) RAM:
 - (a) Capacity: 4 GB.
 - (b) Expandable Capacity: 8 GB.
 - (5) Drive Bays: Eight at 2.5 inches or eight at 3.5 inches.
 - (6) Hard-Drive Storage: Two drives each with 500 GB storage and nominal rotational speed of 7200 rpm.
 - (7) Network Interface: Dual port Gigabit Ethernet.
 - (8) DVD +RW Drive.
 - 9. Color, flat-screen display with 19 inch diagonal viewable area.
 - (10) Keyboard and mouse.
 - (11) Next-day on-site warranty for two-year period following Substantial Completion.
- e. Servers shall include the following:
 - (1) Full-feature backup server (server and backup minimum requirement).
 - (2) Software licenses.
 - (3) Cable installation between server(s) and network.
- f. Web Server:
 - (1) If required to be separate, include Web server hardware and software to match, except backup server is not required.
 - (2) Firewalls between server Web and networks.
 - (3) Password protection for access to server from Web server.
 - (4) Cable installation between the server(s) and building Ethernet network.

- g. Power each server through a dedicated UPS unit.

2.15 PRINTERS

- a. Black and White Laser Printer:

- (1) 1200 by 1200 dots per inch resolution.
- (2) First sheet printed within 10 seconds.
- (3) 10 page per minute rated print speed at best quality mode.
- (4) Print buffer with at least 256 MB of RAM.
- (5) Complies with Energy Star requirements.
- (6) Capable of handling letter- and legal-size paper and overhead transparencies.
- (7) At least 2,400 page toner/cartridge capacity.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 General Installation Requirements

Perform the installation under the supervision of competent technicians regularly employed in the installation of DDC systems.

3.1.1.1 Device Mounting Criteria

All devices must be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and as specified and indicated. Control devices to be installed in piping and ductwork must be provided with required gaskets, flanges, thermal compounds, insulation, piping, fittings, and manual valves for shutoff, equalization, purging, and calibration. Strap-on temperature sensing elements must not be used except as specified. Spare thermowells must be installed adjacent to each thermowell containing a sensor and as indicated. Devices located outdoors must have a weathershield.

3.1.1.2 Labels and Tags

Match labels and tags to the unique identifiers indicated on the As-Built drawings. Label all enclosures and instrumentation. Tag all sensors and actuators in mechanical rooms. Tag airflow measurement arrays to show flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMA flow coefficient. Tag duct static pressure taps at the location of the pressure tap. Provide plastic or metal tags, mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire. Labels exterior to protective enclosures must be engraved plastic and mechanically attached to the enclosure or instrumentation. Labels inside protective enclosures may be attached using adhesive, but must not be hand written.

3.1.2 Weathershield

Provide weathershields for sensors located outdoors. Install weathershields such that they prevent the sun from directly striking the

sensor and prevent rain from directly striking or dripping onto the sensor. Install weather shields with adequate ventilation so that the sensing element responds to the ambient conditions of the surroundings. When installing weathershields near outside air intake ducts, install them such that normal outside air flow does not cause rainwater to strike the sensor.

3.1.3 Room Instrument Mounting

Mount room instruments, including but not limited to wall mounted non-adjustable space sensor modules and sensors located in occupied spaces, 48 inches above the floor unless otherwise indicated. Install adjustable devices to be ADA compliant unless otherwise indicated on the Room Sensor Schedule:

- a. Space Sensor Modules for Fan Coil Units may be either unit or wall mounted but not mounted on an exterior wall.
- b. Wall mount all other Space Sensor Modules.

3.1.4 Indication Devices Installed in Piping and Liquid Systems

Provide snubbers for gauges in piping systems subject to pulsation. For gauges for steam service use pigtail fittings with cock. Install thermometers and temperature sensing elements in liquid systems in thermowells. Provide spare Pressure/Temperature Ports (Pete's Plug) for all temperature and pressure sensing elements installed in liquid systems for calibration/testing.

3.1.5 Occupancy Sensors

Provide a sufficient quantity of occupancy sensors to provide complete coverage of the area (room or space). Occupancy sensors are to be ceiling mounted. Install occupancy sensors in accordance with NFPA 70 requirements and the manufacturer's instructions. Do not locate occupancy sensors within 6 feet of HVAC outlets or heating ducts, or where they can "see" beyond any doorway. Installation above doorway(s) is preferred. Do not use ultrasonic sensors in spaces containing ceiling fans. Install sensors to detect motion to within 2 feet of all room entrances and to not trigger due to motion outside the room. Set the off-delay timer to 15 minutes unless otherwise indicated. Adjust sensors prior to beneficial occupancy, but after installation of furniture systems, shelving, partitions, etc. For each controlled area, provide one hundred percent coverage capable of detecting small hand-motion movements, accommodating all occupancy habits of single or multiple occupants at any location within the controlled room.

3.1.6 Switches

3.1.6.1 Temperature Limit Switch

Provide a temperature limit switch (freezestat) to sense the temperature at the location indicated. Provide a sufficient number of temperature limit switches (freezestats) to provide complete coverage of the duct section but no less than 1 foot in length per square foot of cross sectional area. Install manual reset limit switches in approved, accessible locations where they can be reset easily. Install temperature limit switch (freezestat) sensing elements in a side-to-side (not top-to-bottom) serpentine pattern with the relay section at the highest

point and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.1.6.2 Hand-Off Auto Switches

Wire safety controls such as smoke detectors and freeze protection thermostats to protect the equipment during both hand and auto operation.

3.1.7 Temperature Sensors

Install temperature sensors in locations that are accessible and provide a good representation of sensed media. Installations in dead spaces are not acceptable. Calibrate and install sensors according to manufacturer's instructions. Select sensors only for intended application as designated or recommended by manufacturer.

3.1.7.1 Room Temperature Sensors

Mount the sensors on interior walls to sense the average room temperature at the locations indicated. Avoid locations near heat sources such as copy machines or locations by supply air outlet drafts. Mount the center of all user-adjustable sensors 48 inches above the floor to meet ADA requirements. Non user-adjustable sensors can be mounted as indicated in paragraph ROOM INSTRUMENT MOUNTING.

3.1.7.2 Duct Temperature Sensors

3.1.7.2.1 Probe Type

Place tip of the sensor in the middle of the airstream or in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations or instructions. Provide a gasket between the sensor housing and the duct wall. Seal the duct penetration air tight. When installed in insulated duct, provide enclosure or stand off fitting to accommodate the thickness of duct insulation to allow for maintenance or replacement of the sensor and wiring terminations. Seal the duct insulation penetration vapor tight.

3.1.7.2.2 Averaging Type

Weave the sensing element in a serpentine fashion from side to side perpendicular to the flow, across the duct or air handler cross-section, using durable non-metal supports in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Avoid tight radius bends or kinking of the sensing element. Prevent contact between the sensing element and the duct or air handler internals. Provide a duct access door at the sensor location. The access door must be hinged on the side, factory insulated, have cam type locks, and be as large as the duct will permit, maximum 18 by 18 inches. For sensors inside air handlers, the sensors must be fully accessible through the air handler's access doors without removing any of the air handler's internals.

3.1.7.3 Immersion Temperature Sensors

Provide thermowells for sensors measuring piping, tank, or pressure vessel temperatures. Locate wells to sense continuous flow conditions. Do not install wells using extension couplings. When installed on insulated piping, provide stand enclosure or stand off fitting to accommodate the thickness of the pipe insulation and allow for maintenance or replacement of the sensor or wiring terminations. Where piping diameters are smaller than the length of the wells, provide wells in piping at elbows to sense

flow across entire area of well. Wells must not restrict flow area to less than 70 percent of pipe area. Increase piping size as required to avoid restriction. Provide the sensor well with a heat-sensitive transfer agent between the sensor and the well interior ensuring contact between the sensor and the well.

3.1.7.4 Outside Air Temperature Sensors

Provide outside air temperature sensors on the building's north side with a protective weather shade that does not inhibit free air flow across the sensing element, and protects the sensor from snow, ice, and rain. Location must not be near exhaust hoods and other areas such that it is not influenced by radiation or convection sources which may affect the reading. Provide a shield to shade the sensor from direct sunlight.

3.1.8 Air Flow Measurement Sensors (AFMS)

Install AFMS with the manufacturer's recommended minimum distances between upstream and downstream disturbances. Airflow straighteners may be used to reduce minimum distances as recommended by the AFMS manufacturer.

3.1.9 Duct Static Pressure Sensors

Locate the duct static pressure sensing tap at 75 percent of the distance between the first and last air terminal units. If the transmitter output is a 0-10Vdc signal, locate the transmitter in the same enclosure as the air handling unit (AHU) controller for the AHU serving the terminal units. If a remote duct static pressure sensor is to be used, run the signal wire back to the controller for the air handling unit.

3.1.10 Relative Humidity Sensors

Install relative humidity sensors in supply air ducts at least 10 feet downstream of humidity injection elements.

3.1.11 Meters

3.1.11.1 Energy Meters

Locate energy meters as indicated. Connect each meter output to the DDC system, to measure both instantaneous demand/energy and other variables as indicated.

3.1.12 Dampers

3.1.12.1 Damper Actuators

Provide spring return actuators which fail to a position that protects the served equipment and space on all control dampers related to freeze protection or force protection. For all outside, makeup and relief dampers provide dampers which fail closed. Terminal fan coil units, terminal VAV units, convectors, and unit heaters may be non-spring return unless indicated otherwise. Do not mount actuators in the air stream. Do not connect multiple actuators to a common drive shaft. Install actuators so that their action seal the damper to the extent required to maintain leakage at or below the specified rate and so that they move the blades smoothly throughout the full range of motion.

3.1.12.2 Damper Installation

Install dampers straight and true, level in all planes, and square in all dimensions. Dampers must move freely without undue stress due to twisting, racking (parallelogramming), bowing, or other installation error. External linkages must operate smoothly over the entire range of motion, without deformation or slipping of any connecting rods, joints or brackets that will prevent a return to its normal position. Blades must close completely and leakage must not exceed that specified at the rated static pressure. Provide structural support for multi-section dampers. Acceptable methods of structural support include but are not limited to U-channel, angle iron, corner angles and bolts, bent galvanized steel stiffeners, sleeve attachments, braces, and building structure. Where multi-section dampers are installed in ducts or sleeves, they must not sag due to lack of support. Do not use jackshafts to link more than three damper sections. Do not use blade to blade linkages. Install outside and return air dampers such that their blades direct their respective air streams towards each other to provide for maximum mixing of air streams.

3.1.13 Thermometers and Gauges

3.1.13.1 Local Gauges for Actuators

Provide a pressure gauge at each pneumatic control input and output. Pneumatic actuators must have an accessible and visible pressure gauge installed in the tubing lines at the actuator as indicated.

3.1.13.2 Thermometers

Mount devices to allow reading while standing on the floor or ground, as applicable.

3.1.14 Wire and Cable

Provide complete electrical wiring for the Control System, including wiring to transformer primaries. Wire and Cable must be installed without splices between control devices and in accordance with NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A. Instrumentation grounding must be installed per the device manufacturer's instructions and as necessary to prevent ground loops, noise, and surges from adversely affecting operation of the system. Test installed ground rods as specified in IEEE 142. Cables and conductor wires must be tagged at both ends, with the identifier indicated on the shop drawings. Electrical work must be as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM and as indicated. Wiring external to enclosures must be run in raceways

Install control circuit wiring not in raceways in a neat and safe manner. Wiring must not use the suspended ceiling system (including tiles, frames or hangers) for support. Where conduit or raceways are required, control circuit wiring must not run in the same conduit/raceway as power wiring over 50 volts. Run all circuits over 50 volts in conduit, metallic tubing, covered metal raceways, or armored cable.

3.1.15 Copper Tubing

Provide hard-drawn copper tubing in exposed areas and either hard-drawn or annealed copper tubing in concealed areas. Use only tool-made bends. Use only brass or copper solder joint type fittings, except for connections to apparatus. For connections to apparatus use brass compression type

fittings.

3.1.16 Workstation Installation

a. Desktop Workstations Installation:

- (1) Install workstation in MECH/PLUMB ROOM 127.
- (2) Install multiple-receptacle power strip with cord for use in connecting multiple workstation components to a single duplex electrical power receptacle.
- (3) Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.
- (4) Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs and historical database.
- (5) Power workstation through aUPS unit. Locate UPS adjacent to workstation.

b. Portable Workstations Installation:

- (1) Turn over portable workstations to Contracting Officer Representative (COR) at Substantial Completion.
- (2) Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.

c. Color Graphics Application:

- (1) Use system schematics indicated as starting point to create graphics.
- (2) Develop Project-specific library of symbols for representing system equipment and products.
- (3) Incorporate digital images of Project-completed installation into graphics where beneficial to enhance effect.
- (4) Submit sketch of graphic layout with description of all text for each graphic for Owner's and Architect's review before creating graphic using graphics software.
- (5) Seek COR input in graphics development once using graphics software.
- (6) Final editing shall be done on-site with COR's review and feedback.
- (7) Refine graphics as necessary for COR acceptance.
- (8) On receiving COR acceptance, print a hard copy for inclusion in operation and maintenance manual. Prepare a scanned copy PDF file of each graphic and include with softcopy of DDC system operation and maintenance manual.

3.1.17 Server Installation

- a. Install number of servers required to suit requirements indicated. Review Project requirements and indicate layout of proposed location in Shop Drawings.
- b. Install software indicated on server(s) and verify that software functions properly.
- c. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs, and historical database.
- d. Power servers through UPS unit. Locate UPS adjacent to server.

3.1.18 Printer Installation

- a. Provide the following printer(s) at location(s) directed by COR:
 - (1) Black and White Laser: Quantity, one.
- End of Section --

SECTION 23 09 23.01

LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS
02/19, CHG 1: 02/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Provide a complete Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, except for the Front End which is specified in Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION, suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as specified and shown and in accordance with Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

1.1.1 System Requirements

Provide a system meeting the requirements of both Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and this Section and with the following characteristics:

- a. The control system must be an open implementation of LonWorks technology using CEA-709.1-D as the communications protocol. The system must use LonMark Standard Network Variable Types as defined in LonMark SNVT List exclusively for communication over the network.

The control system must be an open implementation of LonWorks technology using CEA-709.1-D and Fox as the communications protocols. Except for communication between Niagara Framework components (between Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways or between a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway and a Niagara Framework Front End) which must use the Fox Protocol, the system must use LonMark Standard Network Variable Types as defined in LonMark SNVT List exclusively for communication over the network.

- b. Use LonWorks Network Services (LNS) for all network management including addressing and binding of network variables. As specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC, submit copies of the complete, fully-commissioned, valid, as-built Final LNS database, including all LNS credits, for the complete control system provided under this specification. All devices must be on-line and commissioned into the LNS database.
- c. Install and configure control hardware, except as specified for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, to provide all input and output Standard Network Variables (SNVTs) as indicated and as needed to meet the requirements of this specification. Points in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways which do not communicate with non-Niagara Framework DDC Hardware may be exposed via Fox instead.
- d. All DDC hardware installed under this specification must communicate via CEA-709.1-D, and Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways must also communicate over the IP network via Fox. Install the control system such that a SNVT output from any node on the network can be bound to any other node in the same domain.

1.1.2 Verification of Specification Requirements

Review all specifications related to the control system installation and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancies before performing any work. If Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC or any other Section referenced in this specification is not included in the project specifications advise the Contracting Officer and either obtain the missing Section or obtain Contracting Officer approval before performing any work.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

CONSUMER ELECTRONICS ASSOCIATION (CEA)

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| CEA-709.1-D | (2014) Control Network Protocol Specification |
| CEA-709.3 | (1999; R 2015) Free-Topology Twisted-Pair Channel Specification |
| CEA-852-C | (2014) Tunneling Device Area Network Protocols Over Internet Protocol Channels |

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

- | | |
|------------|-----------------|
| IEEE 802.3 | (2018) Ethernet |
|------------|-----------------|

INTERNET ENGINEERING TASK FORCE (IETF)

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| IETF RFC 4361 | (2006) Node-specific Client Identifiers for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Version Four (DHCPv4) |
| IETF RFC 7465 | (2015) Prohibiting RC4 Cipher Suites |

LONMARK INTERNATIONAL (LonMark)

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| LonMark Interoperability Guide | (2005) LonMark Application-Layer Interoperability Guide and LonMark Layer 1-6 Interoperability Guide; Version 3.4 |
| LonMark SCPT List | (2014) LonMark SCPT Master List; Version 15 |
| LonMark SNVT List | (2014) LonMark SNVT Master List; Version 15 |
| LonMark XIF Guide | (2001) LonMark External Interface File Reference Guide; Revision 4.402 |

U.S. FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC)

- | | |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| FCC Part 15 | Radio Frequency Devices (47 CFR 15) |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 916

(2015; Reprint Sep 2021) UL Standard for
Safety Energy Management Equipment

1.3 DEFINITIONS

For definitions related to this section, see Section 23 09 00
INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Submittals related to this Section are specified in Section 23 09 00
INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

All products used to meet this specification must meet the specified requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project. Provide products which meet the requirements of both Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and this Section.

2.1 NETWORK HARDWARE

2.1.1 CEA-709.1-D Routers

CEA-709.1-D Routers must meet the requirements of CEA-709.1-D and must provide connection between two or more CEA-709.3 TP/FT-10 channels, or between one or more CEA-709.3 TP/FT-10 channels and a LonMark Interoperability Guide TP/XF-1250 channel.

2.1.2 CEA-709.1-D Repeaters

CEA-709.1-D Repeaters must be CEA-709.1-D Routers configured as repeaters. Physical layer repeaters are prohibited.

2.1.3 CEA-709.1-D Gateways

In addition to the requirements for DDC Hardware, CEA-709.1-D gateways must be a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway or must:

- a. Allow bi-directional mapping of data between the non-CEA-709.1-D protocol and SNVTs
- b. Incorporate a network connection to a TP/FT-10 network in accordance with CEA-709.3 and a separate connection appropriate for the a non-CEA-709.1-D network

2.1.4 CEA-852-C Router

CEA-852-C Routers must perform layer 3 routing of CEA-709.1-D packets over an IP network in accordance with CEA-852-C. The router must provide the appropriate connection to the IP network and connections to the CEA-709.3 TP/FT-10 or LonMark Interoperability Guide TP/XF-1250 network. CEA-852-C Routers must support the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP; IETF RFC 4361 for IP configuration and the use of an CEA-852-C Configuration Server (for CEA-852-C configuration), but must not rely on these services for configuration. CEA-852-C Routers must be capable of manual configuration via a console RS-232 or USB port.

2.1.5 Ethernet Switch

Ethernet Switches must be managed switches and must autoconfigure between 10,100 and 1000 megabits per second (MBPS).

2.2 CONTROL NETWORK WIRING

- a. Provide TP/FT-10 control wiring in accordance with CEA-709.3.
- b. Provide TP/XF-1250 control wiring in accordance with the LonMark Interoperability Guide.
- c. For the Building Control Network IP Network provide media that is CAT-5e Ethernet media at a minimum and meets all requirements of IEEE 802.3.

2.3 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) HARDWARE

All DDC Hardware must meet the following general requirements:

- a. Except for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, it must incorporate a "service pin" which, when pressed will cause the DDC Hardware to broadcast its 48-bit NodeID and its ProgramID over the network. The service pin must be distinguishable and accessible.
- b. It must incorporate a light to indicate the device is receiving power.
- c. Except for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, it must incorporate a TP/FT-10 transceiver in accordance with CEA-709.3 and connections for TP/FT-10 control network wiring. Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways must incorporate an IP connection and at least one other transceiver. These other transceivers must be either a TP/FT-10 transceiver in accordance with CEA-709.3 or a TP/XF-1250 transceiver in accordance with LonMark Interoperability Guide. Niagara Framework Supervisory gateways must have connection of the appropriate type for each transceiver.
- d. It must communicate on the network using only the CEA-709.1-D protocol or the Fox protocol.
- e. It must be capable of having network communications configured via LNS the Niagara Framework.
- f. It must be locally powered; link powered devices are not acceptable.
- g. LonMark external interface files (XIF files), as defined in the LonMark XIF Guide, must be submitted for each type of DDC Hardware except Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways.
- h. Application programs and configuration settings must be stored in a manner such that a loss of power does not result in a loss of the application program or configuration settings:
 - (1) Loss of power must never result in the loss of application programs, regardless of the length of time power is lost.
 - (2) Loss of power for less than 2,500 hours must not result in the loss of configured settings.

- i. It must have all functionality specified and required to support the application (Sequence of Operation or portion thereof) in which it is used, including but not limited to:
 - (1) It must provide input and output SNVTs or Niagara Framework Points as specified, as indicated on the Points Schedule, and as otherwise required to support the sequence and application in which it is used. All SNVTs and Niagara Framework Points must have meaningful names identifying the value represented by the SNVT or Niagara Framework Points. Unless a standard network variable type of an appropriate engineering type is not available, all network variables must be of a standard network variable type with engineering units appropriate to the value the variable represents.
 - (2) All settings and parameters used by the application in which the DDC hardware is used must be configurable via one of the following: standard configuration properties (SCPTs) as defined in the LonMark SCPT List, user-defined configuration properties (UCPTs), network configuration inputs (*ncis*) of a SNVT type as defined in the LonMark SNVT List, network configuration inputs (*ncis*) of a user defined network variable type, or hardware settings on the controller itself. Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways may instead be configurable via the Niagara Framework.
- j. It must meet FCC Part 15 requirements and have UL 916 or equivalent safety listing.
- k. In addition to these general requirements and the DDC Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Function requirements, all DDC Hardware must also meet the requirements of a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, a Local Display Panel (LDP), Application Specific Controller (ASC), General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC), or an Application Generic Controller (AGC). All pieces of DDC Hardware must have their DDC Hardware Type identified as part of the Manufacturer's Product Data submittal as specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. Except for Local Display Panels provided as part of another controller, where a single device meets the requirements of multiple types, select a single type for that specific device based on it's use. Where a Local Display Panel is provided as part of another device, indicate both the controller type and local display panel. One model of DDC hardware may be submitted as different DDC Hardware types when used in multiple applications.
- l. The user interface on all DDC Hardware with a user interface which allows for modification of a value must be password protected.
- m. Clocks in DDC Hardware incorporating a Clock must continue to function for 120 hours upon loss of power to the DDC Hardware.

2.3.1 Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Functions

DDC Hardware incorporating hardware input-output (I/O) functions must meet the following requirements:

2.3.1.1 Analog Inputs

DDC Hardware analog inputs (AIs) must perform analog to digital (A-to-D)

conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits plus sign or better as needed to meet the accuracy requirements specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. Signal conditioning including transient rejection must be provided for each analog input. Analog inputs must be capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span. Calibration via software scaling performed as part of point configuration is acceptable. The AI must incorporate common mode noise rejection of at least 50 dB from 0 to 100 Hz for differential inputs, and normal mode noise rejection of at least 20 dB at 60 Hz from a source impedance of 10,000 ohms.

2.3.1.2 Analog Outputs

DDC Hardware analog outputs (AOs) must perform digital to analog (D-to-A) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits plus sign, and output a signal with a range of 4-20 mA_{dc} or 0-10 V_{dc}. Analog outputs must be capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span. Calibration via software scaling performed as part of point configuration is acceptable. DDC Hardware with Hand-Off-Auto (H-O-A) switches for analog outputs must provide for overriding the output through the range of 0 percent to 100 percent

2.3.1.3 Binary Inputs

DDC Hardware binary inputs (BIs) must accept contact closures and must ignore transients of less than 5 milli-second duration. Protection against a transient of 50 Vac must be provided.

2.3.1.4 Binary Outputs

DDC Hardware binary outputs (BOs) must provide relay contact closures or triac outputs for momentary and maintained operation of output devices. DDC Hardware with H-O-A switches for binary outputs must provide for overriding the output open or closed.

2.3.1.4.1 Relay Contact Closures

Closures must have a minimum duration of 0.1 second. Relays must provide at least 180V of isolation. Electromagnetic interference suppression must be provided on all output lines to limit transients to 50 Vac. Minimum contact rating must be 0.5 amperes at 24 Vac.

2.3.1.4.2 Triac Outputs

Triac outputs must provide at least 180 V of isolation. Minimum contact rating must be 0.5 amperes at 24 Vac.

2.3.1.5 Pulse Accumulator

DDC Hardware pulse accumulators must have the same characteristics as the BI. In addition, a buffer must be provided to totalize pulses. The pulse accumulator must accept rates of at least 20 pulses per second. The totalized value must be resettable via a configurable parameter.

2.3.1.6 Integrated H-O-A Switches

Where integrated H-O-A switches are provided on hardware outputs, controller must provide means of monitoring position or status of H-O-A switch. This feedback may be provided via the Niagara Framework or via

network variable.

2.3.2 Local Display Panel (LDP)

The Local Display Panels (LDPs) must be DDC Hardware with a display and navigation buttons or a touch screen display, and must provide display and adjustment of Niagara Framework points or network variables as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified. LDPs must be provided as stand-alone DDC Hardware or as an integral part of another piece of DDC Hardware. LDPs must come factory installed with all applications necessary for the device to function as an LDP.

The adjustment of values using display and navigation buttons must be password protected.

2.3.3 Application Specific Controller (ASC)

Application Specific Controllers (ASCs) have a fixed factory-installed application program (i.e. ProgramID) with configurable settings and do not have the ability to be programmed for custom applications. ASCs must meet the following requirements in addition to the General DDC Hardware and DDC Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Function requirements:

- a. ASCs must be LonMark Certified.
- b. Unless otherwise approved, all necessary Configuration Properties and network configuration inputs (*ncis*) for the sequence and application in which the ASC is used must be fully configurable through the Niagara Framework. Application Specific Controller configurable via a Niagara Framework Wizard is preferred. Wizards must be submitted for each type (manufacturer and model) of Application Specific Controller which has a Wizard available for configuration. Wizards distributed under a license must be licensed to the project site. (Note: configuration accomplished via hardware settings does not require configuration via Niagara Framework Wizard.)

Unless otherwise approved, all necessary Configuration Properties and network configuration inputs (*ncis*) for the sequence and application in which the ASC is used must be fully configurable through an LNS plug-in. LNS Plug-ins must be submitted for each type (manufacturer and model) of Application Specific Controller. LNS Plug-ins distributed under a license must be licensed to the project site. (Note: configuration accomplished via hardware settings does not require configuration via plug-in)

- c. ASCs may include an integral or tethered Local Display Panel

2.3.4 General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC)

A General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC) must be programmed for the application. GPPCs must meet the following requirements in addition to the general DDC Hardware requirements and Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Functions:

- a. The programmed GPPC must conform to the LonMark Interoperability Guide.
- b. All programming software required to program the GPPC must be delivered to and licensed to the project site in accordance with Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. Submit the

most recent version of the Programming software for each type (manufacturer and model) of General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC).

- c. Submit copies of the installed GPPC application programs (all software that is not common to every controller of the same manufacturer and model) as source code compatible with the supplied programming software in accordance with Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. The submitted GPPC application program must be the complete application necessary for the GPPC to function as installed and be sufficient to allow replacement of the installed controller with a GPPC of the same type.
- d. GPPCs may include an integral or tethered Local Display Panel

2.3.5 Application Generic Controller (AGC)

An Application Generic Controller (AGC) has a fixed application program which includes the ability to be programmed for custom applications. AGCs must meet the following requirements in addition to the general DDC Hardware requirements and Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Functions:

- a. The programmed AGC must conform to the LonMark Interoperability Guide.
- b. The AGC must have a fixed ProgramID and fixed XIF file.
- c. Unless otherwise approved, the AGC must be fully configurable and programmable for the application using one or more LNS plug-ins Niagara Framework Wizards, all of which must be submitted as specified for each type of AGC (manufacturer and model).
- d. Submit copies of the installed AGC application programs as source code compatible with the supplied LNS plug-in Niagara Framework Wizard used for programming the device in accordance with Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. The submitted AGC application program must be the complete application program necessary for the AGC to function as installed and be sufficient to allow replacement of the installed controller with an AGC of the same type.
- e. AGCs may include an integral or tethered Local Display Panel

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONTROL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Building Control Network (BCN)

Provide a Building Control Network (BCN) connecting all DDC hardware as specified. The Building Control Network (BCN) must consist of an IP Network, one or more Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways CEA-852-C Routers, and one or more Non-IP Building Control Network Channels:

3.1.1.1 Building Control Network (BCN) Installation

Provide building control networks meeting the following requirements:

- a. Provide a Building Control Network IP Network, Non-IP Building Control Network Channels and Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways CEA-852-C Routers to create a single building control network connecting all

DDC Hardware.

- b. In addition to the connection to the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway CEA-852-C Router, each Non-IP Building Control Network (BCN) Channel directly connected to a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway CEA-852-C Router must be directly connected to either DDC Hardware or to CEA-709.1-D Routers, but not to both. A channel containing only CEA-709.1-D Routers is a backbone channel and a channel containing DDC Hardware is a non-backbone channel.
- c. When only a single Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway CEA-852-C Router is required, the IP network consists of only the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway CEA-852-C Router. When multiple Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways CEA-852-C Routers are required, provide an IP Network connecting all Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways CEA-852-C Routers.
- d. Connect all DDC Hardware other than Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways to a non-backbone BCN Channel. Connect all Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways to the Building Control Network (BCN) IP Network.
- e. Install components such that there is no more than one CEA-709.1-D Router between any DDC Hardware and a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway CEA-852-C Router
- f. Install the network such that the peak expected bandwidth usage for each and every channel is less than 70 percent, including device-to-device traffic and traffic to the Utility Monitoring and Control System (UMCS) as indicated on the Points Schedule.
- g. Where multiple pieces of DDC Hardware are used in the execution of a single sequence of operation, directly connect all DDC Hardware used to execute the sequence to the same channel and do not install other DDC Hardware, other than a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, to that channel.

3.1.1.2 Non-IP Building Control Network (BCN) Channel

Provide Non-IP Building Control Network (BCN) Channels meeting the following requirements:

- a. For each non-backbone channel, provide a TP/FT-10 channel in doubly terminated bus topology in accordance with CEA-709.3. For each backbone channel, provide either a TP/FT-10 channel in doubly terminated bus topology in accordance with CEA-709.3 or a TP/XF-1250 channel in accordance with the LonMark Interoperability Guide.
- b. Connect no more than 2/3 the maximum number of devices permitted by CEA-709.3 to each TP/FT-10 channel. Connect no more than 2/3 the maximum number of devices permitted by LonMark Interoperability Guide to TP/XF-1250 channel.
- c. Connect no more than 2/3 the maximum number of devices permitted by the manufacturer of the device transceivers to each channel. When more than one type of transceiver is used on the same channel, use the transceiver with the lowest maximum number of devices to calculate the 2/3 limit.

3.1.1.3 Building Control Network (BCN) IP Network

Install IP Network Cabling in conduit. Install Ethernet Switches in lockable enclosures. Install the Building Control Network (BCN) IP Network so that it is available at the Facility Point of Connection (FPOC) location. When the FPOC location is a room number, provide sufficient additional media to ensure that the Building Control Network (BCN) IP Network can be extended to any location in the room.

3.1.2 DDC Hardware

Install Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways CEA-852-C Routers in lockable enclosures. Install other DDC Hardware which is not is suspended ceilings in lockable enclosures.

Configure and commission all DDC Hardware on the Building Control Network via the Niagara Framework via LNS using an LNS-based Network Configuration Tool. Use Application Specific Controllers whenever an Application Specific Controller suitable for the application exists. When an Application Specific Controller suitable for the application does not exist use a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway .

3.1.2.1 Hand-Off-Auto (H-O-A) Switches

Provide Hand-Off-Auto (H-O-A) switches for all DDC Hardware analog outputs and binary outputs used for control of systems other than terminal units, as specified and as indicated on the Points Schedule. H-O-A switches must be integral to the controller hardware, an external device co-located with (in the same enclosure as) the controller, integral to the controlled equipment, or an external device co-located with (in the same enclosure as) the controlled equipment.

- a. For H-O-A switches integral to DDC Hardware, meet the requirements specified in paragraph DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) HARDWARE.
- b. For external H-O-A switches for binary outputs, provide switches capable of overriding the output open or closed.
- c. For external H-O-A switches for analog outputs, provide switches capable of overriding through the range of 0 percent to 100 percent.

3.1.2.2 Local Display Panels

Provide LDPs to display and override values of points in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway or Network Variables as indicated on the Points Schedule. Install LDPs displaying points for anything other than a terminal unit in the same room as the equipment. Install LDPs displaying points for only terminal units in a mechanical room central to the group of terminal units it serves.

3.1.2.3 Graphics and Web Pages

Configure Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways to use web pages to provide a graphical user interface including System Displays using the project site sample displays, including overrides, as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified. Label all points on displays with full English language descriptions and the point name as indicated on the Points Schedule. Configure user permissions for access to and executions of action using graphic pages. Coordinate user permissions with the

Controls and HVAC shop supervisor. Configure the web server to use HTTPS based on the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol in accordance with IETF RFC 7465 using a Government furnished certificate.

3.1.1.2.4 Overrides for GPPCs and AGCs

Provide the capability to override points for all General Purpose Programmable Controllers and Application Generic Controllers as specified and as indicated on the Points Schedule using one of the following methods:

a. Override SNVT of Same SNVT Type method:

- (1) Use this method for all setpoint overrides and for overrides of inputs and outputs whenever practical.
- (2) Provide a SNVT input to the DDC hardware containing the point to be overridden of the same SNVT type as the point to be overridden.
- (3) Program and configure the DDC hardware such that:
 - (a) If the value of the SNVT on the override input is the *Invalid Value* defined for that SNVT by the LonMark SNVT List, then the point is not overridden (its value is determined from the sequence).
 - (b) If the value of the SNVT on the override input is not the *Invalid Value* defined for that SNVT by the LonMark SNVT List then set the value of the point to be overridden to the value of the SNVT on the override input.

b. HVAC Override SNVT method:

- (1) Use this method for override of inputs and outputs when the "Override SNVT Shares SNVT Type" method is impractical.
- (2) Provide a SNVT input to the DDC hardware containing the point to be overridden of SNVT type *SNVT_hvac_overid*. Show on the Points Schedule how to perform the specified override using this SNVT.

3.1.1.2.5 Overrides for ASCs

Whenever possible use the methods specified for General Purpose Programmable Controllers and Application Generic Controllers to perform overrides for all Application Specific Controllers. If neither the "Override SNVT of Same SNVT Type" method or "HVAC Override SNVT" method are supported by the Application Specific Controller show this on the Points Schedule and perform overrides as follows:

- a. Provide one or more SNVT input(s) to the DDC hardware containing the point to be overridden. Document the number and type of each SNVT provided on the Points Schedule.
- b. Configure the Application Specific Controller such that:
 - (1) For some specific combination or combinations of values at the SNVT override input(s) the point is not overridden, and its value is determined from the sequence as usual. Show on the Points Schedule the values required at the SNVT override input(s) to not override the point.

- (2) For other specific combinations of SNVT override input(s), the value of the point to be overridden is determined from the value of the override input(s). Show on the Points Schedule the correlation between the SNVT override input(s) and the resulting value of the overridden point.

3.1.3 Scheduling, Alarming, Trending and Overrides

3.1.3.1 Scheduling

Configure schedules in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway using Niagara Schedule Objects as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified. When the schedule is controlling occupancy modes in DDC Hardware other than a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway use a network variable of type SNVT_Occupancy.

Provide DDC Hardware with LonMark Objects meeting the Simple Scheduler Functional Profile and configure schedules as specified on the Points Schedule and as specified.

3.1.3.1.1 Schedule Groupings

Provide a separate schedule for each AHU including it's associated Terminal Units and for each stand-alone Terminal Unit (those not dependent upon AHU service) or group of stand-alone Terminal Units acting according to a common schedule.

3.1.3.1.2 Occupancy Mode Mapping to SNVT Values

Use the following mapping between SNVT_Occupancy enumerations and occupancy modes:

- a. OCCUPIED mode: Enumeration value of OC_OCCUPIED
- b. UNOCCUPIED mode: Enumeration value of OC_UNOCCUPIED
- c. WARM-UP/COOL-DOWN (PRE-OCCUPANCY) mode: Enumeration value of OC_STANDBY

3.1.3.2 Alarming

For each point which is shown on the Points Schedule with an alarm condition, provide a SNVT output for the point to be used for alarm generation by the UMCS Front End

For each point not in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway which is shown on the Points Schedule with an alarm condition, provide a SNVT output for the point to be used for alarm generation. For each point which is shown on the Points Schedule with an alarm condition, configure alarms in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway using Niagara Alarm Extensions and Alarm Services.

3.1.3.3 Trending

For each point which is shown on the Points Schedule as requiring a trend, provide a SNVT output for the point to be used for trending by the UMCS Front End.

For each point not in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway which is

shown on the Points Schedule as requiring a trend, provide a SNVT output for the point to be used for trending. For each point which is shown on the Points Schedule as requiring a trend, configure a trend in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway using Niagara Framework History Extensions and the Niagara Framework History Service.

3.1.3.4 Overrides

For each point shown on the Points Schedule as requiring an override, provide an override as specified in paragraphs "Overrides for GPPCs and AGCs" and "Overrides for ASCs".

Provide overrides for points as indicated on the Points Schedule. For overrides to points in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, use the Niagara Framework. For overrides to other points, provide an override to a point in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway via the Niagara Framework where the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway overrides the other point as specified in paragraphs "Overrides for GPPCs and AGCs" and "Overrides for ASCs"

3.1.4 Gateways

The requirements in this paragraph do not themselves permit the installation of hardware not meeting the other requirements of this section. Except for proprietary systems specifically indicated in Section 23 09 00, all control hardware installed under this project must meet the requirements of this specification, including the control hardware providing the network interface for a package unit or split system specified under this Section or another Section. Only use gateways to connect to pre-existing control devices and to proprietary systems specifically permitted by Section 23 09 00.

Provide Gateways to connect non-CEA-709.1-D control hardware in accordance with the following:

- a. Configure gateway to map writeable data points in the controlled equipment to Network Variable Inputs of Standard Network Variable Types as defined by the LonMark SNVT List, or to Niagara Framework points, as indicated in the Points Schedule and as specified.
- b. Configure gateway to map readable data points in the controlled equipment to Network Variable Outputs of Standard Network Variable Types as defined by the LonMark SNVT List, or to Niagara Framework points, as indicated in the Points Schedule and as specified.
- c. Do not use non-CEA-709.1-D control hardware for controlling built-up units or any other equipment that was not furnished with factory-installed controls. (Note: A Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway is CEA-709.1-D control hardware.)
- d. Do not use non-CEA-709.1-D control hardware for system scheduling functions.
- e. Each gateway must communicate with and perform protocol translation for non-CEA-709.1-D control hardware controlling one and only one package unit or a single non-CEA-709.1-D system specifically permitted by Section 23 09 00.
- f. Connect one network port on the gateway to the Building Control

Network and the other port to the single piece of controlled equipment or the non-CEA-709.1-D network specifically permitted by Section 23 09 00.

- g. For gateways to existing package units or simple split systems, non-CEA-709.1-D network wiring connecting the gateway to the package unit or split system interface must not exceed 10 feet in length and must connect to exactly two devices: the controlled equipment or split system interface and the gateway.

3.1.5 Network Interface Jack

Provide standard network interface jacks such that each node on the control network is within 10 ft of an interface jack. For terminal unit controllers with hardwired thermostats this network interface jack may instead be located at the thermostat. Locating the interface jack near the controller is preferred. If the network interface jack is other than a 1/8 inch phone jack, provide an interface cable with a standard 1/8 inch phone jack on one end and a connector suitable for mating with installed network interface jack on the other. No more than one type of interface cable must be required to access all network interface jacks. Furnish one interface cable(s).

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 11 20

FACILITY GAS PIPING
05/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This specification section applies to gas piping installed within buildings incidental and within buildings in compliance with NFPA 54/AGA Z223.1, "National Fuel Gas Code" NFPA 58, "Fuel Gas Piping".

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN GAS ASSOCIATION (AGA)

AGA Z223.1 (2012) National Fuel Gas Code

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3 (2007; R 2017) Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators

ANSI Z21.24/CSA 6.10 (2015; R 2020) Connectors for Gas Appliances

ANSI Z21.78/CSA 6.20 (2010; R 2020) Standard Specification for Combination Gas Controls for Gas Appliances

AMERICAN PETROLEUM INSTITUTE (API)

API RP 1110 (2013; R 2018) Recommended Practice for the Pressure Testing of Steel Pipelines for the Transportation of Gas, Petroleum Gas, Hazardous Liquids, Highly Volatile Liquids, or Carbon Dioxide

API RP 2003 (2015; 8th Ed) Protection Against Ignitions Arising out of Static, Lightning, and Stray Currents

API Std 598 (2009) Valve Inspecting and Testing

API Std 607 (2016) Fire Test for Quarter-turn Valves and Valves Equipped with Non-metallic Seats

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME A13.1 (2020) Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems

ASME B1.1 (2003; R 2018) Unified Inch Screw Threads

	(UN and UNR Thread Form)
ASME B1.20.1	(2013; R 2018) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
ASME B1.20.3	(1976; R 2013) Dryseal Pipe Threads (Inch)
ASME B16.1	(2020) Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings Classes 25, 125, and 250
ASME B16.3	(2016) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300
ASME B16.5	(2020) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 Through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard
ASME B16.9	(2018) Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding Fittings
ASME B16.11	(2016) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded
ASME B16.21	(2016) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges
ASME B16.33	(2012; R 2017) Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Gas Piping Systems Up to 125 psi, (Sizes NPS 1/2 - NPS 2)
ASME B16.39	(2020) Standard for Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions; Classes 150, 250, and 300
ASME B18.2.1	(2012; Errata 2013) Square and Hex Bolts and Screws (Inch Series)
ASME B18.2.2	(2015) Nuts for General Applications: Machine Screw Nuts, Hex, Square, Hex Flange, and Coupling Nuts (Inch Series)
ASME B31.8	(2018; Supplement 2018) Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems
ASME B36.10M	(2015; Errata 2016) Welded and Seamless Wrought Steel Pipe
ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1	(2019) BPVC Section VIII-Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels Division 1

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A53/A53M	(2020) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A105/A105M	(2021) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings for Piping Applications
ASTM A181/A181M	(2014; R 2020) Standard Specification for

Carbon Steel Forgings, for General-Purpose Piping

ASTM A193/A193M (2020) Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service and Other Special Purpose Applications

ASTM A194/A194M (2020a) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel, Alloy Steel, and Stainless Steel Nuts for Bolts for High-Pressure or High-Temperature Service, or Both

ASTM B584 (2014) Standard Specification for Copper Alloy Sand Castings for General Applications

CSA GROUP (CSA)

ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26 (2019) Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-25 (2018) Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions

MSS SP-58 (2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 54 (2021) National Fuel Gas Code

NFPA 58 (2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3) Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3 (2007) Commercial Blast Cleaning

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-STD-101 (2014; Rev C) Color Code for Pipelines and for Compressed Gas Cylinders

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

49 CFR 192 Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL FLAMMABLE & COMBUSTIBLE (2012) Flammable and Combustible Liquids
and Gases Equipment Directory

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The gas piping system includes natural gas piping and appurtenances from point of connection with supply system, as indicated, to gas operated equipment within the facility. Submit operation and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA, in three separate packages. Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS applies to this section, with additions and modifications specified herein. Provide cathodically protected insulating joints connecting aboveground piping from the meter to the building, with lightning arrestors and zinc grounding cells conforming to API RP 2003, installed where indicated.

1.3.1 Gas Facility System and Equipment Operation

Include shop drawings showing piping layout, locations of system valves, gas line markers and cathodic protection system; step-by-step procedures for system start up, operation and shutdown (index system components and equipment to the system drawings); isolation procedures including valve operation to shutdown or isolate each section of the system (index valves to the system maps and provide separate procedures for normal operation and emergency shutdown if required to be different). Submit Data package No. 4.

1.3.2 Gas Facility System Maintenance

Include maintenance procedures and frequency for system and equipment; identification of pipe materials and manufacturer by locations, pipe repair procedures, and jointing procedures at transitions to other piping material or material from a different manufacturer. Submit Data Package No.4.

1.3.3 Gas Facility Equipment Maintenance

Include identification of valves, shut-offs, disconnects, and other equipment by materials, manufacturer, vendor identification and location; maintenance procedures and recommended tool kits for valves and equipment; recommended repair methods (i.e., field repair, factory repair, or replacement) for each valve and piece of equipment; and preventive maintenance procedures, possible failure modes and troubleshooting guide. Submit Data Package No. 3.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Gas Piping System; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Pipe and Fittings; G, AE

Pressure Regulators; G, AE

Valves; G, AE

Warning and Identification Tape; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Pressure Tests

Test with Gas

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Gas Facility System and Equipment Operation

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Submit manufacturer's descriptive data and installation instructions for approval for compression-type mechanical joints used in joining dissimilar materials and for insulating joints. Mark all valves, flanges and fittings in accordance with MSS SP-25.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

Provide materials and equipment which are the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Asbestos or products containing asbestos are not allowed. Submit catalog data and installation instructions for pipe, valves, all related system components, pipe coating materials and application procedures. Conform to NFPA 54NFPA 58 and with requirements specified herein. Provide supply piping to appliances or equipment at least as large as the inlets thereof.

2.2 GAS PIPING SYSTEM AND FITTINGS

2.2.1 Steel Pipe, Joints, and Fittings

- a. Pipe: Black carbon steel in accordance with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 80, threaded ends for sizes 2 inches and smaller; otherwise, plain end beveled for butt welding.
- b. Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, black malleable iron.
- c. Unions: ASME B16.39, black malleable iron.
- d. Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5 steel flanges or convoluted steel flanges conforming to ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1, with flange faces having integral grooves of rectangular cross sections which afford containment for self-energizing gasket material.

Provide steel pipe conforming to ASME B36.10M; and malleable-iron threaded

fittings conforming to ASME B16.1 and ASME B16.3. Provide steel pipe flanges and flanged fittings, including bolts, nuts, and bolt pattern in accordance with ASME B16.5 and ASTM A105/A105M. Provide wrought steel buttwelding fittings conforming to ASME B16.9. Provide socket welding and threaded forged steel fittings conforming to ASME B16.11 and ASTM A181/A181M, Class 60.

2.2.2 Sealants for Steel Pipe Threaded Joints

Provide joint sealing compound as listed in UL FLAMMABLE & COMBUSTIBLE, Class 20 or less. For taping, use tetrafluoroethylene tape conforming to UL FLAMMABLE & COMBUSTIBLE.

2.2.3 Warning and Identification

Provide pipe flow markings, warning and identification tape, and metal tags as required.

2.2.4 Flange Gaskets

Provide gaskets of nonasbestos compressed material in accordance with ASME B16.21, 1/16 inch thickness, full face or self-centering flat ring type, containing aramid fibers bonded with styrene butadiene rubber (SBR) or nitrile butadiene rubber (NBR) suitable for a maximum 600 degree F service, to be used for hydrocarbon service.

2.2.5 Pipe Threads

Provide pipe threads conforming to ASME B1.20.1.

2.2.6 Escutcheons

Provide chromium-plated steel or chromium-plated brass escutcheons, either one piece or split pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or set screw.

2.2.7 Insulating Pipe Joints

2.2.7.1 Insulating Joint Material

Provide insulating joint material between flanged or threaded metallic pipe systems where shown to control galvanic or electrical action.

2.2.7.2 Threaded Pipe Joints

Provide threaded pipe joints of steel body nut type dielectric unions with insulating gaskets.

2.2.8 Flexible Connectors

- a. Provide flexible connectors for connecting gas utilization equipment to building gas piping conforming to ANSI Z21.24/CSA 6.10 . Provide combination gas controls for gas appliances conforming to ANSI Z21.78/CSA 6.20.
- b. Do not install the flexible connector through the appliance cabinet face. Provide rigid metallic pipe and fittings to extend the final connection beyond the cabinet, except when appliance is provided with an external connection point.

2.3 VALVES

Provide shutoff valves conforming to the following:

2.3.1 Manual Gas Shutoff Valves

- a. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller Comply with ASME B16.33.
 - (1) CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 - (2) Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 - (3) Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
 - (4) Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves.
 - (5) Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
 - (6) Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inch to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- b. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
 - (1) CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 - (2) Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
 - (3) Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves.
 - (4) Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- c. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
 - (1) Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
 - (2) Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
 - (3) Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 - (4) Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 - (5) Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
 - (6) Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket.
 - (7) CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - (8) Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - (9) Service: Suitable for NATURAL GAS service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

2.4 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

Provide pipe hangers and supports conforming to MSS SP-58.

2.5 PRESSURE REGULATORS

Provide regulators conforming to ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3 for appliances.

a. General Requirements:

- (1) Single stage.
- (2) Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
- (3) Elevation compensator.
- (4) End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

b. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3.

- (1) Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
- (2) Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
- (3) Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
- (4) Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
- (5) Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
- (6) Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
- (7) Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- (8) Maximum Inlet Pressure: 1 psig.

2.6 BOLTING (BOLTS AND NUTS)

Stainless steel bolting; ASTM A193/A193M, Grade B8M or B8MA, Type 316, for bolts; and ASTM A194/A194M, Grade 8M, Type 316, for nuts. Dimensions of bolts, studs, and nuts must conform with ASME B18.2.1 and ASME B18.2.2 with coarse threads conforming to ASME B1.1, with Class 2A fit for bolts and studs and Class 2B fit for nuts. Bolts or bolt-studs must extend through the nuts and may have reduced shanks of a diameter not less than the diameter at root of threads. Bolts must have American Standard regular square or heavy hexagon heads; nuts must be American Standard heavy semifinished hexagonal.

2.7 GASKETS

Fluorinated elastomer, compatible with flange faces.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION FOR ABOVEGROUND PIPING

MIL-STD-101 for legends and type and size of characters. For pipes 3/4 inch od and larger, provide printed legends to identify contents of pipes

and arrows to show direction of flow. Color code label backgrounds to signify levels of hazard. Make labels of plastic sheet with pressure-sensitive adhesive suitable for the intended application. For pipes smaller than 3/4 inch od, provide brass identification tags 1 1/2 inches in diameter with legends in depressed black-filled characters.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy or areas of conflict before performing the work.

3.2 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING

Provide required excavation, backfilling, and compaction as specified in Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK.

3.3 GAS PIPING SYSTEM

Provide a gas piping system from the point of delivery, defined as the outlet of the meter set assembly, to the connections to each gas utilization device that is in compliance with NFPA 54.

3.3.1 Protection and Cleaning of Materials and Components

Protect equipment, pipe, and tube openings by closing with caps or plugs during installation. At the completion of all work, thoroughly clean the entire system.

3.3.2 Workmanship and Defects

Piping, tubing and fittings must be clear and free of cutting burrs and defects in structure or threading and must be thoroughly brushed and chip-and scale-blown. Repair of defects in piping, tubing or fittings is not allowed; replace defective items when found.

3.4 PROTECTIVE COVERING

3.4.1 Aboveground Metallic Piping Systems

3.4.1.1 Ferrous Surfaces

Touch up shop primed surfaces with ferrous metal primer. Solvent clean surfaces that have not been shop primed. Mechanically clean surfaces that contain loose rust, loose mill scale and other foreign substances by power wire brushing or commercial sand blasted conforming to SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3 and prime with ferrous metal primer. Finish primed surfaces with two coats of exterior oil paint.

3.4.1.2 Nonferrous Surfaces

Except for aluminum alloy pipe, do not paint nonferrous surfaces. Paint surfaces of aluminum alloy pipe and fittings to protect against external corrosion where they contact masonry, plaster, insulation, or are subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water, detergents or sewage. Solvent-clean the surfaces and treat with vinyl type wash coat. Apply a first coat of aluminum paint and a second coat of alkyd gloss enamel or

silicone alkyd copolymer enamel.

3.5 INSTALLATION

Install the gas system in conformance with the manufacturer's recommendations and applicable provisions of NFPA 54 and as indicated. Perform all pipe cutting without damage to the pipe, with an approved type of mechanical cutter, unless otherwise authorized. Use wheel cutters where practicable.

3.5.1 Concealed Piping in Buildings

Do not use combinations of fittings (unions, tubing fittings, running threads, right- and left-hand couplings, bushings, and swing joints) to conceal piping within buildings.

3.5.1.1 Piping in Partitions

Locate concealed piping and tubing in hollow, rather than solid, partitions. Protect tubing passing through walls or partitions against physical damage both during and after construction, and provide appropriate safety markings and labels. Provide protection of concealed pipe and tubing in accordance with ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26.

3.5.2 Aboveground Piping

Run aboveground piping as straight as practicable along the alignment and elevation indicated, with a minimum of joints, and separately supported from other piping system and equipment. Install exposed horizontal piping no farther than 6 inches from nearest parallel wall and at an elevation which prevents standing, sitting, or placement of objects on the piping.

3.5.3 Final Gas Connections

Unless otherwise specified, make final connections with rigid metallic pipe and fittings. Flexible connectors may be used for final connections to gas utilization equipment. In addition to cautions listed in instructions required by ANSI standards for flexible connectors, insure that flexible connectors do not pass through equipment cabinet. Provide accessible gas shutoff valve and coupling for each gas equipment item.

3.6 PIPE JOINTS

Design and install pipe joints to effectively sustain the longitudinal pull-out forces caused by contraction of the piping or superimposed loads.

3.6.1 Threaded Metallic Joints

Provide threaded joints in metallic pipe with tapered threads evenly cut and made with UL approved graphite joint sealing compound for gas service or tetrafluoroethylene tape applied to the male threads only. Threaded joints up to 1-1/2 inches in diameter may be made with approved tetrafluoroethylene tape. Threaded joints up to 2 inches in diameter may be made with approved joint sealing compound. After cutting and before threading, ream pipe and remove all burrs. Caulking of threaded joints to stop or prevent leaks is not permitted.

3.7 PIPE SLEEVES

Provide pipes passing through concrete or masonry walls or concrete floors or roofs with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Do not install sleeves in structural members except where indicated or approved. Make all rectangular and square openings as detailed. Extend each sleeve through its respective wall, floor or roof, and cut flush with each surface, except in mechanical room floors not located on grade where clamping flanges or riser pipe clamps are used. Extend sleeves in mechanical room floors above grade at least 4 inches above finish floor. Unless otherwise indicated, use sleeves large enough to provide a minimum clearance of 1/4 inch all around the pipe. Provide steel pipe for sleeves in bearing walls, waterproofing membrane floors, and wet areas. Provide sleeves in nonbearing walls, floors, or ceilings of steel pipe, galvanized sheet metal with lock-type longitudinal seam, or moisture-resistant fiber or plastic. For penetrations of fire walls, fire partitions and floors which are not on grade, seal the annular space between the pipe and sleeve with fire-stopping material and sealant that meet the requirement of Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.8 PIPES PENETRATING WATERPROOFING MEMBRANES

Install pipes penetrating waterproofing membranes as specified in Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

3.9 FIRE SEAL

Fire seal all penetrations of fire rated partitions, walls and floors in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.10 ESCUTCHEONS

Provide escutcheons for all finished surfaces where gas piping passes through floors, walls, or ceilings except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms.

3.11 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

Provide drips, grading of the lines, freeze protection, and branch outlet locations as shown and conforming to the requirements of NFPA 54/NFPA 58.

3.12 BUILDING STRUCTURE

Do not weaken any building structure by the installation of any gas piping. Do not cut or notch beams, joists or columns. Attach piping supports to metal decking. Do not attach supports to the underside of concrete filled floors or concrete roof decks unless approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.13 PIPING SYSTEM SUPPORTS

Support gas piping systems in buildings with pipe hooks, metal pipe straps, bands or hangers suitable for the size of piping or tubing. Do not support any gas piping system by other piping. Conform spacing of supports in gas piping and tubing installations to the requirements of NFPA 54/NFPA 58. Conform the selection and application of supports in gas piping and tubing installations to the requirements of MSS SP-58. In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, use a clip or clamp where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base

support members is not to exceed the hanger and support spacing required for any of the individual pipes in the multiple pipe run. Rigidly connect the clips or clamps to the common base member. Provide a clearance of 1/8 inch between the pipe and clip or clamp for all piping which may be subjected to thermal expansion.

3.14 ELECTRICAL BONDING AND GROUNDING

Provide a gas piping system within the building that is electrically continuous and bonded to a grounding electrode as required by NFPA 54, NFPA 58, and NFPA 70.

3.15 SHUTOFF VALVE

Install the main gas shutoff valve controlling the gas piping system to be easily accessible for operation, as indicated, protected from physical damage, and marked with a metal tag to clearly identify the piping system controlled. Install valves approximately at locations indicated. Orient stems vertically, with operators on top, or horizontally. Provide stop valve on service branch at connection to main and shut-off valve on riser outside of building.

3.16 APPLIANCE PRESSURE REGULATORS

Install line pressure regulators and appliance regulators in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and in accordance with NFPA 54. Install each regulator in an accessible location and install shutoff valves ahead of each line and appliance regulator to allow for maintenance. Where vent limiting devices are not included in the regulators, install a vent pipe to the exterior of the building. Terminate all service regulator vents and relief vents in the outside air in rain and insect resistant fittings. Locate the open end of the vent where gas can escape freely into the atmosphere, away from any openings into the building and above areas subject to flooding.

3.17 GAS SERVICE INSTALLATION

Installations must be in accordance with 49 CFR 192 and ASME B31.8. Contractor must submit and use only tested and approved work procedures. Contractor must use only welders and jointers who have been recently qualified by training and test for joining and installing the gas pipe material used on this job. The finished product must be inspected by a person qualified to inspect joints made by the particular procedures used to make joints.

3.17.1 Service Regulator

Install service regulator in accordance with 49 CFR 192 and ASME B31.8 and this specification ensuring that the customer's piping is protected from over pressurization should the service regulator fail. A 3/8 inch tapped fitting equipped with a plug must be provided on both sides of the service regulator for installation of pressure gauges for adjusting the regulator. For inside installations, route the regulator vent pipe through the exterior wall to the atmosphere, and seal building penetrations for service line and vent. Terminate the regulator vent so that it is protected from precipitation and insect intrusion, so that it is not submerged during floods, and so that gas escaping will not create a hazard or enter the building through openings.

3.17.2 Gas Meter

Install shutoff valve, meter set assembly, and service regulator on the service line outside the building , 18 inches above the ground on the riser. An insulating joint (dielectric connection) must be installed on the inlet side of the meter set assembly and service regulator and must be constructed to prevent flow of electrical current.

3.18 CATHODIC PROTECTION

Provide cathodic protection for underground ferrous gas piping.

3.19 TESTING

Submit test procedures and reports in booklet form tabulating test and measurements performed; dated after award of this contract, and stating the Contractor's name and address, the project name and location, and a list of the specific requirements which are being certified. Test entire gas piping system to ensure that it is gastight prior to putting into service. Prior to testing, purge the system, clean, and clear all foreign material. Test each joint with an approved gas detector, soap and water, or an equivalent nonflammable solution. Inspect and test each valve in conformance with API Std 598 and API Std 607. Complete testing before any work is covered, enclosed, or concealed, and perform with due regard for the safety of employees and the public during the test. Install bulkheads, anchorage and bracing suitably designed to resist test pressures if necessary, and as directed and or approved by the Contracting Officer. Do not use oxygen as a testing medium.

3.19.1 Pressure Tests

Submit test procedures and reports in booklet form tabulating test and measurements performed; dated after award of this contract, and stating the Contractor's name and address, the project name and location, and a list of the specific requirements which are being certified. Before appliances are connected, test by filling the piping systems with air or an inert gas to withstand a minimum pressure of 3 pounds gauge for a period of not less than 10 minutes as specified in NFPA 54 as specified in NFPA 58 without showing any drop in pressure. Do not use Oxygen for test. Measure pressure with a mercury manometer, slope gauge, or an equivalent device calibrated to be read in increments of not greater than 0.1 pound. Isolate the source of pressure before the pressure tests are made.

3.19.2 Test With Gas

Before turning on gas under pressure into any piping, close all openings from which gas can escape. Immediately after turning on the gas, check the piping system for leakage by using a laboratory-certified gas meter, an appliance orifice, a manometer, or equivalent device. Conform all testing to the requirements of NFPA 54. If leakage is recorded, shut off the gas supply, repair the leak , and repeat the tests until all leaks have been stopped.

3.19.3 Purging

After testing is completed, and before connecting any appliances, fully purge all gas piping. Conform testing procedures to API RP 1110. Do not purge piping into the combustion chamber of an appliance. Do not purge

the open end of piping systems into confined spaces or areas where there are ignition sources unless the safety precautions recommended in NFPA 54 NFPA 58 are followed.

3.19.4 Labor, Materials and Equipment

Furnish all labor, materials and equipment necessary for conducting the testing and purging.

3.20 PIPE COLOR CODE MARKING

Provide color code marking of piping as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS, conforming to ASME A13.1.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 23 00

REFRIGERANT PIPING

08/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 710 I-P	(2009) Performance Rating of Liquid-Line Driers
AHRI 750 I-P	(2016) Performance Rating of Thermostatic Refrigerant Expansion Valves
AHRI 760 I-P	(2014) Performance Rating of Solenoid Valves for Use with Volatile Refrigerants

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 15 & 34	(2013) ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems/ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants-ASHRAE Standard 34-2016
ASHRAE 17	(2015) Method of Testing Capacity of Thermostatic Refrigerant Expansion Valves

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B16.5	(2020) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 Through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard
ASME B16.22	(2018) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B31.1	(2020) Power Piping
ASME B31.5	(2020) Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components
ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.8/A5.8M	(2019) Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding
----------------	--

AWS BRH	(2007; 5th Ed) Brazing Handbook
AWS Z49.1	(2012) Safety in Welding and Cutting and Allied Processes
ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)	
ASTM A53/A53M	(2020) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A653/A653M	(2020) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM B117	(2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B280	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service
ASTM D520	(2000; R 2011) Zinc Dust Pigment
ASTM D3308	(2012; R 2017) Standard Specification for PTFE Resin Skived Tape
MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)	
MSS SP-58	(2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Coordination Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Refrigerant Piping System

Pipe and Fittings; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Refrigerant Piping Tests

SD-07 Certificates

Service Organization

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Maintenance; G

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G, AE

Demonstrations; G

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Coordination Drawings

Submit coordination drawings in accordance with Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MATERIALS AND METHODS. Because of the small scale of the drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required. Carefully investigate the plumbing, fire protection, electrical, structural and finish conditions that would affect the work to be performed and arrange such work accordingly, furnishing required offsets, fittings, and accessories to meet such conditions.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored items from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Proper protection and care of all material both before and during installation is the Contractor's responsibility. Replace any materials found to be damaged at the Contractor's expense. During installation, cap piping and similar openings to keep out dirt and other foreign matter.

1.5 MAINTENANCE

1.5.1 General

Submit Data Package 2 plus operation and maintenance data complying with the requirements of Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD COMMERCIAL PRODUCTS

- a. Provide materials and equipment which are standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such products, that are of a similar material, design and workmanship and that have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening.
- b. The 2 year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The 2 years' experience must be satisfactorily completed by a product which has been sold or is offered for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturer's catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown.
- c. Products must be supported by a service organization. System

components must be environmentally suitable for the indicated locations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. The service organizations must be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and be able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

- d. Exposed equipment moving parts, parts that produce high operating temperature, parts which may be electrically energized, and parts that may be a hazard to operating personnel must be insulated, fully enclosed, guarded, or fitted with other types of safety devices. Install safety devices so that proper operation of equipment is not impaired. Welding and cutting safety requirements must be in accordance with AWS Z49.1.
- e. Provide the manufacturer's standard catalog data, at least 5 business weeks prior to the purchase or installation of a particular component. Highlight the data to show information such as, but not limited to, material, size, options, performance charts, and curves in adequate detail to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements. Include the manufacturer's recommended installation instructions and procedures in the data provided. Provide data for the following components as a minimum:
 - (1) Piping and Fittings
 - (2) Valves
 - (3) Piping Accessories
 - (4) Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

2.2 ELECTRICAL WORK

Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and any control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown, must be provided.

2.3 REFRIGERANT PIPING SYSTEM

Provide refrigerant piping, valves, fittings, and accessories in accordance with ASHRAE 15 & 34 and ASME B31.5, except as specified herein. Refrigerant piping, valves, fittings, and accessories must be compatible with the fluids used and capable of withstanding the pressures and temperatures of the service. Refrigerant piping, valves, and accessories used for refrigerant service must be cleaned, dehydrated, and sealed (capped or plugged) prior to shipment from the manufacturer's plant.

2.4 PIPE, FITTINGS AND END CONNECTIONS (JOINTS)

2.4.1 Copper Tube and Fittings

- a. Copper Tube: ASTM B280, Type ACR, hard drawn temper, straight lengths only, no coil lengths allowed.
- b. Wrought-Copper Fittings: Brazed-joint: ASME B16.5.
- c. Wrought Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- d. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

2.5 VALVES

Valves shall be designed, manufactured, and tested specifically for refrigerant service. Valve bodies shall be of brass, bronze, steel, or ductile iron construction. Valves 1 inch and smaller shall have brazed or socket welded connections. Valves larger than 1 inch shall have tongue-and-groove flanged end connections. Threaded end connections shall not be used, except in pilot pressure or gauge lines where maintenance disassembly is required and welded flanges cannot be used. Internal parts shall be removable for inspection or replacement without applying heat or breaking pipe connections. Valve stems exposed to the atmosphere shall be stainless steel or corrosion resistant metal plated carbon steel. Direction of flow shall be legibly and permanently indicated on the valve body. Control valve inlets shall be fitted with integral or adapted strainer or filter where recommended or required by the manufacturer. Purge, charge and receiver valves shall be of manufacturer's standard configuration.

2.5.1 Refrigerant Stop Valves

Valve shall be the globe or full-port ball type with a back-seating stem especially packed for refrigerant service. Valve packing shall be replaceable under line pressure. Valve shall be provided with a handwheel operator and a seal cap. Valve shall be the straight or angle pattern design as indicated.

2.5.2 Check Valves

a. Check Valves:

- (1) Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
- (2) Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
- (3) Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
- (4) Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
- (5) Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
- (6) End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
- (7) Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
- (8) Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
- (9) Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

2.5.3 Liquid Solenoid Valves

Valves shall comply with AHRI 760 I-P and be suitable for continuous duty with applied voltages 15 percent under and 5 percent over nominal rated voltage at maximum and minimum encountered pressure and temperature service conditions. Valves shall be direct-acting or pilot-operating type, packless, except that packed stem, seal capped, manual lifting provisions shall be furnished. Solenoid coils shall be moisture-proof, UL

approved, totally encapsulated or encapsulated and metal jacketed as required. Valves shall have safe working pressure of 400 psi and a maximum operating pressure differential of at least 200 psi at 85 percent rated voltage. Valves shall have an operating pressure differential suitable for the refrigerant used.

2.5.4 Expansion Valves

Valve shall conform to AHRI 750 I-P and ASHRAE 17. Valve shall be the diaphragm and spring-loaded type with internal or external equalizers, and bulb and capillary tubing. Valve shall be provided with an external superheat adjustment along with a seal cap. Internal equalizers may be utilized where flowing refrigerant pressure drop between outlet of the valve and inlet to the evaporator coil is negligible and pressure drop across the evaporator is less than the pressure difference corresponding to 2 degrees F of saturated suction temperature at evaporator conditions. Bulb charge shall be determined by the manufacturer for the application and such that liquid will remain in the bulb at all operating conditions. Gas limited liquid charged valves and other valve devices for limiting evaporator pressure shall not be used without a distributor or discharge tube or effective means to prevent loss of control when bulb becomes warmer than valve body. Pilot-operated valves shall have a characterized plug to provide required modulating control. A de-energized solenoid valve may be used in the pilot line to close the main valve in lieu of a solenoid valve in the main liquid line. An isolatable pressure gauge shall be provided in the pilot line, at the main valve. Automatic pressure reducing or constant pressure regulating expansion valves may be used only where indicated or for constant evaporator loads.

2.5.5 Safety Relief Valves

a. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

- (1) Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
- (2) Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
- (3) Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
- (4) End Connections: Threaded.
- (5) Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
- (6) Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

2.6 PIPING ACCESSORIES

2.6.1 Filter Driers

Driers must conform to AHRI 710 I-P. Sizes 5/8 inch and larger must be the full flow, replaceable core type. Sizes 1/2 inch and smaller must be the sealed type. Cores must be of suitable desiccant that will not plug, cake, dust, channel, or break down, and must remove water, acid, and foreign material from the refrigerant. Construct filter driers so that none of the desiccant will pass into the refrigerant lines. Minimum bursting pressure must be 1,500 psi.

2.6.2 Sight Glass and Liquid Level Indicator

2.6.2.1 Assembly and Components

Assembly must be pressure- and temperature-rated and constructed of materials suitable for the service. Glass must be borosilicate type. Ferrous components subject to condensation must be electro-galvanized.

2.6.2.2 Gauge Glass

Gauge glass must include top and bottom isolation valves fitted with automatic checks, and packing followers; red-line or green-line gauge glass; elastomer or polymer packing to suit the service; and gauge glass guard.

2.6.2.3 Bull's-Eye and Inline Sight Glass Reflex Lens

Provide bull's-eye and inline sight glass reflex lens for dead-end liquid service. For pipe line mounting, provide two plain lenses in one body suitable for backlighted viewing.

2.6.2.4 Moisture Indicator

Indicator must be a self-reversible action, moisture reactive, color changing media. Indicator must be furnished with full-color-printing tag containing color, moisture, and temperature criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, the moisture indicator must be an integral part of each corresponding sight glass.

2.6.3 Vibration Dampeners

Dampeners must be of the all-metallic bellows and woven-wire type.

2.6.4 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Connector must be a composite of interior corrugated phosphor bronze or Type 300 Series stainless steel, as required for fluid service, with exterior reinforcement of bronze, stainless steel or monel wire braid. Assembly must be constructed with a safety factor of not less than 4 at 300 degrees F. Unless otherwise indicated, the length of a flexible connector must be as recommended by the manufacturer for the service intended.

2.6.5 Strainers

Strainers used in refrigerant service must have brass or cast-iron body, Y-or angle-pattern, cleanable, not less than 60-mesh noncorroding screen of an area to provide net free area not less than ten times the pipe diameter with pressure rating compatible with the refrigerant service. Screens must be stainless steel or monel and reinforced spring-loaded where necessary for bypass-proof construction.

2.6.6 Pressure and Vacuum Gauges

Provide gauges conforming to ASME B40.100 with throttling type needle valve or a pulsation dampener and shut-off valve. Gauge must be a minimum of 3-1/2 inches in diameter with a range from 0 psig to approximately 1.5 times the maximum system working pressure. Select each gauge range so that at normal operating pressure, the needle is within the middle-third of the range.

2.6.7 Temperature Gauges

Provide industrial duty type temperature gauges for the required temperature range. Gauges must have Fahrenheit scale in 2 degrees graduations scale (black numbers) on a white face. The pointer must be adjustable. Provide rigid stem type temperature gauges in thermowells located within 5 feet of the finished floor. Provide universal adjustable angle type or remote element type temperature gauges in thermowells located 5 to 7 feet above the finished floor. Provide remote element type temperature gauges in thermowells located 7 feet above the finished floor.

2.6.7.1 Stem Cased-Glass

Provide stem cased-glass case composed of polished stainless steel or cast aluminum, 9 inches long, with clear acrylic lens, and non-mercury filled glass tube with indicating-fluid column.

2.6.7.2 Bimetallic Dial

Provide bimetallic dial type case that is greater than 3-1/2 inches, stainless steel, and hermetically sealed with clear acrylic lens. Bimetallic element must be silicone dampened and unit fitted with external calibrator adjustment. Accuracy must be one percent of dial range.

2.6.7.3 Liquid-, Solid-, and Vapor-Filled Dial

Provide liquid-, solid-, and vapor-filled dial type cases that are greater than 3-1/2 inches, stainless steel or cast aluminum with clear acrylic lens. Fill must be nonmercury, suitable for encountered cross-ambients, and connecting capillary tubing must be double-braided bronze.

2.6.7.4 Thermowell

Thermowell must be identical size, 1/2 or 3/4 inch NPT connection, brass or stainless steel. Where test wells are indicated, provide captive plug-fitted type 1/2 inch NPT connection suitable for use with either engraved stem or standard separable socket thermometer or thermostat. Mercury must not be used in thermometers. Extended neck thermowells must be of sufficient length to clear insulation thickness by 1 inch.

2.6.8 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Provide pipe hangers, inserts, guides, and supports conforming to MSS SP-58.

2.6.9 Escutcheons

Escutcheons must be chromium-plated iron or chromium-plated brass, either one piece or split pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or set screws.

2.7 FABRICATION

2.7.1 Factory Coating

Unless otherwise specified, equipment and component items, when fabricated from ferrous metal, must be factory finished with the manufacturer's standard finish, except that items located outside of buildings must have weather resistant finishes that will withstand 125 hours exposure to the

salt spray test specified in ASTM B117 using a 5 percent sodium chloride solution. Immediately after completion of the test, the specimen must show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, cracking, or loss of adhesion and no sign of rust creepage beyond 1/8 inch on either side of the scratch mark. Cut edges of galvanized surfaces where hot-dip galvanized sheet steel is used must be coated with a zinc-rich coating conforming to ASTM D520, Type I.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, perform a verification of dimensions in the field. Submit a letter, at least business weeks prior to beginning construction, including the date the site was visited, conformation of existing conditions, and any discrepancies found before performing any work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Pipe and fitting installation must conform to the requirements of ASME B31.1. Cut pipe accurately to measurements established at the jobsite, and work into place without springing or forcing, completely clearing all windows, doors, and other openings. Cutting or other weakening of the building structure to facilitate piping installation is not permitted without written approval. Cut pipe or tubing square, remove by reaming, and permit free expansion and contraction without causing damage to the building structure, pipe, joints, or hangers.

3.2.1 Directional Changes

Make changes in direction with fittings, except that bending of pipe 4 inches and smaller is permitted, provided a pipe bender is used and wide weep bends are formed. Mitering or notching pipe or other similar construction to form elbows or tees is not permitted. The centerline radius of bends must not be less than 6 diameters of the pipe. Bent pipe showing kinks, wrinkles, flattening, or other malformations will not be accepted.

3.2.2 Functional Requirements

Install piping 1/2 inch/10 feet of pipe in the direction of flow to ensure adequate oil drainage. Properly cap or plug open ends of refrigerant lines or equipment during installation to keep moisture, dirt, or other foreign material out of the system. Piping must remain capped until installation. Equipment piping must be in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's recommendations and the contract drawings. Equipment and piping arrangements must fit into space allotted and allow adequate acceptable clearances for installation, replacement, entry, servicing, and maintenance.

3.2.3 Fittings and End Connections

3.2.3.1 Threaded Connections

Make threaded connections with tapered threads and make tight with PTFE tape complying with ASTM D3308 or equivalent thread-joint compound applied to the male threads only. Do not show more than three threads after the joint is made.

3.2.3.2 Brazed Connections

Perform brazing in accordance with AWS BRH, except as modified herein. During brazing, fill the pipe and fittings with a pressure regulated inert gas, such as nitrogen, to prevent the formation of scale. Before brazing copper joints, clean both the outside of the tube and the inside of the fitting with a wire fitting brush until the entire joint surface is bright and clean. Do not use brazing flux on copper-to-copper connections. Remove surplus brazing material at all joints. Make steel tubing joints in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Paint joints in steel tubing with the same material as the baked-on coating within 8 hours after joints are made. Protect tubing against oxidation during brazing by continuous purging of the inside of the piping using nitrogen. Support piping prior to brazing and do not spring or force.

3.2.3.3 Flanged Connections

When steel refrigerant piping is used, provide union or flange joints in each line immediately preceding the connection to each piece of equipment requiring maintenance, such as coils, control valves, and other similar items. Flanged joints must be assembled square end tight with matched flanges, gaskets, and bolts. Provide gaskets that are suitable for use with the refrigerants to be handled.

3.2.4 Valves

3.2.4.1 General

Install refrigerant stop valves on each side of each piece of equipment such as compressors condensers, evaporators, receivers, and other similar items in multiple-unit installation, to provide partial system isolation as required for maintenance or repair. Install stop valves with stems horizontal unless otherwise indicated. Install ball valves must be installed with stems positioned to facilitate operation and maintenance. Isolating valves for pressure gauges and switches must be external to thermal insulation. Safety switches must not be fitted with isolation valves. Filter dryers having access ports may be considered a point of isolation. Purge valves must be provided at all points of systems where accumulated non-condensable gases would prevent proper system operation. Valves must be furnished to match line size, unless otherwise indicated or approved.

3.2.4.2 Expansion Valves

Install expansion valves with the thermostatic expansion valve bulb located on top of the suction line when the suction line is less than 2-1/8 inches in diameter and at the 4 o'clock or 8 o'clock position on lines larger than 2-1/8 inches. Fasten the bulb securely with two clamps. Insulate the bulb. Install the bulb in a horizontal portion of the suction line, if possible, with the pigtail on the bottom. If the bulb must be installed in a vertical line, the bulb tubing must be facing up.

3.2.4.3 Valve Identification

Tag each system valve, including those which are part of a factory assembly. Tags must be in alphanumeric sequence, progressing in direction of fluid flow. Tags must be embossed, engraved, or stamped plastic or

nonferrous metal of various shapes, sized approximately 1-3/8 inch diameter, or equivalent dimension, substantially attached to a component or immediately adjacent thereto. Attach tags with nonferrous, heavy duty, bead or link chain, 14 gauge annealed wire, nylon cable bands or as approved. Reference tag numbers in Operation and Maintenance Manuals and system diagrams.

3.2.5 Vibration Dampers

Provide vibration damper in the suction and discharge lines on spring mounted compressors. Install vibration dampers parallel with the shaft of the compressor and anchor firmly at the upstream end on the suction line and the downstream end in the discharge line.

3.2.6 Strainers

Provide strainers immediately ahead of solenoid valves and expansion devices. Strainers may be an integral part of an expansion valve.

3.2.7 Filter Dryer

Provide a liquid line filter dryer on each refrigerant circuit located such that all liquid refrigerant passes through a filter dryer. Size dryers in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the system in which it is installed. Install dryers such that it can be isolated from the system, the isolated portion of the system evacuated, and the filter dryer replaced. Install dryers in the horizontal position except replaceable core filter dryers may be installed in the vertical position with the access flange on the bottom.

3.2.8 Sight Glass

Install a moisture indicating sight glass in all refrigerant circuits downstream of all filter dryers and where indicated. Provide full line size sight glasses.

3.2.9 Discharge Line Oil Separator

Provide discharge line oil separator in the discharge line from each compressor. Connect the oil return line to the compressor as recommended by the compressor manufacturer.

3.2.10 Accumulator

Provide accumulators in the suction line to each compressor.

3.2.11 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Install connectors perpendicular to line of motion being isolated. Fit piping for equipment with bidirectional motion with two flexible connectors, in perpendicular planes. Install reinforced elastomer flexible connectors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide piping guides and restraints related to flexible connectors as required.

3.2.12 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports must conform to MSS SP-58, except as modified herein. Do not use pipe hanger types 5, 12, and 26. Fabricate

hangers used to support piping 2 inches and larger to permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load. Support piping subjected to vertical movement, when operating temperatures exceed ambient temperatures, by variable spring hangers and supports or by constant support hangers.

3.2.12.1 Hangers

Do not use Type 3 on insulated piping. Type 24 may be used only on trapeze hanger systems or on fabricated frames.

3.2.12.2 Inserts

Secure Type 18 inserts to concrete forms before concrete is placed. Continuous inserts which allow more adjustments may be used if they otherwise meet the requirements for Type 18 inserts.

3.2.12.3 C-Clamps

Torque Type 19 and 23 C-clamps in accordance with MSS SP-58 and have both locknuts and retaining devices, furnished by the manufacturer. Field-fabricated C-clamp bodies or retaining devices are not acceptable.

3.2.12.4 Angle Attachments

Furnish Type 20 attachments used on angles and channels with an added malleable-iron heel plate or adapter.

3.2.12.5 Saddles and Shields

Where Type 39 saddle or Type 40 shield are permitted for a particular pipe attachment application, the Type 39 saddle, connected to the pipe, must be used on all pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or higher. Use Type 40 shields on all piping less than 4 inches and all piping 4 inches and larger carrying medium less than 60 degrees F. Use a high-density insulation insert of cellular glass under the Type 40 shield for piping 2 inches and larger.

3.2.12.6 Horizontal Pipe Supports

Space horizontal pipe supports as specified in MSS SP-58 and install a support no more than 1 foot from the pipe fitting joint at each change in direction of the piping. Space pipe supports no more than 5 feet apart at valves.

3.2.12.7 Vertical Pipe Supports

Support vertical pipe at each floor, except at slab-on-grade, and at intervals of not more than 15 feet not more than 8 feet from end of risers, and at vent terminations.

3.2.12.8 Pipe Guides

Provide Type 35 guides using, steel, reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) or graphite slides where required to allow longitudinal pipe movement. Provide lateral restraints as required. Provide slide materials that are suitable for the system operating temperatures, atmospheric conditions, and bearing loads encountered.

3.2.12.9 Steel Slides

Where steel slides do not require provisions for restraint of lateral movement, an alternate guide method may be used. On piping 4 inches and larger, use a Type 39 saddle. On piping under 4 inches, a Type 40 protection shield may be attached to the pipe or insulation and freely rest on a steel slide plate.

3.2.12.10 Multiple Pipe Runs

In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, use a clip or clamp where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members must not exceed the hanger and support spacing required for an individual pipe in the multiple pipe run.

3.2.12.11 Structural Attachments

Attachment to building structure concrete and masonry must be by cast-in concrete inserts, built-in anchors, or masonry anchor devices. Inserts and anchors must be applied with a safety factor not less than 5. Do not attach supports to metal decking. Construct masonry anchors for overhead applications of ferrous materials only. Provide structural steel brackets required to support piping, headers, and equipment, but not shown, under this section. Specify material used for support under Section 05 12 00 STRUCTURAL STEEL.

3.2.13 Pipe Alignment Guides

Provide pipe alignment guides where indicated for expansion loops, offsets, and bends and as recommended by the manufacturer for expansion joints, not to exceed 5 feet on each side of each expansion joint, and in lines 4 inches or smaller not more than 2 feet on each side of the joint.

3.2.14 Pipe Anchors

Provide anchors wherever necessary or indicated to localize expansion or to prevent undue strain on piping. Provide anchors consisting of heavy steel collars with lugs and bolts for clamping and attaching anchor braces, unless otherwise indicated. Install anchor braces in the most effective manner to secure the desired results using turnbuckles where required. Do not attach supports, anchors, or stays where they will injure the structure or adjacent construction during installation or by the weight of expansion of the pipeline. Where pipe and conduit penetrations of vapor barrier sealed surfaces occur, immediately anchor these items adjacent to each penetrated surface, to provide essentially zero movement within penetration seal. Submit detailed drawings of pipe anchors for approval before installation.

3.2.15 Building Surface Penetrations

Do not install sleeves in structural members except where indicated or approved. Provide galvanized sheet metal sleeves in non-load bearing surfaces conforming to ASTM A653/A653M, Coating Class G-90, 20 gauge. Provide uncoated carbon steel pipe sleeves in load bearing surfaces conforming to ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 30. Apply sealants to moisture and oil-free surfaces and elastomers to not less than 1/2 inch depth. Do not install sleeves in structural members.

3.2.15.1 Refrigerated Space

Fit refrigerated space building surface penetrations with sleeves fabricated from hand-lay-up or helically wound, fibrous glass reinforced polyester or epoxy resin with a minimum thickness equal to equivalent size Schedule 40 steel pipe. Construct sleeves with integral collar or fit cold side with a bonded slip-on flange or extended collar. In the case of masonry penetrations where sleeve is not cast-in, fill voids with latex mixed mortar cast to shape of sleeve and assemble flange/external collar type sleeve with butyl elastomer vapor barrier sealant through penetration to cold side surface vapor barrier overlap and fastened to surface with masonry anchors. Flash integral cast-in collar type sleeve as indicated but with not less than 4 inches of cold side vapor barrier overlap of sleeve surface. Normally seal noninsulated penetrating round surfaces to sleeve bore with mechanically expandable seals in vapor tight manner and insulate remaining warm and cold side sleeve depth with not less than 4 inches of foamed-in-place rigid polyurethane or foamed-in-place silicone elastomer. Apply vapor barrier sealant to finish warm side insulation surface. Insulate warm side of penetrating surface beyond vapor barrier sealed sleeve insulation for a distance which prevents condensation. Seal wires in refrigerated space surface penetrating conduit with vapor barrier plugs or compound to prevent moisture migration through conduit and condensation therein.

3.2.15.2 General Service Areas

Extend each sleeve through its respective wall, floor, or roof, and cut flush with each surface. Provide pipes passing through concrete or masonry wall or concrete floors or roofs with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Provide sleeves that allow a minimum of 1/4 inch all-around clearance between bare pipe and sleeves or between jacketed-insulation and sleeves.

3.2.15.3 Waterproof Penetrations

Install pipes passing through roof or floor waterproofing membrane through a 17 ounce copper sleeve, or a 0.032 inch thick aluminum sleeve, each within an integral skirt or flange. Form flashing sleeve, and extend skirt or flange greater than 8 inches from the pipe and set over the roof or floor membrane in a troweled coating of bituminous cement. Extend the flashing sleeve up the pipe a minimum of 2 inches above the roof or floor penetration. Seal the annular space between the flashing sleeve and the bare pipe or between the flashing sleeve and the metal-jacket-covered insulation as indicated. Seal penetrations by either one of the following methods.

3.2.15.3.1 Waterproofing Clamping Flange

Pipes up to and including 10 inches in diameter passing through roof or floor waterproofing membrane may be installed through a cast iron sleeve with caulking recess, anchor lugs, flashing clamp device, and pressure ring with brass bolts. Clamp waterproofing membrane into place and place sealant in the caulking recess.

3.2.15.3.2 Modular Mechanical Type Sealing Assembly

In lieu of a waterproofing clamping flange and caulking and sealing of annular space between pipe and sleeve or conduit and sleeve, a modular mechanical type sealing assembly may be installed. Provide seals

consisting of interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill the annular space between the pipe/conduit and sleeve with corrosion protected carbon steel bolts, nuts, and pressure plates. Loosely assemble links with bolts to form a continuous rubber belt around the pipe with a pressure plate under each bolt head and each nut. After the seal assembly is properly positioned in the sleeve, tighten the bolt to cause the rubber sealing elements to expand and provide a watertight seal between the pipe/conduit and the sleeve. Size each seal assembly as recommended by the manufacturer to fit the pipe/conduit and sleeve involved. The Contractor electing to use the modular mechanical type seals must provide sleeves of the proper diameters.

3.2.15.4 Fire-Rated Penetrations

Seal penetration of fire-rated walls, partitions, and floors as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.2.15.5 Escutcheons

Provide escutcheons for finished surfaces where exposed piping, bare or insulated, pass through floors, walls, or ceilings, except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms. Where sleeves project slightly from floors, use special deep-type escutcheons. Secure escutcheon to pipe or pipe covering.

3.2.16 Access Panels

Provide access panels for all concealed valves, vents, controls, and items requiring inspection or maintenance. Provide access panels of sufficient size and locate so that the concealed items may be serviced and maintained or completely removed and replaced. Provide access panels as specified in Section 08 31 00 ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS.

3.2.17 Field Applied Insulation

Field installed insulation is specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS, except as defined differently herein.

3.3 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Clean uncontaminated system(s) by evacuation and purging procedures currently recommended by refrigerant and refrigerant equipment manufacturers, and as specified herein, to remove small amounts of air and moisture. Systems containing moderate amounts of air, moisture, contaminated refrigerant, or any foreign matter are considered contaminated systems. Restore contaminated systems to clean condition including disassembly, component replacement, evacuation, flushing, purging, and re-charging, using currently approved refrigerant and refrigeration manufacturer's procedures. Restore contaminated systems at no additional cost to the Government as determined by the Contracting Officer. Do not use water in any procedure or test.

3.4 TRAINING COURSE

- a. Submit a schedule, at least 2 business weeks prior to the date of the proposed training course, which identifies the date, time, and location for the training. Conduct a training course for a minimum of 2 members of the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. The training period must consist of a total 8 hours of

normal working time and start after the system is functionally completed but prior to final acceptance tests.

- b. Cover all of the items contained in the approved operation and maintenance manuals as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations in the field posted instructions.
- c. Submit 6 complete copies of an operation manual in bound 8 1/2 by 11 inch booklets listing step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, abnormal shutdown, emergency shutdown, and normal shutdown at least 4 business weeks prior to the first training course. Include the manufacturer's name, model number, and parts list in the booklets. Include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, and a brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features in the manuals.
- d. Submit 6 complete copies of maintenance manual in bound 8 1/2 x 11 inch booklets listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and a trouble shooting guide. Include piping layouts and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed in the manuals.

3.5 REFRIGERANT PIPING TESTS

After all components of the refrigerant system have been installed and connected, subject the entire refrigeration system to pneumatic, evacuation, and startup tests as described herein. Conduct tests in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Water and electricity required for the tests will be furnished by the Government. Provide all material, equipment, instruments, and personnel required for the test. Provide the services of a qualified technician, as required, to perform all tests and procedures indicated herein. Submit 6 copies of the tests report in bound 8 1/2 by 11 inch booklets documenting all phases of the tests performed. Include initial test summaries, all repairs/adjustments made, and the final test results in the report.

3.5.1 Preliminary Procedures

Prior to pneumatic testing, isolate equipment which has been factory tested and refrigerant charged as well as equipment which could be damaged or cause personnel injury by imposed test pressure, positive or negative, from the test pressure, or remove from the system. Remove safety relief valves and rupture discs that are not part of factory sealed systems, and cap or plug openings.

3.5.2 Pneumatic Test

Provide pressure control and excess pressure protection at the source of test pressure. Valves must be wide open, except those leading to the atmosphere. Test gas must be dry nitrogen, with minus 70 degree F dewpoint and less than 5 ppm oil. Apply test pressure in two stages before any refrigerant pipe is insulated or covered. In accordance with ASME B31.5, a preliminary test not to exceed 25 psi must be applied as a means of locating major leaks. Every joint being tested must be coated with a thick soap or color indicating solution. The second stage test pressure must be at least 110 percent of the design pressure, but cannot exceed 130 percent of the design pressure of any component in the system. For large systems that are not completely visible, the pressure in the system must be gradually increased to one-half of the test pressure after

which the pressure must be increased in steps of one-tenth of the test pressure, until the required test pressure has been reached. The test pressure must be continuously maintained for at least 24 hours, after which it can be reduced to the leak test pressure. A correction factor of 0.3 psi will be allowed for each degree F change between test space initial and final ambient temperature, plus for increase and minus for a decrease. The leak test pressure must be the design pressure, or a pressure specified in the engineering design. To repair leaks, the joint must be taken apart, thoroughly cleaned, and reconstructed as a new joint. Joints repaired by caulking, re-melting, or back-welding/brazing are not acceptable. Following repair, the entire system must be retested using the pneumatic tests described above. Reassemble the entire system once the pneumatic tests are satisfactorily completed.

3.5.3 Evacuation Test

Following satisfactory completion of the pneumatic tests, relieve the pressure and evacuate the entire system to an absolute pressure of 300 micrometers. During evacuation of the system, the ambient temperature must be higher than 35 degrees F. Do not evacuate no more than one system at one time by one vacuum pump. Once the desired vacuum has been reached, close the vacuum line and allow the system to stand for 1 hour. If the pressure rises over 500 micrometers after the 1 hour period, evacuate the system again down to 300 micrometers and let set for another 1 hour period. Do not charge the system until a vacuum of at least 500 micrometers is maintained for a period of 1 hour without the assistance of a vacuum line. If during the testing the pressure rises above 500 micrometers, continue to repeat the evacuation procedures until all residual moisture has been removed. During evacuation, record pressures by a thermocouple-type, electronic-type, or a calibrated-micrometer type gauge.

3.5.4 System Charging and Startup Test

Following satisfactory completion of the evacuation tests, charge the system with the required amount of refrigerant by raising pressure to normal operating pressure and in accordance with manufacturer's procedures. Following charging, the system must operate with high-side and low-side pressures and corresponding refrigerant temperatures, at design or improved values. Test the entire system tested for leaks. Test fluorocarbon systems with halide torch or electronic leak detectors.

3.5.5 Refrigerant Leakage

If a refrigerant leak is discovered after the system has been charged, the leaking portion of the system must be immediately isolated from the remainder of the system and the refrigerant pumped into the system receiver or other suitable container. The refrigerant must not be discharged into the atmosphere.

3.5.6 Contractor's Responsibility

At all times during the installation and testing of the refrigeration system, take steps to prevent the release of refrigerants into the atmosphere. The steps must include, but not be limited to, procedures which will minimize the release of refrigerants to the atmosphere and the use of refrigerant recovery devices to remove refrigerant from the system and store the refrigerant for reuse or reclaim. At no time will the allowable leak rate exceed the leak rates allowed in Section 608 of the

Clean Air Act: 30 percent of the full charge per year for industrial refrigeration, 20 percent of the full charge per year for commercial refrigeration, and 10 percent of the full charge per year for comfort cooling. Any system leaks within the first year must be repaired in accordance with the requirements herein at no cost to the Government including material, labor, and refrigerant if the leak is the result of defective equipment, material, or installation.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 30 00

HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION

05/20, CHG 1: 02/22

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 201	(2002; R 2011) Fans and Systems
AMCA 210	(2016) Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
AMCA 300	(2014) Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans
AMCA 301	(2014) Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 880 I-P	(2011) Performance Rating of Air Terminals
AHRI Guideline D	(1996) Application and Installation of Central Station Air-Handling Units

AMERICAN BEARING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (ABMA)

ABMA 9	(2015) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings
ABMA 11	(2014) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Roller Bearings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 62.1	(2019; ADD A-G 2021; Errata 3 2021) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality
ASHRAE 113	(2013) Method of Testing for Room Air Diffusion
ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK	(2012) Handbook, HVAC Systems and Equipment (IP Edition)
ASHRAE FUN IP	(2021) Fundamentals Handbook, I-P Edition

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME A13.1	(2020) Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems
ASME B16.22	(2018) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M	(2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A53/A53M	(2020) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A480/A480M	(2020a) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
ASTM A653/A653M	(2020) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A924/A924M	(2020) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A959	(2016) Standard Guide for Specifying Harmonized Standard Grade Compositions for Wrought Stainless Steels
ASTM D870	(2015) Standard Practice for Testing Water Resistance of Coatings Using Water Immersion
ASTM B32	(2020) Standard Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B88	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM B117	(2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B209M	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric)
ASTM B221M	(2021) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric)

ASTM B766	(1986; R 2015) Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Cadmium
ASTM C553	(2013; R 2019) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications
ASTM D520	(2000; R 2011) Zinc Dust Pigment
ASTM D1654	(2008; R 2016; E 2017) Standard Test Method for Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens Subjected to Corrosive Environments
ASTM D2794	(1993; R 2019) Standard Test Method for Resistance of Organic Coatings to the Effects of Rapid Deformation (Impact)
ASTM D3359	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Rating Adhesion by Tape Test
ASTM E84	(2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E2016	(2020) Standard Specification for Industrial Woven Wire Cloth

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 13	(2022) Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems
NFPA 90A	(2021) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
NFPA 90B	(2021) Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems
NFPA 211	(2019) Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION (SMACNA)

SMACNA 1966	(2020) HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, 4th Edition
-------------	---

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY FEDERAL ENERGY MANAGEMENT PROGRAM (FEMP)

PL-109-58	(1992; R 2005) Energy Efficient Procurement Requirements
-----------	--

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 82	Protection of Stratospheric Ozone
-----------	-----------------------------------

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 6	(2007; Reprint Sep 2019) UL Standard for Safety Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel
UL 181	(2013; Reprint Dec 2021) UL Standard for Safety Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors
UL 705	(2017; Reprint Aug 2021) UL Standard for Safety Power Ventilators
UL 1738	(2020; Reprint Aug 2021) UL Standard for Safety Venting Systems for Gas-Burning Appliances, Categories II, III and IV
UL Bld Mat Dir	(updated continuously online) Building Materials Directory

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Furnish ductwork, piping offsets, fittings, and accessories as required to provide a complete installation. Coordinate the work of the different trades to avoid interference between piping, equipment, structural, and electrical work. Provide complete, in place, all necessary offsets in piping and ductwork, and all fittings, and other components, required to install the work as indicated and specified.

1.2.1 Mechanical Equipment Identification

The number of charts and diagrams must be equal to or greater than the number of mechanical equipment rooms. Where more than one chart or diagram per space is required, mount these in edge pivoted, swinging leaf, extruded aluminum frame holders which open to 170 degrees.

1.2.1.1 Charts

Provide chart listing of equipment by designation numbers and capacities such as flow rates, pressure and temperature differences, heating and cooling capacities, horsepower, pipe sizes, and voltage and current characteristics.

1.2.2 Service Labeling

Label equipment, including fans, air handlers, terminal units, etc. with labels made of self-sticking, plastic film designed for permanent installation. Provide labels in accordance with the mechanical and plumbing drawings.

Identify similar services with different temperatures or pressures. Where pressures could exceed 125 pounds per square inch, gage, include the maximum system pressure in the label. Label and arrow piping in accordance with the following:

- a. Each point of entry and exit of pipe passing through walls.
- b. Each change in direction, i.e., elbows, tees.
- c. In congested or hidden areas and at all access panels at each point

required to clarify service or indicated hazard.

- d. In long straight runs, locate labels at distances within eyesight of each other not to exceed 75 feet. All labels must be visible and legible from the primary service and operating area.

For Bare or Insulated Pipes	
for Outside Diameters of	Lettering
1/2 thru 1-3/8 inch	1/2 inch
1-1/2 thru 2-3/8 inch	3/4 inch
2-1/2 inch and larger	1-1/4 inch

1.2.3 Color Coding

Color coding of all piping systems must be in accordance with ASME A13.1.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Coordination Drawings; G, AE

Ductwork Shop Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Labels; G, AE

Flexible Duct Materials; G, AE

Metal Ductwork; G, AE

Duct Security Bars; G, AE

Duct Connectors; G, AE

Duct Access Doors; G, AE

Manual Volume Dampers; G, AE

Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles; G, AE

Louvers; G, AE

Air Vents, Penthouses, and Goosenecks

Centrifugal Fans; G, AE

Ceiling Exhaust Fans; G, AE

High Volume, Low Speed Overhead Fans; G, AE

Air Handling Units; G, AE

Variable Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units; G, AE

Test Procedures

SD-06 Test Reports

Performance Tests; G, FIO

SD-07 Certificates

Bolts

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Installation Instructions

Operation and Maintenance Training

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G

Manual Volume Dampers; G

Centrifugal Fans; G

Ceiling Exhaust Fans; G

Air Handling Units; G

Variable Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Except as otherwise specified, approval of materials and equipment is based on manufacturer's published data.

- a. Where materials and equipment are specified to conform to the standards of the Underwriters Laboratories, the label of or listing with reexamination in UL Bld Mat Dir, and UL 6 is acceptable as sufficient evidence that the items conform to Underwriters Laboratories requirements. In lieu of such label or listing, submit a written certificate from any nationally recognized testing agency, adequately equipped and competent to perform such services, stating that the items have been tested and that the units conform to the specified requirements. Outline methods of testing used by the specified agencies.
- b. Where materials or equipment are specified to be constructed or tested, or both, in accordance with the standards of the ASTM International (ASTM), the ASME International (ASME), or other standards, a manufacturer's certificate of compliance of each item is

acceptable as proof of compliance.

- c. Conformance to such agency requirements does not relieve the item from compliance with other requirements of these specifications.
- d. Where products are specified to meet or exceed the specified energy efficiency requirement of FEMP-designated or ENERGY STAR covered product categories, equipment selected must have as a minimum the efficiency rating identified under "Energy-Efficient Products" at <http://femp.energy.gov/procurement>.

1.4.1 Prevention of Corrosion

Protect metallic materials against corrosion. Provide rust-inhibiting treatment and standard finish for the equipment enclosures. Do not use aluminum in contact with earth, and where connected to dissimilar metal. Protect aluminum by approved fittings, barrier material, or treatment. Provide hot-dip galvanized ferrous parts such as anchors, bolts, braces, boxes, bodies, clamps, fittings, guards, nuts, pins, rods, shims, thimbles, washers, and miscellaneous parts not of corrosion-resistant steel or nonferrous materials in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M for exterior locations and cadmium-plated in conformance with ASTM B766 for interior locations.

1.4.2 Asbestos Prohibition

Do not use asbestos and asbestos-containing products.

1.4.3 Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification

All technicians working on equipment that contain ozone depleting refrigerants must be certified as a Section 608 Technician to meet requirements in 40 CFR 82, Subpart F. Provide copies of technician certifications to the Contracting Officer at least 14 calendar days prior to work on any equipment containing these refrigerants.

1.4.4 Coordination Drawings

Submit coordination drawings in accordance with Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MATERIALS AND METHODS showing the location of all supports and hangers, typical hanger details, gauge reinforcement, reinforcement spacing rigidity classification, and static pressure and seal classifications. Include any information required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and functions properly as a unit on the drawings and show equipment relationship to other parts of the work, including clearances required for operation and maintenance. Submit drawings showing bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts prior to concrete foundation construction for all equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations. Submit function designation of the equipment and any other requirements specified throughout this Section with the shop drawings.

1.4.5 Ductwork Shop Drawings

Submit ductwork shop drawings in accordance with Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MATERIALS AND METHODS.

1.4.6 Test Procedures

Conduct performance tests as required in Section 23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC and Section 23 09 00 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored equipment at the jobsite from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Additionally, cap or plug all pipes until installed.

1.6 SPARE PARTS

- a. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

(1) Filters: Two sets for each air filter section.

(2) Gaskets: One set for each air handling unit access door.

1.7 MOTORS

Refer to Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS for specific motor requirements that pertain to all motor driven equipment listed in this section.

1.8 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

Furnish motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors with their respective pieces of equipment. Motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors shall conform to and have electrical connections provided under Division 26. Furnish internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Extended voltage range motors will not be permitted. Controllers and contactors shall have a maximum of 120 volt control circuits, and shall have auxiliary contacts for use with the controls furnished. When motors and equipment furnished are larger than sizes indicated, the cost of additional electrical service and related work shall be included under the section that specified that motor or equipment. Power wiring and conduit for field installed equipment shall be provided under and conform to the requirements of Division 26.

1.9 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

Design and provide supports and anchorage for all hanging equipment. Include details in product submittals for the applicable equipment.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide components and equipment that are "standard products" of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of products that are of a similar material, design and workmanship. "Standard products" is defined as being in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years before bid opening, including applications of components and equipment under similar circumstances and of similar size, satisfactorily completed by a product that is sold on the commercial market through advertisements,

manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2-year field service record are acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown. Provide equipment items that are supported by a service organization.

2.2 LABELS

2.2.1 Equipment Labels

a. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

- (1) Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- (2) Letter Color: White.
- (3) Background Color: Black.
- (4) Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- (5) Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 1-3/4 inch.
- (6) Minimum Letter Size: 1 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1-1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- (7) Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
- (8) Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

b. Label Content: Coordinate with COR for unique designation of equipment number and identification with the project tracking number (PTN).

c. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the project tracking number (PTN). Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2.2 Warning Signs And Labels

- a. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- b. Letter Color: White.
- c. Background Color: Red.
- d. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

- e. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 1-3/4 inch.
- f. Minimum Letter Size: 1 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1-1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- g. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
- h. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- i. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.2.3 Pipe Labels

- a. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- b. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- c. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed vinyl with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- d. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - (1) Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - (2) Lettering Size: Per ASME A13.1.

2.2.4 Duct Labels

- a. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, vinyl labels.
- b. Letter Color: White.
- c. Background Color: Green or Blue.
- d. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- e. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 1-3/4 inch.
- f. Minimum Letter Size: 1 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1-1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

- g. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- h. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - (1) Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
 - (2) Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high of per ASME A13.1.

2.2.5 Valve Tags

- a. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - (1) Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - (2) Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- b. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - (1) Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2.6 Warning Tags

- a. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - (1) Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches.
 - (2) Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 - (3) Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - (4) Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

2.2.7 Warranty Labels

Provide warranty labels for all equipment under warranty. Labels shall be no greater than 8"x10" in size. The following information shall be included on the label: Equipment number, Project Tracking Number (PTN), Project Name, Project Contract Number, Manufacturer, Model Number, Serial Number, General Contractor, General Manufacturer's Warranty Expiration Date, Manufacturer's local Representative, Manufacturer's local representative's number.

Labels shall be attached to equipment using mechanical fasteners. If

mechanical fasteners are not practical, contractor shall provide alternate fastening method in submittal. label text shall be clearly legible with minimum height of 3/4", aerial text font, and all capital letter.

2.3 EQUIPMENT GUARDS AND ACCESS

Fully enclose or guard belts, pulleys, chains, gears, couplings, projecting setscrews, keys, and other rotating parts exposed to personnel contact according to OSHA requirements. Properly guard or cover with insulation of a type specified, high temperature equipment and piping exposed to contact by personnel or where it creates a potential fire hazard. The requirements for catwalks, operating platforms, ladders, and guardrails are specified in Section 05 52 00 METAL RAILINGS.

2.4 DUCT SYSTEMS

2.4.1 Metal Ductwork

Provide metal ductwork construction, including all fittings and components, that complies with SMACNA 1966, as supplemented and modified by this specification.

- a. Ductwork shall be constructed meeting the requirements for the duct system static pressure indicated in the "Duct Construction and Leak Test Schedule" on the contract drawings.
- b. Provide radius type elbows with a centerline radius of 1.5 times the width or diameter of the duct where space permits. Otherwise, elbows having a minimum radius equal to the width or diameter of the duct or square elbows with factory fabricated turning vanes are allowed.
- c. Provide sealants that conform to fire hazard classification specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS and are suitable for the range of air distribution and ambient temperatures to which it is exposed. Do not use pressure sensitive tape as a sealant.

(1) Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

- (a) Application Method: Brush on.
 - (b) Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 - (c) Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 - (d) Water resistant.
 - (e) Mold and mildew resistant.
 - (f) OC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 - (g) Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
 - (h) Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 - (i) Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- d. Make spiral lock seam duct, and flat oval with duct sealant and lock with not less than 3 equally spaced drive screws or other approved methods indicated in SMACNA 1966. Apply the sealant to the exposed male part of the fitting collar so that the sealer is on the inside of the joint and fully protected by the metal of the duct fitting. Apply one brush coat of the sealant over the outside of the joint to at least 2 inch band width covering all screw heads and joint gap. Dents in the male portion of the slip fitting collar are not acceptable.

Fabricate outdoor air intake ducts and plenums with watertight soldered or brazed joints and seams.

- e. Internally reinforcement (tie rods) is not allowed.

2.4.1.1 Galvanized Steel Ductwork Materials

Galvanized steel ductwork sheet metal shall be carbon steel, of lock-forming quality, hot-dip galvanized, with regular spangle-type zinc coating, conforming to ASTM A924/A924M and ASTM A653/A653M, Designation G90. Treat duct surfaces to be painted by phosphatizing.

Conform to ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK, Chapter 16, ASHRAE FUN IP, Chapter 32 and SMACNA 1966 for sheet metal gages and reinforcement thickness.

2.4.1.2 Mill-Rolled Reinforcing And Supporting Materials

Conform to ASTM A36/A36M for mill-rolled structural steel and, wherever in contact with sheet metal ducting galvanize to commercial weight of zinc or coated with materials conforming to ASTM A123/A123M.

Equivalent strength, proprietary design, rolled-steel structural support systems may be submitted for approval in lieu of mill-rolled structural steel.

2.4.1.3 Round Sheet Metal Duct Fittings

Shop fabricate fittings.

Manufacture as separate fittings, not as tap collars welded or brazed into duct sections.

Submit for approval offset configurations.

Miter elbows shall be two-piece type for angles less than 31 degrees, three-piece type for angles 31 through 60 degrees, and five-piece type for angles 61 through 90 degrees. Centerline radius of elbows shall be 1-1/2 times fitting cross section diameter.

Crosses, increasers, reducers, reducing tees, and 90-degree tees shall be conical type.

Cutouts in fitting body shall be equal to branch tap dimension or, where smaller, excess material shall be flared and rolled into smooth radius nozzle configuration.

2.4.1.4 Flange Connectors

- a. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- b. Material: Match connecting ductwork.
- c. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.4.1.5 Turning Vanes

Turning vanes less than 24 inches installed length shall be single vane type with 1.5 in spacing. All other turning vanes shall be double-wall

type, commercially manufactured for high-velocity system service.

2.4.1.6 Flexible Connectors For Sheet Metal

Connectors shall be UL listed, 30-ounce per square foot, waterproof, fire-retardant, airtight, woven fibrous-glass cloth, double coated with chloroprene. Clear width, not including clamping section, shall be 6 to 8 inches.

2.4.1.7 Duct Hangers

Duct hangers in contact with galvanized duct surfaces shall be galvanized steel painted with inorganic zinc.

2.4.1.8 Flexible Duct Materials

Flexible duct connectors shall be in accordance with UL 181, Class 1 material and shall comply with NFPA 90A.

Wire-reinforced fibrous-glass duct shall consist of a minimum 1 pound/cubic foot density fibrous glass bonded to and supported by corrosion-protected spring helix. Vapor barrier shall be a 4 mil minimum, pigmented polyvinylchloride film. Duct shall be bendable without damage through 180 degrees with an inside bend radius not greater than two duct diameters. Insulation shall provide R-6.0 rating at 75 degrees F mean. Permeance shall be not greater than 0.10 perm. Working pressure range shall be from minus 1/2 inch wg to plus 4 inches wg. Working temperature shall range from minus 20 to plus 175 degrees F. Minimum sustained velocity without delamination shall be 2,400 fpm.

2.4.2 Air Duct Accessories

2.4.2.1 Assembly Description

- a. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- b. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.4.2.2 Materials

- a. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
 - (1) Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
 - (2) Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- b. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts.
- c. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209M, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

- d. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B221M, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- e. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

2.4.3 Duct Access Doors

Provide hinged access doors conforming to SMACNA 1966 in ductwork and plenums where indicated and at all air flow measuring primaries, automatic dampers, fire dampers, coils, thermostats, and other apparatus requiring service and inspection in the duct system. Provide access doors upstream and downstream of air flow measuring primaries and heating and cooling coils. Provide doors that are a minimum 15 by 18 inches, unless otherwise shown. Where duct size does not accommodate this size door, make the doors as large as practicable. Equip doors 24 by 24 inches or larger with fasteners operable from inside and outside the duct. Use insulated type doors in insulated ducts.

2.4.4 Duct Security Bars

- a. Description: Factory-fabricated and field-installed duct security bars.
- b. Configuration:
 - (1) Frame: 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8 inch angle.
 - (2) Sleeve: 0.1345-inch, continuously welded steel frames with 1-1/2-by-1-1/2-by-1/8-inch angle frame furnished loose for field welding on other end. To be poured in place or set with concrete block or welded or bolted to wall, one side only. Duct connections on both sides.
 - (3) Horizontal Bars: 1/2 inch.
 - (4) Vertical Bars: 1/2 inch.
 - (5) Bar Spacing: 6 inches.
 - (6) Mounting: Ductwork or other framing.

2.4.5 Manual Volume Dampers

- (1) Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
- (2) Standard leakage rating, with linkage inside airstream for dampers serving linear diffusers and located within 10 feet of diffuser.
- (3) Frames:
 - (a) Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - (b) Mitered and welded corners.
 - (c) Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
- (4) Blades:

- (a) Multiple or single blade.
 - (b) Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - (c) Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - (d) Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
- (5) Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- (6) Bearings:
- (a) Oil-impregnated bronze or Molded synthetic.
 - (b) Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- (7) Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- (8) Universal Damper Drive: Worm gear damper drive to manually control dampers from a remote location
- (a) One piece construction.
 - (b) 14 gauge galvanized steel mounting bracket and
 - (c) Aluminum worm gear with 20:1 gear ration and 2:1 mechanical advantage.
 - (d) One piece steel drive shaft and cable coupling to connect to a 1/4 diameter plated steel rotary actuation cable. Rotary cable shall have a minimum torque service factor of 200%.
 - (e) Rotary cable to be operated by a standard hex nut driver.
 - (f) Terminate rotary action cable with a ceiling cup or nylon retaining clip (when used inside linear diffuser plenum).
 - (g) Ceiling cup: Fire rated (UL94-V0) nylon cap to seal access hole, mounted flush to ceiling. Cap shall be 1" diameter or less, with 9/16" diameter ceiling penetration. Include galvanized steel mounting bracket for rotary actuation cable support. Cap shall accommodate ceiling thickness as required.
 - (h) Each unit shall be factory tested as a complete assembly. Assembly shall hold balanced setting in air velocities up to 1,500 feet per minute.

2.4.6 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles

2.4.6.1 General

Certify air diffusion devices having been tested and rated in accordance with ASHRAE EQUIP IP HDBK, Chapter 17; ASHRAE FUN IP, Chapter 31; and ASHRAE 113, where such certification is required.

Submit equipment and performance data for air-diffusion devices consisting of sound data in terms of Noise Criteria (NC) index for the capacity range of the device. Where room attenuation is not specified or indicated, assume 10 decibels. Where space or sound data are not specified or indicated, assume NC-30.

The manufacturer shall provide published performance data for each air device. The air device shall be tested in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 70-1991.

2.4.6.2 Types Of Air-Diffusion Devices

2.4.6.2.1 Type SD-1

The diffuser shall have three cones, which give a uniform face size and appearance when different neck sizes are used in the same area. All cones shall be one piece precision die-stamped; the back cone shall also include an integrally drawn inlet (welded-in inlets and corner joints are not acceptable). The two inner cones shall be constructed as a single, removable inner cone assembly for easy installation and cleaning. The inner cone assembly must have a hole with removable plug in the center to allow quick adjustment of an optional inlet damper without removing the inner cone assembly. Diffusers shall be constructed of 24-gauge steel.

The finish shall be #26 white. The finish shall be an anodic acrylic paint, baked at 315°F for 30 minutes. The pencil hardness must be HB to H.

The paint must pass a 100-hour ASTM B117 Corrosive Environments Salt Spray Test without creepage, blistering or deterioration of film. The paint must pass a 250-hour ASTM D870 Water Immersion Test. The paint must also pass the ASTM D2794 Reverse Impact Cracking Test with a 50-inch pound force applied.

2.4.6.2.2 Type SG-1

Aluminum supply grilles with double deflection. The deflection blades shall be available parallel to the long dimension of the grille. All supply grilles shall be constructed with a 1¼-inch wide heavy aluminum border having a minimum thickness of 0.040-0.050 inch. Outer borders shall be assembled and interlocked at the four corners and mechanically staked to form a rigid frame. Screw holes shall be countersunk for a neat appearance.

Blades shall be constructed of heavy-duty aluminum and shall be contoured to a specifically designed airfoil cross-section to meet published performance data. Hollow blades are not acceptable. Blades must be solid. Blades shall be spaced ¾-inch apart. Blades shall extend completely through the side frame on each side to ensure stability throughout the complete cfm operating range of the grille. Blades shall be individually adjustable without loosening or rattling and shall be securely held in place with tension wire.

The grille finish shall be #26 white. The finish shall be an anodic acrylic paint, baked at 315°F for 30 minutes. The pencil hardness must be HB to H. The paint must pass a 100-hour ASTM B117 Corrosive Environments Salt Spray Test without creepage, blistering or deterioration of film. The paint must pass a 250-hour ASTM D870 Water Immersion Test. The paint must also pass the ASTM D2794 Reverse Impact Cracking Test with a 50-inch pound force applied.

2.4.6.2.3 Type RG-1

Perforated ceiling diffusers aluminum, flush face for return. The return models shall have the same face and border construction as the supply models for harmonious appearance in the room. Diffusers shall have a perforated face with 3/16-inch diameter holes on 1/4-inch staggered centers and no less than 51 percent free area. Perforated face shall be aluminum. The backpan shall be one piece stamped heavy gauge steel of the

sizes and mounting types shown on the plans and outlet schedule. The diffuser neck shall have 1 1/8-inch depth for easy duct connection.

The finish shall be #26 white. The finish shall be an anodic acrylic paint, baked at 315°F for 30 minutes. The pencil hardness must be HB to H.

The paint must pass a 100-hour ASTM B117 Corrosive Environments Salt Spray Test without creepage, blistering or deterioration of film. The paint must pass a 250-hour ASTM D870 Water Immersion Test. The paint must also pass the ASTM D2794 Reverse Impact Cracking Test with a 50-inch pound force applied.

2.4.6.2.4 Type RG-2

Aluminum return grilles, 1/2-inch blade spacing. The fixed deflection blades shall be available parallel to the long or short dimension of the grille. Construction shall be of extruded aluminum with a 1¼-inch wide border on all sides. Minimum border thickness shall be 0.040-0.050 inch. Sizes 24 x 24 inches and smaller shall be constructed using a roll-formed frame.

Corners shall be welded with full penetration resistance welds. Sizes larger than 24 x 24 inches shall be constructed by using heavy aluminum extrusions and shall be interlocked at the four corners and mechanically staked to form a rigid frame. Screw holes shall be counter-sunk for a neat appearance.

Deflection blades shall be contoured to a specifically designed and tested cross-section to meet published test performance data. Blades shall be firmly held in place by mullions from behind the grille and fixed in place by crimping or welding. Blade deflection angle shall be available at 35°.

The grille finish shall be #26 white. The finish shall be an anodic acrylic paint, baked at 315° F for 30 minutes. The pencil hardness must be HB to H. The paint must pass a 100-hour ASTM B117 Corrosive Environments Salt Spray Test without creepage, blistering or deterioration of film. The paint must pass a 250-hour ASTM D870 Water Immersion Test. The paint must also pass the ASTM D2794 Reverse Impact Cracking Test with a 50-inch pound force applied.

2.4.6.2.5 Type EG-1

Exhaust grill same as type RG-1 return grill.

2.4.6.2.6 Type TG-1

Transfer grill same as Type SD-1 return grill except without opposed blade damper.

2.4.7 Louvers

Louvers are specified in Section 08 91 00 METAL WALL LOUVERS.

2.4.8 Air Vents, Penthouses, and Goosenecks

Fabricate air vents, penthouses, and goosenecks from galvanized steel sheets with galvanized structural shapes. Provide sheet metal thickness, reinforcement, and fabrication that conform to SMACNA 1966. Accurately

fit and secure louver blades to frames. Fold or bead edges of louver blades for rigidity and baffle these edges to exclude driving rain. Provide air vents, penthouses, and goosenecks with bird screen.

2.4.9 Bird Screens and Frames

Provide bird screens that conform to ASTM E2016, No. 2 mesh, aluminum or stainless steel. Provide "medium-light" rated aluminum screens. Provide "light" rated stainless steel screens. Provide removable type frames fabricated from either stainless steel or extruded aluminum.

2.5 INDOOR AIR QUALITY

Provide equipment and components that comply with the requirements of ASHRAE 62.1 unless more stringent requirements are specified herein.

2.6 AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT

2.6.1 Fans

Test and rate fans according to AMCA 210. Calculate system effect on air moving devices in accordance with AMCA 201 where installed ductwork differs from that indicated on drawings. Install air moving devices to minimize fan system effect. Where system effect is unavoidable, determine the most effective way to accommodate the inefficiencies caused by system effect on the installed air moving device. The sound power level of the fans must not exceed 85 dBA when tested according to AMCA 300 and rated in accordance with AMCA 301. Provide all fans with an AMCA seal. Connect fans to the motors either directly or indirectly with V-belt drive. Use V-belt drives designed for not less than 150 percent of the connected driving capacity. Provide variable pitch motor sheaves for 15 hp and below, and fixed pitch as defined by AHRI Guideline D (A fixed-pitch sheave is provided on both the fan shaft and the motor shaft. This is a non-adjustable speed drive.). Select variable pitch sheaves to drive the fan at a speed which can produce the specified capacity when set at the approximate midpoint of the sheave adjustment. When fixed pitch sheaves are furnished, provide a replaceable sheave when needed to achieve system air balance. Provide motors for V-belt drives with adjustable rails or bases. Provide removable metal guards for all exposed V-belt drives, and provide speed-test openings at the center of all rotating shafts. Provide fans with personnel screens or guards on both suction and supply ends, except that the screens need not be provided, unless otherwise indicated, where ducts are connected to the fan. Provide fan and motor assemblies with vibration-isolation supports or mountings as indicated. Use vibration-isolation units that are standard products with published loading ratings. Select each fan to produce the capacity required at the fan static pressure indicated. Provide sound power level as indicated. Obtain the sound power level values according to AMCA 300. Provide standard AMCA arrangement, rotation, and discharge as indicated. Provide power ventilators that conform to UL 705 and have a UL label.

2.6.1.1 Centrifugal Fans

Provide fully enclosed, single-width single-inlet, or double-width double-inlet centrifugal fans, with AMCA Pressure Class I, II, or III as required or indicated for the design system pressure. Provide impeller wheels that are rigidly constructed and accurately balanced both statically and dynamically. Provide forward curved or backward-inclined airfoil design fan blades in wheel sizes up to 30 inches. Provide

backward-inclined airfoil design fan blades for wheels over 30 inches in diameter. Provide fan wheels over 36 inches in diameter with overhung pulleys and a bearing on each side of the wheel. Provide fan wheels 36 inches or less in diameter that have one or more extra long bearings between the fan wheel and the drive. Provide sleeve type, self-aligning and self-oiling bearings with oil reservoirs, or precision self-aligning roller or ball-type with accessible grease fittings or permanently lubricated type. Connect grease fittings to tubing for serviceability from a single accessible point. Provide L50 rated bearing life at not less than 200,000 hours as defined by ABMA 9 and ABMA 11. Provide steel, accurately finished fan shafts, with key seats and keys for impeller hubs and fan pulleys. Provide fan outlets of ample proportions, designed for the attachment of angles and bolts for attaching flexible connections.

2.6.1.2 In-Line Centrifugal Fans (Drawings Designation - EF-1)

Provide in-line fans with centrifugal backward inclined blades, stationary discharge conversion vanes, internal and external belt guards, and adjustable motor mounts. Mount fans in a welded tubular casing. Provide a fan that axially flows the air in and out. Streamline inlets with conversion vanes to eliminate turbulence and provide smooth discharge air flow. Enclose and isolate fan bearings and drive shafts from the air stream. Provide precision, self aligning ball or roller type fan bearings that are sealed against dust and dirt and are permanently lubricated. Provide L50 rated bearing life at not less than 200,000 hours as defined by ABMA 9 and ABMA 11. Provide motors with totally enclosed enclosure.

2.6.1.2.1 General Exhaust Fans (See Mechanical Drawings)

a. General Description:

- (1) Normal operating temperature up to 130 Fahrenheit (54.4 Celsius).
- (2) Applications: exhaust air systems.
- (3) Each fan shall bear a permanently affixed manufacture's engraved metal nameplate containing the model number and individual serial number.

b. Wheel:

- (1) Non-overloading, backward inclined centrifugal wheel
- (2) Constructed of aluminum
- (3) Statically and dynamically balanced in accordance to AMCA Standard 204-05
- (4) The wheel cone and fan inlet will be matched and shall have precise running tolerances for maximum performance and operating efficiency
- (5) Single thickness blades are securely riveted or welded to a heavy gauge back plate and wheel cone

c. Motors:

- (1) Electronically Commutated Motor

- (a) Motor enclosure: Open drip proof
- (b) Motor to be a DC electronic commutation type motor (ECM) specifically designed for fan applications. AC induction type motors are not acceptable. Examples of unacceptable motors are: Shaded Pole, Permanent Split Capacitor (PSC), Split Phase, Capacitor Start and 3 phase induction type motors
- (c) Motors are permanently lubricated, heavy duty ball bearing type to match with the fan load and pre-wired to the specific voltage and phase
- (d) Internal motor circuitry to convert AC power supplied to the fan to DC power to operate the motor
- (e) Motor shall be speed controllable down to 20% of full speed (80% turndown). Speed shall be controlled by either a potentiometer dial mounted at the motor or by a 0-10 VDC signal
- (f) Motor shall be a minimum of 85% efficient at all speeds

d. Housing/Cabinet Construction:

- (1) Square design constructed of heavy gauge galvanized steel and shall include square duct mounting collars
- (2) Housing and bearing supports shall be constructed of heavy gauge bolted and welded steel construction to prevent vibration and to rigidly support the shaft and bearing assembly.
- (3) Galvanized Construction material

e. Housing Supports and Drive Frame:

- (1) Housing supports are constructed of structural steel with formed flanges
- (2) Drive frame is welded steel which supports the motor

f. Duct Collars:

- (1) Square design to provide a large discharge area
- (2) Inlet and discharge collars provide easy duct connection

g. Access Panel:

- (1) Two sided access panels, permit easy access to all internal components
- (2) Located perpendicular to the motor mounting panel

2.6.1.3 Ceiling Exhaust Fans

Provide centrifugal type, direct driven suspended cabinet-type ceiling exhaust fans. Provide fans with acoustically insulated housing. Provide chatter-proof backdraft damper. Provide egg-crate design or louver design integral face grille. Mount fan motors on vibration isolators. Furnish unit with mounting flange for hanging unit from above. Provide U.L. listed fans. Provide PL-109-58 labeled ceiling exhaust fan product. Provide proof of PL-109-58 label for ceiling exhaust fan product.

2.6.1.4 High Volume, Low Speed Overhead Fans (HVLS-1; HVLS-2; HVLS-3; HVLS-4)

a. General Description:

- (1) High Volume, Low Speed (HVLS) overhead fans shall be licensed to bear the AMCA Certified Rating Seal for Circulating Fan Performance to ensure performance as cataloged in the field. Unlicensed overhead fans shall not be accepted.
- (2) Entire fan assembly shall be UL/cUL-Listed to Underwriters Laboratory (UL) Standard 507 and CSA Standard 22.2 No. 113 to ensure compliance with the most current international testing standards. Intertek/ETL certification to UL Standard 507 and CSA Standard 22.2 No. 113 shall not be accepted.
- (3) Performance capabilities up to 55,800 cubic feet per minute (cfm).
- (4) Maximum continuous operating temperature of 104° Fahrenheit (40° Celsius).
- (5) Designed for forward (counter-clockwise when viewed from floor) and reverse (clockwise when viewed from floor) operation capabilities, for comfort cooling and destratification applications.
- (6) Each fan shall bear a permanently affixed manufacturer's mylar nameplate containing the model number, individual serial number, and electrical requirements of the fan.

b. Impeller:

- (1) Impeller shall be constructed of aerodynamic 6005A-T6 extruded aluminum airfoil blades connected to a single-piece, laser-cut 5/16 inch steel hub for structural strength. Multi-piece hubs shall not be permitted. All connections shall be made using a minimum of SAE Grade 5 hardware.
- (2) Airfoil blades shall be interlocked with one another and the impeller hub via a heavy-duty steel airfoil retaining ring for safety. Airfoil retaining ring shall be constructed of heavy gauge steel and installed at the factory to ensure proper function. Field-installed airfoil retainers shall not be accepted.
- (3) Airfoil blades shall be provided with a mill aluminum finish as standard.
- (4) Airfoil blades shall be optimized for maximum airflow, fan efficiency, and coverage area.
- (5) Airfoil blades shall be internally reinforced to minimize blade deflection while the fan is in standby or in operation. Blade deflection shall not exceed ±2.4 inches in either situation.
- (6) Airfoil blades shall be designed for minimal weight in order to maximize fan efficiency. Individual blade weight shall not exceed 10 pounds.
- (7) Impeller hub shall be secured to the face of the motor by a

minimum of 6 bolts. Impeller hub shall also be connected to the building structure via a safety restraint cable and hub retaining ring. Hub retaining ring shall be constructed of heavy gauge steel and installed at the factory to ensure proper function.

c. Motor:

- (1) Ingress Protection 54 (IP54) - International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) rating. IP54 rating denotes that motor is dust protected (limited ingress of dust permitted but will not interfere with operation of the equipment) and protected against water splashed from all directions (limited ingress permitted).
- (2) Motor enclosure: IP54
- (3) Motors shall be of the high torque, low speed direct drive type, carefully matched to the fan load and furnished at the specified voltage and phase. High speed motors provided with a gearbox to reduce the operating speed of the fan shall not be permitted.
- (4) Motors shall be an external rotor design. Internal rotor motors shall not be permitted.
- (5) Motors shall be of the brushless DC type for maximum efficiency and speed controllability. No other motor type shall be accepted.
- (6) Motors shall include plug-and-play connectors for all wiring to the variable frequency drive. Motors that require these wiring connections to be stripped and terminated in the field shall not be permitted.
- (7) Motors shall include an internally-mounted thermistor for continuous monitoring of the motor's internal temperature.
- (8) Motors shall include Class B insulation.

d. Variable Frequency Drive (VFD):

- (1) Ingress Protection 50 (IP50) - International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) rating. IP50 rating denotes that VFD is dust protected (limited ingress of dust permitted but will not interfere with operation of the equipment) and protected against vertically falling drops of water (limited ingress permitted).
- (2) VFD enclosure: IP50
- (3) VFD shall be factory programmed and designed for Modbus RS-485 communication with control devices via the Modbus RTU communication protocol.
- (4) VFD shall be UL Listed for single phase input at the specified voltage.
- (5) VFD shall be provided with factory-installed, plug-and-play wiring for ease of installation. Plug-and-play wiring shall include power, communication, and fire alarm wiring pigtails that are designed for quick and easy termination in the field.
- (6) VFD shall be factory-wired for power.

- (7) VFD shall include two thermistors for continuous monitoring of VFD's internal and external temperature.
- (8) VFD shall include sensors for continuous monitoring of voltage and current.
- (9) VFD shall include intelligent protection systems to prevent failures caused by over/under-voltage, over-current, over-temperature, over-speed, and fan impact. VFDs without these protection features shall not be permitted.
- (10) VFD shall include the most current firmware version as of the product's manufacturing date to ensure optimal performance. As a result of continuous development, the manufacturer reserves the right to update VFD firmware without notice.

e. Universal Ceiling Mount & Downtube:

- (1) Fans shall be provided with a universal ceiling mount that is designed for fast and secure installation on a variety of building structures. Universal ceiling mount shall be constructed of heavy gauge, bolted steel and shall include a pivoting knuckle joint with one axis of rotation to accommodate any ceiling pitch.
- (2) Downtube shall be constructed of heavy gauge steel to provide a structural connection between the universal ceiling mount and fan motor. Downtube shall also include a welded guy wire connection ring for fast and secure installation of guy wires when required based on downtube length.
- (3) Universal ceiling mount and downtube shall be powder-coated for corrosion resistance and aesthetic appearance.
- (4) Drop length between top of universal ceiling mount and top of airfoil blades shall be available in one foot increments between 1 and 10 feet.
- (5) All hardware shall be a minimum of SAE Grade 5.

f. Safety Retention Cables:

- (1) Fans shall include a braided galvanized steel safety retention cable that is rated for a load of 495 pounds or greater. Safety retention cable shall be installed on the fan motor at the factory to ensure proper function. Field construction or installation of safety retention cables shall not be permitted.
- (2) Safety retention cable shall be secured around the building structure via a minimum of two u-bolt steel cable clamps as standard.

g. Guy Wires:

- (1) Guy wires shall be included for fans with drop lengths equal to or greater than 4 feet in length. Guy wires shall be constructed of braided galvanized steel and designed to prevent lateral movement of the fan when installed.

- (2) Guy wires shall be secured to the building structure via the supplied beam clamps and quick links for ease of installation.
- (3) Guy wires shall be secured to the fan and tensioned via high-strength steel turnbuckles with quick links. Turnbuckles shall be connected to each guy wire via a minimum of two u-bolt steel cable clamps per guy wire as standard.

h. Fire Control Panel Integration:

- (1) Fans shall include a normally closed electromechanical relay for integration with a building's fire control panel. Normally closed electromechanical relay shall be compatible with 24 VDC/VAC and 115 VAC control signals.

i. Accessories:

(1) Finishes:

- (a) Hi-Pro Polyester - Industrial electrostatic powder coating that meets or exceeds the chemical resistance properties of Air Dry Phenolic (heresite). Dry film thickness of 2-3 mils.
- (b) Type: Hi-Pro Polyester

- 1) All fan components.

(2) Finishes:

- (a) I-Beam Kit - Includes hardware for mounting fan to I-beams with a flange width up to 7.4 inches and a web thickness up to 0.75 inches.
- (b) Steel Truss Kit - Includes hardware for mounting fan to structural steel angles that are sized to fit within steel trusses/bar joists.

(3) LED Light:

- (a) Capable of 0-10VDC dimming via optional fan controls.

(4) Disconnect Switches:

- (a) NEMA Rated: 1
- (b) Protection: Fused
- (c) Positive electrical shut-off.
- (d) Shipped loose for field mounting.

(5) Overhead Fan Controls:

- (a) Advanced Touchscreen Control with LonWorks integration and Temp/Humidity Sensors - Touchscreen control with LCD display. Allows users to operate up to 10 fans individually or in groups, with any combination of fan models and sizes. Fans can be controlled locally via the touchscreen and remotely via the LonWorks integration communication protocol. Fans can also be programmed for automatic operation based on temperature and humidity in the space using floor and ceiling-mounted temp/humidity sensors. Controller powered through 115V power adapter. Temp/humidity

sensors powered through 24V supplied by the fan's VFD via shielded CAT-5e communication cable.

- (b) Advanced Touchscreen Control with LonWorks integration and Temp/Humidity Sensors
- (c) Controls shall be capable of operating one or multiple AMPLIFY overhead fans as specified. Controls shall provide start/stop, speed, and rotation direction control capabilities as well as diagnostic and fault history information for each connected fan. Controls shall also be capable of dimming the optional fan-mounted LED light.
- (d) Controls shall include RJ45 ports for plug-and-play connection to overhead fans via shielded CAT-5e communication cable in the field.

(6) CAT-5e Cable Length:

- (a) Field-Assembled Cable Type: 1,000 foot spool

- 1) Field-assembled CAT-5e cable must be shielded 26 gauge cable with a drain wire and must be compliant with ISO 11801 to prevent network communication issues. Cable must be cut to appropriate length and terminated with shielded RJ45 connectors with a soldered drain in the field by an experienced contractor or electrician. Wiring configuration must follow EIA/TIA T568B wiring pinout and individual cable lengths must not exceed 200 feet.

(7) Extended Mechanical Warranties:

- (a) Type: 15 Yrs. (5 Yr. Ext.)

(8) Extended Electrical Warranties:

- (a) Type: 5 Yrs. (4 Yr. Ext.)

2.7 AIR HANDLING UNITS

2.7.1 Package Unit (AHU-1) Factory-Fabricated Air Handling Units

a. General

- (1) Packaged unit is a fully assembled heating and/or cooling system, ETL listed, with a single refrigerant circuit. Standard features are hoods for outside air and exhaust factory wiring with a single point power connection, phase and voltage monitor, refrigerant piping, safeties and refrigerant/oil charge (R- 410A).

- b. Unit Cabinet: Cabinet is double wall design with heavy-duty frame and reinforced base. Double wall panels are constructed of G-90 galvanized steel inside and out with a polyester exterior finish for up to 2,500 hour salt-spray protection. Fixed panels on sides and top have two-inch thick, closed cell foam insulation; access panels have two-inch foam injection insulation provides an R-13 rating to reduce heat transfer losses. Access panels are fitted with one-quarter turn self-tightening latches (one lockable) and stainless steel hinges. Top panels are raised to improve water run-off and include drip edge. Heavy Duty 16-gauge base pan has 0.375 inch closed cell insulation on the underside to serve as sound attenuation and as a moisture/thermal barrier and a positive seal to the curb. Openings include a minimum

one-half inch turned up flange. Stainless steel hardware to reduce fastener corrosion. Condenser coils are fin and tube. The condenser section on units with four or more fans has removable channels for proper roof clearance. A double-sloped, extra-large, stainless steel drain pan equipped with drain fitting positioned on exterior of cabinet to facilitate for removal of condensate and eliminate standing water.

- c. Direct-drive blowers are provided with high-efficiency, ODP or TEFC motors and variable frequency drives (VFD). Condenser fans have external rotor, direct driven, axial cast profiled blades with a spun venturi for high efficiency and low noise. Motors are Totally Enclosed Air Over (TEAO) and operated with pre-programmed VFD for accurate head pressure control.
- d. Cooling Coil, 6-row copper tube, aluminum fin DX coil surface aluminum fins, formed on multiple rows of seamless rifled copper tubing, arranged in staggered tube configuration with galvanized steel header plates. These tubes are mechanically expanded, firmly bonding the tube to the shoulder of each fin.
- e. Compressor Type: Compressor is hermetic scroll type with crankcase heaters, overload protection, short cycle protection and minimum on and off timers. Installed in an insulated compartment accessible through hinged access doors the compressor is mounted on rubber-inshear isolators and isolated from the treated air stream. Refrigerant lines include circuit access/service valves and reaction torque loops. Crankcase heaters will only be activated during compressor off mode.
- f. Heating Coil: Electric heat, including nichrome element type, open wire coils with 0.375 in. inside diameter, insulated with ceramic bushings, frame and control panel mounted in the unit discharge. Coil ends to be staked and welded to terminal screw slots. Provide control panel including hinged access door, fuses, airflow switch, disconnecting contactors and safeties. Power and control wiring must be fed back to the unit control panel. Heater control must be SCR with leaving air sensor.
- g. Refrigeration Controls: Hot Gas Reheat, Modulating with Variable Speed Head Pressure Control Includes one-row coil and Electronic valve.
- h. Refrigeration Controls, One-row Liquid Sub-cooling/reheat coil.
- i. Ventilation & Controls: Modulating OA & RA Dampers with 0-10Vdc Actuators (ALC, Field DDC): Ventilation, outside air intake hood with birdscreen plus motorized outside and return air Class 1 dampers with modulating (proportional) actuators. Provide motorized relief damper.
- j. Maintenance 115V Convenience Outlet: Maintenance 115 volt GFCI convenience outlet with cover factory wired. Includes step down transformer and fused disconnect switch in NEMA 3R enclosures
- k. Maintenance: Clogged Filter Indicator: Clogged filter switch with visual indicator and tubing for the filters ahead of the cooling coil factory-mounted. Includes terminals for connection to a DDC controller. If an ALC is included the switch is pre-wired.
- l. Filters: 2 in. MERV 8 Pleated plus 4 in. MERV 13 Pleated filters

pre-loaded in unit.

2.7.2 Package Unit (AHU-2)

2.7.2.1 General

- a. Substitute equipment may be considered for approval that includes at a minimum:

- (1) R-410A refrigerant
- (2) Direct drive supply fans
- (3) Double wall cabinet construction
- (4) Insulation with a minimum R-value of 13
- (5) Stainless steel drain pans
- (6) Hinged access doors with lockable handles
- (7) Variable capacity compressor with 10-100% capacity
- (8) All other provisions of the specifications must be satisfactorily addressed

b. General Description

- (1) Packaged rooftop unit shall include compressor, evaporator coil, filters, supply fan, exhaust fan, dampers, air-cooled condenser coils, condenser fan, reheat coil, electric heater, and unit controls.
- (2) Unit shall be factory assembled and tested including leak testing of the DX coils, pressure testing of the refrigeration circuit, and run testing of the completed unit. Run test report shall be supplied with the unit in the service compartment's literature pocket.
- (3) Unit shall have decals and tags to indicate lifting and rigging, service areas and caution areas for safety and to assist service personnel.
- (4) Unit components shall be labeled, including refrigeration system components and electrical and controls components.
- (5) Installation, Operation and Maintenance manual shall be supplied within the unit.
- (6) Laminated color-coded wiring diagram shall match factory installed wiring and shall be affixed to the interior of the control compartment's hinged access door.
- (7) Unit nameplate shall be provided in two locations on the unit, affixed to the exterior of the unit and affixed to the interior of the control compartment's hinged access door.

c. Construction

- (1) All cabinet walls, access doors, and roof shall be fabricated of double wall, impact resistant, rigid polyurethane foam panels.
- (2) Unit insulation shall have a minimum thermal resistance R-value of 13. Foam insulation shall have a minimum density of 2 pounds/cubic foot and shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D-1929 for a minimum flash ignition temperature of 610°F.
- (3) Unit construction shall be double wall with G90 galvanized steel on both sides and a thermal break.
- (4) Unit shall be designed to reduce air leakage and infiltration through the cabinet. Cabinet leakage shall not exceed 1% of total airflow when tested at 3 times the minimum external static pressure provided in AHRI Standard 210/240. Panel deflection shall not exceed L/240 ratio at 125% of design static pressure, at a maximum 8 inches of positive or negative static pressure, to reduce air leakage. Deflection shall be measured at the midpoint of the panel height and width. Continuous sealing shall be included between panels and between access doors and openings to reduce air leakage. Piping and electrical conduit through cabinet panels shall include sealing to reduce air leakage.
- (5) Cabinet shall have rain break overhangs above access doors.
- (6) Access to filters, dampers, cooling coil, reheat coil, heater, compressor, and electrical and controls components shall be through hinged access doors with quarter turn, lockable handles. Full length stainless steel piano hinges shall be included on the doors.
- (7) Exterior paint finish shall be capable of withstanding at least 2,500 hours, with no visible corrosive effects, when tested in a salt spray and fog atmosphere in accordance with ASTM B 117-95 test procedure.
- (8) Units shall include double sloped 304 stainless steel drain pans.
- (9) Unit shall include lifting lugs on the top of the unit.

d. Electrical

- (1) Unit shall have a 5kAIC SCCR.
- (2) Unit shall be provided with factory installed and factory wired, non-fused disconnect switch.
- (3) Unit shall be provided with a factory installed and factory wired 115V, 12 amp GFI outlet disconnect switch in the unit control panel.
- (4) Unit shall be provided with phase and brown out protection which shuts down all motors in the unit if the electrical phases are more than 10% out of balance on voltage, the voltage is more than 10% under design voltage or on phase reversal.

e. Supply and Exhaust Fans

- (1) Unit shall include direct drive, unhooded, backward curved,

plenum fans.

- (2) Blowers and motors shall be dynamically balanced.
- (3) Motor shall be a high efficiency electrically commutated motor.

f. Cooling Coils

- (1) Evaporator Coils
 - a. Coils shall be designed for use with R-410A refrigerant and constructed of copper tubes with aluminum fins mechanically bonded to the tubes and aluminum end casings. Fin design shall be sine wave rippled.
 - b. Coil shall be standard capacity
 - c. Coils shall be helium hydrogen or helium leak tested.
 - d. Coils shall be furnished with factory installed thermostatic expansion valves.

g. Refrigeration System

- (1) Unit shall be factory charged with R-410A refrigerant.
- (2) Compressors shall be scroll type with thermal overload protection and carry a 5 year non-prorated warranty, from the date of original equipment shipment from the factory.
- (3) Compressors shall be mounted in an isolated service compartment which can be accessed without affecting unit operation. Lockable hinged compressor access doors shall be fabricated of double wall, rigid polyurethane foam injected panels to prevent the transmission of noise outside the cabinet.
- (4) Compressors shall be isolated from the base pan with the compressor manufacturer's recommended rubber vibration isolators, to reduce any transmission of noise from the compressors into the building area.
- (5) Each refrigeration circuit shall be equipped with thermostatic expansion valve type refrigerant flow control.
- (6) Each refrigeration circuit shall be equipped with automatic reset low pressure and manual reset high pressure refrigerant safety controls, Schrader type service fittings on both the high pressure and low pressure sides and a factory installed liquid line filter driers.
- (7) Unit shall include a variable capacity scroll compressor on the refrigeration circuit which shall be capable of modulation from 10-100% of its capacity.
- (8) Refrigeration circuit shall be provided with hot gas reheat coil, modulating valves, electronic controller, supply air temperature sensor and a control signal terminal which allow the unit to have a dehumidification mode of operation, which includes supply air temperature control to prevent supply air temperature swings and overcooling of the space.
- (9) Unit shall be configured as an air-source heat pump.

Refrigeration circuit shall be equipped with a factory installed liquid line filter drier with check valve, reversing valve, accumulator, and thermal expansion valves on both the indoor and outdoor coils. Reversing valve shall energize during the heat pump cooling mode of operation.

- (10) The factory installed controls shall include a 3 minute off delay timer to prevent compressor short cycling and an adjustable compressor lockout.

h. Condensers

(1) Air-Cooled Condenser

- a. Condenser fans shall be a vertical discharge, axial flow, direct drive fans.
- b. Coils shall be designed for use with R-410A refrigerant.
- c. Heat pump outdoor coil shall be constructed of copper tubes with aluminum fins mechanically bonded to the tubes and aluminum end casings. Fin design shall be sine wave rippled.
- d. Coils shall be designed for a minimum of 10°F of refrigerant sub-cooling.
- e. Coils shall be hydrogen or helium leak tested.
- f. Condenser fans shall be high efficiency electrically commutated motor driven with factory installed head pressure control module. Condenser airflow shall continuously modulate based on head pressure and cooling operation shall be allowed down to 35°F with adjustable compressor lockout.

i. Electric Heating

- (1) Unit shall include an electric heater consisting of electric heating coils, fuses and a high temperature limit switch, with capacities as shown on the plans.
- (2) Unit shall include SCR capacity control.
- (3) Electric heating coils shall be located in the reheat position downstream of the cooling coil.

j. Filters

- (1) Unit shall include 4 inch thick, pleated panel filters with an ASHRAE MERV rating of 13, upstream of the cooling coil. Unit shall also include 2 inch thick, pleated panel pre filters with an ASHRAE MERV rating of 8, upstream of the 4 inch standard filters.
- (2) Unit shall include a clogged filter switch.

k. Outside Air/Economizer

- (1) Unit shall include 0-100% economizer consisting of a motor operated outside air damper and return air damper assembly constructed of extruded aluminum, hollow core, airfoil blades with rubber edge seals and aluminum end seals. Damper blades shall be gear driven and designed to have no more than 15 CFM of leakage per sq. ft. of damper area when subjected to 2 inches w.g. air pressure differential across the damper. Unit shall include outside air opening bird screen, outside air hood with rain lip

and barometric relief dampers.

- (2) Damper assembly shall be controlled by spring return enthalpy activated fully modulating actuator.

1. Controls

(1) Factory Installed and Factory Provided Controller

- a. Unit controller shall be capable of controlling all features and options of the unit. Controller shall be factory installed in the unit controls compartment and factory tested.
 - b. Controller shall be capable of standalone operation with unit configuration, setpoint adjustment, sensor status viewing, unit alarm viewing, and occupancy scheduling available without dependence on a building management system.
 - c. Controller shall have an onboard clock and calendar functions that allow for occupancy scheduling.
 - d. Controller shall include non-volatile memory to retain all programmed values without the use of a battery, in the event of a power failure.
 - e. Variable Air Volume Controller
- (1) Unit shall utilize a variable capacity compressor system and a variable speed supply fan system to modulate cooling and airflow as required to meet space temperature cooling loads and to save operating energy. Supply fan speed shall modulate based on supply air duct static pressure. Cooling capacity shall modulate based on supply air temperature.
 - (2) With modulating hot gas reheat, unit shall modulate cooling and hot gas reheat as efficiently as possible, to meet space humidity loads and prevent supply air temperature swings and overcooling of the space.
 - (3) Unit shall modulate heating with constant airflow to meet space temperature heating loads. SCR heating capacity shall modulate based on space temperature.
 - f. Unit configuration, setpoint adjustment, sensor status viewing, unit alarm viewing, and occupancy scheduling shall be accomplished with connection to interface module with LCD screen and input keypad, interface module with touch screen, or with connection to PC with free configuration software. Controller shall be capable of connection with other factory installed and factory provided unit controllers with individual unit configuration, setpoint adjustment, sensor status viewing, and occupancy scheduling available from a single unit. Connection between unit controllers shall be with a modular cable. Controller shall be capable of communicating and integrating with LonWorks.

2.7.3 Heating and Ventilating Unit (HV-1)

a. General:

- (1) This section includes units with integral heating for outdoor installation. Integral Energy Recovery device shall be a rotary air-to-air total enthalpy wheel. Integral heat source shall be

Indirect Gas-Fired furnace. Airflow arrangement shall be Outdoor Air with Recirculation. Unit shall be constructed in a horizontal configuration

- b. Unit shall be fully assembled at the factory and consist of an insulated metal cabinet, downturn outdoor air intake with 2" aluminum mesh filter assembly, exhaust air blower, energy wheel, indirect gas furnace, phase and brownout protection, motorized dampers, motorized recirculating damper, sensors, curb assembly, service receptacle, filter assembly for intake air, supply air blower assembly, exhaust/relief blower assembly, filter assembly for exhaust air and an electrical control center. All specified components and internal accessories factory installed are tested and prepared for singlepoint high voltage connection except with electric post heat and exhaust fan only power which have dual point power.

c. Cabinet

- (1) Materials: Formed, double wall insulated metal cabinet, fabricated to permit access to internal components for maintenance.
 - (a) Unit's exterior shall be supplied from the manufacturer using G60 galvanneal steel with proprietary pre-painted material in manufacturer's standard finish color. This has been subjected to a salt spray test per ASTM-B117 and evaluated using ASTM-D714 and ASTM-D610 showing no observable signs of rust or blistering until reaching 2,500 hours.
 - (b) Internal assemblies: 22-gauge, galvanized (G90) steel except for motor supports which shall be minimum 14-gauge galvanized (G90) steel.
- (2) Cabinet Insulation: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B and erosion requirements of UL 181.
 - (a) Materials: Rigid urethane injected foam. Foam board not acceptable.
 - 1. Thickness: 2 inch (50.8 mm)
 - 2. Thermal Resistance: R13
 - 3. Thermally broken
 - 4. Meets UL94HF-1 flame requirements
 - 5. Location and application: Full coverage of entire exterior to include walls, roof of unit, unit base and doors
- (3) Roof Insulation: 2 inch fiberglass located above the 1 inch foam panel. Access panels / doors: Unit shall be equipped with insulated, hinged doors or removable access panels to provide easy access to all major components. Doors and access panels shall be fabricated of 18-gauge galvanized G90 steel or painted galvannealed steel.
- (4) Supply Air blower assemblies: Blower assembly shall consist of an electric motor and directdrive fan(s). Assembly shall be mounted on heavy gauge galvanized steel rails and further mounted on 1.125 inch thick neoprene vibration isolators. Blower motor(s) shall be capable of continuous speed modulation and controlled by a VFD.
- (5) Exhaust Air blower assemblies: Blower assembly shall consist of an

electric motor a directdrive fan. Assembly shall be mounted on heavy gauge galvanized steel rails and further mounted on 1.125 inch thick neoprene vibration isolators. Blower motor shall be capable of continuous speed modulation and controlled by a VFD.

- (6) Control panel / connections: Rooftop Ventilator units shall have an electrical control center where all high and low voltage connections are made. Control center shall be constructed to permit single-point high voltage power supply connections. Unit shall be equipped with a Unit Disconnect Switch.
- (7) Energy Wheel: Unit energy wheel shall be sized for the full volume of outdoor and exhaust air without an energy wheel bypass damper(s). Bypass damper are only acceptable during economizer operation - bypass damper cannot be used during normal operation. Energy wheel shall be of total enthalpy, rotary air-to-air type and shall be an element of a removable energy wheel cassette.
- (8) Wheel Frost Control: Modulating Wheel shall be provided for frost control of the energy wheel. Control system shall include an energy wheel VFD, outdoor air thermostat, and pressure sensor on the wheel assembly to initiate frost control sequence. On/off control based on wheel temperature not acceptable.
- (9) Indirect gas furnace:
 - (a) Shall be ETL Certified as a component of the unit.
 - (b) Shall have an integral combustion gas blower.
 - (c) Shall have fault sensors to provide fault conditions to optional digital controller or building controls.
 - (d) Shall have 4-pass tubular heat exchangers, constructed of type 409 stainless-steel. Heat exchanger tubes shall be installed on the vest plate by means of swaged assembly, welded connections are not acceptable. Heat exchanger tubes shall be supported and also permit expansion and contraction of the tubes.
 - (e) Heat exchanger shall have a 25 year extended warranty.
 - (f) Furnace control shall be 16:1 Modulating
 - (g) Shall be encased in a weather-tight metal housing with intake air vents. Large, metal door shall provide easy access to the enclosed vest plate, control circuitry, gas train, burner assembly, and exhaust blower. Indicate any other requirements such as furnace output, controls, etc.
 - (h) Shall have solid state controls permitting stand-alone operation or control by building controllers.
- (10) Phase and brownout protection: Unit shall have a factory-installed phase monitor to detect electric supply phase loss and voltage brown-out conditions. Upon detection of a fault, the monitor shall disconnect supply voltage to all motors.
- (11) Motorized dampers, Outdoor Air, AMCA Class 1A certified motorized damper of insulated low leakage type and a leakage rate of 3 CFM/ft² @ 1 in. wg. shall be factory installed.
- (12) Curb Assembly: A curb assembly made of 14-gauge galvanized steel shall be provided by the factory for assembly and installation as part of this division. The curb assembly shall provide perimeter support of the entire unit and shall have duct adapter(s) for

supply air and return air. Curb assembly shall enclose the underside of the unit and shall be sized to fit into a recess in the bottom of the unit. Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating with roofing contractor to ensure curb unit is properly flashed to provide protection against weather/moisture penetration. Contractor shall provide and install appropriate insulation for the curb assembly. Horizontal connections through unit only. Plenum curb for horizontal connections is not acceptable.

- (13) Service receptacle: 120 VAC GFCI service outlet shall be factory-provided and installed. Unit contains a 120 VAC transformer to provide power to service outlet.
- (14) Service Lights: Provide service lights mounted in the unit to be used during times of routine maintenance. The lights must be wired by others on the jobsite as they will not be wired through the unit control center.

d. Blower

- (1) Blower section construction: direct drive motor and blower shall be assembled on a 14-gauge galvanized steel platform and shall be equipped with 1.125 inch thick neoprene vibration isolation devices.
- (2) Blower assemblies: Shall be statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and horsepower.
- (3) Fan: Direct drive, airfoil plenum fan with steel or aluminum wheel statically and dynamically balanced. Prop or belt-drive fan not acceptable due to low static capabilities.
- (4) Blades: Welded aluminum or painted steel blades only.
- (5) Blower section motor source quality control: Blower performance shall be factory tested for flow rate, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed and efficiency.

e. Motors

- (1) General: Blower motors greater than 1/2 horsepower shall be "NEMA Premium" unless otherwise indicated. Compliance with EPAct minimum energy-efficiency standards for single speed ODP and TE enclosures is not acceptable. Motors shall be heavy-duty, permanently lubricated type to match the fan load and furnished at the specified voltage, phase and enclosure.

f. Unit Controls

- (1) The unit shall be constructed so that it can function as a stand-alone heating system controlled by factory-supplied controllers, thermostats and sensors, or it can be operated as a heating system controlled by a Building Management System (BMS). This unit shall be controlled by a factory-installed microprocessor programmable controller (DDC) that is connected to various optional sensors.

- (2) Unit shall incorporate a DDC controller with integral LCD screen that provides text readouts of status. DDC controller shall have a built-in keypad to permit operator to access read-out screens without the use of ancillary equipment, devices or software. DDC controllers that require the use of equipment or software that is not factory-installed in the unit are not acceptable. Alarm readouts consisting of flashing light codes are not acceptable. Ownerspecified ventilating conditions can be input by means of pushbuttons.
- (3) Operating protocol: The DDC shall be factory-programmed for LonWorks.
- (4) Variable Frequency Drive (VFD) unit shall have factory installed variable frequency drive for modulation of the supply air blower assembly, energy wheel, and exhaust air blower assembly. The VFD shall be factory-programmed for unit-specific requirements and shall not require additional field programming to operate.

g. Filters

- (1) Unit shall have permanent 2 inch aluminum mesh filters located in the outdoor air intake and shall be accessible from the exterior of the unit. MERV 8 disposable pleated filters shall be provided in the supply air stream. MERV 13 disposable pleated filters shall be provided in the supply final air stream and MERV 8 filters in the exhaust air stream.

2.8 LISTED SPECIAL GAS VENTS

- a. Description: Double-wall metal vents tested according to UL 1738 and rated for 480 deg F continuously, with positive or negative flue pressure complying with NFPA 211.
- b. Construction: Inner shell and outer jacket separated by at least a 1/2-inch airspace.
- c. Inner Shell: ASTM A959, Type 29-4C stainless steel.
- d. Outer Jacket: Stainless steel.
- e. Accessories: Tees, elbows, increasers, draft-hood connectors, terminations, adjustable roof flashings, storm collars, support assemblies, thimbles, firestop spacers, and fasteners; fabricated from similar materials and designs as vent-pipe straight sections; all listed for same assembly.

2.9 FACTORY PAINTING

Factory paint new equipment, which are not of galvanized construction. Paint with a corrosion resisting paint finish according to ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A924/A924M. Clean, phosphatize and coat internal and external ferrous metal surfaces with a paint finish which has been tested according to ASTM B117, ASTM D1654, and ASTM D3359. Submit evidence of satisfactory paint performance for a minimum of 125 hours for units to be installed indoors and 500 hours for units to be installed outdoors. Provide rating of failure at the scribe mark that is not less than 6, average creepage not greater than 1/8 inch. Provide rating of the inscribed area that is not less than 10, no failure. On units constructed of galvanized steel

that have been welded, provide a final shop docket of zinc-rich protective paint on exterior surfaces of welds or welds that have burned through from the interior according to ASTM D520 Type I.

Field paint factory painting that has been damaged prior to acceptance by the Contracting Officer in compliance with the requirements of paragraph FIELD PAINTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT.

2.10 SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES

2.10.1 Refrigerant Piping

The requirements for refrigerant piping are specified in Section 23 23 00 REFRIGERANT PIPING.

2.10.2 Condensate Drain Lines

- a. Provide and install condensate drainage for each item of equipment that generates condensate.
- b. Ensure tubing 2 inches and under is seamless copper tubing, conforming to ASTM B88, Type L (hard-drawn for all horizontal and all exposed vertical lines, annealed for concealed vertical lines). Straight lengths only, no coil lengths allowed. Ensure fittings 2 inches and under are 150-psig wsp wrought-copper solder joint fittings conforming to ASME B16.22. Ensure unions 2 inches and under are 150-psig wsp wrought-copper solder joint, conforming to ASME B16.22. Use solder, alloy Sb-5, conforming to ASTM B32.

2.10.3 Backflow Preventers

The requirements for backflow preventers are specified in Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

2.10.4 Insulation

The requirements for shop and field applied insulation are specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

2.10.5 Controls

The requirements for controls are specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS and Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

2.11 TERMINAL UNITS

2.11.1 Variable Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units

- a. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
- b. Casing: 0.034-inch steel single wall.
 - (1) Casing Lining: Adhesive attached, 1/2-inch- thick, polyurethane foam insulation complying with UL 181 erosion requirements, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E84.

- (2) Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
- (3) Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
- (4) Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
- (5) Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- c. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 - (1) Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 I-P rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
- d. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-Chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless-steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware.
 - (1) Proportional control electric coil.
 - (2) Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
 - (3) Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable).
 - (4) Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
 - (5) Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
 - (6) Fan interlock contacts.
 - (7) Magnetic contactor for each step of control (for three-phase coils).
 - (8) Electric heater shall have full modulation capacity controlled by an SCR (Silicon Controlled Rectifier).
 - (a) Provide door interlock disconnect switch.
- e. Controls: Control devices shall be compatible with temperature controls specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and shall have the following features:
 - (1) Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered closed, spring return open.
 - (2) Velocity Controller: Factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; shall maintain constant airflow dictated by thermostat within 5 percent of set point while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations up to 4-inch wg and shall have a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- a. Install materials and equipment in accordance with the requirements of the contract drawings and approved manufacturer's installation instructions. Accomplish installation by workers skilled in this type of work. Perform installation so that there is no degradation of the designed fire ratings of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors.
- b. No installation is permitted to block or otherwise impede access to any existing machine or system. Install all hinged doors to swing open a minimum of 120 degrees. Provide an area in front of all access doors that clears a minimum of 4 feet. In front of all access doors to electrical circuits, clear the area the minimum distance to energized circuits as specified in OSHA Standards, part 1910.333 (Electrical-Safety Related work practices) and an additional 4 feet.
- c. Except as otherwise indicated, install emergency switches and alarms in conspicuous locations. Mount all indicators, to include gauges, meters, and alarms in order to be easily visible by people in the area.

3.2.1 Condensate Drain Lines

Provide water seals in the condensate drain from all units. Provide water seals that are constructed of 2 tees and an appropriate U-bend with the open end of each tee plugged. Provide pipe cap or plug cleanouts where indicated. Connect drains indicated to connect to the sanitary waste system using an indirect waste fitting. Insulate air conditioner drain lines as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

3.2.2 Equipment and Installation

Provide frames and supports for tanks, compressors, pumps, valves, air handling units, fans, coils, dampers, and other similar items requiring supports. Floor mount or ceiling hang air handling units as indicated. Anchor and fasten as detailed. Set floor-mounted equipment on not less than 6 inch concrete pads or curbs doweled in place unless otherwise indicated. Make concrete foundations heavy enough to minimize the intensity of the vibrations transmitted to the piping, duct work and the surrounding structure, as recommended in writing by the equipment manufacturer. In lieu of a concrete pad foundation, build a concrete pedestal block with isolators placed between the pedestal block and the floor. Make the concrete foundation or concrete pedestal block a mass not less than three times the weight of the components to be supported. Provide the lines connected to the pump mounted on pedestal blocks with flexible connectors. Submit foundation drawings as specified in paragraph DETAIL DRAWINGS. Provide concrete for foundations as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

3.2.3 Access Panels

Install access panels for concealed valves, vents, controls, dampers, and items requiring inspection or maintenance of sufficient size, and locate them so that the concealed items are easily serviced and maintained or completely removed and replaced. Provide access panels as specified in Section 05 52 00 METAL RAILINGS.

3.2.4 Flexible Duct

Install pre-insulated flexible duct in accordance with the latest printed instructions of the manufacturer to ensure a vapor tight joint. Provide hangers, when required to suspend the duct, of the type recommended by the duct manufacturer and set at the intervals recommended.

3.2.5 Metal Ductwork

Install according to SMACNA 1966 unless otherwise indicated. Install duct supports for sheet metal ductwork according to SMACNA 1966, unless otherwise specified. Do not use friction beam clamps indicated in SMACNA 1966. Anchor risers on high velocity ducts in the center of the vertical run to allow ends of riser to move due to thermal expansion. Erect supports on the risers that allow free vertical movement of the duct. Attach supports only to structural framing members and concrete slabs. Do not anchor supports to metal decking unless a means is provided and approved for preventing the anchor from puncturing the metal decking. Where supports are required between structural framing members, provide suitable intermediate metal framing. Where C-clamps are used, provide retainer clips.

3.2.6 Insulation

Provide thickness and application of insulation materials for ductwork, piping, and equipment according to Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Externally insulate ducts and plenums up to the point where the air reaches the conditioning unit.

3.2.7 Duct Test Holes

Provide holes with closures or threaded holes with plugs in ducts and plenums as indicated or where necessary for the use of pitot tube in balancing the air system. Plug insulated duct at the duct surface, patched over with insulation and then marked to indicate location of test hole if needed for future use.

3.2.8 HVLS Fans

- a. Verify that the fan is to be installed in a location where the airfoils will be a minimum of 10 feet above the finished floor with a minimum of 3 feet of clearance to any obstructions.
- b. If the fan is to be mounted in an area where materials or equipment may be elevated into its path, ensure that the floor is marked or painted to alert personnel of the overhead location of the fans.
- c. If the building is equipped with a fire sprinkler system, verify that the placement of the fan will not interfere with correct sprinkler operation and that the fan installation complies with all national, state and local codes. For NFPA 13 compliance, fans must be installed

in the center of four adjacent sprinklers with at least 3 feet of vertical clearance between the fan and sprinkler deflectors. Fans must also be interlocked to shut down upon receiving a waterflow signal from the building's alarm system.

- d. Check to see if the intended placement of the fan is directly below any building lights or skylights. Avoid installing fans directly below a light source to prevent a strobing effect that can be caused by fan rotation.
- e. For best performance, fans must be installed with a two fan diameter minimum clearance between the center of the fan and radiant heaters or HVAC system discharges or intakes.
- f. Verify that the mounting surface will bear the operating weight and maximum torque (twisting force) of the unit. The Structural Engineer of Record (SEOR) must perform a thorough evaluation of the mounting structure and determine all final mounting requirements before the fan is installed.
- g. Install fan system as indicated in the Installation, Operation and Maintenance Manual (IOM) and contract drawings.
- h. Install fans in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 EQUIPMENT PADS

Provide equipment pads to the dimensions shown or, if not shown, to conform to the shape of each piece of equipment served with a minimum 3-inch margin around the equipment and supports. Allow equipment bases and foundations, when constructed of concrete or grout, to cure a minimum of 28 calendar days before being loaded.

3.4 CUTTING AND PATCHING

Install work in such a manner and at such time that a minimum of cutting and patching of the building structure is required. Make holes in exposed locations, in or through existing floors, by drilling and smooth by sanding. Use of a jackhammer is permitted only where specifically approved. Make holes through masonry walls to accommodate sleeves with an iron pipe masonry core saw.

3.5 CLEANING

Thoroughly clean surfaces of piping and equipment that have become covered with dirt, plaster, or other material during handling and construction before such surfaces are prepared for final finish painting or are enclosed within the building structure. Before final acceptance, clean mechanical equipment, including piping, ducting, and fixtures, and free from dirt, grease, and finger marks. When the work area is in an occupied space such as office, laboratory or warehouse protect all furniture and equipment from dirt and debris. Incorporate housekeeping for field construction work which leaves all furniture and equipment in the affected area free of construction generated dust and debris; and, all floor surfaces vacuum-swept clean.

3.6 PENETRATIONS

Provide sleeves and prepared openings for duct mains, branches, and other

penetrating items, and install during the construction of the surface to be penetrated. Cut sleeves flush with each surface. Place sleeves for round duct 15 inches and smaller. Build framed, prepared openings for round duct larger than 15 inches and square, rectangular or oval ducts. Sleeves and framed openings are also required where grilles, registers, and diffusers are installed at the openings. Provide one inch clearance between penetrating and penetrated surfaces except at grilles, registers, and diffusers. Pack spaces between sleeve or opening and duct or duct insulation with mineral fiber conforming with ASTM C553, Type 1, Class B-2.

3.6.1 Sleeves

Fabricate sleeves, except as otherwise specified or indicated, from 20 gauge thick mill galvanized sheet metal. Where sleeves are installed in bearing walls or partitions, provide black steel pipe conforming with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 20.

3.6.2 Framed Prepared Openings

Fabricate framed prepared openings from 20 gauge galvanized steel, unless otherwise indicated.

3.6.3 Insulation

Provide duct insulation in accordance with Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS continuous through sleeves and prepared openings except firewall penetrations. Terminate duct insulation at fire dampers and flexible connections. For duct handling air at or below 60 degrees F, provide insulation continuous over the damper collar and retaining angle of fire dampers, which are exposed to unconditioned air.

3.6.4 Closure Collars

Provide closure collars of a minimum 4 inches wide, unless otherwise indicated, for exposed ducts and items on each side of penetrated surface, except where equipment is installed. Install collar tight against the surface and fit snugly around the duct or insulation. Grind sharp edges smooth to prevent damage to penetrating surface. Fabricate collars for round ducts 15 inches in diameter or less from 20 gauge galvanized steel. Fabricate collars for square and rectangular ducts, or round ducts with minimum dimension over 15 inches from 18 gauge galvanized steel. Fabricate collars for square and rectangular ducts with a maximum side of 15 inches or less from 20 gauge galvanized steel. Install collars with fasteners a maximum of 6 inches on center. Attach to collars a minimum of 4 fasteners where the opening is 12 inches in diameter or less, and a minimum of 8 fasteners where the opening is 20 inches in diameter or less.

3.6.5 Firestopping

Where ducts pass through fire-rated walls, fire partitions, and fire rated chase walls, seal the penetration with fire stopping materials as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.7 FIELD PAINTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except clean to bare

metal on metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F. Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Provide aluminum or light gray finish coat.

3.7.1 Temperatures less than 120 degrees F

Immediately after cleaning, apply one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil per coat to metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F.

3.7.2 Temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F

Apply two coats of 400 degrees F heat-resisting enamel applied to a total minimum thickness of two mils to metal surfaces subject to temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F.

3.7.3 Temperatures greater than 400 degrees F

Apply two coats of 315 degrees C 600 degrees F heat-resisting paint applied to a total minimum dry film thickness of two mils to metal surfaces subject to temperatures greater than 400 degrees F.

3.7.4 Finish Painting

The requirements for finish painting of items only primed at the factory, and surfaces not specifically noted otherwise, are specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS

Provide identification tags made of brass, engraved laminated plastic, or engraved anodized aluminum, indicating service and item number on all valves and dampers. Provide tags that are 1-3/8 inch minimum diameter with stamped or engraved markings. Make indentations black for reading clarity. Attach tags to valves with No. 12 AWG 0.0808-inch diameter corrosion-resistant steel wire, copper wire, chrome-plated beaded chain or plastic straps designed for that purpose.

3.9 DUCTWORK LEAK TESTS

The requirements for ductwork leak tests are specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.

3.10 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

The requirements for testing, adjusting, and balancing are specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC. Begin testing, adjusting, and balancing only when the air supply and distribution, including controls, has been completed, with the exception of performance tests.

3.11 PERFORMANCE TESTS

Conduct performance tests as required in Section 23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC and Section 23 09 00 Instrumentation and

Control for HVAC.

3.12 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Wipe equipment clean, with no traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots. Provide temporary filters prior to startup of all fans that are operated during construction, and provide new filters after all construction dirt has been removed from the building, and the ducts, plenums, casings, and other items specified have been vacuum cleaned. Perform and document that proper "Indoor Air Quality During Construction" procedures have been followed; provide documentation showing that after construction ends, and prior to occupancy, new filters were provided and installed. Maintain system in this clean condition until final acceptance. Properly lubricate bearings with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Tighten belts to proper tension. Adjust control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment to setting indicated or directed. Adjust fans to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions. Maintain all equipment installed under the contract until close out documentation is received, the project is completed and the building has been documented as beneficially occupied.

3.13 LISTED SPECIAL GAS VENTS

3.13.1 Application

- a. Listed Special Gas Vent.

3.13.2 Installation Of Listed Vents

- a. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- b. Comply with minimum clearances from combustibles and minimum termination heights according to product listing or NFPA 211, whichever is most stringent.
- c. Seal between sections of positive-pressure vents according to manufacturer's written installation instructions, using sealants recommended by manufacturer.
- d. Support vents at intervals recommended by manufacturer to support weight of vents and all accessories, without exceeding appliance loading.
- e. Lap joints in direction of flow.

3.13.3 Cleaning

- a. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris, and repair damaged finishes.

3.14 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

3.14.1 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Submit data complying with the requirements specified in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA. Submit Data Package 3 for the items/units listed under SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

3.14.2 Operation And Maintenance Training

Conduct a training course for the members of the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. Make the training period consist of a total of 8 hours of normal working time and start it after all work specified herein is functionally completed and the Performance Tests have been approved. Conduct field instruction that covers all of the items contained in the Operation and Maintenance Manuals as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations. Submit the proposed On-site Training schedule concurrently with the Operation and Maintenance Manuals and at least 14 business days prior to conducting the training course.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 81 00

DECENTRALIZED UNITARY HVAC EQUIPMENT
05/18, CHG 1: 02/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS, applies to this section with the additions and modifications specified herein.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 700 (2016) Specifications for Fluorocarbon Refrigerants

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 15 & 34 (2013) ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems/ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants-ASHRAE Standard 34-2016

ASHRAE 52.2 (2017) Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size

ASHRAE 55 (2020; Errata 1-2 2021; Addenda A-F 2021) Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy

ASHRAE 62.1 (2019; ADD A-G 2021; Errata 3 2021) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2019) Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME BPVC SEC IX (2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing Qualifications

ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1 (2019) BPVC Section VIII-Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels Division 1

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E84 (2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1995 (2015) UL Standard for Safety Heating and Cooling Equipment

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Split-System Units; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Refrigerant Tests, Charging, and Start-Up; G, AE

System Performance Tests; G, AE

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Ozone Depleting Substances; G, AE

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Carefully investigate the plumbing, fire protection, electrical, structural and finish conditions that would affect the work to be performed and arrange such work accordingly, providing required offsets, fittings, and accessories to meet such conditions. Submit drawings consisting of:

- a. Equipment layouts which identify assembly and installation details.
- b. Plans and elevations which identify clearances required for maintenance and operation.
- c. Wiring diagrams which identify each component individually and interconnected or interlocked relationships between components.
- d. Foundation drawings, bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts prior to concrete foundation construction for equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations.
- e. Details, if piping and equipment are to be supported other than as

indicated, which include loadings and type of frames, brackets, stanchions, or other supports.

- f. Automatic temperature control diagrams and control sequences.
- g. Installation details which includes the amount of factory set superheat and corresponding refrigerant pressure/temperature.
- h. Equipment schedules

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored items from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Properly protect and care for all material both before and during installation. Submit an inventory of all the stored items. Replace any materials found to be damaged, at no additional cost to the Government. During installation, cap piping and similar openings capped to keep out dirt and other foreign matter.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

For proper Indoor Environmental Quality, maintain pressure within the building as indicated. Ventilation must meet or exceed ASHRAE 62.1 and all published addenda. Meet or exceed filter media efficiency as tested in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2. Thermal comfort must meet or exceed ASHRAE 55 .

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide equipment with the 2 year manufacturer's warranty. Provide compressors with 6 year manufacturer's warranty.

1.8 COORDINATION

- a. Coordinate size and location of refrigerant piping hanging and rating with structural support members.
- b. Coordinate sizes and locations of equipment supports penetrations with actual equipment provided and all existing conditions.

1.9 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

Refer to Section 23 03 00.00 20 MATERIALS AND METHODS for specific coordination drawings requirements that pertain to this section.

1.10 MOTORS

Refer to Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS for specific motor requirements that pertain to all motor driven equipment listed in this section.

1.11 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

Furnish motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors with their respective pieces of equipment. Furnish internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Extended voltage range motors will not be permitted. Controllers and contactors shall have a maximum of 120 volt control circuits, and shall have auxiliary contacts

for use with the controls furnished. When motors and equipment furnished are larger than sizes indicated, the cost of additional electrical service and related work shall be included under the section that specified that motor or equipment.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ENERGY EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

42 USC 8259b requires the procurement of energy efficient products in product categories covered by the Energy Star program or the Federal Energy Management Program for designated products. A list of covered product categories is available from the Federal Energy Management Web site at <http://energy.gov/eere/femp/covered-product-categories>. A list of qualified light commercial products is available at <http://www.energystar.gov/productfinder/product/certified-light-commercial-hvac/result>

Submit Material, Equipment, and Fixtures List of all supplied products within a covered product category, including manufacturer's catalog numbers, specification and drawing reference number, warranty information, fabrication site, and energy performance data. For product categories covered by the Energy Star program, submit documentation that the product is Energy Star-qualified. For product categories covered by the Federal Energy Management Program, submit documentation that the product meets or exceeds FEMP-designated efficiency requirements.

2.1.1 Air-Source Heat Pumps (ACU-5/ACCU-5)

Selected air-source heat pumps are required to meet applicable performance requirements specified by Energy Star. Information on the requirements can be found for residential models (single-phase units of 65,000 BTU/h or less) at

http://www.energystar.gov/products/specs/system/files/Central_ASHP_and_CAC_Program_Req_v4_1.pdf and for light commercial models (three-phase units of less than 240,000 BTU/h) at

http://www.energystar.gov/products/specs/system/files/lchvac_prog_req_v2_2_0.pdf.

2.2 OZONE DEPLETING SUBSTANCES

Unitary air conditioning equipment must not use CFC-based refrigerants. Refrigerant may be an approved alternative refrigerant in accordance with EPA's Significant New Alternative Policy (SNAP) listing. Provide documentation in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING paragraph OZONE DEPLETING SUBSTANCES.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

2.3.1 Split-System Air Conditioners

Provide heat pump, single- or multi-zone as indicated on drawings, split systems with variable speed inverter compressor technology. Each system shall consist of a horizontal discharge, single phase outdoor unit, and matched capacity indoor unit(s), with each indoor unit equipped with a wired wall-mounted remote controller. Provide interconnecting insulated refrigerant line sets sized per manufacturer's recommendations. Provide units with electronic expansion valves, and variable speed fans controlled to minimize energy use while maintaining stable temperature control in zone.

2.3.1.1 Outdoor Unit Design (ACCU-1; ACCU-2; ACCU-3; ACCU-4)

a. General

- (1) The outdoor unit shall be compatible with wall mounted type indoor unit. The connected indoor unit shall be of the same capacity as the outdoor unit.
- (2) The outdoor unit shall be equipped with an electronic control board that interfaces with the indoor unit to perform all necessary operation functions.
- (3) The outdoor unit shall be capable of cooling operation down to ambient temperature of 0°F for heat pump systems and -20°F for cooling only systems with wind baffle and without additional low ambient controls.
- (4) System shall operate without the need for line size.
- (5) The outdoor unit shall be completely factory assembled, piped, and wired. Each unit must be test run at the factory.
- (6) Outdoor unit sound level shall not exceed listed sounds levels.
- (7) The outdoor unit shall be pre-charged with R-410A refrigerant for 100 feet of refrigerant tubing.

b. Cabinet

- (1) The casing shall be constructed from galvanized steel plate, finished with an electrostatically applied, thermally fused acrylic or polyester powder coating for corrosion protection and have a Munsell 3Y 7.8/1.1 finish.
- (2) Mounting feet shall be provided and shall be welded to the base of the cabinet and be of sufficient size to afford reliable equipment mount and stability.
- (3) Easy access shall be afforded to all serviceable parts by means of removable panel sections.
- (4) The fan grill shall be of ABS plastic.
- (5) Cabinet mounting and construction shall be sufficient to withstand 155 MPH wind speed conditions for use in Hurricane condition areas. Mounting, base support, and other installation to meet Hurricane Code Conditions shall be by others.
- (6) The outdoor unit cabinet shall be provided with a base pan heater to aid in drainage during defrost mode.

c. Fan

- (1) Models shall be furnished with a single or dual DC fan motor.
- (2) The fan blade(s) shall be of aerodynamic design for quiet operation, and the fan motor bearings shall be permanently lubricated.

- (3) The outdoor unit shall have horizontal discharge airflow. The fan shall be mounted in front of the coil, pulling air across it from the rear and dispelling it through the front. The fan shall be provided with a raised guard to prevent external contact with moving parts.

d. Coil

- (1) The L shaped condenser coil shall be of copper tubing with flat aluminum fins to reduce debris build up and allow maximum airflow. The coil shall be protected with an integral metal guard.
- (2) Refrigerant flow from the condenser shall be controlled by means of an electronic linear expansion valve (LEV) metering device. The LEV shall be control by a microprocessor controlled step motor.
- (3) Flexible Connectors:
 - (a) Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 - (b) End Connections: Socket ends.
 - (c) Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
 - (d) Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
 - (e) Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

e. Compressor

- (1) The compressor shall be a DC twin-rotor rotary compressor with Variable Speed Inverter Drive Technology.
- (2) The compressor shall be driven by inverter circuit to control compressor speed. The compressor speed shall dynamically vary to match the room load for significantly increasing the efficiency of the system which shall result in significant energy savings.
- (3) To prevent liquid from accumulating in the compressor during the off cycle, a minimal amount of current shall be automatically, intermittently applied to the compressor motor windings to maintain sufficient heat to vaporize any refrigerant. No crankcase heater is to be used.
- (4) The outdoor unit shall have an accumulator and high pressure safety switch. The compressor shall be mounted to avoid the transmission of vibration.

f. Electrical

- (1) The electrical power of the unit shall be 208 volts single phase, 60 hertz.
- (2) Power for the indoor unit shall be supplied from the outdoor unit via Mitsubishi Electric A-Control using three (3) fourteen (14/16) gauge AWG conductors plus ground wire connecting the units.
- (3) The outdoor unit shall be controlled by the microprocessor located in the indoor unit. The control signal between the indoor

unit and the outdoor unit shall be pulse signal 24 volts DC.

- (4) The unit shall have Pulse Amplitude Modulation circuit to utilize 98% of input power supply.

2.3.1.2 Indoor Unit: Wall Mounted (ACU-1; ACU-2; ACU-3; ACU-4)

a. General:

- (1) The wall-mounted indoor unit shall be factory assembled, wired and run tested. Contained within the unit shall be all factory wiring, piping, control circuit board and fan motor. The unit shall have a self-diagnostic function, 3-minute time delay mechanism, an auto restart function, and a test run switch. Indoor unit and refrigerant pipes shall be charged with dehydrated air before shipment from the factory.

b. Cabinet:

- (1) All casings, regardless of model size, shall have the same white finish.
- (2) Multi directional drain and refrigerant piping offering four (4) directions for refrigerant piping and two (2) directions for draining are required.
- (3) There shall be a separate back plate which secures the unit firmly to the wall.

c. Fan:

- (1) The indoor fan shall be statically and dynamically balanced to run on a single motor with permanently lubricated bearings.
- (2) A manual adjustable guide vane shall be provided with the ability to change the airflow from side to side (left to right).
- (3) A motorized air sweep louver shall provide an automatic change in airflow by directing the air up and down to provide uniform air distribution.

d. Filter:

- (1) Return air shall be filtered by means removable, washable filter.

e. Coil:

- (1) The indoor coil shall be of nonferrous construction with smooth plate fins on copper tubing. The tubing shall have inner grooves for high efficiency heat exchange. All tube joints shall be brazed with phos-copper or silver alloy.
- (2) The coils shall be pressure tested at the factory.

f. Electrical:

- (1) The electrical power of the unit shall be 208 volts 1 phase, 60 hertz. The power to the indoor unit shall be supplied from the outdoor unit, using the Mitsubishi Electric A-Control system. For

A-Control, a three (3) conductor AWG-14/16 wire with ground shall provide power feed and bi-directional control transmission between the outdoor and indoor units.

- (2) For A-Control, a three (3) conductor AWG-14/16 wire with ground shall provide power feed and bi-directional control transmission between the outdoor and indoor units.

- g. Miscellaneous Equipment. Provide condensate pumps with high level unit shut down.

2.3.1.3 Indoor Unit: Ceiling-cassette (ACU-5)

a. General:

- (1) The ceiling-cassette indoor unit shall be factory assembled, wired and run tested. Contained within the unit shall be all factory wiring, piping, control circuit board and fan motor. The unit shall have a self-diagnostic function, 3-minute time delay mechanism, an auto restart function, an emergency operation function, a test run switch, and the ability to adjust airflow patterns for different ceiling heights. Indoor unit and refrigerant pipes shall be charged with dehydrated air before shipment from the factory. The unit shall be suitable for use in plenums in accordance with UL 1995 ed 4.

b. Cabinet:

- (1) The cabinet panel shall have provisions for a field installed filtered outside air intake. Branch ducting shall be allowed from cabinet. Four-way grille shall be fixed to bottom of cabinet allowing two, three or four-way blow. The grille vane angles shall be individually adjustable from a wired remote controller to customize the airflow pattern for the conditioned space

c. Fan:

- (1) The indoor fan shall be an assembly with a statically and dynamically balanced turbo fan direct driven by a single motor with permanently lubricated bearings.
- (2) The indoor unit shall include an AUTO fan setting capable of maximizing energy efficiency by adjusting the fan speed based on the difference between controller set-point and space temperature. The indoor fan shall be capable of five (5) speed settings, Low, Mid1, Mid2, High and Auto.
- (3) The indoor unit shall have an adjustable air outlet system offering 4-way airflow, 3-way airflow, or 2-way airflow.
- (4) The indoor unit fan logic must include multiple setting that can be changed to provide optimum airflow based on ceiling height and number of outlets used.
- (5) The indoor unit vanes shall have 5 fixed positions and a swing feature that shall be capable of automatically swinging the vanes up and down for uniform air distribution.
- (6) The vanes shall have an Auto-Wave selectable option in the

heating mode that shall randomly cycle the vanes up and down to evenly heat the space.

- (7) Grille shall include a factory-installed sensor, to work in conjunction with indoor unit control sequence to prevent unnecessary cooling or heating in unoccupied areas of the zone without decreasing comfort levels. Sensor must detect occupancy (not simply motion) and location of occupants by measuring size & temperature of objects within a 39' detecting diameter (based on 8.8ft mounting height) with 1,856 or more measuring points.

d. Filter:

- (1) Return air shall be filtered by means of a washable filter

e. Coil:

- (1) The indoor coil shall be of nonferrous construction with smooth plate fins on copper tubing. The tubing shall have inner grooves for high efficiency heat exchange. All tube joints shall be brazed with phos-copper or silver alloy.
- (2) The coils shall be pressure tested at the factory.
- (3) The unit shall be provided with an integral condensate lift mechanism that will be able to raise drain water 33 inches above the condensate pan.

f. Electrical:

- (1) The electrical power of the unit shall be 208 volts or 230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz. The system shall be capable of satisfactory operation within voltage limits of 198 volts to 253 volts. The power to the indoor unit shall be supplied from the outdoor unit, using the Mitsubishi Electric A-Control system.

g. System Control:

- (1) The control system shall consist of a minimum of microprocessors on each indoor and outdoor unit, interconnected by a single non-polar two-wire cable. The microprocessor located in the indoor unit shall have the capability of monitoring return air temperature and indoor coil temperature, receiving and processing commands from a wireless or wired controller, providing emergency operation and controlling the outdoor unit. The control signal between the indoor and outdoor unit shall be pulse signal 24 volts DC.
- (2) Provide indoor unit with 3-pole disconnect.
- (3) The system shall be capable of automatic restart when power is restored after power interruption. The system shall have self-diagnostics ability, including total hours of compressor run time. Diagnostics codes for indoor and outdoor units shall be displayed on the wired controller panel.

2.4 COMPONENTS

2.4.1 Refrigerant and Oil

Refrigerant must be one of the fluorocarbon gases. Refrigerants must have number designations and safety classifications in accordance with ASHRAE 15 & 34. Refrigerants must meet the requirements of AHRI 700 as a minimum. Provide a complete charge of refrigerant for the installed system as recommended by the manufacturer. Lubricating oil must be of a type and grade recommended by the manufacturer for each compressor. Where color leak indicator dye is incorporated, charge must be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation.

2.4.2 Air Filters

Provide filters to filter return air and locate inside air conditioners. Provide factory furnished washable filter..

2.4.3 Refrigerant Piping

Provide refrigerant piping in accordance with Section 23 23 00 REFRIGERANT PIPING.

2.4.4 Condensate Drain Piping

provide condensate drain piping in accordance with Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION.

2.4.5 Ductwork

Provide ductwork in accordance with Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION.

2.5 FINISHES

2.5.1 Factory Applied Insulation

Refrigeration equipment must be provided with factory installed insulation on surfaces subject to sweating including the suction line piping. Where motors are the gas-cooled type, factory installed insulation must be provided on the cold-gas inlet connection to the motor in accordance with manufacturer's standard practice. Factory insulated items installed outdoors are not required to be fire-rated. As a minimum, factory insulated items installed indoors must have a flame spread index no higher than 75 and a smoke developed index no higher than 150. Factory insulated items (no jacket) installed indoors and which are located in air plenums, in ceiling spaces, and in attic spaces must have a flame spread index no higher than 25 and a smoke developed index no higher than 50. Flame spread and smoke developed indexes must be determined by ASTM E84. Insulation must be tested in the same density and installed thickness as the material to be used in the actual construction. Material supplied by a manufacturer with a jacket must be tested as a composite material. Jackets, facings, and adhesives must have a flame spread index no higher than 25 and a smoke developed index no higher than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.6 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

All manufactured units must be inspected and tested, and documentation provided to demonstrate that each unit is in compliance with ANSI/AHRI and

UL requirements and that the minimum efficiency requirements of ASHRAE 90.1 - IP have been met.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, perform Verification of Dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Perform work in accordance with the manufacturer's published diagrams, recommendations, and equipment warranty requirements. Where equipment is specified to conform to the requirements of ASME BPVC SEC VIII D and ASME BPVC SEC IX, the design, fabrication, and installation of the system must conform to ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1 and ASME BPVC SEC IX.

3.2.1 Equipment

Provide refrigeration equipment conforming to ASHRAE 15 & 34. Provide necessary supports for all equipment, appurtenances, and pipe as required, including frames or supports for compressors, pumps, cooling towers, condensers, and similar items. Isolate compressors from the building structure. If mechanical vibration isolators are not provided, provide vibration absorbing foundations. Each foundation must include isolation units consisting of machine and floor or foundation fastenings, together with intermediate isolation material. Other floor-mounted equipment must be set on not less than a 6 inch concrete pad doweled in place. Concrete foundations for floor mounted pumps must have a mass equivalent to three times the weight of the components, pump, base plate, and motor to be supported. In lieu of concrete pad foundation, concrete pedestal block with isolators placed between the pedestal block and the floor may be provided. Concrete pedestal block must be of mass not less than three times the combined pump, motor, and base weights. Isolators must be selected and sized based on load-bearing requirements and the lowest frequency of vibration to be isolated. Isolators must limit vibration to 10-20 percent at lowest equipment rpm. Provide lines connected to pumps mounted on pedestal blocks with flexible connectors. Provide foundation drawings, bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts prior to concrete foundation construction for all equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations. Concrete for foundations must be as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. Equipment must be properly leveled, aligned, and secured in place in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.2.2 DRAIN WATER PIPING

Provide pitch and trap as per manufacturer's instructions.

3.2.3 Field Applied Insulation

Apply field applied insulation as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS, except as defined differently herein.

3.2.4 Field Painting

Painting required for surfaces not otherwise specified, and finish

painting of items only primed at the factory are specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.3 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Equipment must be wiped clean, with all traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots removed. Temporary filters must be provided for all fans that are operated during construction, and new filters must be installed after all construction dirt has been removed from the building. System must be maintained in this clean condition until final acceptance. Bearings must be properly lubricated with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Belts must be tightened to proper tension. Control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment must be adjusted to setting indicated or directed. Fans must be adjusted to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions. Testing, adjusting, and balancing must be as specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS.

3.4 TRAINING

Conduct a training course for the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. Coordinate with Contracting Officer for training period. The minimum training period must consist of a total 8 hours of normal working time and start after the system is functionally completed but prior to final acceptance tests.

- a. Submit a schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the date of the proposed training course, which identifies the date, time, and location for the training.
- b. Submit the field posted instructions, at least 2 weeks prior to construction completion, including equipment layout, wiring and control diagrams, piping, valves and control sequences, and typed condensed operation instructions. The condensed operation instructions must include preventative maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal and safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system. The posted instructions must be framed under glass or laminated plastic and be posted where indicated by the Contracting Officer.
- c. The posted instructions must cover all of the items contained in the approved operation and maintenance manuals as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations. Submit 3 complete copies of an operation manual in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets listing step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, abnormal shutdown, emergency shutdown, and normal shutdown at least 4 weeks prior to the first training course. The booklets must include the manufacturer's name, model number, and parts list. The manuals must include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, and a brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features.
- d. Submit 3 complete copies of maintenance manual in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and a trouble shooting guide. The manuals must include piping and equipment layouts and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed.

3.5 REFRIGERANT TESTS, CHARGING, AND START-UP

Split-system refrigerant piping systems must be tested and charged as specified in Section 23 23 00 REFRIGERANT PIPING. Packaged refrigerant systems which are factory charged must be checked for refrigerant and oil capacity to verify proper refrigerant levels in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Following charging, packaged systems must be tested for leaks with a halide torch or an electronic leak detector. Submit 3 copies of each test containing the information described below in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets. Individual reports must be submitted for the refrigerant system tests.

- a. The date the tests were performed.
- b. A list of equipment used, with calibration certifications.
- c. Initial test summaries.
- d. Repairs/adjustments performed.
- e. Final test results.

3.5.1 Refrigerant Leakage

If a refrigerant leak is discovered after the system has been charged, the leaking portion of the system must immediately be isolated from the remainder of the system and the refrigerant pumped into the system receiver or other suitable container. Under no circumstances must the refrigerant be discharged into the atmosphere.

3.5.2 Contractor's Responsibility

Take steps, at all times during the installation and testing of the refrigeration system, to prevent the release of refrigerants into the atmosphere. The steps must include, but not be limited to, procedures which will minimize the release of refrigerants to the atmosphere and the use of refrigerant recovery devices to remove refrigerant from the system and store the refrigerant for reuse or reclaim. At no time must more than 3 ounces of refrigerant be released to the atmosphere in any one occurrence. Any system leaks within the first year must be repaired in accordance with the requirements herein at no cost to the Government including material, labor, and refrigerant if the leak is the result of defective equipment, material, or installation.

3.6 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE TESTS

Coordinate with Contracting Officer for System Performance Tests. At a minimum, before each refrigeration system is accepted, conduct tests to demonstrate the general operating characteristics of all equipment by an approved manufacturer's start-up representative experienced in system start-up and testing, at such times as directed. Three copies of the report provided in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets. The report must document compliance with the specified performance criteria upon completion and testing of the system. The report must indicate the number of days covered by the tests and any conclusions as to the adequacy of the system.

For equipment providing heating and cooling the system performance tests must be performed during the heating and cooling seasons.

- a. Submit a schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing, for the system performance tests. The schedules must identify the proposed date, time, and location for each test. Tests

must cover a period of not less than 48 hours for each system and must demonstrate that the entire system is functioning in accordance with the drawings and specifications.

- b. Make corrections and adjustments, as necessary, tests must be re-conducted to demonstrate that the entire system is functioning as specified. Prior to acceptance, install and tighten service valve seal caps and blanks over gauge points. Replace any refrigerant lost during the system startup.
- c. If tests do not demonstrate satisfactory system performance, correct deficiencies and retest the system. Conduct tests in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Water and electricity required for the tests will be furnished by the Government. Provide all material, equipment, instruments, and personnel required for the test.
- d. Coordinate field tests with Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS. Submit 3 copies of the report provided in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets. The report must document compliance with the specified performance criteria upon completion and testing of the system. The report must indicate the number of days covered by the tests and any conclusions as to the adequacy of the system. Submit the report including the following information (where values are taken at least three different times at outside dry-bulb temperatures that are at least 5 degrees F apart):

- (1) Date and outside weather conditions.
- (2) The load on the system based on the following:
 - (a) The refrigerant used in the system.
 - (b) Condensing temperature and pressure.
 - (c) Suction temperature and pressure.
 - (d) Ambient, condensing and coolant temperatures.
 - (e) Running current, voltage and proper phase sequence for each phase of all motors.
- (3) The actual on-site setting of operating and safety controls.
- (4) Thermostatic expansion valve superheat - value as determined by field test.
- (5) High and low refrigerant temperature switch set-points
- (6) Low oil pressure switch set-point.
- (7) Defrost system timer and thermostat set-points.
- (8) Moisture content.
- (9) Capacity control set-points.
- (10) Field data and adjustments which affect unit performance and energy consumption.
- (11) Field adjustments and settings which were not permanently marked as an integral part of a device.

3.7 MAINTENANCE

3.7.1 Maintenance Service

Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations, which includes their addresses and qualifications, for support of the equipment. The service organizations must be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and be able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 82 00.00 20

TERMINAL HEATING UNITS

02/16, CHG 1: 08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A653/A653M	(2020) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM B117	(2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM D1654	(2008; R 2016; E 2017) Standard Test Method for Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens Subjected to Corrosive Environments

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 54	(2021) National Fuel Gas Code
NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code
NFPA 90A	(2021) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
NFPA 90B	(2021) Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems
NFPA 91	(2020) Standard for Exhaust Systems for Air Conveying of Vapors, Gases, Mists and Noncombustible Particulate Solids
NFPA 211	(2019) Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 441	(2016; Reprint Jul 2016) UL Standard for SafetyGas Vents
--------	--

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS, applies to this section with additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Unit Heaters; G, AE

Infrared Heaters; G, AE

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Unit Heaters, Data Package 2

Infrared Heaters, Data Package 2

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 UNIT HEATERS

Self-contained and factory assembled, axial fan with capacities expressed as Btu per hour output and cubic foot-per-minute air delivery, operating conditions, and mounting arrangements as indicated. Average fan bearing life must be minimum 200,000 hours at operating conditions. Provide fan motor with direct drive. Construct fan-guard motor mount of steel wire. Equip each heater with individually adjustable package discharge louver. Louvers may be substituted by discharge cones or diffusers.

2.1.1 Electric Unit Heater (UH-1)

UL listed; wattage, voltage, phase, and number of steps as indicated. Provide control-circuit terminals and single source of power supply. Heater 5 Kw and larger must be three-phase, with load balanced on each of the three phases. Limit leaving air temperature below 140 degrees F at 60 degrees F entering air.

2.1.1.1 Casing

Die-formed, heavy gauge steel and finished in high gloss, baked enamel. Supply air shall be drawn through a stamped louver periphery evenly across the heating element, and discharged through an outward drawn venturi. Adjustable discharge louvers shall be provided to control the direction of airflow. A large, hinged access door shall extend the width of the heater and locked in position by quarter-turn fasteners. Heater and supply wiring diagram shall be permanently attached to the inside of the access door.

2.1.1.2 Heating Element

Elements shall be high mass, all steel tubular finned type, copper brazed. Centrally located and installed in fixed element banks.

2.1.1.3 Controls

Include limit controls for thermal overheat protection of heaters. For remote thermostatic operation, provide contactor rated for 100,000 duty cycles. Provide a control transformer for 24-volt temperature control circuit for each heater.

2.1.1.4 Wiring

Completely factory-prewired to terminal strips, ready to receive branch circuit and control connections for 140 degrees F wiring to conform to the National Electric Code and Underwriter's Laboratory Standard 1278.

2.1.1.5 Motors

Motors shall be totally enclosed, all angle industrial rated. Sealed bearings to assure permanent lubrication.

2.1.1.6 Thermal Overload Protection

All heaters shall be equipped with automatic reset thermal overloads which shut down the element and motor if safe operating temperatures are exceeded.

2.2 INFRARED HEATERS, GAS-FIRED (RP-1 THROUGH RP-2)

Reflector-beam spread and operating conditions as indicated. Provide pre-wired control boxes, and reflector and duct hangers.

- a. Heaters shall be equipped with a 24-volt direct spark ignition with automatic 100% shutoff system. Power supplied to each heater shall be 120 VAC, 60 Hz.
- b. The heater controls shall include a pressure switch designed to provide complete unit shutoff in the event of combustion air or flue blockage.
- c. The heaters shall be equipped with an on-line diagnosis monitoring light system. The three lights shall monitor the power to the heater, insufficient airflow, spark ignition and the combination gas valve operation.
- d. The heater's burner shall consist of a cast iron atmospheric burner. The flame characteristics shall be highly luminous for maximum radiant heat transfer through the emitter tube wall.
- e. The heater's emitter tube shall operate at an average surface temperature of 750°F and shall be made of 16- gauge, aluminized steel. The emitter tube shall be calorized for longevity, corrosion resistance and high radiant efficiency for use in high humidity and harsh environment installations. The measured surface emissivity shall be 0.80-0.82 at operating temperature. The calorization process shall produce an emitter tube that is highly radiant absorptive (0.95) on

the interior and highly radiant emissive (0.80-0.82) on the exterior.

- f. The heaters shall operate under negative pressure (pull through system) at all times during operation to preclude the escape of combustion gases inside the building. Heaters that operate under positive pressure (push through system) will not be accepted. The heater exhaust assembly shall include a 120-volt draft inducer. The draft inducer shall be equipped with a permanently lubricated, totally enclosed, shielded, fan cooled and heavy-duty ball bearing motor. The motor shall not require maintenance or lubrication for the life of the unit. The draft inducer assembly shall be capable of rotating 90° for vertical or horizontal venting.
- g. The heaters will be CSA design certified for vertical or horizontal venting, maximum 75 feet horizontal sidewall venting and for 50 feet outside combustion inlet duct. There shall be no draft hoods. The combustion chamber shall be totally enclosed.
- h. The heaters shall utilize factory assembled, highly efficient aluminum reflectors with a reflectivity of 97.5%. The reflector ends shall be enclosed for maximum radiant heat output and minimum convection losses. The tube body and U-bend shall be totally enclosed with reflectors to maximize emitter temperature. The single reflector design shall cover the firing and exhaust legs as well as the u-bend.
- i. The heaters shall be factory assembled and tested. The heaters shall not require any field wiring or adjustments to assure maximum performance and safety. The manufacturer shall include a 36" long, 5/8" OD heavy-duty stainless steel (powder painted in yellow color) flexible gas connector as part of the heater
- j. Heaters shall operate satisfactorily in any position from horizontal to forty-five degrees (45°) from horizontal and shall be suitable for direct venting/indirect venting applications. Heaters shall be designed to operate on natural gas.
- k. Heaters shall be design certified by the American National Standard Z83.20/CSA 2.34. The manufacturer shall provide a written limited warranty covering the heavy one-piece cast iron burner for a period of ten (10) years, the emitter tube for a period of five (5) years, and all components utilized in the heater's control assembly for a period of one (1) year.

2.3 CONDUCTOR HEATERS

Operating conditions as indicated. Provide pre-wired control boxes, and 24-volt control circuit, unless described otherwise.

2.3.1 Electric Cabinet Unit Heaters (CUH-1 CUH-2)

2.3.1.1 Cabinet

Rugged 16 gauge front cover with discharge louvers in sloped top design. Pencil proof louver design for sloped outlet and front inlet grill. The finish shall be durable powder coated paint. Air flow available as bottom in - top out, or front in - top out.

2.3.1.2 Element

All steel high mass element construction with Nickel-Chromium resistance wire embedded in compacted efficient dielectric to ensure proper heat transfer. Aluminum fins mechanically bonded to steel tube allows for increased surface area and even heat transfer.

2.3.1.3 Limit Controls

Automatic reset hydraulic thermal overload covers full length of heating element and shuts down heater when safe operating temperatures are exceeded.

2.3.1.4 Wiring

Connection boxes located at the side end with 1/2 inch to 3/4 inch knockouts at back and bottom. Tubular prewired wire way with 40 Amp capacity.

2.3.1.5 Controls

Provide built in tamper resistant thermostat and disconnect.

2.3.1.6 Mounting

Heater shall be surface mounted to wall or mullion. Bottom inlet units must be mounted a minimum of 4 inches above finished floor front inlet.

2.4 NOISE, VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS

Section 23 05 48.00 20 MECHANICAL SOUND VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROL.

2.5 GAS PIPING SYSTEM AND FLUE VENT

Comply with Section 23 11 20 FACILITY GAS PIPING, for gas valves and piping. Use UL 441 flue vents and gas-vent roof jacks, of stainless steel.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

Special protection is not required for equipment that has a zinc coating conforming to ASTM A123/A123M and ASTM A653/A653M. Otherwise, protect affected equipment items by manufacturers' corrosion-inhibiting coating or paint system that has proved capable of withstanding salt-spray test in accordance with ASTM B117. Test indoor and outdoor equipment for 125 hours; test outdoor equipment used in a marine atmosphere for 500 hours. For each specimen, perform a scratch test as defined in ASTM D1654.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install equipment where indicated and as recommended by manufacturer's recommendations, NFPA 54, NFPA 90A, NFPA 90B, NFPA 91 and NFPA 211.

3.1.1 Suspensions of Equipment

Provide equipment supports including beam clamps, turnbuckles and twist links or weld-wire chains, wire ropes with rope clips and rope thimbles, threaded-eye rod hangers with lock nuts and heat-duct hangers,

threaded-eye bolts with expansion screws, brackets, platform and mounting frame, and vibration isolators. Locate equipment in such a manner that working space is available for servicing, such as vacuum pump and burner removal, access to automatic controls, and lubrication. Provide electrical isolation of dissimilar metals. Clean interior of casings or cabinets before and after completion of installation.

3.1.2 Vents

NFPA 54 and NFPA 211. Provide vents with weatherproofing flashings in accordance with Section 07 60 00 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.

3.1.3 Electrical Work

NFPA 70 and Division 26, "ELECTRICAL." When replacing original control wires, provide No. 16 AWG with minimum 105 degrees C insulation.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Administer, schedule, and conduct specified tests. Furnish personnel, instruments and equipment for such tests. Correct defects and repeat the respective inspections and tests. Conduct inspections and testing in the presence of the Contracting Officer.

3.2.1 Test Instruments and Apparatus

Provide instruments and apparatus currently certified as being accurate to within one percent of their full scale. Use gages with a maximum scale between 1 1/2 and 2 times test pressure.

3.2.2 Field Inspection

Prior to initial operation, inspect equipment installation to ensure that indicated and specified requirements have been met.

3.2.3 Field Tests

3.2.3.1 Fuel Piping Pressure Tests

Hydrostatically test fuel oil piping at 1 1/2 times maximum working pressure, for 24 hours.

3.2.3.2 Fire Tests for Nonelectrical Heating Equipment

Test combustion controls and equipment with specified fuel at 100 percent full rated load. During tests, verify proper operation of controls. Adjust burners for maximum efficiency using Orsat or similar apparatus. Maintain firing for at least four hours, and where high-low-off combustion controls are provided, operate the heating equipment for one hour at low fire and 3 hours at high fire. For acceptable combustion efficiency, allow maximum 4.5 percent carbon dioxide in flue gases.

3.2.3.3 Insulation-Resistance Tests for Electrical Equipment

At the completion of wiring, test 600 volt wiring to verify that no short circuits exist before or after the attachment of electrical heating equipment to the power source. Make tests with an instrument which applies a voltage of approximately 500 volts for a direct reading of insulation resistance.

3.2.3.4 Operational Tests

After completing fire tests and insulation-resistance tests, operate equipment continuously under varying load conditions to verify functioning of combustion controls, electrical controls, flame safeguard controls, safety interlocks, and specified operating sequence. Run each test for a minimum period of one hour.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 25 05 11.01

CYBERSECURITY FOR LOW IMPACT DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) FACILITY-RELATED
CONTROL SYSTEMS
05/21

PART 1 GENERAL

Many subparts in this Section contain text in curly braces ("{" and "}") indicating which cybersecurity control and control correlation identifier (CCI) the requirements of the subpart relate to. The text inside these curly braces is for Government reference only and enables coordination of the requirements of this Section with the RMF process throughout the design and construction process. Text in curly braces are not contractor requirements.

This Section refers to Security Requirements Guide (SRGs) and Security Technical Implementation Guide (STIGs). STIGs and SRGs are available online at the Information Assurance Support Environment (IASE) website at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/downloads/> and an SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool is available at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/>. Not all control system components have applicable STIGs or SRGs. The "Control Systems SRG" does not apply to work performed under this Section; all requirements within this section to apply applicable SRGs DO NOT include the "Control Systems SRG".

1.1 CONTROL SYSTEM APPLICABILITY

There are multiple versions of this Section associated with this project. Different versions have requirements applicable to different control systems. This specific Section applies only to the following control systems: Direct Digital Control (DDC).

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section does not contain sufficient requirements to procure a control system and must be used in conjunction with other Sections which specify control systems. This Section adds cybersecurity requirements to the control systems specified in other Sections, and as these requirements are conditioned on the control system being provided, there may be requirements in this Section that will not apply to this project. All Sections containing facility-related control systems or control system components are related to the requirements of this Section. Review all specification sections to determine related requirements.

In cases where a requirement is specified in both this Section and in another Section, the more stringent requirement must be met. In cases where a requirement in this Section conflicts with the requirements of another Section such that both requirements cannot be met at the same time, request direction from the Contracting Officer Representative to determine which requirement applies to the project.

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 802.1x (2010) Local and Metropolitan Area
Networks - Port Based Network Access
Control

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST FIPS 140-2 (2001) Security Requirements for
Cryptographic Modules

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DODI 8551.01 (2014) Ports, Protocols, and Services
Management (PPSM)

DTM 08-060 (2008) Policy on Use of Department of
Defense (DoD) Information Systems -
Standard Consent Banner and User Agreement

1.4 DEFINITIONS

1.4.1 Administrator Account

An administrator account is an account with full permissions to a device, application, or operating system, including the ability to create and modify other user accounts.

Note that the operating system Administrator Account may be different than Administrator Accounts for applications hosted on that operating system. Also, most controllers will not have any support for accounts and will therefore not have an 'Administrator Account'.

1.4.2 Computer

A computer is one of the following:

- a. a device running a non-embedded desktop or server version of Microsoft Windows
- b. a device running a non-embedded version of MacOS
- c. a device running a non-embedded version of Linux
- d. a device running a version or derivative of the Android Operating System, where Android is considered separate from Linux
- e. a device running a version of Apple iOS

Unless otherwise indicated or clear from context use of the word "device" in this Section includes computers.

1.4.3 Controller

A device other than a computer or Ethernet switch.

1.4.4 Mission Space

A device or media is in mission space if physical access to the device or media is controlled by the organization served by the device. For example, a VAV box controller in a suspended ceiling is in mission space if the VAV box serves that room; an electrical switchgear in an electrical room or an AHU in a mechanical room or on a rooftop may still be considered to be in mission space if the organization (mission) served by that switchgear or AHU controls access to the electrical room, mechanical room or rooftop.

1.4.5 Network

A network is a group of two or more devices that can communicate using a network protocol. Network protocols must provide a method for addressing devices on the network; a communication method that does not provide an addressing scheme is not a networked form of communication. Devices that communicate using a method of communication that does not support device addressing are not using a network.

1.4.6 Network Connected

A component is network connected (or "connected to a network") only when the device has a network transceiver which is directly connected to the network and implements the network protocol. A device lacking a network transceiver (and accompanying protocol implementation) can never be considered network connected. Note that (unlike many IT definitions of "Network Connected") a device connected to a non-IP network is still considered network connected (an IP connection or IP address is not required for a device to be network connected).

1.4.6.1 Wireless Network Connected

Any device that supports wireless network communication is network connected to a wireless network, regardless of whether the device is communicating using wireless. Unless physically disabled, devices with wireless transceivers support wireless, it is not sufficient to disable the wireless in software.

1.4.7 Network Media

The thing that provides the communication channel between the devices on a network. Typically wire, but might include wireless, fiber optic, or even power line (some network protocols allow sending network signals over power wiring).

1.4.8 User Account Support Levels

The support for user accounts is categorized in this Section as one of three levels:

1.4.8.1 FULLY Supported

Device supports configurable individual accounts. Accounts can be

created, deleted, modified, etc. Privileges can be assigned to accounts. These devices support user-based (as opposed to role-based) authentication.

1.4.8.2 MINIMALLY Supported

Device supports a small, fixed number of accounts (perhaps only one). Accounts cannot be modified. A device with only a "User" and an "Administrator" account would fit this category. Similarly, a device with two PINs for logon - one for restricted and one for unrestricted rights would fit here (in other words, the accounts do not have to be the traditional "username and password" structure). These devices typically only support role-based authentication.

Examples of devices which MINIMALLY support accounts are a) a variable frequency drive with a single account which requires a PIN for access to configuration; and b) a room lighting control touchpad interface that has a single account.

1.4.8.3 NOT Supported

Device does not support any Access Enforcement therefore the whole concept of "account" is meaningless.

1.4.9 Manual Local Input

Manual Local Inputs are system analog or binary inputs that are adjustable by a person but are, by intrinsic hardware design, very limited in potential capabilities. Manual Local Inputs do not have touch screens or full keyboards, but may have a few buttons or dials to allow input. Manual Local Inputs do not have full graphic screens or dot-matrix displays, but may have simple lights (LEDs) or 7-segment displays. Manual Local Inputs do not have any sort of menu structure, each button has a single well-defined function.

Examples of Manual Local Inputs are H-O-A switches, simple thermostats, and disconnect switches.

1.4.10 Card Reader

A card reader is an input/output device whose primary function is to assist in two-factor authentication. A card reader must have an interface to read data from a card and may be able to write data to a card. A card reader may have a means (such as buttons, keypad, touchscreen, etc.) for a user to input a PIN or password, as well as a limited display.

1.4.11 User Interface

A User Interface (UI) is something other than a Manual Local Input or Card Reader that allows a person to interact with the system or device. Note that while a Card Reader is not by itself a User Interface, a User Interface may contain a Card Reader in order for it to authenticate its user. Within control systems, there are a wide range of User Interfaces.

Two important distinctions are 1) whether the user interface is Local or Remote, and 2) the effective capabilities of the User Interface to alter data, which is the "privilege" of the user interface (where effective privilege available to a specific user at a specific user interface is the combination of the greatest privilege offered by the user interface and the specific account the user is logged into).

1.4.11.1 Local User Interface

A Local User Interface is a user interface where the physical hardware the user interacts with (keyboard, buttons, display, etc.) is physically part of the device being affected. All of the relevant characteristics of the user interface are embodied within a single device.

Note that a Local UI may be able to access data in a different device, Local versus Remote in this context refers to the user interface itself; the capability to access data in a different device is covered under "Full User Interface".

1.4.11.2 Remote User Interface

A Remote User Interface implements a Client/Server model where the physical hardware the user interacts with (Client) is physically distinct from the device being affected (Server). Most or all of the security and functionality characteristics of the user interface are defined by the Server, not the Client. The Client and Server communicate via a network connection. A common example of a remote user interface is a web-based interface where the browser (client) is generally on different hardware than the web server (server). A Remote UI remains a Remote UI even if the user happens to be at a Client on the same hardware as the Server. What is important is that a) the Client may be on different hardware than the Server and b) the majority of the security and functional characteristics of the interface are defined at the Server.

Note that this definition of "remote" is consistent with that generally used in the control industry but is not aligned with the NIST 800-53 definition of "Remote", which refers to "outside the system". The term "Remote" here better aligns with the NIST 800-53 definition of "Network" (remote from within the system) Access.

1.4.11.3 Types of User Interface (by capability)

User interfaces are also categorized by their capabilities as being Read Only, Limited, or Full.

1.4.11.3.1 Read-Only User Interface

A Read Only User Interface (also referred to as a View-Only User Interface) is a user interface that only allows for reading data, it does not allow (have the capability to) modify data. A Read Only User Interface may be either Local or Remote. A User Interface that is configured to be Read Only (by some other means than the interface itself, such as using configuration software on a laptop) is a Read-Only Interface. Note a Read Only User Interface may have buttons (or touch screen, etc.) allowing the user to navigate through the presentation of data.

Examples of a Read Only User Interfaces are a) a publicly viewable "energy dashboard" showing weather data and energy usage within a building and b) digital wayfinding signage.

1.4.11.3.2 Limited User Interface

A Limited User Interface is a user interface that - by design - can only

alter information local to the user interface. Note that the determination of "alter" includes only direct interactions, it explicitly excludes interactions that might occur as secondary effects. For example, an interface changing the flow setpoint in a pump controller is a direct interaction, the subsequent change in flow (as well as any subsequent downstream changes in valve position) are not direct interactions.

Two examples of LIMITED UIs are: a) a variable speed drive has a Limited Local User Interface which allows the user to change properties within the drive, but does not allow affecting things outside the drive; and b) a typical home WiFi Router has a Limited Remote User Interface which allows configuration of the Router, but does not allow direct interaction with other devices.

1.4.11.3.3 Full User Interface

A Full User Interface can alter information in devices outside the device with the user interface. For example, a typical Local Display Panel is a Full Local User Interface while a browser-based front end is a Full Remote User Interface.

1.4.11.3.4 View-Only User Interface

See Read-Only User Interface

1.4.11.4 Other User Interface Terminology

In addition to defining whether a user interface is a Hardware Limited, Read-Only, Limited or Full, and whether it is Local or Remote, user interfaces are classified by whether they are writable or privileged.

1.4.11.4.1 Writable User Interface

Any User Interface that is not Read-Only is Writable. (Limited User Interfaces and Full User Interfaces are both writable user interfaces (as they are capable of changing a value)).

1.4.11.4.2 Privileged User Interface

A Privileged UI is a UI that has sufficient capabilities or functionality that it requires specific cybersecurity measures to be put in place to limit its unauthorized use. Ultimately, whether a specific user interface is considered a Privileged User Interface must be determined by usage. Unless otherwise specified, user interfaces can be determined to be privileged or not using the following:

- a. Read-Only User Interfaces are not privileged user interfaces.
- b. Full User Interfaces are privileged user interfaces.
- c. User interfaces that allow for configuration of auditing or allows for modification or deletion of audit logs are privileged user interface.
- d. User interfaces that allow for reprogramming a network connected device is a privileged user interface.
- e. Except as specified above, a Limited User Interface must be determined to be privileged or not based on the specific capabilities and use case of the user interface. In general however, user interfaces that

do not offer significant capabilities above and beyond those available at that location via other means (e.g. such as a disconnect switch, breaker, or hand-off-auto switch, or physical attack) are not privileged.

1.4.12 Wireless Network

Any network that communicates without using wires or fiber optics as the communication media. Wireless networks include: WiFi, Bluetooth, ZigBee, cellular, satellite, 900 MHz radio, 2.4 GHz, free space optical, point-to-point laser, and IR.

1.4.13 Wired Broadcast Network

Wired Broadcast Networks are any network, such as powerline carrier networks and modem (wired telephony), that use wire-based technologies where there is not a clearly defined boundary for signal propagation.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.5.1 Points of Contact

Coordinate with the following Points of Contact as indicated in this Section and as required. Not all projects will require coordination with all Points of Contact. When coordination is required and no Point of Contact is indicated, coordinate with the System Owner.

- a. Government Computer Access Point of Contact: System Owner
- b. HTTPS Certificate Point of Contact: System Owner
- c. Email Address Point of Contact: System Owner
- d. Password Point of Contact: System Owner
- e. Mobile Code Point of Contact: System Owner
- f. PKI Infrastructure Point of Contact: System Owner

1.5.2 Coordination

Coordinate the execution of this Section with the execution of all other Sections related to control systems as indicated in the paragraph RELATED REQUIREMENTS. Items that must be considered when coordinating project efforts include but are not limited to:

- a. If requesting permission for alternate account lock permissions, the Device Account Lock Exception Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.
- b. If requesting permission for the use of a device with multiple physical connections to IP networks, the Multiple IP Connection Device Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.
- c. The Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule must be coordinated with other work that will be interconnected to, and interconnections must be approved by the Government before relying on them for system functionality.

- d. Cybersecurity testing support must be coordinated across control systems and with the Government cybersecurity testing schedule.
- e. Passwords must be coordinated with the indicated contact for the project site.
- f. If applicable, HTTPS web server certificates must be obtained from the indicated HTTPS Certificate Point of Contact.
- g. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must be provided for each contractor using contractor owned computers.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Device Account Lock Exception Request; G

Multiple Ethernet Connection Device Request; G

Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule; G

Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Network Communication Report; G

Cybersecurity Riser Diagram; G

SD-03 Product Data

Control System Cybersecurity Documentation; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures; G

Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report; G

SD-07 Certificates

Software Licenses; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Confidential Password Report; G

Enclosure Keys; G

Software and Configuration Backups; G

STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report; G

Control System Inventory Report; G

1.7 QUALITY CONTROL

1.7.1 Certifications and Qualifications

For the Direct Digital Control (DDC) control system:

1.7.1.1 Control System Cybersecurity Subject Matter Expert

The individual will oversee all work within this specification. This position requires that the individual currently meets Information Assurance Manager Level II Certification in accordance with DoDD 8140 Cyberspace Workforce Management.

Individuals for this position should have experience securing DoD systems and with Risk Management Framework. Control System Experience is highly desirable.

Resumes should be submitted to the Government within 14 days after notice to proceed. All certifications to include computing environment must be in effect prior to beginning work.

1.7.1.2 Computing Environment (System Administrator) and Networking Personnel

The individual will complete all work at the computing level environment. This position requires that the individual meets Information Assurance Technical Level II Certification in accordance with DoDD 8140 Cyberspace Workforce Management.

Individuals for this position should have experience securing DoD systems, Security Information Technical Guides, associated tools and practices. Control System Experience is highly desirable.

Resumes should be submitted to the Government within 14 days after notice to proceed. All certifications to include computing environment must be in effect prior to beginning work.

1.7.1.3 Additional Statement

Control System Cybersecurity Subject Matter Expert and Computing Environment and Network Personnel can serve across the contract.

1.8 CYBERSECURITY DOCUMENTATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-7; CCI-003071}

1.8.1 Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report

For each model of network connected or network infrastructure device, use the DISA SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool (available at

<https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/> to identify applicable STIGs or SRGs and provide a report indicating applicable STIGs and SRGs for each model.

1.8.2 Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to CA-3(b), PL-8, SC-7(9), SC-7(11); CCI-000258, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075, CCI-002398, CCI-002399, CCI-002401, CCI-002402, CCI-002403.}

Provide a completed Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule documenting network connections between the installed system and other systems. Provide the following information for each device directly communicating between systems: Device Identifier, Device Description, Transport layer Protocol, Network Address, Port (if applicable), MAC (Layer 2) address (if applicable), Media, Application Protocol, Service (if applicable), Descriptive Purpose of communication. For communication with other authorized systems also provide the Foreign Destination and POC for Destination. If other control system Sections used on this project include submittals documenting this information, provide copies of those submittals to meet this requirement.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule as an editable Microsoft Excel file (a template Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule in Excel format is available at

<https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1>

1.8.3 Network Communication Report

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CA-9, PL-8; CCI-003075; CCI-002102, CCI-002103, CCI-002104, CCI-002105, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075 and also the submittal requirements associated with CM-6, CM-7, SC-8 and SC-41 including CM-7(3), CCI-000388.}

Provide a network communication report. For each networked device, document the communication characteristics of the device including communication protocols, services used, encryption employed, and a general description of what information is communicated over the network. For each device using IP, document all TCP and UDP ports used. For non-IP communications, document communication protocol and media used. If other control system Sections used on this project include submittals documenting this information, provide copies of those submittals to meet this requirement.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Network Communication Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

1.8.4 Control System Inventory Report

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CM-8(a), SI-17, IA-3; CCI-000389, CCI-000392, CCI-000398, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775, CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958}

Provide a Control System Inventory report using the Inventory Spreadsheet listed under this Section at

<https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1>

documenting all networked devices, including network infrastructure devices. For each device provide all applicable information for which

there is a field on the spreadsheet in accordance with the instructions on the spreadsheet.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Control System Inventory Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

1.8.5 Software and Configuration Backups

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-10; CCI-000550, CCI-000551, CCI-000552}

For each computer or control system device on which software is installed or a configuration file is modified under this project, provide a recovery image of the final as-built computer and device. This image, or configuration file, must allow for bare-metal restore such that restoration of the image is sufficient to restore system operation to the imaged state without the need for re-installation or re-configuration of software. If additional user permissions are required to meet this requirement, coordinate the creation of the image with the identified Government Computer Access Point of Contact.

For all ethernet switches provide a backup of the switch configuration. For all controllers, provide a backup of the controller configuration and the source code for all loaded application programs (all software that is not common to every controller of the same manufacturer and model).

If any or all of these are provided under another Section, provide documentation indicating this and referencing those submittals.

1.8.6 Cybersecurity Riser Diagram

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-2(a), PL-8; CCI-003051, CCI-003053, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075}

Provide a cybersecurity riser diagram of the complete control system including all network and device hardware. If the control system specifications require a riser diagram submittal, provide a copy of that submittal as the cybersecurity riser diagram. Otherwise, provide a riser diagram in one-line format.

1.8.7 STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report

For every component (device or software) with an applicable STIG or SRG in the Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report, provide a result report documenting compliance with the STIG or SRG requirements. For components which are scannable by the SCAP (security content automation protocol) tool (available online at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/scap>), provide the SCAP report and raw scan results.

For every component (device or software) with manufacturer provided cybersecurity documentation, procedure, or method for secure configuration or installation, provide a report documenting how the component was configured and any deviation from the manufacturer instructions.

1.8.8 Control System Cybersecurity Documentation

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-5 (a),(b),(c); CCIs: CCI-003124, CCI-003125, CCI-003126, CCI-003127, CCI-003128, CCI-003129, CCI-003130, CCI-003131}

Provide a Control System Cybersecurity Documentation submittal containing the indicated information for each device and software application.

1.8.8.1 Software Applications

For all software applications running on computers provide:

- a. administrator documentation that describes secure configuration of the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. administrator documentation that describes secure installation of the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003125}
- c. administrator documentation that describes secure operation of the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- d. administrator documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003127}
- e. administrator documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003128}
- f. user documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the software and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003129}
- g. user documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the software in a more secure manner {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003130}
- h. user documentation that describes user responsibilities in maintaining the security of the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003131}

1.8.8.2 For HVAC Control System Devices

1.8.8.2.1 HVAC Control System Devices FULLY Supporting User Accounts

For all HVAC Control System Devices which FULLY support user accounts, provide:

- a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. Documentation that describes secure operation of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- c. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device {For Government Reference Only:

relates to CCI-003127}

- d. Documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003128}
- e. Documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the device and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms; or a specific indication that there are no user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003129}
- f. Documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003130}

1.8.8.2.2 All Other HVAC Control System Devices

For all HVAC Control System Devices which do not FULLY support user accounts, provide:

- a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device; or a specific indication that there are no secure configuration steps that apply {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device; or a specific indication that there are no security functions or mechanisms in the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003127}
- c. For devices which include a user interface, documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003130}

1.8.8.3 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Control System Cybersecurity Documentation requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section, provide:

- a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. Documentation that describes secure installation of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003125}
- c. Documentation that describes secure operation of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- d. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003127}
- e. Documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003128}
- f. Documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or

mechanisms in the device and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003129}

- g. Documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003130}
- h. Documentation that describes user responsibilities in maintaining the security of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003131}

1.9 SOFTWARE LICENSING

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SI-2(a), SI-2(c), SI-7(14); CCI-001227, CCI-002605, CCI-002737}

For all software provided that has not already been licensed to the government or project site, provide a license to the project site for a period of no less than 5 years, and the license must also include the following software updates:

- a. Security and bug-fix patches issued by the software manufacturer.
- b. Security patches to address any vulnerability identified in the National Vulnerability Database at <http://nvd.nist.gov> with a Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) severity rating of MEDIUM or higher.

Provide a single Software Licenses submittal with documentation of the software licenses for all software provided

1.10 CYBERSECURITY DURING CONSTRUCTION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-18, SA-3; CCI-000258}

In addition to the control system cybersecurity requirements indicated in this section, meet following requirement throughout the construction process.

1.10.1 Contractor Computer Equipment

Contractor owned computers may be used for construction. Contractor computers connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

1.10.1.1 Operating System

The operating system must be an operating system currently supported by the manufacturer of the operating system. The operating system must be current on security patches and operating system manufacturer required updates.

1.10.1.2 Anti-Malware Software

The computer must run anti-malware software from a reputable software manufacturer. Anti-malware software must be a version currently supported

by the software manufacturer, must be current on all patches and updates, and must use the latest definitions file. Computers used on this project must be scanned using the installed software at least once per day.

1.10.1.3 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for computers, applications, and web-based applications supporting passwords must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum of eight characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.10.1.4 User-Based Authentication

Each user must have a unique account; sharing of a single account between multiple users is prohibited.

1.10.1.5 Demonstration of Compliance

The Government has the right to require demonstration of computer compliance with these requirements at any time during the project.

1.10.1.6 Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company using contractor owned computers. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1> Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company.

1.10.2 Temporary IP Networks

Temporary contractor-installed IP networks may be used during construction. When used, temporary contractor-installed IP networks connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

1.10.2.1 Network Boundaries and Connections

The network must not extend outside the project site and must not connect to any IP network other than those specifically provided or furnished for this project. Any and all access to the network from outside the project site is prohibited.

1.10.3 Government Access to Network

Government personnel must be allowed to have complete and immediate access to the network at any time in order to verify compliance with this specification.

1.10.4 Temporary Wireless IP Networks

Wireless IP Networks are not allowed.

1.10.5 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for all network devices and network access must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum 8 characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.10.6 Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company implementing a temporary IP network. Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1> Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company. If no temporary IP networks will be used, provide a single copy of the Statement indicating this.

1.11 CYBERSECURITY DURING WARRANTY PERIOD

All work performed on the control system after acceptance must be performed using Government Furnished Equipment or equipment specifically and individually approved by the Government.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

All products used on this project must meet the indicated requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project.

2.1 ETHERNET SWITCH

Provide Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) Layer 2 Ethernet switches with the following capabilities, and with an interface to support switch configuration for these capabilities:

2.1.1 Required Functionality

Switches must:

- a. Copper Ethernet ports must auto negotiate for 10, 100 and 1000 megabits-per-second links.
- b. Be capable of implementing port level access control by MAC address and limit the number of MAC addresses to one MAC address per port.
- c. For LOW Impact Systems, be capable of implementing per-port access control lists (ACLs) where the list can be filtered by source and destination IP addresses, and by source and destination UDP or TCP ports.

2.1.2 Configuration Requirements

Switches must:

- a. Support configuration save and restore.
- b. Support both manual IP address assignment and acquisition of a dynamic IP address via Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).

- c. Be capable of limiting access for configuration to one or more of: a web interface using HTTPS, a command line interface using SSH, or an SNMP connection using SNMP version 3 or later.

2.2 DAISY CHAIN IP CONTROLLERS

Controllers used as Daisy Chain IP Controllers must be IP controllers with exactly two Ethernet network connections and basic built-in switch capabilities to allow implementation of an Ethernet network in a daisy chain architecture. Switches incorporated by Daisy Chain IP Controllers are not required to meet the requirements for Ethernet Switches as defined in this Section.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CYBERSECURITY HARDENING AND CONFIGURATION GUIDES

Install, configure, and harden all hardware and software furnished on this project in accordance with manufacturer provided documentation, procedures, or methods for secure configuration or installation. Do not implement specific hardening actions if that action would conflict with required functionality or another requirement of this Section.

3.2 NETWORK REQUIREMENTS

3.2.1 Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-18, AC-18(3); CCI-001438, CCI-001439, CCI-002323, CCI-001441, CCI-002252}

Unless explicitly authorized by the Government, do not use any wireless or wired broadcast communication.

3.2.1.1 Wireless and Wired Broadcast IP Communications

Do not install wireless or wired broadcast IP networks, including: do not install a wireless access point; do not install or configure an ad-hoc wireless network; do not install or configure a WiFi Direct communication.

When explicitly authorized by the Government, wireless IP communication may be used to communicate with an existing wireless network.

3.2.1.2 Non-IP Wireless Communication

For LOW Impact Systems: When non-IP wireless communication is explicitly authorized by the Government, use the maximum level of encryption supported by the specific protocol employed and select signal strength and radiated power to the minimum necessary for reliable communication.

3.2.2 Non-IP Control Networks

When control system specifications require particular communication protocols, use only those communication protocols and only as specified. Do not implement any other communication protocol.

When control system specifications do not indicate requirements for communication protocols, use only those protocols required for operation of the system as specified.

3.2.3 IP Control Networks

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to CM-6(a), CM-7(a), CM-7(b), CM-7(1)(b), SC-41; CCI-001588, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-000381, CCI-000382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546.}

IP Networks must be Ethernet networks and must use switches which are Ethernet Switches or Daisy Chain IP Controllers as defined in this Section. Do not use nonsecure functions, ports, protocols and services as defined in DODI 8551.01 unless those ports, protocols and services are specifically required by the control system specifications or otherwise specifically authorized by the Government. Do not use ports, protocols and services that are not specified in the control system specifications or required for operation of the control system.

3.2.3.1 IP Network Routers

Do not install any device that performs IP routing.

3.2.3.2 IP Devices With Multiple Ethernet Connection

Except for Ethernet Switches and Daisy Chain IP Controllers, devices must not have more than one Ethernet connection to IP networks unless doing so is required by the project specifications and the specific application is approved. If a device with Multiple Ethernet Connections to IP networks is required, provide a Multiple Ethernet Connection Device Request using the Multiple Ethernet Connection Device Request Template at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1> to request approval for each device. If a device with Multiple Ethernet Connections to IP networks is not required, instead provide a document stating that no approval is being requested.

3.2.4 Cryptographic Protection

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to IA-2(9), IA-3(1), SC-8, SC-13, SC-23(1), SC-23(3); CCI-001942, CCI-001959, CCI-001967, CCI-002418, CCI-002449, CCI-002450, CCI-001185, CCI-001188, CCI-001664.}

All remote user interfaces must use HTTPS for all traffic between the user interface client and user interface server. For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to cryptographic protection (CCI-002450), comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs. Ensure that IP network traffic is encrypted using NSA-approved cryptography; provision of digital signatures and hashing, and FIPS-validated cryptography.

3.2.5 Device Identification and Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-3; CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958.}

All computers must support IEEE 802.1x for device authentication to the network.

3.2.5.1 For HVAC Control System Devices

Devices using HTTP as a control protocol must use HTTPS instead. Devices using Ethernet must support IEEE 802.1x.

3.2.5.2 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Device Identification and Authentication requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section: Devices using Ethernet must support IEEE 802.1x. Devices using HTTP as a control protocol must use HTTPS instead.

3.2.6 Cryptographic Module Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-7; CCI-000803}

For devices (including but not limited to NIST FIPS 140-2 compliant radios) that have STIG/SRGs related to cryptographic module authentication (CCI-000803), comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.

3.3 ACCESS CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

3.3.1 User Accounts

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-2(a), AC-3, AC-6(1), AC-6(10), AC-6(2), AC-6(9), CM-11(2), and IA-2; CCI-002110, CCI-000213, CCI-002235, CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-002235, CCI-000039, CCI-001419, CCI-002234, CCI-001812, and CCI-000764.}

Any user interface supporting user accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must limit access according to specified limitations for each account. Install and configure any device having a STIG or SRG in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

All user interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement user-based authentication where each account is uniquely assigned to a specific user. User interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement at least three (3) levels of user account privilege including: 1) an account with read-only permissions 2) an account with full permissions including account creation and modification and 3) an account with greater permissions than read-only but without account creation and modification.

3.3.1.1 Computers

All computer operating systems must FULLY support user accounts and implement accounts for access. Each control system software application not supporting accounts and running on a computer must be installed such that use of the software is restricted by the computer operating system to specific users.

Applications running on computers shall not require the user be logged in to a computer operating system administrator account for normal operation. It is permissible to require the computer operating system administrator account for initial application installation and configuration.

3.3.1.2 Controllers

For user interfaces provided by controllers, provide access control in accordance with the User Interface Requirements table for the applicable control system and user interface type.

- a. For table entries of "NA": NA means Not Applicable, there are no interfaces in this category.
- b. For table entries of "None Required": The user interface is not required to support user accounts.
- c. For table entries of "MINIMALLY": The user interface must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.
- d. For table entries of "FULLY": The user interface must at FULLY support user accounts.
- e. For table entries of "KEY": The user interface must have physical security in the form of either a key lock on the interface itself or be furnished inside a locked enclosure. Where this is required for a read only interface, this lock must prevent viewing of data on the interface; for other interfaces, this lock must prevent using the interface to alter data.
- f. For table entries of "Physical Security": For Local FULL interfaces, the interface must be located inside mission space. For Local Limited (not FULL) interfaces, the user interface must either a) be located within mission space or b) be protected by physical security at least as good as the control devices (and equipment controlled by the control devices) affected by the interface. For purposes of this requirement, 'affected' includes controllers with data that can be directly altered by the interface, as well as mechanical and/or electrical equipment directly controlled by those controllers, but does not include other interactions.
- g. Entries of the form "X and Y" must meet both the requirement indicated for X and the requirement indicated for Y. For example, an entry of "MINIMALLY and Physical Security" indicates the user interface must both MINIMALLY support accounts and have physical security.
- h. Entries of the form "X or Y" must meet either the requirement indicated for X or the requirement indicated for Y.

3.3.1.2.1 HVAC Control Systems

User Interface Requirements for LOW Impact HVAC Control Systems	
<u>User Interface Type</u>	<u>Access Control Requirement</u>
Local Read Only (see note 1)	None Required
Local Limited, Non-privileged	MINIMALLY
Local Limited, Privileged	Physical Security
Local Full	MINIMALLY
Remote Read Only	None Required
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	MINIMALLY

User Interface Requirements for LOW Impact HVAC Control Systems	
<u>User Interface Type</u>	<u>Access Control Requirement</u>
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged	

3.3.2 Unsuccessful Logon Attempts

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-7 (a), AC-7 (b); CCI-000043, CCI-000044, CCI-001423, CCI-002236, CCI-002237, CCI-002238}

Except for high availability user interfaces indicated as exempt, devices must meet the indicated requirements for handling unsuccessful logon attempts. If a device cannot meet these requirements, document device capabilities to protect from subsequent logon attempts and propose alternate protections in a Device Account Lock Exception Request submittal. Do not implement alternate protection measures in lieu of the indicated requirements without explicit permission from the Government. If no Device Account Lock Exceptions are requested, provide a document stating that no approval is being requested as the Device Account Lock Exception Request.

3.3.2.1 Devices MINIMALLY Supporting Accounts

For LOW Impact Systems: Devices which MINIMALLY (but not FULLY) support accounts must lock the user account after five consecutive failed login attempts and must unlock the user account after 15 minutes have elapsed without an unsuccessful login attempt or by a successful login to a separate administrator account.

3.3.2.2 Devices FULLY Supporting Accounts

Devices which FULLY support accounts must meet the following requirements.

- a. It must lock the user account when three unsuccessful logon attempts occur within a 15 minute interval.
- b. Once an account is locked, the account must stay locked until unlocked by an administrator. If the account being locked is the sole administrator account on the device, the account must stay locked for 1 hour and then automatically unlock.
- c. Once the indicated number of unsuccessful logon attempts occurs, delay further logon prompts by 5 seconds.

3.3.2.3 High Availability Interfaces Exempt from Unsuccessful Logon Attempts Requirements

There are no high availability interfaces which are exempt from unsuccessful logon attempts requirements.

3.3.3 System Use Notification

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-8; CCI-000048, CCI-002247, CCI-002243, CCI-002244, CCI-002245, CCI-002246, CCI-000050, CCI-002248}

3.3.3.1 System Use Notification for Remote User Interfaces

Remote user interfaces must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060 on screen.

3.3.3.2 System Use Notification for Local User Interfaces

Devices which are connected to a network and have a local user interface must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060 on the user interface screen if capable of doing so and must have a permanently affixed label with an approved banner from DTM 08-060 if unable to display the warning banner on the screen. Where it is impractical (perhaps due to device size) to affix the label to the device, affix the label to the device enclosure.

Labels must be machine printed or engraved, plastic or metal, designed for permanent installation, must use a font no smaller than 14 point, and must provide a high contrast between font and background colors.

3.3.4 Permitted Actions Without Identification or Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-14; CCI-000061, CCI-000232}

The control system must require identification and authentication before allowing any actions except read-only actions by a user acting from a user interface which MINIMALLY or FULLY supports accounts.

3.3.4.1 Physical Security

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to PE-3(1), PE-4, PE-5, SC-7(a), SC-7(c), SC-8, SC-8(1); CCI-000928, CCI-002926, CCI-000936, CCI-002930, CCI-002931, CCI-000937, CCI-001097, CCI-001109, CCI-002418, CCI-002419, CCI-002421.}

3.3.4.1.1 Physical Security for Media

3.3.4.1.1.1 Physical Security for Media Inside Mission Space

Install all non-IP network media located inside of the mission space in conduit. Install all IP network media located inside of the mission space in intermediate metallic conduit.

3.3.4.1.1.2 Physical Security for Media Outside Mission Space

Install all network media (both IP and non-IP) located outside of the

mission space in rigid metallic conduit.

3.3.4.1.2 Physical Security for Devices

Install all devices (computers and controllers) which are located outside of mission space in lockable enclosures. (Recall that per definition of mission space, a room controlled by the mission is mission space regardless of whether it is contiguous with other mission space.)

Install all controllers connected to an IP network in lockable enclosures (both inside and outside of mission space).

3.3.4.1.3 Physical Security for User Interfaces

Physical security requirements for User Interfaces are specified in the preceeding paragraphs of this Section.

3.3.5 Enclosures

Prior to final acceptance of the system, lock all lockable enclosures. Submit an Enclosure Keys submittal with all copies of keys for all enclosures and a key inventory list documenting all keys. Label each key with the matching enclosure identifier.

3.4 USER IDENTIFICATION AND AUTHENTICATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-2, IA-2(1), IA-2(12), IA-5 IA-5(b), IA-5(c), IA-5(e), IA-5(g), IA-5(1), IA-5(11); CCI-000764, CCI-000765, CCI-001953, CCI-001954, CCI-001544, CCI-001989, CCI-000182, CCI-001610, CCI-000192, CCI-000193, CCI-000194, CCI-000205, CCI-001619, CCI-001611, CCI-001612, CCI-001613, CCI-001614, CCI-000195, CCI-001615, CCI-000196, CCI-000197, CCI-000199, CCI-000198, CCI-001616, CCI-001617, CCI-000200, CCI-001618, CCI-002041, CCI-002002, CCI-002003. }

This subpart indicates requirements for specific methods of identification and authentication for users and user accounts. Where these requirements conflict apply the following order of precedence: 1) If present, Device Specific Requirements take precedence over any other requirements; and then 2) multifactor authentication requirements take precedence over password requirements.

3.4.1 User Identification and Authentication for All System Types

Unless otherwise indicated, all user interfaces supporting accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must implement Identification and Authorization via passwords.

For LOW Impact Systems: User interfaces provided by computer operating systems must implement multifactor authentication via PIV.

3.4.2 User Identification and Authentication for Specific System Types

System specific requirements are in addition to and supersede those indicated for all system types. When no additional requirements are indicated for a specific system type the requirements for all systems still apply to that system type.

3.4.2.1 HVAC Control Systems Devices

User Interfaces which FULLY support accounts and which run on a computer must use multifactor authentication via PIV.

3.4.3 User Identification and Authentication for Specific Devices

There are no additional device specific user interface requirements

3.4.4 Implementation of Identification and Authorization Requirements

Identification and Authorization must be met by one of the following methods:

- a. Direct implementation in the user interface.
- b. For user interfaces on a computer: inheriting the Identification and Authorization from the computer operating system, either by the operating system limiting access to specific applications by user, or by the application itself having permissions based on the user logged into the computer.
- c. For remote interfaces: an implementation shared between the remote user interface server and the remote user interface client. For example, a requirement for PIV authentication may be met on a remote user interface by a PIV reader on a web browser client which sends the authentication information via HTTPS to the remote server.

3.4.5 Password-Based Authentication Requirements

3.4.5.1 Passwords for Software and Applications Running on Computers

All software and applications running on computers supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of 12 characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character. The list of supported special characters must include at least 4 separate characters.
- f. Password must have a minimum lifetime of 24 hours.
- g. Password must have a maximum lifetime of 60 days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- h. Password must differ from previous five passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least 50 percent of the characters (where location is significant, a character may be reused if it is in a different position).

- i. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.4.5.2 Passwords for Controllers FULLY Supporting Accounts

All controllers FULLY supporting accounts and supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of twelve (12) characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character. The list of supported special characters must include at least 4 separate characters.
- f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of sixty (60) days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- g. Password must differ from previous five (5) passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least fifty percent of the characters.
- h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.4.5.3 Passwords for Remote Interfaces

Passwords for connecting to a Remote User Interface supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of twelve (12) characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character. The list of supported special characters must include at least 4 separate characters.
- f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of 60 days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- g. Password must differ from previous five passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least 50 percent of the characters (where location is significant, a character may be reused if it is in a different position).
- h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.4.5.4 Passwords for Devices Minimally Supporting Accounts

Devices MINIMALLY supporting accounts must support passwords with a minimum length of four characters.

3.4.5.5 Password Configuration and Reporting

For all devices with a password, change the password from the default password. Coordinate selection of passwords with the Password Point of Contact. Do not use the same password for more than one device unless specifically instructed to do so. Provide a Confidential Password Report documenting the password for each device and describing the procedure to change the password for each device.

Do not provide the Password Summary Report in electronic format. Provide two hardcopies of the Password Summary Report, each copy in its own sealed envelope.

3.4.6 Authenticator Feedback

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to IA-6; CCI-000206}

Devices must never show authentication information, including passwords, on a display. Devices that momentarily display a character as it is entered, and then obscure the character, are acceptable. For devices that have STIGs or SRGs related to obscuring of authenticator feedback (CCI-000206), comply with the requirements of those STIGS/SRGs.

3.4.7 Implementation of PKI Infrastructure in MODERATE Impact Systems

Coordinate with the PKI Infrastructure Point of Contact to configure the system to implement PKI such that the system validates certifications by constructing and verifying a certification path to an accepted trust anchor including checking certificate status information; the system enforces authorized access to the corresponding private key; the system maps the authenticated identity to the account of the individual or group; and the system implements a local cache of revocation data to support path discovery and validation in case of inability to access revocation information via the network.

3.5 CYBERSECURITY AUDITING

Where an auditing requirement exists for email notification, notify via email the application administrator and Information System Security Officer (ISSO) of the event. Coordinate with the Email Address Point of Contact for email addresses. If outgoing email is not available to the system, configure the system for these notifications for future support of outgoing email.

3.5.1 Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-2(a), AU-2(c), AU-2(d), AU-3, AU-10, AU-12, AU-13(3), AU-14(b), AU-14(1), AU-14(2), AU-14(3), CM-5(1), SC-7 (9); CCI-000123, CCI-001571, CCI-000125, CCI-001485, CCI-000130, CCI-000131, CCI-000132, CCI-00133, CCI-000134, CCI-001487, CCI-000166, CCI-001899, CCI-000169, CCI-001459, CCI-000171, CCI-000172, CCI-001910, CCI-001914, CCI-001919, CCI-001464, CCI-001462, CCI-001920, CCI-001814, CCI-002400. }

For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit events, content of audit records or audit generation, comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.

If auditing requirements can be met using existing control system alarm or event capabilities, those existing capabilities may be used to meet these requirements.

3.5.1.1 Computers

For each computer, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure computers to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event

3.5.1.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each computer to audit the following events:

- a. Successful and unsuccessful attempts to access, modify, or delete privileges, security objects, security levels, or categories of information (e.g. classification levels)
- b. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts
- c. Successful logouts
- d. Privileged activities or other system level access
- e. Concurrent logons from different workstations
- f. Successful and unsuccessful accesses to objects
- g. All program initiations
- h. All direct access to the information system
- i. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations.
- j. All kernel module load, unload, and restart

3.5.1.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each computer to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

- a. What type of event occurred
- b. When the event occurred
- c. Where the event occurred
- d. The source of the event
- e. The outcome of the event
- f. The identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event

3.5.1.2 For HVAC Control System Controllers

3.5.1.2.1 HVAC Control System Controllers FULLY Supporting User Accounts

For each controller which FULLY supports accounts, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure controllers to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event.

3.5.1.2.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each controller to audit the following events:

- a. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts to the controller
- b. Successful logouts
- c. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations.
- d. All controller shutdown and startup

3.5.1.2.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each controller to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

- a. what type of event occurred
- b. when the event occurred
- c. the identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event

3.5.1.2.2 Other HVAC Control System Controllers

There are no requirements to perform auditing at HVAC field controllers that do not FULLY support accounts.

3.5.1.3 Default Requirements for Control System Controllers

For control system controllers where Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation are not otherwise indicated in this Section:

3.5.1.3.1 Controllers Which FULLY Support Accounts

For each controller which FULLY supports accounts, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure controllers to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event.

3.5.1.3.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each controller to audit the following events:

- a. Successful and unsuccessful attempts to access, modify, or delete privileges, security objects, security levels, or categories of information (e.g. classification levels)
- b. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts

- c. Successful logouts
- d. Concurrent logons from different workstations
- e. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations.
- f. All kernel module load, unload, and restart

3.5.1.3.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each controller to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

- a. what type of event occurred
- b. when the event occurred
- c. where the event occurred
- d. the source of the event
- e. the outcome of the event
- f. the identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event

3.5.1.3.2 Controllers Which Do Not FULLY Support Accounts

For each controller which does not FULLY support accounts configure the controller to audit all controller shutdown and startup events and to record for each event the type of event and when the event occurred.

3.5.2 Audit Time Stamps

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-8; CCI-000159, CCI-001889, CCI-001890.}

Any device (computer or controller) generating audit records must have an internal clock capable of providing time with a resolution of one second. Clocks must not drift more than 10 seconds per day. Configure the system so that each device (computer or controller) generating audit records maintains accurate time to within 1 second. Note that if the control system specifications include requirement for clocks, the most stringent requirement applies.

3.5.3 Audit Storage Capacity and Audit Upload

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-4; CCI-001848, CCI-001849}

The creation of audit records must never interfere with normal device operation. Devices must cease collection of auditing information if required to maintain normal operation.

- a. For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit storage capacity (CCI-001848 or CCI-001849) comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.
- b. For controllers capable of generating audit records, provide 60 days worth of secure local storage, assuming 10 auditable events per day.

3.5.4 Response to Audit Processing Failures

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-5; CCI-000139, CCI-000140, CCI-001490.}

In the case of a failure in the auditing system, computers associated with auditing must provide email notification. In case of an audit failure, if possible, continue to collect audit records by overwriting existing audit records.

3.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR LEAST FUNCTIONALITY

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts), along with the network communication report submittal specified elsewhere in this section, relates to CM-6(a), CM-6(c), CM-7, CM-7(1)(b), SC-41; CCI-000363, CCI-000364, CCI-000365, CCI-001588, CCI-001755, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-00382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546. }

For devices that have a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port and device I/O access for least functionality), install and configure the device in accordance with that STIG or SRGs.

3.6.1 Device Capabilities

For HVAC Control Systems: Do not provide devices with remote user interfaces or with full user interfaces where one was not required. Do not use a networked sensor or actuator where a non-networked sensor or actuator would suffice.

For Other Control Systems: For LOW Impact Systems: Do not provide devices with remote user interfaces or with full user interfaces where one was not required.

3.6.2 Software

For software that has a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port access for least functionality), install and configure the software in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

3.7 SYSTEM AND COMMUNICATION PROTECTION

3.7.1 Denial of Service Protection

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-5, SC-39, SC-7(a); CCI-001093, CCI-002385, CCI-002386, CCI-002430, CCI-001097. }

To the greatest extent practical, implement control logic without reliance on the network. Except when required to meet the requirements of the control system Section (where the requirement can only be met using computer hardware), do not implement control logic in computers.

3.8 SAFE MODE AND FAIL SAFE OPERATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-12, SI-10(3), SI-17; CCI-002855, CCI-002856, CCI-002857, CCI-002754,

CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775}

For all control system components with an applicable STIG or SRG, configure the component in accordance with all applicable STIGs and SRGs.

3.9 VULNERABILITY SCANNING

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to RA-5 RA-5(a),RA-5(b),RA-5(c),RA-5(d); CCI-001054, CCI-001055, CCI-000156, CCI-001641, CCI-001643, CCI-001057, CCI-001058, CCI-001059. }

All IP devices must be scannable, such that the device can be scanned by industry standard IP network scanning utilities without harm to the device, application, or functionality.

3.9.1 Computers and Software Running on Computers

Computers and applications running on computers must meet relevant vulnerability scanning STIGs/SRGs and respond to approved DoD vulnerability scanning tools.

3.9.2 Controllers

Controllers shall be scannable by standard control system discovery tools or control system browsers and return meaningful status information including the network inputs and outputs for the controller. This information shall contain sufficient detail to detect vulnerabilities or exploits of the controller.

3.9.2.1 Vulnerability Scan Results

Provide final vulnerability (ex. NESSUS/ACAS) scan results for all IP devices. All scans should be completed with the latest definition files. All operating system software should be the latest Army software baseline. The vendor should remediate all findings. Any finding that cannot be remediated will need to be documented as to why, along with any remediation applied to reduce the risk of the open finding. The completed scan results should be provided in password-protected electronic format. Provide 2 copies of the passwords in written format in a sealed envelope or in another separate electronic means.

3.10 SYSTEM AND INTEGRATION INTEGRITY

3.10.1 Malicious Code Protection

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SI-3(c); CCI-001241, CCI-002623}

For all computers installed under this project, provide malware protection software media, provide licenses, and install and configure malware protection software as indicated. Coordinate with the Government Computer Access Point of Contact as required.

- a. Provide malware protection software licenses.
- b. Provide malware protection software media.
- c. Install and configure malware protection software in accordance with the relevant STIGs.

3.11 CONTROL SYSTEM CYBERSECURITY TESTING

3.11.1 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures

Prepare Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures explaining step-by-step, the actions and expected results that will demonstrate that the control system meets the requirements of this Section.

Submit 4 copies of the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures. The Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.11.2 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Execution

Using the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures verify that the control system meets the requirements of this Section. UNLESS GOVERNMENT WITNESSING OF A TEST IS SPECIFICALLY WAIVED BY THE GOVERNMENT, PERFORM ALL TESTS WITH A GOVERNMENT WITNESS. If testing reveals deficiencies in the system, correct the deficiency and retest until successful.

3.11.3 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report

Prepare and submit a Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report documenting all tests performed and their results. Include all tests in the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures and any additional tests performed during testing. Document test failures and repairs conducted with the test results.

Submit four copies of the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report. The Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL, CYBERSECURITY VALIDATION SUPPORT

In addition to testing and testing support required by other Sections, provide a minimum of 24 hours of technical support for cybersecurity testing of control systems to support the DoD Risk Management Framework process Cybersecurity assessment of the control system. This support is independent of (and in addition to) the Control System Cybersecurity Testing specified in this section.

3.13 CYBERSECURITY TRAINING

Provide 24 hours of classroom and hands-on training for six Government personnel on the cybersecurity operation and maintenance of the control system provided. This training is in addition to and must be coordinated with control system training specified in other Sections. All training including DPW personnel requires a minimum notice of fourteen days and must be scheduled Tuesday through Thursday.

The Government will provide the training location. Training must cover, at a minimum: (a) applying software and firmware updates, (b) user account creation, modification and deletion, (c) audit log upload procedures and (d) identification of privileged user interfaces and system impact of those interfaces. Training session must include a question and answer period during which government staff questions about cybersecurity aspects of the control system are answered.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 25 05 11.02

CYBERSECURITY FOR MODERATE IMPACT FIRE ALARM/MASS NOTIFICATION (FA/MNS)
FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS
05/21

PART 1 GENERAL

Many subparts in this Section contain text in curly braces ("{" and "}") indicating which cybersecurity control and control correlation identifier (CCI) the requirements of the subpart relate to. The text inside these curly braces is for Government reference only and enables coordination of the requirements of this Section with the RMF process throughout the design and construction process. Text in curly braces are not contractor requirements.

This Section refers to Security Requirements Guide (SRGs) and Security Technical Implementation Guide (STIGs). STIGs and SRGs are available online at the Information Assurance Support Environment (IASE) website at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/downloads/> and an SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool is available at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/>. Not all control system components have applicable STIGs or SRGs. The "Control Systems SRG" does not apply to work performed under this Section; all requirements within this section to apply applicable SRGs DO NOT include the "Control Systems SRG".

1.1 CONTROL SYSTEM APPLICABILITY

There are multiple versions of this Section associated with this project. Different versions have requirements applicable to different control systems. This specific Section applies only to the following control systems: Fire Alarm/Mass Notification System.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section does not contain sufficient requirements to procure a control system and must be used in conjunction with other Sections which specify control systems. This Section adds cybersecurity requirements to the control systems specified in other Sections, and as these requirements are conditioned on the control system being provided, there may be requirements in this Section that will not apply to this project. All Sections containing facility-related control systems or control system components are related to the requirements of this Section. Review all specification sections to determine related requirements.

In cases where a requirement is specified in both this Section and in another Section, the more stringent requirement must be met. In cases where a requirement in this Section conflicts with the requirements of another Section such that both requirements cannot be met at the same time, request direction from the Contracting Officer Representative to determine which requirement applies to the project.

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST FIPS 140-2 (2001) Security Requirements for
Cryptographic Modules

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DTM 08-060 (2008) Policy on Use of Department of
Defense (DoD) Information Systems -
Standard Consent Banner and User Agreement

1.4 DEFINITIONS

1.4.1 Administrator Account

An administrator account is an account with full permissions to a device, application, or operating system, including the ability to create and modify other user accounts.

Note that the operating system Administrator Account may be different than Administrator Accounts for applications hosted on that operating system. Also, most controllers will not have any support for accounts and will therefore not have an 'Administrator Account'.

1.4.2 Computer

A computer is one of the following:

- a. a device running a non-embedded desktop or server version of Microsoft Windows
- b. a device running a non-embedded version of MacOS
- c. a device running a non-embedded version of Linux
- d. a device running a version or derivative of the Android Operating System, where Android is considered separate from Linux
- e. a device running a version of Apple iOS

Unless otherwise indicated or clear from context use of the word "device" in this Section includes computers.

1.4.3 Controller

A device other than a computer or Ethernet switch. For Fire Protection systems this includes fire alarm control panels, remote operating consoles, and remote annunciators.

1.4.4 Mission Space

A device or media is in mission space if physical access to the device or media is controlled by the organization served by the device. For

example, a VAV box controller in a suspended ceiling is in mission space if the VAV box serves that room; an electrical switchgear in an electrical room or an AHU in a mechanical room or on a rooftop may still be considered to be in mission space if the organization (mission) served by that switchgear or AHU controls access to the electrical room, mechanical room or rooftop.

1.4.5 Network

A network is a group of two or more devices that can communicate using a network protocol. Network protocols must provide a method for addressing devices on the network; a communication method that does not provide an addressing scheme is not a networked form of communication. Devices that communicate using a method of communication that does not support device addressing are not using a network.

1.4.6 Network Connected

A component is network connected (or "connected to a network") only when the device has a network transceiver which is directly connected to the network and implements the network protocol. A device lacking a network transceiver (and accompanying protocol implementation) can never be considered network connected. Note that (unlike many IT definitions of "Network Connected") a device connected to a non-IP network is still considered network connected (an IP connection or IP address is not required for a device to be network connected).

1.4.6.1 Wireless Network Connected

Any device that supports wireless network communication is network connected to a wireless network, regardless of whether the device is communicating using wireless. Unless physically disabled, devices with wireless transceivers support wireless, it is not sufficient to disable the wireless in software.

1.4.7 Network Media

The thing that provides the communication channel between the devices on a network. Typically wire, but might include wireless, fiber optic, or even power line (some network protocols allow sending network signals over power wiring).

1.4.8 User Account Support Levels

The support for user accounts is categorized in this Section as one of three levels:

1.4.8.1 FULLY Supported

Device supports configurable individual accounts. Accounts can be created, deleted, modified, etc. Privileges can be assigned to accounts. These devices support user-based (as opposed to role-based) authentication.

1.4.8.2 MINIMALLY Supported

Device supports a small, fixed number of accounts (perhaps only one). Accounts cannot be modified. A device with only a "User" and an "Administrator" account would fit this category. Similarly, a device with two PINs for logon - one for restricted and one for unrestricted rights

would fit here (in other words, the accounts do not have to be the traditional "username and password" structure). These devices typically only support role-based authentication.

Examples of devices which MINIMALLY support accounts are a) a variable frequency drive with a single account which requires a PIN for access to configuration; and b) a room lighting control touchpad interface that has a single account.

1.4.8.3 NOT Supported

Device does not support any Access Enforcement therefore the whole concept of "account" is meaningless.

1.4.9 Manual Local Input

Manual Local Inputs are system analog or binary inputs that are adjustable by a person but are, by intrinsic hardware design, very limited in potential capabilities. Manual Local Inputs do not have touch screens or full keyboards, but may have a few buttons or dials to allow input. Manual Local Inputs do not have full graphic screens or dot-matrix displays, but may have simple lights (LEDs) or 7-segment displays. Manual Local Inputs do not have any sort of menu structure, each button has a single well-defined function.

Examples of Manual Local Inputs are H-O-A switches, simple thermostats, and disconnect switches.

1.4.10 Card Reader

A card reader is an input/output device whose primary function is to assist in two-factor authentication. A card reader must have an interface to read data from a card and may be able to write data to a card. A card reader may have a means (such as buttons, keypad, touchscreen, etc.) for a user to input a PIN or password, as well as a limited display.

1.4.11 User Interface

A User Interface (UI) is something other than a Manual Local Input or Card Reader that allows a person to interact with the system or device. Note that while a Card Reader is not by itself a User Interface, a User Interface may contain a Card Reader in order for it to authenticate its user. Within control systems, there are a wide range of User Interfaces.

Two important distinctions are 1) whether the user interface is Local or Remote, and 2) the effective capabilities of the User Interface to alter data, which is the "privilege" of the user interface (where effective privilege available to a specific user at a specific user interface is the combination of the greatest privilege offered by the user interface and the specific account the user is logged into).

1.4.11.1 Local User Interface

A Local User Interface is a user interface where the physical hardware the user interacts with (keyboard, buttons, display, etc.) is physically part of the device being affected. All of the relevant characteristics of the user interface are embodied within a single device.

Note that a Local UI may be able to access data in a different device, Local versus Remote in this context refers to the user interface itself; the capability to access data in a different device is covered under "Full User Interface".

1.4.11.2 Remote User Interface

A Remote User Interface implements a Client/Server model where the physical hardware the user interacts with (Client) is physically distinct from the device being affected (Server). Most or all of the security and functionality characteristics of the user interface are defined by the Server, not the Client. The Client and Server communicate via a network connection. A common example of a remote user interface is a web-based interface where the browser (client) is generally on different hardware than the web server (server). A Remote UI remains a Remote UI even if the user happens to be at a Client on the same hardware as the Server. What is important is that a) the Client may be on different hardware than the Server and b) the majority of the security and functional characteristics of the interface are defined at the Server.

Note that this definition of "remote" is consistent with that generally used in the control industry but is not aligned with the NIST 800-53 definition of "Remote", which refers to "outside the system". The term "Remote" here better aligns with the NIST 800-53 definition of "Network" (remote from within the system) Access.

1.4.11.3 Types of User Interface (by capability)

User interfaces are also categorized by their capabilities as being Read Only, Limited, or Full.

1.4.11.3.1 Read-Only User Interface

A Read Only User Interface (also referred to as a View-Only User Interface) is a user interface that only allows for reading data, it does not allow (have the capability to) modify data. A Read Only User Interface may be either Local or Remote. A User Interface that is configured to be Read Only (by some other means than the interface itself, such as using configuration software on a laptop) is a Read-Only Interface. Note a Read Only User Interface may have buttons (or touch screen, etc.) allowing the user to navigate through the presentation of data.

Examples of a Read Only User Interfaces are a) a publicly viewable "energy dashboard" showing weather data and energy usage within a building and b) digital wayfinding signage.

1.4.11.3.2 Limited User Interface

A Limited User Interface is a user interface that - by design - can only alter information local to the user interface. Note that the determination of "alter" includes only direct interactions, it explicitly excludes interactions that might occur as secondary effects. For example, an interface changing the flow setpoint in a pump controller is a direct interaction, the subsequent change in flow (as well as any subsequent downstream changes in valve position) are not direct interactions.

Two examples of LIMITED UIs are: a) a variable speed drive has a Limited Local User Interface which allows the user to change properties within the

drive, but does not allow affecting things outside the drive; and b) a typical home WiFi Router has a Limited Remote User Interface which allows configuration of the Router, but does not allow direct interaction with other devices.

1.4.11.3.3 Full User Interface

A Full User Interface can alter information in devices outside the device with the user interface. For example, a typical Local Display Panel is a Full Local User Interface while a browser-based front end is a Full Remote User Interface.

1.4.11.3.4 View-Only User Interface

See Read-Only User Interface

1.4.11.4 Other User Interface Terminology

In addition to defining whether a user interface is a Hardware Limited, Read-Only, Limited or Full, and whether it is Local or Remote, user interfaces are classified by whether they are writable or privileged.

1.4.11.4.1 Writable User Interface

Any User Interface that is not Read-Only is Writable. (Limited User Interfaces and Full User Interfaces are both writable user interfaces (as they are capable of changing a value)).

1.4.11.4.2 Privileged User Interface

A Privileged UI is a UI that has sufficient capabilities or functionality that it requires specific cybersecurity measures to be put in place to limit its unauthorized use. Ultimately, whether a specific user interface is considered a Privileged User Interface must be determined by usage. Unless otherwise specified, user interfaces can be determined to be privileged or not using the following:

- a. Read-Only User Interfaces are not privileged user interfaces.
- b. Full User interfaces for Fire Alarm Systems are privileged user interfaces as indicated and shown, or when another requirement of this Section establishes they are privileged. For all other systems, Full User Interfaces are privileged user interfaces.
- c. User interfaces that allow for configuration of auditing or allows for modification or deletion of audit logs are privileged user interface.
- d. User interfaces that allow for reprogramming a network connected device is a privileged user interface.
- e. For Fire Protection Systems, User Interfaces that can inhibit or force the activation of a fire suppression system (e.g. such as for a pre-action or deluge system) are privileged user interfaces.
- f. Except as specified above, a Limited User Interface must be determined to be privileged or not based on the specific capabilities and use case of the user interface. In general however, user interfaces that do not offer significant capabilities above and beyond those available at that location via other means (e.g. such as a disconnect switch,

breaker, or hand-off-auto switch, or physical attack) are not privileged.

1.4.12 Wireless Network

Any network that communicates without using wires or fiber optics as the communication media. Wireless networks include: WiFi, Bluetooth, ZigBee, cellular, satellite, 900 MHz radio, 2.4 GHz, free space optical, point-to-point laser, and IR.

1.4.13 Wired Broadcast Network

Wired Broadcast Networks are any network, such as powerline carrier networks and modem (wired telephony), that use wire-based technologies where there is not a clearly defined boundary for signal propagation.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.5.1 Points of Contact

Coordinate with the following Points of Contact as indicated in this Section and as required. Not all projects will require coordination with all Points of Contact. When coordination is required and no Point of Contact is indicated, coordinate with The Contracting Office Representative (COR).

- a. Government Computer Access Point of Contact: The Contracting Office Representative (COR)
- b. HTTPS Certificate Point of Contact: The Contracting Office Representative (COR)
- c. Email Address Point of Contact: The Contracting Office Representative (COR)
- d. Password Point of Contact: The Contracting Office Representative (COR)
- e. Mobile Code Point of Contact: The Contracting Office Representative (COR)

1.5.2 Coordination

Coordinate the execution of this Section with the execution of all other Sections related to control systems as indicated in the paragraph RELATED REQUIREMENTS. Items that must be considered when coordinating project efforts include but are not limited to:

- a. If requesting permission for wireless or wired broadcast communication, the Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication Request submittal must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.
- b. If requesting permission for alternate account lock permissions, the Device Account Lock Exception Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.
- c. If requesting permission for the use of a device with multiple physical connections to IP networks, the Multiple IP Connection

Device Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.

- d. Wireless testing may be required as part of the control system testing. See requirements for the Wireless Communication Test Report submittal.
- f. The Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule must be coordinated with other work that will be interconnected to, and interconnections must be approved by the Government before relying on them for system functionality.
- g. Cybersecurity testing support must be coordinated across control systems and with the Government cybersecurity testing schedule.
- h. Passwords must be coordinated with the indicated contact for the project site.
- i. If applicable, HTTPS web server certificates must be obtained from the indicated HTTPS Certificate Point of Contact.
- j. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must be provided for each contractor using contractor owned computers.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Device Account Lock Exception Request; G

Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule; G

Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Network Communication Report; G

Cybersecurity Riser Diagram; G

SD-03 Product Data

Control System Cybersecurity Documentation; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures; G

Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report; G

SD-07 Certificates

Software Licenses; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Confidential Password Report

Enclosure Keys; G

Software and Configuration Backups; G

STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report; G

Control System Inventory Report; G

1.7 QUALITY CONTROL

1.7.1 Certifications and Qualifications

For the Fire Alarm/Mass Notification control system:

1.7.1.1 Control System Cybersecurity Subject Matter Expert

The individual will oversee all work within this specification. This position requires that the individual currently meets Information Assurance Manager Level II Certification in accordance with DoDD 8140 Cyberspace Workforce Management.

Individuals for this position should have experience securing DoD systems and with Risk Management Framework. Control System Experience is highly desirable.

Resumes should be submitted to the Government within 14 days after notice to proceed. All certifications to include computing environment must be in effect prior to beginning work.

1.7.1.2 Additional Statement

Control System Cybersecurity Subject Matter Expert and Computing Environment and Network Personnel can serve across the contract.

1.8 CYBERSECURITY DOCUMENTATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-7; CCI-003071}

1.8.1 Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report

For each model of network connected or network infrastructure device, use the DISA SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool (available at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/>) to identify applicable STIGs or SRGs and provide a report indicating applicable STIGs and SRGs for each model.

1.8.2 Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to CA-3(b), PL-8, SC-7(9), SC-7(11); CCI-000258, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075, CCI-002398, CCI-002399, CCI-002401, CCI-002402, CCI-002403. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart also relates to SC-7; CCI-001126, CCI-001109}

Provide a completed Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule documenting network connections between the installed system and other systems. Provide the following information for each device directly communicating between systems: Device Identifier, Device Description, Transport layer Protocol, Network Address, Port (if applicable), MAC (Layer 2) address (if applicable), Media, Application Protocol, Service (if applicable), Descriptive Purpose of communication. For communication with other authorized systems also provide the Foreign Destination and POC for Destination. For MODERATE Impact Systems: Also describe the impact of loss of the connection on the control system. If other control system Sections used on this project include submittals documenting this information, provide copies of those submittals to meet this requirement.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule as an editable Microsoft Excel file (a template Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule in Excel format is available at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1>

1.8.3 Network Communication Report

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CA-9, PL-8; CCI-003075; CCI-002102, CCI-002103, CCI-002104, CCI-002105, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075 and also the submittal requirements associated with CM-6, CM-7, SC-8 and SC-41 including CM-7(3), CCI-000388.}

Provide a network communication report. For each networked device, document the communication characteristics of the device including communication protocols, services used, encryption employed, and a general description of what information is communicated over the network. For each device using IP, document all TCP and UDP ports used. For non-IP communications, document communication protocol and media used. If other control system Sections used on this project include submittals documenting this information, provide copies of those submittals to meet this requirement.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Network Communication Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

1.8.4 Control System Inventory Report

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CM-8(a), SI-17, IA-3; CCI-000389, CCI-000392, CCI-000398, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775, CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958}

Provide a Control System Inventory report using the Inventory Spreadsheet listed under this Section at

<https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1> documenting all networked devices, including network infrastructure devices. For each device provide all applicable information for which there is a field on the spreadsheet in accordance with the instructions on

the spreadsheet.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Control System Inventory Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

1.8.5 Software and Configuration Backups

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-10; CCI-000550, CCI-000551, CCI-000552}

For each control system device or fire panel on which software is installed or a configuration file is modified under this project, provide a recovery image of the final as-built device or fire panel. This image, configuration file, or panel must allow for bare-metal restore such that restoration of the image is sufficient to restore system operation to the imaged state without the need for re-installation of software. If additional user permissions are required to meet this requirement, coordinate the creation of the image with the identified Government Computer Access Point of Contact.

If any or all of these are provided under another Section, provide documentation indicating this and referencing those submittals.

1.8.6 Cybersecurity Riser Diagram

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-2(a), PL-8; CCI-003051, CCI-003053, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075}

Provide a cybersecurity riser diagram of the complete control system including all network and device hardware. If the control system specifications require a riser diagram submittal, provide a copy of that submittal as the cybersecurity riser diagram. Otherwise, provide a riser diagram in one-line format.

1.8.7 STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report

For every component (device or software) with an applicable STIG or SRG in the Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report, provide a result report documenting compliance with the STIG or SRG requirements. For components which are scannable by the SCAP (security content automation protocol) tool (available online at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/scap>), provide the SCAP report and raw scan results.

For every component (device or software) with manufacturer provided cybersecurity documentation, procedure, or method for secure configuration or installation, provide a report documenting how the component was configured and any deviation from the manufacturer instructions.

1.8.8 Control System Cybersecurity Documentation

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-5 (a),(b),(c); CCIs: CCI-003124, CCI-003125, CCI-003126, CCI-003127, CCI-003128, CCI-003129, CCI-003130, CCI-003131}

Provide a Control System Cybersecurity Documentation submittal containing the indicated information for each device and software application.

1.8.8.1 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Control System Cybersecurity Documentation requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section, provide:

- a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. Documentation that describes secure installation of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003125}
- c. Documentation that describes secure operation of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- d. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003127}
- e. Documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003128}
- f. Documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the device and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003129}
- g. Documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003130}
- h. Documentation that describes user responsibilities in maintaining the security of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003131}

1.9 SOFTWARE LICENSING

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SI-2(a), SI-2(c), SI-7(14); CCI-001227, CCI-002605, CCI-002737}

For all software provided that has not already been licensed to the government or project site, provide a license to the project site for a period of no less than 5 years, and the license must also include the following software updates:

- a. Security and bug-fix patches issued by the software manufacturer.
- b. Security patches to address any vulnerability identified in the National Vulnerability Database at <http://nvd.nist.gov> with a Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) severity rating of MEDIUM or higher.

Provide a single Software Licenses submittal with documentation of the software licenses for all software provided

1.10 CYBERSECURITY DURING CONSTRUCTION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to

AC-18, SA-3; CCI-000258}

In addition to the control system cybersecurity requirements indicated in this section, meet following requirement throughout the construction process.

1.10.1 Contractor Computer Equipment

Contractor owned computers may be used for construction. Contractor computers connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

1.10.1.1 Operating System

The operating system must be an operating system currently supported by the manufacturer of the operating system. The operating system must be current on security patches and operating system manufacturer required updates.

1.10.1.2 Anti-Malware Software

The computer must run anti-malware software from a reputable software manufacturer. Anti-malware software must be a version currently supported by the software manufacturer, must be current on all patches and updates, and must use the latest definitions file. Computers used on this project must be scanned using the installed software at least once per day.

1.10.1.3 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for computers, applications, and web-based applications supporting passwords must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum of eight characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.10.1.4 User-Based Authentication

Each user must have a unique account; sharing of a single account between multiple users is prohibited.

1.10.1.5 Demonstration of Compliance

The Government has the right to require demonstration of computer compliance with these requirements at any time during the project.

1.10.1.6 Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company using contractor owned computers. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1> Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company.

1.10.2 Temporary IP Networks

Temporary contractor-installed IP networks may be used during

construction. When used, temporary contractor-installed IP networks connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

1.10.2.1 Network Boundaries and Connections

The network must not extend outside the project site and must not connect to any IP network other than those specifically provided or furnished for this project. Any and all access to the network from outside the project site is prohibited.

1.10.3 Government Access to Network

Government personnel must be allowed to have complete and immediate access to the network at any time in order to verify compliance with this specification.

1.10.4 Temporary Wireless IP Networks

In addition to the other requirements on temporary IP networks, temporary wireless IP (WiFi) networks, when permitted, must not interfere with existing wireless networks, must use WPA2 security and must not broadcast the network name (SSID). Network names (SSID) for wireless networks must be changed from their default values.

1.10.5 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for all network devices and network access must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum 8 characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.10.6 Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company implementing a temporary IP network. Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1> Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company. If no temporary IP networks will be used, provide a single copy of the Statement indicating this.

1.11 CYBERSECURITY DURING WARRANTY PERIOD

All work performed on the control system after acceptance must be performed using Government Furnished Equipment or equipment specifically and individually approved by the Government.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CYBERSECURITY HARDENING AND CONFIGURATION GUIDES

Install, configure, and harden all hardware and software furnished on this

project in accordance with manufacturer provided documentation, procedures, or methods for secure configuration or installation. Do not implement specific hardening actions if that action would conflict with required functionality or another requirement of this Section.

3.2 NETWORK REQUIREMENTS

3.2.1 Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication for Fire Protection Systems

The use of wireless and wired broadcast communication for fire protection systems within a facility is prohibited. Wireless communication may be used to provide communication from the fire protection system in a facility to the central monitoring station.

3.2.2 Non-IP Control Networks

When control system specifications require particular communication protocols, use only those communication protocols and only as specified. Do not implement any other communication protocol.

When control system specifications do not indicate requirements for communication protocols, use only those protocols required for operation of the system as specified.

3.3 ACCESS CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

3.3.1 User Accounts

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-2(a), AC-3, AC-6(1), AC-6(10), AC-6(2), AC-6(9), CM-11(2), and IA-2; CCI-002110, CCI-000213, CCI-002235, CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-002235, CCI-000039, CCI-001419, CCI-002234, CCI-001812, and CCI-000764. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relate to AC-2 (2), AC-2(3), AC-2(4), AC-6(1), and CM-5(1); CCI-001361, CCI-000017, CCI-000217, CCI-000018, CCI-001403, CCI-001404, CCI-001405, CCI-002130, CCI-001683, CCI-001684, CCI-001685, CCI-001686, CCI-002132, CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-001813.}

Any user interface supporting user accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must limit access according to specified limitations for each account. Install and configure any device having a STIG or SRG in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

All user interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement user-based authentication where each account is uniquely assigned to a specific user. User interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement at least three (3) levels of user account privilege including: 1) an account with read-only permissions 2) an account with full permissions including account creation and modification and 3) an account with greater permissions than read-only but without account creation and modification.

3.3.1.1 Controllers

For user interfaces provided by controllers, provide access control in accordance with the User Interface Requirements table for the applicable control system and user interface type.

a. For table entries of "NA": NA means Not Applicable, there are no

interfaces in this category.

- b. For table entries of "None Required": The user interface is not required to support user accounts.
- c. For table entries of "MINIMALLY": The user interface must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.
- d. For table entries of "FULLY": The user interface must at FULLY support user accounts.
- e. For table entries of "KEY": The user interface must have physical security in the form of either a key lock on the interface itself or be furnished inside a locked enclosure. Where this is required for a read only interface, this lock must prevent viewing of data on the interface; for other interfaces, this lock must prevent using the interface to alter data.
- f. For table entries of "Physical Security": For Local FULL interfaces, the interface must be located inside mission space. For Local Limited (not FULL) interfaces, the user interface must either a) be located within mission space or b) be protected by physical security at least as good as the control devices (and equipment controlled by the control devices) affected by the interface. For purposes of this requirement, 'affected' includes controllers with data that can be directly altered by the interface, as well as mechanical and/or electrical equipment directly controlled by those controllers, but does not include other interactions.
- g. Entries of the form "X and Y" must meet both the requirement indicated for X and the requirement indicated for Y. For example, an entry of "MINIMALLY and Physical Security" indicates the user interface must both MINIMALLY support accounts and have physical security.
- h. Entries of the form "X or Y" must meet either the requirement indicated for X or the requirement indicated for Y.

3.3.1.1.1 Fire Protection Systems

User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact Fire Protection Systems	
<u>User Interface Type</u>	<u>Access Control Requirement</u> (See note 2)
Local Read Only	None Required
Local Limited, Non-privileged	None Required
Local Limited, Privileged	KEY and Physical Security
Local Full	KEY
Remote Read Only	MINIMALLY
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	FULLY

User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact Fire Protection Systems	
<u>User Interface Type</u>	<u>Access Control Requirement</u> (See note 2)
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Devices outside mission space require physical security protections as indicated (in "PHYSICAL SECURITY IN MODERATE IMPACT SYSTEMS")	

3.3.2 System Use Notification

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-8; CCI-000048, CCI-002247, CCI-002243, CCI-002244, CCI-002245, CCI-002246, CCI-000050, CCI-002248}

3.3.2.1 System Use Notification for Remote User Interfaces

Remote user interfaces must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060 on screen.

3.3.2.2 System Use Notification for Local User Interfaces

Devices which are connected to a network and have a local user interface must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060 on the user interface screen if capable of doing so and must have a permanently affixed label with an approved banner from DTM 08-060 if unable to display the warning banner on the screen. Where it is impractical (perhaps due to device size) to affix the label to the device, affix the label to the device enclosure.

Labels must be machine printed or engraved, plastic or metal, designed for permanent installation, must use a font no smaller than 14 point, and must provide a high contrast between font and background colors.

3.3.3 Permitted Actions Without Identification or Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-14; CCI-000061, CCI-000232}

The control system must require identification and authentication before allowing any actions except read-only actions by a user acting from a user interface which MINIMALLY or FULLY supports accounts.

3.3.4 Physical Security in MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to PE-3(1), PE-4, PE-5, SC-7(a), SC-7(c), SC-8, SC-8(1); CCI-000928, CCI-002926, CCI-000936, CCI-002930, CCI-002931, CCI-000937, CCI-001097, CCI-001109, CCI-002418, CCI-002419, CCI-002421.}

3.3.4.1 Physical Security for Media

3.3.4.1.1 Physical Security for Media Inside Mission Space

Install all non-IP network media located inside of the mission space in conduit. Install all IP network media located inside of the mission space in intermediate metallic conduit.

3.3.4.1.2 Physical Security for Media Outside Mission Space

Install all network media (both IP and non-IP) located outside of the mission space in rigid metallic conduit.

3.3.4.1.3 Physical Security for Non-Network Media in Fire Protection Systems

For Fire Suppression Systems which can be inhibited or forced to activate by manipulation of non-network wiring, install all non-network media outside of mission space, including analog and binary instrumentation wiring and power wiring, in rigid metallic conduit.

3.3.4.2 Physical Security for Devices

Install all devices (computers and controllers) which are located outside of mission space in lockable enclosures. (Recall that per definition of mission space, a room controlled by the mission is mission space regardless of whether it is contiguous with other mission space.)

Install all controllers connected to an IP network in lockable enclosures (both inside and outside of mission space).

3.3.4.2.1 Physical Security for Devices in Fire Protection Systems

For Fire Suppression systems with a release panel, install all components of the suppression system either inside mission space, or within locked enclosures. Components of these systems include: release panel, any relay or interface panels, analog and binary inputs or outputs, control valves, manual valves.

3.3.4.3 Physical Security for User Interfaces

Physical security requirements for User Interfaces are specified in the preceding paragraphs of this Section.

3.3.5 Enclosures

Prior to final acceptance of the system, lock all lockable enclosures. Submit an Enclosure Keys submittal with all copies of keys for all enclosures and a key inventory list documenting all keys. Label each key with the matching enclosure identifier.

3.4 USER IDENTIFICATION AND AUTHENTICATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-2, IA-2(1), IA-2(12), IA-5 IA-5(b), IA-5(c), IA-5(e), IA-5(g), IA-5(1), IA-5(11); CCI-000764, CCI-000765, CCI-001953, CCI-001954, CCI-001544, CCI-001989, CCI-000182, CCI-001610, CCI-000192, CCI-000193, CCI-000194, CCI-000205, CCI-001619, CCI-001611, CCI-001612, CCI-001613, CCI-001614, CCI-000195, CCI-001615, CCI-000196, CCI-000197, CCI-000199,

CCI-000198, CCI-001616, CCI-001617, CCI-000200, CCI-001618, CCI-002041, CCI-002002, CCI-002003. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart also relates to AC-6 (1), AC-6(10), AC-6(2), AC-6(9)IA-2(4), IA-5(13); CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-002235, CCI-000039, CCI-001419, CCI-002234, CCI-000768, CCI-002007.}

This subpart indicates requirements for specific methods of identification and authentication for users and user accounts. Where these requirements conflict apply the following order of precedence: 1) If present, Device Specific Requirements take precedence over any other requirements; and then 2) multifactor authentication requirements take precedence over password requirements.

3.4.1 Implementation of Identification and Authorization Requirements

Identification and Authorization must be met by one of the following methods:

- a. Direct implementation in the user interface.
- b. For user interfaces on a computer: inheriting the Identification and Authorization from the computer operating system, either by the operating system limiting access to specific applications by user, or by the application itself having permissions based on the user logged into the computer.
- c. For remote interfaces: an implementation shared between the remote user interface server and the remote user interface client. For example, a requirement for PIV authentication may be met on a remote user interface by a PIV reader on a web browser client which sends the authentication information via HTTPS to the remote server.

3.4.2 Password-Based Authentication Requirements

3.4.2.1 Passwords for Devices Minimally Supporting Accounts

Devices MINIMALLY supporting accounts must support passwords with a minimum length of four characters.

3.4.2.2 Password Configuration and Reporting

For all devices with a password, change the password from the default password. Coordinate selection of passwords with the Password Point of Contact. Do not use the same password for more than one device unless specifically instructed to do so. Provide a Confidential Password Report documenting the password for each device and describing the procedure to change the password for each device.

Do not provide the Password Summary Report in electronic format. Provide two hardcopies of the Password Summary Report, each copy in its own sealed envelope.

3.4.3 Authenticator Feedback

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to IA-6; CCI-000206}

Devices must never show authentication information, including passwords, on a display. Devices that momentarily display a character as it is entered, and then obscure the character, are acceptable. For devices that

have STIGs or SRGs related to obscuring of authenticator feedback (CCI-000206), comply with the requirements of those STIGS/SRGs.

3.5 CYBERSECURITY AUDITING

Where an auditing requirement exists for email notification, notify via email the application administrator and Information System Security Officer (ISSO) of the event. Coordinate with the Email Address Point of Contact for email addresses. If outgoing email is not available to the system, configure the system for these notifications for future support of outgoing email.

3.5.1 Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-2(a), AU-2(c), AU-2(d), AU-3, AU-10, AU-12, AU-13(3), AU-14(b), AU-14(1), AU-14(2), AU-14(3), CM-5(1), SC-7 (9); CCI-000123, CCI-001571, CCI-000125, CCI-001485, CCI-000130, CCI-000131, CCI-000132, CCI-00133, CCI-000134, CCI-001487, CCI-000166, CCI-001899, CCI-000169, CCI-001459, CCI-000171, CCI-000172, CCI-001910, CCI-001914, CCI-001919, CCI-001464, CCI-001462, CCI-001920, CCI-001814, CCI-002400. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to AU-3 (1); CCI-000135, CCI-001488}

For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit events, content of audit records or audit generation, comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.

If auditing requirements can be met using existing control system alarm or event capabilities, those existing capabilities may be used to meet these requirements.

3.5.1.1 Default Requirements for Control System Controllers

For control system controllers where Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation are not otherwise indicated in this Section:

3.5.1.1.1 Controllers Which FULLY Support Accounts

For each controller which FULLY supports accounts, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure controllers to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event.

3.5.1.1.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each controller to audit the following events:

- a. Successful and unsuccessful attempts to access, modify, or delete privileges, security objects, security levels, or categories of information (e.g. classification levels)
- b. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts
- c. Successful logouts
- d. Concurrent logons from different workstations
- e. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations. For

MODERATE Impact Systems, also provide email notification when these audit events occur.

- f. All kernel module load, unload, and restart
- g. For privileged user interfaces in MODERATE Impact Systems: All user commands.

3.5.1.1.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each controller to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

- a. what type of event occurred
- b. when the event occurred
- c. where the event occurred
- d. the source of the event
- e. the outcome of the event
- f. the identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event
- g. For privileged user interfaces in MODERATE Impact Systems: Full text recording of the executed command and the user executing the command.

For MODERATE Impact Systems: Audit records must provide sufficient detail to reconstruct events to determine cause of compromise and magnitude of damage, malfunction, or security violation

3.5.1.1.2 Controllers Which Do Not FULLY Support Accounts

For each controller which does not FULLY support accounts configure the controller to audit all controller shutdown and startup events and to record for each event the type of event and when the event occurred.

3.5.2 Audit Time Stamps

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-8; CCI-000159, CCI-001889, CCI-001890. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to AU-8 (1); CCI-001891, CCI-001892, CCI-002046.}

Any device (computer or controller) generating audit records must have an internal clock capable of providing time with a resolution of one second. Clocks must not drift more than 10 seconds per day. Configure the system so that each device (computer or controller) generating audit records maintains accurate time to within 1 second. Note that if the control system specifications include requirement for clocks, the most stringent requirement applies.

3.5.3 Audit Storage Capacity

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-4; CCI-001848, CCI-001849}

The creation of audit records must never interfere with normal device

operation. Devices must cease collection of auditing information if required to maintain normal operation.

- a. For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit storage capacity (CCI-001848 or CCI-001849) comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.
- b. For controllers capable of generating audit records, provide 60 days worth of secure local storage, assuming 10 auditable events per day.

3.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR LEAST FUNCTIONALITY

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts), along with the network communication report submittal specified elsewhere in this section, relates to CM-6(a), CM-6(c), CM-7, CM-7(1)(b), SC-41; CCI-000363, CCI-000364, CCI-000365, CCI-001588, CCI-001755, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-00382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to CM-7(2), CM-7(5)(a), CM-7(5)(b); CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-00382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762}

For devices that have a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port and device I/O access for least functionality), install and configure the device in accordance with that STIG or SRGs.

3.6.1 Device Capabilities

Do not provide devices with remote user interfaces or full user interfaces where one was not required. Do not use a networked sensor or actuator where a non-networked sensor or actuator would suffice.

Unless specifically required by the government, do not provide a capability to update device firmware over the network.

3.7 SYSTEM AND COMMUNICATION PROTECTION

3.7.1 Denial of Service Protection and Application Partitioning In MODERATE Impact Systems:

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-5, SC-39, SC-7(a); CCI-001093, CCI-002385, CCI-002386, CCI-002430, CCI-001097. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart also relates to SC-2; CCI-001082.}

To the greatest extent practical, implement control logic without reliance on the network. Except when required to meet the requirements of the control system Section (where the requirement can only be met using computer hardware), do not implement control logic in computers. For MODERATE Impact systems, do not implement control logic in a device providing (i.e. acting as a server for) a Full Remote User Interface.

3.7.1.1 Default Requirements for MODERATE Impact Control Systems

Except for networked input and outputs on input-output buses specifically designed to provide high reliability or redundancy, sensors and actuators must not rely on the network to exchange data with the controller executing the sequence of operation which uses the sensor value or determines the actuator command.

Sensor values required by multiple devices may be shared over the network provided they are connected to a controller requiring the value for execution of the sequence and that controller shares the value on the network.

3.7.2 Process Isolation and Boundary Protection in Moderate Impact Fire Protection Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-7(a), SC-7(c), SC-7(4)(a), SC-7(4)(c), SC-7(5), SC-7(7), SC-7(9)(a), SC-7(11), SC-7(13), SC-7(13), SC-7(18); CCI-001097, CCI-001098, CCI-001102, CCI-002396, CCI-001109, CCI-002397, CCI-002398, CCI-002399, CCI-002403, CCI-001120, CCI-001119, CCI-001126}

3.7.2.1 Radio Interfaces for Fire Protection Systems

When radios interfacing a local fire protection system to a supervisory system are not NIST FIPS 140-2 validated, use a relay panel interface between the local fire protection system and the radio. Install and configure the relay panel to prohibit initiating any action within the local fire protection system other than causing the system to play a pre-recorded message. Install relays using the normally closed contact such that they pass a signal when they open, and so that a relay that loses power or has a failed coil passes the signal

3.7.2.2 Fire Suppression System Network Isolation

For fire suppression systems including a release panel, any network used in these systems shall be dedicated to these systems and must be isolated from any other network, including other components of the Fire Alarm and Fire Suppression systems. Use only dry contacts and relays to transfer signals from these systems to any other systems. Install relays using the normally closed contact such that they pass a signal when they open, and so that a relay that loses power or has a failed coil passes the signal

3.8 SAFE MODE AND FAIL SAFE OPERATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-12, SI-10(3), SI-17; CCI-002855, CCI-002856, CCI-002857, CCI-002754, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775}

For all control system components with an applicable STIG or SRG, configure the component in accordance with all applicable STIGs and SRGs.

3.9 DEVICE POWER

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PE-11, PE-11(1); CCI-002955, CCI-000961. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to PE-9, PE-9(1); CCI-000952, CCI-002953, CCI-002954.}

For MODERATE Impact Systems: Provide control system with power supply meeting or exceeding the reliability of the controlled equipment. Powering control system devices using the same power source as the equipment controlled by the device is a permissible method of meeting this requirement. Without explicit approval from the government, do not install local uninterruptible power supplies (UPSs) as a source of device power.

3.9.1 Device Behavior on Loss of Power In MODERATE Impact Systems:

Application programs and configuration settings must be stored in devices in manner such that a loss of power does not result in a loss of the application program or configuration settings: Loss of power must never result in the loss of application programs, regardless of the length of time power is lost; and loss of power for less than 2,500 hours must not result in the loss of configured settings.

In the event of a loss of power, when power is restored, controllers and computers executing control logic (and the underlying equipment) must recover and resume their normal sequences of operation. Note that the sequence of operation may require specific actions (e.g. startup sequences) upon recovery from loss of power.

3.10 VULNERABILITY SCANNING

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to RA-5 RA-5(a), RA-5(b), RA-5(c), RA-5(d); CCI-001054, CCI-001055, CCI-000156, CCI-001641, CCI-001643, CCI-001057, CCI-001058, CCI-001059. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to RA-5(1), RA-5(5); CCI-001062, CCI-001067, CCI-001645, CCI-002906.}

All IP devices must be scannable, such that the device can be scanned by industry standard IP network scanning utilities without harm to the device, application, or functionality.

3.10.1 Controllers

Controllers shall be scannable by standard control system discovery tools or control system browsers and return meaningful status information including the network inputs and outputs for the controller. This information shall contain sufficient detail to detect vulnerabilities or exploits of the controller.

3.11 CONTROL SYSTEM CYBERSECURITY TESTING

{For Government Reference Only: For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-11(a), SA-11(b), SA-11(c), SA-11(d), SA-11(e); CCI-003171, CCI-003172, CCI-003173, CCI-003174, CCI-003175, CCI-003176, CCI-003177, CCI-003178.}

3.11.1 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures

Prepare Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures explaining step-by-step, the actions and expected results that will demonstrate that the control system meets the requirements of this Section.

Submit 4 copies of the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures. The Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.11.2 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Execution

Using the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures verify that the control system meets the requirements of this Section. UNLESS GOVERNMENT WITNESSING OF A TEST IS SPECIFICALLY WAIVED BY THE GOVERNMENT, PERFORM ALL TESTS WITH A GOVERNMENT WITNESS. If testing reveals deficiencies in the system, correct the deficiency and retest until successful.

3.11.3 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report

Prepare and submit a Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report documenting all tests performed and their results. Include all tests in the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures and any additional tests performed during testing. Document test failures and repairs conducted with the test results.

Submit four copies of the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report. The Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL, CYBERSECURITY VALIDATION SUPPORT

In addition to testing and testing support required by other Sections, provide a minimum of 16 hours of technical support for cybersecurity testing of control systems to support the DoD Risk Management Framework process Cybersecurity assessment of the control system. This support is independent of (and in addition to) the Control System Cybersecurity Testing specified in this section.

3.13 CYBERSECURITY TRAINING

Provide 16 hours of classroom and hands-on training for six Government personnel on the cybersecurity operation and maintenance of the control system provided. This training is in addition to and must be coordinated with control system training specified in other Sections.

The Government will provide the training location. Training must cover, at a minimum: (a) applying software and firmware updates, (b) user account creation, modification and deletion, (c) audit log upload procedures and (d) identification of privileged user interfaces and system impact of those interfaces. Training session must include a question and answer period during which government staff questions about cybersecurity aspects of the control system are answered.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 25 05 11.03

CYBERSECURITY FOR ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEM (ESS) FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL
SYSTEMS

05/21

PART 1 GENERAL

Many subparts in this Section contain text in curly braces ("{" and "}") indicating which cybersecurity control and control correlation identifier (CCI) the requirements of the subpart relate to. The text inside these curly braces is for Government reference only and enables coordination of the requirements of this Section with the RMF process throughout the design and construction process. Text in curly braces are not contractor requirements.

This Section refers to Security Requirements Guide (SRGs) and Security Technical Implementation Guide (STIGs). STIGs and SRGs are available online at the Information Assurance Support Environment (IASE) website at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/downloads/> and an SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool is available at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/>. Not all control system components have applicable STIGs or SRGs. The "Control Systems SRG" does not apply to work performed under this Section; all requirements within this section to apply applicable SRGs DO NOT include the "Control Systems SRG".

1.1 CONTROL SYSTEM APPLICABILITY

There are multiple versions of this Section associated with this project. Different versions have requirements applicable to different control systems. This specific Section applies only to the following control systems: Electronic Security System (ESS).

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section does not contain sufficient requirements to procure a control system and must be used in conjunction with other Sections which specify control systems. This Section adds cybersecurity requirements to the control systems specified in other Sections, and as these requirements are conditioned on the control system being provided, there may be requirements in this Section that will not apply to this project. All Sections containing facility-related control systems or control system components are related to the requirements of this Section. Review all specification sections to determine related requirements.

In cases where a requirement is specified in both this Section and in another Section, the more stringent requirement must be met. In cases where a requirement in this Section conflicts with the requirements of another Section such that both requirements cannot be met at the same time, request direction from the Contracting Officer Representative to determine which requirement applies to the project.

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 802.1x (2010) Local and Metropolitan Area
Networks - Port Based Network Access
Control

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST FIPS 140-2 (2001) Security Requirements for
Cryptographic Modules

NIST FIPS 201-2 (2013) Personal Identity Verification
(PIV) of Federal Employees and Contractors

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DODI 8551.01 (2014) Ports, Protocols, and Services
Management (PPSM)

DTM 08-060 (2008) Policy on Use of Department of
Defense (DoD) Information Systems -
Standard Consent Banner and User Agreement

1.4 DEFINITIONS

1.4.1 Administrator Account

An administrator account is an account with full permissions to a device, application, or operating system, including the ability to create and modify other user accounts.

Note that the operating system Administrator Account may be different than Administrator Accounts for applications hosted on that operating system. Also, most controllers will not have any support for accounts and will therefore not have an 'Administrator Account'.

1.4.2 Computer

A computer is one of the following:

- a. a device running a non-embedded desktop or server version of Microsoft Windows
- b. a device running a non-embedded version of MacOS
- c. a device running a non-embedded version of Linux
- d. a device running a version or derivative of the Android Operating System, where Android is considered separate from Linux
- e. a device running a version of Apple iOS

Unless otherwise indicated or clear from context use of the word "device"

in this Section includes computers.

1.4.3 Controller

A device other than a computer or Ethernet switch.

1.4.4 Mission Space

A device or media is in mission space if physical access to the device or media is controlled by the organization served by the device. For example, a VAV box controller in a suspended ceiling is in mission space if the VAV box serves that room; an electrical switchgear in an electrical room or an AHU in a mechanical room or on a rooftop may still be considered to be in mission space if the organization (mission) served by that switchgear or AHU controls access to the electrical room, mechanical room or rooftop.

1.4.5 Network

A network is a group of two or more devices that can communicate using a network protocol. Network protocols must provide a method for addressing devices on the network; a communication method that does not provide an addressing scheme is not a networked form of communication. Devices that communicate using a method of communication that does not support device addressing are not using a network.

1.4.6 Network Connected

A component is network connected (or "connected to a network") only when the device has a network transceiver which is directly connected to the network and implements the network protocol. A device lacking a network transceiver (and accompanying protocol implementation) can never be considered network connected. Note that (unlike many IT definitions of "Network Connected") a device connected to a non-IP network is still considered network connected (an IP connection or IP address is not required for a device to be network connected).

1.4.6.1 Wireless Network Connected

Any device that supports wireless network communication is network connected to a wireless network, regardless of whether the device is communicating using wireless. Unless physically disabled, devices with wireless transceivers support wireless, it is not sufficient to disable the wireless in software.

1.4.7 Network Media

The thing that provides the communication channel between the devices on a network. Typically wire, but might include wireless, fiber optic, or even power line (some network protocols allow sending network signals over power wiring).

1.4.8 User Account Support Levels

The support for user accounts is categorized in this Section as one of three levels:

1.4.8.1 FULLY Supported

Device supports configurable individual accounts. Accounts can be created, deleted, modified, etc. Privileges can be assigned to accounts. These devices support user-based (as opposed to role-based) authentication.

1.4.8.2 MINIMALLY Supported

Device supports a small, fixed number of accounts (perhaps only one). Accounts cannot be modified. A device with only a "User" and an "Administrator" account would fit this category. Similarly, a device with two PINs for logon - one for restricted and one for unrestricted rights would fit here (in other words, the accounts do not have to be the traditional "username and password" structure). These devices typically only support role-based authentication.

Examples of devices which MINIMALLY support accounts are a) a variable frequency drive with a single account which requires a PIN for access to configuration; and b) a room lighting control touchpad interface that has a single account.

1.4.8.3 NOT Supported

Device does not support any Access Enforcement therefore the whole concept of "account" is meaningless.

1.4.9 Manual Local Input

Manual Local Inputs are system analog or binary inputs that are adjustable by a person but are, by intrinsic hardware design, very limited in potential capabilities. Manual Local Inputs do not have touch screens or full keyboards, but may have a few buttons or dials to allow input. Manual Local Inputs do not have full graphic screens or dot-matrix displays, but may have simple lights (LEDs) or 7-segment displays. Manual Local Inputs do not have any sort of menu structure, each button has a single well-defined function.

Examples of Manual Local Inputs are H-O-A switches, simple thermostats, and disconnect switches.

1.4.10 Card Reader

A card reader is an input/output device whose primary function is to assist in two-factor authentication. A card reader must have an interface to read data from a card and may be able to write data to a card. A card reader may have a means (such as buttons, keypad, touchscreen, etc.) for a user to input a PIN or password, as well as a limited display.

1.4.11 User Interface

A User Interface (UI) is something other than a Manual Local Input or Card Reader that allows a person to interact with the system or device. Note that while a Card Reader is not by itself a User Interface, a User Interface may contain a Card Reader in order for it to authenticate its user. Within control systems, there are a wide range of User Interfaces.

Two important distinctions are 1) whether the user interface is Local or Remote, and 2) the effective capabilities of the User Interface to alter data, which is the "privilege" of the user interface (where effective

privilege available to a specific user at a specific user interface is the combination of the greatest privilege offered by the user interface and the specific account the user is logged into).

1.4.11.1 Local User Interface

A Local User Interface is a user interface where the physical hardware the user interacts with (keyboard, buttons, display, etc.) is physically part of the device being affected. All of the relevant characteristics of the user interface are embodied within a single device.

Note that a Local UI may be able to access data in a different device, Local versus Remote in this context refers to the user interface itself; the capability to access data in a different device is covered under "Full User Interface".

1.4.11.2 Remote User Interface

A Remote User Interface implements a Client/Server model where the physical hardware the user interacts with (Client) is physically distinct from the device being affected (Server). Most or all of the security and functionality characteristics of the user interface are defined by the Server, not the Client. The Client and Server communicate via a network connection. A common example of a remote user interface is a web-based interface where the browser (client) is generally on different hardware than the web server (server). A Remote UI remains a Remote UI even if the user happens to be at a Client on the same hardware as the Server. What is important is that a) the Client may be on different hardware than the Server and b) the majority of the security and functional characteristics of the interface are defined at the Server.

Note that this definition of "remote" is consistent with that generally used in the control industry but is not aligned with the NIST 800-53 definition of "Remote", which refers to "outside the system". The term "Remote" here better aligns with the NIST 800-53 definition of "Network" (remote from within the system) Access.

1.4.11.3 Types of User Interface (by capability)

User interfaces are also categorized by their capabilities as being Read Only, Limited, or Full.

1.4.11.3.1 Read-Only User Interface

A Read Only User Interface (also referred to as a View-Only User Interface) is a user interface that only allows for reading data, it does not allow (have the capability to) modify data. A Read Only User Interface may be either Local or Remote. A User Interface that is configured to be Read Only (by some other means than the interface itself, such as using configuration software on a laptop) is a Read-Only Interface. Note a Read Only User Interface may have buttons (or touch screen, etc.) allowing the user to navigate through the presentation of data.

Examples of a Read Only User Interfaces are a) a publicly viewable "energy dashboard" showing weather data and energy usage within a building and b) digital wayfinding signage.

1.4.11.3.2 Limited User Interface

A Limited User Interface is a user interface that - by design - can only alter information local to the user interface. Note that the determination of "alter" includes only direct interactions, it explicitly excludes interactions that might occur as secondary effects. For example, an interface changing the flow setpoint in a pump controller is a direct interaction, the subsequent change in flow (as well as any subsequent downstream changes in valve position) are not direct interactions.

Two examples of LIMITED UIs are: a) a variable speed drive has a Limited Local User Interface which allows the user to change properties within the drive, but does not allow affecting things outside the drive; and b) a typical home WiFi Router has a Limited Remote User Interface which allows configuration of the Router, but does not allow direct interaction with other devices.

1.4.11.3.3 Full User Interface

A Full User Interface can alter information in devices outside the device with the user interface. For example, a typical Local Display Panel is a Full Local User Interface while a browser-based front end is a Full Remote User Interface.

1.4.11.3.4 View-Only User Interface

See Read-Only User Interface

1.4.11.4 Other User Interface Terminology

In addition to defining whether a user interface is a Hardware Limited, Read-Only, Limited or Full, and whether it is Local or Remote, user interfaces are classified by whether they are writable or privileged.

1.4.11.4.1 Writable User Interface

Any User Interface that is not Read-Only is Writable. (Limited User Interfaces and Full User Interfaces are both writable user interfaces (as they are capable of changing a value)).

1.4.11.4.2 Privileged User Interface

A Privileged UI is a UI that has sufficient capabilities or functionality that it requires specific cybersecurity measures to be put in place to limit its unauthorized use. Ultimately, whether a specific user interface is considered a Privileged User Interface must be determined by usage. Unless otherwise specified, user interfaces can be determined to be privileged or not using the following:

- a. Read-Only User Interfaces are not privileged user interfaces.
- b. Full User Interfaces are privileged user interfaces.
- c. User interfaces that allow for configuration of auditing or allows for modification or deletion of audit logs are privileged user interface.
- d. User interfaces that allow for reprogramming a network connected device is a privileged user interface.

- e. Except as specified above, a Limited User Interface must be determined to be privileged or not based on the specific capabilities and use case of the user interface. In general however, user interfaces that do not offer significant capabilities above and beyond those available at that location via other means (e.g. such as a disconnect switch, breaker, or hand-off-auto switch, or physical attack) are not privileged.

1.4.12 Wireless Network

Any network that communicates without using wires or fiber optics as the communication media. Wireless networks include: WiFi, Bluetooth, ZigBee, cellular, satellite, 900 MHz radio, 2.4 GHz, free space optical, point-to-point laser, and IR.

1.4.13 Wired Broadcast Network

Wired Broadcast Networks are any network, such as powerline carrier networks and modem (wired telephony), that use wire-based technologies where there is not a clearly defined boundary for signal propagation.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.5.1 Points of Contact

Coordinate with the following Points of Contact as indicated in this Section and as required. Not all projects will require coordination with all Points of Contact. When coordination is required and no Point of Contact is indicated, coordinate with the Liberty Garrison serviced by DPW.

1.5.2 Coordination

Coordinate the execution of this Section with the execution of all other Sections related to control systems as indicated in the paragraph RELATED REQUIREMENTS. Items that must be considered when coordinating project efforts include but are not limited to:

- a. If requesting permission for wireless or wired broadcast communication, the Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication Request submittal must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.
- b. If requesting permission for alternate account lock permissions, the Device Account Lock Exception Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.
- c. If requesting permission for the use of a device with multiple physical connections to IP networks, the Multiple IP Connection Device Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.
- d. Wireless testing may be required as part of the control system testing. See requirements for the Wireless Communication Test Report submittal.
- e. If the Device Audit Record Upload Software is to be installed on a computer not being provided as part of the control system, coordination is required to identify the computer on which to install the software.

- f. The Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule must be coordinated with other work that will be interconnected to, and interconnections must be approved by the Government before relying on them for system functionality.
- g. Cybersecurity testing support must be coordinated across control systems and with the Government cybersecurity testing schedule.
- h. Passwords must be coordinated with the indicated contact for the project site.
- i. If applicable, HTTPS web server certificates must be obtained from the indicated HTTPS Certificate Point of Contact.
- j. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must be provided for each contractor using contractor owned computers.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication Request; G

Device Account Lock Exception Request; G

Multiple Ethernet Connection Device Request; G

Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule; G

Protection of Information At Rest Proposal; G

Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Network Communication Report; G

Cybersecurity Riser Diagram; G

SD-03 Product Data

Control System Cybersecurity Documentation; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Wireless Communication Test Report; G

Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures; G

Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report; G

SD-07 Certificates

Software Licenses; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Confidential Password Report; G

Enclosure Keys; G

Software and Configuration Backups; G

Auditing Front End Software; G

System Maintenance Tool Software; G

Control System Scanning Tools; G

STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report; G

Control System Inventory Report; G

Integrity Verification Software; G

1.7 QUALITY CONTROL

1.7.1 Certifications and Qualifications

For the Electronic Security System (ESS) control system:

1.7.1.1 Control System Cybersecurity Subject Matter Expert

The individual will oversee all work within this specification. This position requires that the individual currently meets Information Assurance Manager Level II Certification in accordance with DoDD 8140 Cyberspace Workforce Management.

Individuals for this position should have experience securing DoD systems and with Risk Management Framework. Control System Experience is highly desirable.

Resumes should be submitted to the Government within 14 days after notice to proceed. All certifications to include computing environment must be in effect prior to beginning work.

1.7.1.2 Computing Environment (System Administrator) and Networking Personnel

The individual will complete all work at the computing level environment. This position requires that the individual meets Information Assurance Technical Level II Certification in accordance with DoDD 8140 Cyberspace Workforce Management.

Individuals for this position should have experience securing DoD systems, Security Information Technical Guides, associated tools and practices.

Control System Experience is highly desirable.

Resumes should be submitted to the Government within 14 days after notice to proceed. All certifications to include computing environment must be in effect prior to beginning work.

1.7.1.3 Additional Statement

Control System Cybersecurity Subject Matter Expert and Computing Environment and Network Personnel can serve across the contract.

1.8 CYBERSECURITY DOCUMENTATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-7; CCI-003071}

1.8.1 Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report

For each model of network connected or network infrastructure device, use the DISA SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool (available at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/>) to identify applicable STIGs or SRGs and provide a report indicating applicable STIGs and SRGs for each model.

1.8.2 Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to CA-3(b), PL-8, SC-7(9), SC-7(11); CCI-000258, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075, CCI-002398, CCI-002399, CCI-002401, CCI-002402, CCI-002403. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart also relates to SC-7; CCI-001126, CCI-001109}

Provide a completed Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule documenting network connections between the installed system and other systems. Provide the following information for each device directly communicating between systems: Device Identifier, Device Description, Transport layer Protocol, Network Address, Port (if applicable), MAC (Layer 2) address (if applicable), Media, Application Protocol, Service (if applicable), Descriptive Purpose of communication. For communication with other authorized systems also provide the Foreign Destination and POC for Destination. For MODERATE Impact Systems: Also describe the impact of loss of the connection on the control system. If other control system Sections used on this project include submittals documenting this information, provide copies of those submittals to meet this requirement.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule as an editable Microsoft Excel file (a template Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule in Excel format is available at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1>)

1.8.3 Network Communication Report

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CA-9, PL-8; CCI-003075; CCI-002102, CCI-002103, CCI-002104, CCI-002105, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075 and also the submittal requirements associated with CM-6, CM-7, SC-8 and SC-41 including CM-7(3), CCI-000388.}

Provide a network communication report. For each networked device, document the communication characteristics of the device including communication protocols, services used, encryption employed, and a general

description of what information is communicated over the network. For each device using IP, document all TCP and UDP ports used. For non-IP communications, document communication protocol and media used. If other control system Sections used on this project include submittals documenting this information, provide copies of those submittals to meet this requirement.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Network Communication Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

1.8.4 Control System Inventory Report

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CM-8(a), SI-17, IA-3; CCI-000389, CCI-000392, CCI-000398, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775, CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958}

Provide a Control System Inventory report using the Inventory Spreadsheet listed under this Section at

<https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1>
documenting all devices, including networked devices, network infrastructure devices, non-networked devices, input devices (e.g. sensors) and output devices (e.g. actuators). For each device provide all applicable information for which there is a field on the spreadsheet in accordance with the instructions on the spreadsheet.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Control System Inventory Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

1.8.5 Software and Configuration Backups

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-10; CCI-000550, CCI-000551, CCI-000552}

For each computer on which software is installed under this project, provide a recovery image of the final as-built computer. This image must allow for bare-metal restore such that restoration of the image is sufficient to restore system operation to the imaged state without the need for re-installation of software. If additional user permissions are required to meet this requirement, coordinate the creation of the image with the identified Government Computer Access Point of Contact.

For all ethernet switches provide a backup of the switch configuration. For all controllers, provide a backup of the controller configuration and the source code for all loaded application programs (all software that is not common to every controller of the same manufacturer and model).

If any or all of these are provided under another Section, provide documentation indicating this and referencing those submittals.

1.8.6 Cybersecurity Riser Diagram

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-2(a), PL-8; CCI-003051, CCI-003053, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075}

Provide a cybersecurity riser diagram of the complete control system

including all network and device hardware. If the control system specifications require a riser diagram submittal, provide a copy of that submittal as the cybersecurity riser diagram. Otherwise, provide a riser diagram in one-line format.

1.8.7 STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report

For every component (device or software) with an applicable STIG or SRG in the Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report, provide a result report documenting compliance with the STIG or SRG requirements. For components which are scannable by the SCAP (security content automation protocol) tool (available online at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/scap>), provide the SCAP report and raw scan results.

For every component (device or software) with manufacturer provided cybersecurity documentation, procedure, or method for secure configuration or installation, provide a report documenting how the component was configured and any deviation from the manufacturer instructions.

1.8.8 Control System Cybersecurity Documentation

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-5 (a),(b),(c); CCIs: CCI-003124, CCI-003125, CCI-003126, CCI-003127, CCI-003128, CCI-003129, CCI-003130, CCI-003131}

Provide a Control System Cybersecurity Documentation submittal containing the indicated information for each device and software application.

1.8.8.1 Software Applications

For all software applications running on computers provide:

- a. administrator documentation that describes secure configuration of the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. administrator documentation that describes secure installation of the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003125}
- c. administrator documentation that describes secure operation of the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- d. administrator documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003127}
- e. administrator documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003128}
- f. user documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the software and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003129}
- g. user documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the software in a more secure manner {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003130}

- h. user documentation that describes user responsibilities in maintaining the security of the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003131}

1.8.8.2 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Control System Cybersecurity Documentation requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section, provide:

- a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. Documentation that describes secure installation of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003125}
- c. Documentation that describes secure operation of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}
- d. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003127}
- e. Documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003128}
- f. Documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the device and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003129}
- g. Documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003130}
- h. Documentation that describes user responsibilities in maintaining the security of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003131}

1.9 SOFTWARE LICENSING

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SI-2(a), SI-2(c), SI-7(14); CCI-001227, CCI-002605, CCI-002737}

For all software provided that has not already been licensed to the government or project site, provide a license to the project site for a period of no less than 5 years, and the license must also include the following software updates:

- a. Security and bug-fix patches issued by the software manufacturer.
- b. Security patches to address any vulnerability identified in the National Vulnerability Database at <http://nvd.nist.gov> with a Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) severity rating of MEDIUM or higher.

Provide a single Software Licenses submittal with documentation of the software licenses for all software provided

1.10 CYBERSECURITY DURING CONSTRUCTION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-18, SA-3; CCI-000258}

In addition to the control system cybersecurity requirements indicated in this section, meet following requirement throughout the construction process.

1.10.1 Contractor Computer Equipment

Contractor owned computers may be used for construction. Contractor computers connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

1.10.1.1 Operating System

The operating system must be an operating system currently supported by the manufacturer of the operating system. The operating system must be current on security patches and operating system manufacturer required updates.

1.10.1.2 Anti-Malware Software

The computer must run anti-malware software from a reputable software manufacturer. Anti-malware software must be a version currently supported by the software manufacturer, must be current on all patches and updates, and must use the latest definitions file. Computers used on this project must be scanned using the installed software at least once per day.

1.10.1.3 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for computers, applications, and web-based applications supporting passwords must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum of eight characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.10.1.4 User-Based Authentication

Each user must have a unique account; sharing of a single account between multiple users is prohibited.

1.10.1.5 Demonstration of Compliance

The Government has the right to require demonstration of computer compliance with these requirements at any time during the project.

1.10.1.6 Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company using contractor owned computers. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at

<https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1>
Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company.

1.10.2 Temporary IP Networks

Temporary contractor-installed IP networks may be used during construction. When used, temporary contractor-installed IP networks connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

1.10.2.1 Network Boundaries and Connections

The network must not extend outside the project site and must not connect to any IP network other than those specifically provided or furnished for this project. Any and all access to the network from outside the project site is prohibited.

1.10.3 Government Access to Network

Government personnel must be allowed to have complete and immediate access to the network at any time in order to verify compliance with this specification.

1.10.4 Temporary Wireless IP Networks

In addition to the other requirements on temporary IP networks, temporary wireless IP (WiFi) networks, when permitted, must not interfere with existing wireless networks, must use WPA2 security and must not broadcast the network name (SSID). Network names (SSID) for wireless networks must be changed from their default values.

1.10.5 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for all network devices and network access must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum 8 characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.10.6 Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company implementing a temporary IP network. Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1>. Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company. If no temporary IP networks will be used, provide a single copy of the Statement indicating this.

1.11 CYBERSECURITY DURING WARRANTY PERIOD

All work performed on the control system after acceptance must be performed using Government Furnished Equipment or equipment specifically and individually approved by the Government.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

All products used on this project must meet the indicated requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project.

2.1 ETHERNET SWITCH

Provide Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) Layer 2 Ethernet switches with the following capabilities, and with an interface to support switch configuration for these capabilities:

2.1.1 Required Functionality

Switches must:

- a. Copper Ethernet ports must auto negotiate for 10, 100 and 1000 megabits-per-second links.
- b. Be capable of implementing port level access control by MAC address and limit the number of MAC addresses to one MAC address per port.
- c. For MODERATE Impact Systems, be capable of implementing per-port access control lists (ACLs) where the list can be filtered by source and destination IP addresses, and by source and destination UDP or TCP ports.

2.1.2 Configuration Requirements

Switches must:

- a. Support configuration save and restore.
- b. Support both manual IP address assignment and acquisition of a dynamic IP address via Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).
- c. Be capable of limiting access for configuration to one or more of: a web interface using HTTPS, a command line interface using SSH, or an SNMP connection using SNMP version 3 or later.

2.2 DAISY CHAIN IP CONTROLLERS

Controllers used as Daisy Chain IP Controllers must be IP controllers with exactly two Ethernet network connections and basic built-in switch capabilities to allow implementation of an Ethernet network in a daisy chain architecture. Switches incorporated by Daisy Chain IP Controllers are not required to meet the requirements for Ethernet Switches as defined in this Section.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CYBERSECURITY HARDENING AND CONFIGURATION GUIDES

Install, configure, and harden all hardware and software furnished on this project in accordance with manufacturer provided documentation, procedures, or methods for secure configuration or installation. Do not implement specific hardening actions if that action would conflict with required functionality or another requirement of this Section.

3.2 NETWORK REQUIREMENTS

3.2.1 Information Flow Enforcement In MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-4; CCI-001368, CCI-001414, CCI-001548, CCI-001549, CCI-001550,

CCI-001551}

Install and configure Ethernet switches to block all traffic on all ports not required by the control protocol.

3.2.2 Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-18, AC-18(3); CCI-001438, CCI-001439, CCI-002323, CCI-001441, CCI-002252}

Unless explicitly authorized by the Government, do not use any wireless or wired broadcast communication.

3.2.2.1 Wireless and Wired Broadcast IP Communications

Do not install wireless or wired broadcast IP networks, including: do not install a wireless access point; do not install or configure an ad-hoc wireless network; do not install or configure a WiFi Direct communication.

When explicitly authorized by the Government, wireless IP communication may be used to communicate with an existing wireless network.

3.2.2.2 Non-IP Wireless Communication

For MODERATE Impact Systems: When non-IP wireless communication is explicitly authorized by the Government, the radios must meet NIST FIPS 140-2 Level 2.

3.2.2.3 Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication Request

Provide a report documenting the proposed use of wireless or wired broadcast communication prior to device selection using the Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication Request Schedule at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1>. If there is no proposed use of wireless or wired broadcast communication, provide a document indicating this instead of the Request Schedule.

For each device proposed to use wireless or wired broadcast communication show: the device identifier, a description of the device, the location of the device, the device identifiers of other devices communicating with the device, the protocol used for communication, encryption type and strength. For wireless communication, also show: RF Frequency, Radiated Power in dBm (decibel with a milliwatt reference), free-space range, and the expected as-installed range.

3.2.2.4 Wireless Communication Testing

As part of Performance Verification Testing (PVT), conduct testing of wireless communication for all devices indicated on the approved Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication Request as requiring testing.

To test wireless communication, test for wireless network reception at multiple points along the wireless test boundary in the vicinity of the wireless device, and record whether a network connection can be established at each point. The wireless test boundary is the facility fence line. If wireless testing is required, provide a Wireless Communication Test Report documenting the testing points and results at each point for each wireless device.

3.2.3 Non-IP Control Networks

When control system specifications require particular communication protocols, use only those communication protocols and only as specified. Do not implement any other communication protocol.

When control system specifications do not indicate requirements for communication protocols, use only those protocols required for operation of the system as specified.

3.2.4 IP Control Networks

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to CM-6(a), CM-7(a), CM-7(b), CM-7(1)(b), SC-41; CCI-001588, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-000381, CCI-000382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546. For Moderate Impact Systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to SC-5(1), SC-5(2); CCI-001094 CCI-001095}

IP Networks must be Ethernet networks and must use switches which are Ethernet Switches or Daisy Chain IP Controllers as defined in this Section. Do not use nonsecure functions, ports, protocols and services as defined in DODI 8551.01 unless those ports, protocols and services are specifically required by the control system specifications or otherwise specifically authorized by the Government. Do not use ports, protocols and services that are not specified in the control system specifications or required for operation of the control system.

For MODERATE Impact Systems, unless explicitly authorized, do not use IP networks if the same control functionality is available through the use of non-IP networks.

3.2.4.1 IP Network Routers

Do not install any device that performs IP routing.

3.2.4.2 IP Devices With Multiple Ethernet Connection

Except for Ethernet Switches and Daisy Chain IP Controllers, devices must not have more than one Ethernet connection to IP networks unless doing so is required by the project specifications and the specific application is approved. If a device with Multiple Ethernet Connections to IP networks is required, provide a Multiple Ethernet Connection Device Request using the Multiple Ethernet Connection Device Request Template at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1> to request approval for each device. If a device with Multiple Ethernet Connections to IP networks is not required, instead provide a document stating that no approval is being requested.

3.2.5 Cryptographic Protection

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to IA-2(9), IA-3(1), SC-8, SC-13, SC-23(1), SC-23(3); CCI-001942, CCI-001959, CCI-001967, CCI-002418, CCI-002449, CCI-002450, CCI-001185, CCI-001188, CCI-001664.}

All remote user interfaces must use HTTPS for all traffic between the user interface client and user interface server.

3.2.6 Device Identification and Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-3; CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to SC-23, SC-23(5); CCI-001184, CCI-002470.}

All computers must support and implement IEEE 802.1x for device authentication to the network.

3.2.6.1 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Device Identification and Authentication requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section: Devices using Ethernet must support IEEE 802.1x. Devices using HTTP as a control protocol must use HTTPS instead.

3.2.7 Cryptographic Module Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-7; CCI-000803}

For devices (including but not limited to NIST FIPS 140-2 compliant radios) that have STIG/SRGs related to cryptographic module authentication (CCI-000803), comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.

3.3 ACCESS CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

3.3.1 User Accounts

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-2(a), AC-3, AC-6(1), AC-6(10), AC-6(2), AC-6(9), CM-11(2), and IA-2; CCI-002110, CCI-000213, CCI-002235, CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-002235, CCI-000039, CCI-001419, CCI-002234, CCI-001812, and CCI-000764. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relate to AC-2 (2), AC-2(3), AC-2(4), AC-6(1), and CM-5(1); CCI-001361, CCI-000017, CCI-000217, CCI-000018, CCI-001403, CCI-001404, CCI-001405, CCI-002130, CCI-001683, CCI-001684, CCI-001685, CCI-001686, CCI-002132, CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-001813.}

Any user interface supporting user accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must limit access according to specified limitations for each account. Install and configure any device having a STIG or SRG in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

All user interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement user-based authentication where each account is uniquely assigned to a specific user. User interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement at least three (3) levels of user account privilege including: 1) an account with read-only permissions 2) an account with full permissions including account creation and modification and 3) an account with greater permissions than read-only but without account creation and modification.

3.3.1.1 Computers

All computer operating systems must FULLY support user accounts and implement accounts for access. Each control system software application not supporting accounts and running on a computer must be installed such that use of the software is restricted by the computer operating system to

specific users.

Applications running on computers shall not require the user be logged in to a computer operating system administrator account for normal operation. It is permissible to require the computer operating system administrator account for initial application installation and configuration.

3.3.1.2 Controllers

For user interfaces provided by controllers, provide access control in accordance with the User Interface Requirements table for the applicable control system and user interface type.

- a. For table entries of "NA": NA means Not Applicable, there are no interfaces in this category.
- b. For table entries of "None Required": The user interface is not required to support user accounts.
- c. For table entries of "MINIMALLY": The user interface must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.
- d. For table entries of "FULLY": The user interface must at FULLY support user accounts.
- e. For table entries of "KEY": The user interface must have physical security in the form of either a key lock on the interface itself or be furnished inside a locked enclosure. Where this is required for a read only interface, this lock must prevent viewing of data on the interface; for other interfaces, this lock must prevent using the interface to alter data.
- f. For table entries of "Physical Security": For Local FULL interfaces, the interface must be located inside mission space. For Local Limited (not FULL) interfaces, the user interface must either a) be located within mission space or b) be protected by physical security at least as good as the control devices (and equipment controlled by the control devices) affected by the interface. For purposes of this requirement, 'affected' includes controllers with data that can be directly altered by the interface, as well as mechanical and/or electrical equipment directly controlled by those controllers, but does not include other interactions.
- g. Entries of the form "X and Y" must meet both the requirement indicated for X and the requirement indicated for Y. For example, an entry of "MINIMALLY and Physical Security" indicates the user interface must both MINIMALLY support accounts and have physical security.
- h. Entries of the form "X or Y" must meet either the requirement indicated for X or the requirement indicated for Y.

3.3.1.2.1 Electronic Security System (ESS) Control Systems

User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact ESS Systems	
<u>User Interface Type</u>	<u>Access Control Requirement</u> (See note 3)
Local Read Only	FULLY
Local Limited, Non-privileged	FULLY
Local Limited, Privileged	FULLY
Local Full	FULLY
Remote Read Only	FULLY
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	FULLY
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged 3)Devices outside mission space require physical security protections as indicated (in "PHYSICAL SECURITY IN MODERATE IMPACT SYSTEMS")	

3.3.1.3 Additional User Account Expiration Requirements In MODERATE Impact Systems:

In addition to other user account requirements, user account expiration and auditing must be configured as indicated.

3.3.1.3.1 For Control System Applications Running on Computers

If temporary accounts are supported, expire temporary accounts 72 hours after creation. Expire all other accounts after 35 days of inactivity.

3.3.1.3.2 For Other Control System Devices FULLY Supporting Accounts

If temporary accounts are supported, expire temporary accounts 72 hours after creation. Expire all other accounts after 365 days of inactivity .

3.3.2 Unsuccessful Logon Attempts

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-7 (a), AC-7 (b); CCI-000043, CCI-000044, CCI-001423, CCI-002236, CCI-002237, CCI-002238}

Except for high availability user interfaces indicated as exempt, devices must meet the indicated requirements for handling unsuccessful logon

attempts. If a device cannot meet these requirements, document device capabilities to protect from subsequent logon attempts and propose alternate protections in a Device Account Lock Exception Request submittal. Do not implement alternate protection measures in lieu of the indicated requirements without explicit permission from the Government. If no Device Account Lock Exceptions are requested, provide a document stating that no approval is being requested as the Device Account Lock Exception Request.

3.3.2.1 Devices FULLY Supporting Accounts

Devices which FULLY support accounts must meet the following requirements.

- a. It must lock the user account when three unsuccessful logon attempts occur within a 15 minute interval.
- b. Once an account is locked, the account must stay locked until unlocked by an administrator. If the account being locked is the sole administrator account on the device, the account must stay locked for 1 hour and then automatically unlock.
- c. Once the indicated number of unsuccessful logon attempts occurs, delay further logon prompts by 5 seconds.

3.3.2.2 High Availability Interfaces Exempt from Unsuccessful Logon Attempts Requirements

3.3.3 System Use Notification

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-8; CCI-000048, CCI-002247, CCI-002243, CCI-002244, CCI-002245, CCI-002246, CCI-000050, CCI-002248}

3.3.3.1 System Use Notification for Remote User Interfaces

Remote user interfaces must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060 on screen.

3.3.3.2 System Use Notification for Local User Interfaces

Devices which are connected to a network and have a local user interface must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060 on the user interface screen if capable of doing so and must have a permanently affixed label with an approved banner from DTM 08-060 if unable to display the warning banner on the screen. Where it is impractical (perhaps due to device size) to affix the label to the device, affix the label to the device enclosure.

Labels must be machine printed or engraved, plastic or metal, designed for permanent installation, must use a font no smaller than 14 point, and must provide a high contrast between font and background colors.

3.3.4 Session Lock and Session Termination Requirements In MODERATE Impact Systems:

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-11(a), AC-11(b), AC-11(1), AC-12, SC-10; AC-10; CCI-000058, CCI-000059, CCI-000056, CCI-000057, CCI-000060, CCI-002360, CCI-002361,

CCI-001133, CCI-001134, CCI-000054, CCI-000055, CCI-002252}

3.3.4.1 Session Termination

When session termination is required for a User Interface, the User Interface must implement session termination a) based on manual initiation, or b) based on lack of activity, or c) based on either manual initiation or lack of activity, as indicated.

Session Termination must result in logging out the user. A logged out User Interface may only perform actions as indicated in the "Permitted Actions Without Identification or Authentication" subpart of this Section or display a publicly viewable image or blank screen. User Interfaces must remain logged out (session terminated) until a user enters correct authentication information, which must initiate a new session. All User Interfaces running on computers and all Remote User Interfaces must also terminate network connections as part of session termination.

3.3.4.2 Session Lock

When session lock is required for a User Interface, the User Interface must implement session lock a) based on manual initiation, or b) based on lack of activity, or c) based on either manual initiation or lack of activity, as indicated.

Session lock must result in the User Interface being suspended and the user interface must display a publicly viewable image or blank screen. No interaction with the user interface shall be possible until either a) the same user enters valid authentication information, in which case that session must be continued, or b) until a different user enters valid authentication information at which point the first session must be terminated and a new session initiated for the new user.

3.3.4.3 Session Lock and Termination for Computers

User Interface sessions provided by computer operating systems must support the requirement for both Session Lock and Session Termination. Session Lock and Session Termination must be capable of being initiated by the user and must also be initiated by lack of activity. Session Lock must occur after 15 minutes of inactivity, and Session Termination must occur after 30 minutes total of inactivity (including, not in addition to, the time for Session Lock). When a user initiates a new session, terminate existing sessions if necessary to limit the total number of concurrent sessions to 1.

Other User Interface sessions running on computers (for local user interfaces) or hosted on a computer (for remote user interfaces) and supporting accounts must support user initiation of Session Termination and session lock. Session lock may be initiated by user initiation or automatically after 15 minutes of inactivity. In addition, remote User Interface sessions must also initiate Session Termination after 30 minutes of inactivity .

3.3.4.4 Session Lock and Termination for Controllers

Writable Remote User Interfaces must support requirements for Session Termination, and must both be capable of being initiated by the user and initiated by lack of activity. Session Termination must initiate after 30 minutes of inactivity.

Local User Interfaces supporting accounts must support manual initiation of Session Termination. Privileged Local User Interfaces must also support timed initiation of Session Termination, with Session Termination initiated at 30 minutes of inactivity. They must also support session lock, where session lock may be initiated by user initiation or automatically after 15 minutes of inactivity.

3.3.5 Permitted Actions Without Identification or Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-14; CCI-000061, CCI-000232}

The control system must require identification and authentication before allowing any actions by a user acting from a user interface which MINIMALLY or FULLY supports accounts.

3.3.6 Physical Security in MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to PE-3(1), PE-4, PE-5, SC-7(a), SC-7(c), SC-8, SC-8(1); CCI-000928, CCI-002926, CCI-000936, CCI-002930, CCI-002931, CCI-000937, CCI-001097, CCI-001109, CCI-002418, CCI-002419, CCI-002421.}

3.3.6.1 Physical Security for Media

3.3.6.1.1 Physical Security for Media Inside Mission Space

Install all non-IP network media located inside of the mission space in conduit. Install all IP network media located inside of the mission space in intermediate metallic conduit.

3.3.6.1.2 Physical Security for Media Outside Mission Space

Install all network media (both IP and non-IP) located outside of the mission space in rigid metallic conduit.

3.3.6.2 Physical Security for Devices

Install all devices (computers and controllers) which are located outside of mission space in lockable enclosures. (Recall that per definition of mission space, a room controlled by the mission is mission space regardless of whether it is contiguous with other mission space.)

Install all controllers connected to an IP network in lockable enclosures (both inside and outside of mission space).

3.3.6.3 Physical Security for User Interfaces

Physical security requirements for User Interfaces are specified in the preceeding paragraphs of this Section.

3.3.7 Enclosures

Prior to final acceptance of the system, lock all lockable enclosures. Submit an Enclosure Keys submittal with all copies of keys for all enclosures and a key inventory list documenting all keys. Label each key with the matching enclosure identifier.

3.4 USER IDENTIFICATION AND AUTHENTICATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-2, IA-2(1), IA-2(12), IA-5 IA-5(b), IA-5(c), IA-5(e), IA-5(g), IA-5(1), IA-5(11); CCI-000764, CCI-000765, CCI-001953, CCI-001954, CCI-001544, CCI-001989, CCI-000182, CCI-001610, CCI-000192, CCI-000193, CCI-000194, CCI-000205, CCI-001619, CCI-001611, CCI-001612, CCI-001613, CCI-001614, CCI-000195, CCI-001615, CCI-000196, CCI-000197, CCI-000199, CCI-000198, CCI-001616, CCI-001617, CCI-000200, CCI-001618, CCI-002041, CCI-002002, CCI-002003. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart also relates to AC-6 (1), AC-6(10), AC-6(2), AC-6(9)IA-2(4), IA-5(13); CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-002235, CCI-000039, CCI-001419, CCI-002234, CCI-000768, CCI-002007.}

This subpart indicates requirements for specific methods of identification and authentication for users and user accounts. Where these requirements conflict apply the following order of precedence: 1) If present, Device Specific Requirements take precedence over any other requirements; and then 2) multifactor authentication requirements take precedence over password requirements.

3.4.1 User Identification and Authentication for All System Types

Unless otherwise indicated, all user interfaces supporting accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must implement Identification and Authorization via passwords.

For MODERATE Impact Systems: User interfaces provided by computer operating systems must implement multifactor authentication via PIV. Software running on computers and computer operating systems must manage cached authenticators in accordance with the relevant STIGs. All other devices and software must not use cached authenticators.

3.4.2 User Identification and Authentication for Specific System Types

System specific requirements are in addition to and supersede those indicated for all system types. When no additional requirements are indicated for a specific system type the requirements for all systems still apply to that system type.

3.4.3 Implementation of Identification and Authorization Requirements

Identification and Authorization must be met by one of the following methods:

- a. Direct implementation in the user interface.
- b. For user interfaces on a computer: inheriting the Identification and Authorization from the computer operating system, either by the operating system limiting access to specific applications by user, or by the application itself having permissions based on the user logged into the computer.
- c. For remote interfaces: an implementation shared between the remote user interface server and the remote user interface client. For example, a requirement for PIV authentication may be met on a remote user interface by a PIV reader on a web browser client which sends the authentication information via HTTPS to the remote server.

3.4.4 Password-Based Authentication Requirements

3.4.4.1 Passwords for Software and Applications Running on Computers

All software and applications running on computers supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of 12 characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character. The list of supported special characters must include at least 4 separate characters.
- f. Password must have a minimum lifetime of 24 hours.
- g. Password must have a maximum lifetime of 60 days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- h. Password must differ from previous five passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least 50 percent of the characters (where location is significant, a character may be reused if it is in a different position).
- i. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.4.4.2 Passwords for Controllers FULLY Supporting Accounts

All controllers FULLY supporting accounts and supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of twelve (12) characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character. The list of supported special characters must include at least 4 separate characters.
- f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of sixty (60) days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- g. Password must differ from previous five (5) passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least fifty percent of the characters.
- h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.4.4.3 Passwords for Remote Interfaces

Passwords for connecting to a Remote User Interface supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of twelve (12) characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character. The list of supported special characters must include at least 4 separate characters.
- f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of 60 days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- g. Password must differ from previous five passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least 50 percent of the characters (where location is significant, a character may be reused if it is in a different position).
- h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.4.4.4 Password Configuration and Reporting

For all devices with a password, change the password from the default password. Coordinate selection of passwords with the Password Point of Contact. Do not use the same password for more than one device unless specifically instructed to do so. Provide a Confidential Password Report documenting the password for each device and describing the procedure to change the password for each device.

Do not provide the Password Summary Report in electronic format. Provide two hardcopies of the Password Summary Report, each copy in its own sealed envelope.

3.4.5 Authenticator Feedback

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to IA-6; CCI-000206}

Devices must never show authentication information, including passwords, on a display. Devices that momentarily display a character as it is entered, and then obscure the character, are acceptable. For devices that have STIGs or SRGs related to obscuring of authenticator feedback (CCI-000206), comply with the requirements of those STIGs/SRGs.

3.5 CYBERSECURITY AUDITING

Where an auditing requirement exists for email notification, notify via email the application administrator and Information System Security Officer (ISSO) of the event. Coordinate with the Email Address Point of Contact for email addresses. If outgoing email is not available to the

system, configure the system for these notifications for future support of outgoing email.

3.5.1 Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-2(a), AU-2(c), AU-2(d), AU-3, AU-10, AU-12, AU-13(3), AU-14(b), AU-14(1), AU-14(2), AU-14(3), CM-5(1), SC-7 (9); CCI-000123, CCI-001571, CCI-000125, CCI-001485, CCI-000130, CCI-000131, CCI-000132, CCI-00133, CCI-000134, CCI-001487, CCI-000166, CCI-001899, CCI-000169, CCI-001459, CCI-000171, CCI-000172, CCI-001910, CCI-001914, CCI-001919, CCI-001464, CCI-001462, CCI-001920, CCI-001814, CCI-002400. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to AU-3 (1); CCI-000135, CCI-001488}

For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit events, content of audit records or audit generation, comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.

If auditing requirements can be met using existing control system alarm or event capabilities, those existing capabilities may be used to meet these requirements.

3.5.1.1 Computers

For each computer, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure computers to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event

3.5.1.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each computer to audit the following events:

- a. Successful and unsuccessful attempts to access, modify, or delete privileges, security objects, security levels, or categories of information (e.g. classification levels)
- b. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts
- c. Successful logouts
- d. Privileged activities or other system level access
- e. Concurrent logons from different workstations
- f. Successful and unsuccessful accesses to objects
- g. All program initiations
- h. All direct access to the information system
- i. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations. For MODERATE Impact Systems, also provide email notification when these audit events occur.
- j. All kernel module load, unload, and restart

3.5.1.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each computer to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

- a. What type of event occurred
- b. When the event occurred
- c. Where the event occurred
- d. The source of the event
- e. The outcome of the event
- f. The identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event
- h. For MODERATE Impact Systems: For all privileged commands, full-text recording of the executed command and the user executing the command

For MODERATE Impact Systems: Audit records must provide sufficient detail to reconstruct events to determine cause of compromise and magnitude of damage, malfunction, or security violation.

3.5.1.2 Default Requirements for Control System Controllers

For control system controllers where Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation are not otherwise indicated in this Section:

3.5.1.2.1 Controllers Which FULLY Support Accounts

For each controller which FULLY supports accounts, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure controllers to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event.

3.5.1.2.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each controller to audit the following events:

- a. Successful and unsuccessful attempts to access, modify, or delete privileges, security objects, security levels, or categories of information (e.g. classification levels)
- b. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts
- c. Successful logouts
- d. Concurrent logons from different workstations
- e. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations. For MODERATE Impact Systems, also provide email notification when these audit events occur.
- f. All kernel module load, unload, and restart
- g. For privileged user interfaces in MODERATE Impact Systems: All user commands.

3.5.1.2.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each controller to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

- a. what type of event occurred
- b. when the event occurred
- c. where the event occurred
- d. the source of the event
- e. the outcome of the event
- f. the identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event
- g. For privileged user interfaces in MODERATE Impact Systems: Full text recording of the executed command and the user executing the command.

For MODERATE Impact Systems: Audit records must provide sufficient detail to reconstruct events to determine cause of compromise and magnitude of damage, malfunction, or security violation

3.5.1.2.2 Controllers Which Do Not FULLY Support Accounts

For each controller which does not FULLY support accounts configure the controller to audit all controller shutdown and startup events and to record for each event the type of event and when the event occurred.

3.5.2 Audit Time Stamps

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-8; CCI-000159, CCI-001889, CCI-001890. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to AU-8 (1); CCI-001891, CCI-001892, CCI-002046.}

Any device (computer or controller) generating audit records must have an internal clock capable of providing time with a resolution of one second. Clocks must not drift more than 10 seconds per day. Configure the system so that each device (computer or controller) generating audit records maintains accurate time to within 1 second. Note that if the control system specifications include requirement for clocks, the most stringent requirement applies.

3.5.3 Auditing Front End Software

The project site currently has the following software to support control system auditing: none. If there is no existing auditing front end software or the software is not compatible with the provided control systems, provide Auditing Front End Software with audit log import and upload, export, notification, and analysis functionality. The Auditing Front End Software may be provided as a component of the control system front end or as a separate software package, and a single package may serve multiple control systems provided under the same projects if they are sharing a cybersecurity authorization.

When the Auditing Front End Software is neither existing nor installed under the requirements of another Section, furnish the Auditing Front End

Software media and license the control system front end computer in Building Comms Room. Submit copies of Auditing Front End Software if this function is not part of the software provided with the control system to meet requirements of other Sections.

3.5.3.1 Import and Upload Requirements

Auditing Front End Software must be capable of importing audit logs from the Device Audit Record Upload Software and of uploading audit logs over the network from all control system devices supporting network upload of audit logs.

3.5.3.2 Export Requirements

Auditing Front End Software must be capable of exporting to a file format supported by Microsoft Excel.

3.5.3.3 Notification Of Audit Failure in Devices in MODERATE Impact Systems

The auditing front end software must be capable of receiving notifications of audit failure from control system devices and computers and be able to provide email notification based on receipt of the notification.

3.5.3.4 Audit Reduction and Report Generation In MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-6(4), AU-7(a), AU-7(b), AU-7(1), AU-12(1); CCI-000154, CCI-001875, CCI-001876, CCI-001877, CCI-001878, CCI-001879, CCI-001880, CCI-001881, CCI-001882, CCI-000158, CCI-000173, CCI-000174, CCI-001577.}

Auditing Front End Software must provide audit reduction and reporting capabilities that supports on-demand review and analysis, on demand reporting, and after the fact investigations of security incidents. The software must be able to combine audit records from all components within the system and analyze them as a single audit record. The software must correct for discrepancies in timestamps of audit logs from different sources and be able to account for discrepancies up to 2 seconds between sources. The software must not alter original audit record content or time ordering of audit records. The software must have the capability to filter audit records using user-defined fields within the audit records.

The audit reduction and reporting capabilities may incorporate third party application, such as Excel or Access.

3.5.4 Audit Storage Capacity and Audit Upload

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-4; CCI-001848, CCI-001849}

The creation of audit records must never interfere with normal device operation. Devices must cease collection of auditing information if required to maintain normal operation.

- a. For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit storage capacity (CCI-001848 or CCI-001849) comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.
- b. For controllers capable of generating audit records, provide 60 days worth of secure local storage, assuming 10 auditable events per day.

- c. For computers, provide storage for at least 100 audit records.

3.5.4.1 Audit Log Storage Notification In MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-5(1); CCI-001855.}

Controllers storing audit logs must provide notification when audit logs reach 75 percent of capacity either directly through email or indirectly by sending a notification to a computer, and the computer sending an email. Computers storing audit logs must provide notification when audit logs reach 75 percent of capacity directly through email.

3.5.5 Response to Audit Processing Failures

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-5; CCI-000139, CCI-000140, CCI-001490.}

In the case of a failure in the auditing system, computers associated with auditing must provide email notification. For MODERATE Impact systems, the computer must also notify the associated auditing front end software. In case of an audit failure, if possible, continue to collect audit records by overwriting existing audit records.

For MODERATE Impact Systems: In the case of an audit failure at a controller performing auditing, the device must notify the associated auditing front end software of the audit failure if able, and must continue to collect audit records by overwriting existing audit records if able. The auditing front end software must provide notification as indicated, treating the notification of failure from the device as a failure in the auditing system.

3.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR LEAST FUNCTIONALITY

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts), along with the network communication report submittal specified elsewhere in this section, relates to CM-6(a), CM-6(c), CM-7, CM-7(1)(b), SC-41; CCI-000363, CCI-000364, CCI-000365, CCI-001588, CCI-001755, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-00382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to CM-7(2), CM-7(5)(a), CM-7(5)(b); CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-00382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762}

For devices that have a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port and device I/O access for least functionality), install and configure the device in accordance with that STIG or SRGs.

3.6.1 Device Capabilities

Do not provide devices with remote user interfaces or full user interfaces where one was not required. Do not use a networked sensor or actuator where a non-networked sensor or actuator would suffice.

Unless specifically required by the government, do not provide a capability to update device firmware over the network.

3.6.2 Software

For software that has a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port access for least functionality), install and configure the software in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

For MODERATE Impact Systems: Do not provide (install) software that is not specifically required to meet a contract requirement. Do not implement functionality within software that is not specifically required to meet contract requirements.

3.7 SYSTEM AND COMMUNICATION PROTECTION

3.7.1 Collaborative Computing

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-15(a), SC-15(b); CCI-001150, CCI-001152.}

Without explicit approval from the project site, control systems must not use collaborative computing technologies.

3.7.2 Denial of Service Protection and Application Partitioning In MODERATE Impact Systems:

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-5, SC-39, SC-7(a); CCI-001093, CCI-002385, CCI-002386, CCI-002430, CCI-001097. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart also relates to SC-2; CCI-001082.}

To the greatest extent practical, implement control logic without reliance on the network. Except when required to meet the requirements of the control system Section (where the requirement can only be met using computer hardware), do not implement control logic in computers. For MODERATE Impact systems, do not implement control logic in a device providing (i.e. acting as a server for) a Full Remote User Interface.

3.7.2.1 Default Requirements for MODERATE Impact Control Systems

Except for networked input and outputs on input-output buses specifically designed to provide high reliability or redundancy, sensors and actuators must not rely on the network to exchange data with the controller executing the sequence of operation which uses the sensor value or determines the actuator command.

Sensor values required by multiple devices may be shared over the network provided they are connected to a controller requiring the value for execution of the sequence and that controller shares the value on the network.

3.7.3 Mobile Code In MODERATE Impact Systems:

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-18(a), SC-18(b), SC-18(c), SC-18(1), SC-18(3), SC-18(4); CCI-001160, CCI-001161, CCI-001162, CCI-001163, CCI-001164, CCI-001165, CCI-001166, CCI-001662, CCI-002457, CCI-002458, CCI-001169, CCI-001695, CCI-001170, CCI-002469}

Devices with STIGs/SRGs related to Mobile Code and to Security Control SC-18 must be installed in accordance with the relevant STIGs/SRGs. All remote user interfaces must meet the requirements of the "Web

Browsers and Application SRG".

3.7.4 Protection of Information at Rest In MODERATE Impact Systems:

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-28, SC-28(1); CCI-001199, CCI-002472, CCI-002475, CCI-002476}

Computers must protect information at rest in accordance with applicable STIGs.

Any control system device storing personally identifiable information (PII), controlled unclassified information (CUI), or classified information must be protected by an Information At Rest encryption solution or by a physical security solution. Provide a Protection of Information At Rest Proposal indicating each device storing PII, CUI, or classified information and the encryption or physical security solution proposed for that device for government approval. If no devices stores PII, CUI, or classified information, provide a document stating this as the Protection of Information At Rest Proposal submittal. Do proceed with device selection and installation until the Protection of Information At Rest Proposal is approved. Once approved, implement approved Information At Rest protections.

3.8 SAFE MODE AND FAIL SAFE OPERATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-12, SI-10(3), SI-17; CCI-002855, CCI-002856, CCI-002857, CCI-002754, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775}

For all control system components with an applicable STIG or SRG, configure the component in accordance with all applicable STIGs and SRGs.

3.9 SYSTEM MAINTENANCE TOOL SOFTWARE

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to MA-3; CCI-000865.}

Submit and license to the Government all software required to operate, maintain and modify the control system such the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer. Submit hard copies of user manuals for each software with the software submittal.

For software provided and licensed to the Government under the requirements of another Section, submit a statement indicating the Section and Submittal under which the software was provided. For software provided to meet the requirements of this Section and not provided and licensed under another Section, submit software and software user manuals on DVD or CD as a Technical Data Package and submit one hard copy of the software user manual for each piece of software.

3.10 DEVICE POWER

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PE-11, PE-11(1); CCI-002955, CCI-000961. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to PE-9, PE-9(1); CCI-000952, CCI-002953, CCI-002954.}

For MODERATE Impact Systems: Provide control system with power supply meeting or exceeding the reliability of the controlled equipment. Powering control system devices using the same power source as the equipment controlled by the device is a permissible method of meeting this requirement. Without explicit approval from the government, do not install local uninterruptible power supplies (UPSs) as a source of device power.

3.10.1 Device Behavior on Loss of Power In MODERATE Impact Systems:

Application programs and configuration settings must be stored in devices in manner such that a loss of power does not result in a loss of the application program or configuration settings: Loss of power must never result in the loss of application programs, regardless of the length of time power is lost; and loss of power for less than 2,500 hours must not result in the loss of configured settings.

In the event of a loss of power, when power is restored, controllers and computers executing control logic (and the underlying equipment) must recover and resume their normal sequences of operation. Note that the sequence of operation may require specific actions (e.g. startup sequences) upon recovery from loss of power.

3.11 VULNERABILITY SCANNING

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to RA-5 RA-5(a),RA-5(b),RA-5(c),RA-5(d); CCI-001054, CCI-001055, CCI-000156, CCI-001641, CCI-001643, CCI-001057, CCI-001058, CCI-001059. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to RA-5(1), RA-5(5); CCI-001062, CCI-001067, CCI-001645, CCI-002906.}

All IP devices must be scannable, such that the device can be scanned by industry standard IP network scanning utilities without harm to the device, application, or functionality.

3.11.1 Computers and Software Running on Computers

Computers and applications running on computers must meet relevant vulnerability scanning STIGs/SRGs and respond to approved DoD vulnerability scanning tools.

3.11.2 Controllers

Controllers shall be scannable by standard control system discovery tools or control system browsers and return meaningful status information including the network inputs and outputs for the controller. This information shall contain sufficient detail to detect vulnerabilities or exploits of the controller.

Provide all software needed to scan the control system as the Control System Scanning Tools submittal. If the software required to scan the system is already installed at the project site or is provided under a separate section instead provide a statement indicating this.

3.12 FIPS 201-2 REQUIREMENT

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-4 (10); CCI-003116}

Devices in the following systems which implement PIV must be on the NIST FIPS 201-2 approved product list (<https://www.idmanagement.gov/approved-products-list/>): electronic security systems(ESS).

3.13 SYSTEM AND INTEGRATION INTEGRITY

3.13.1 Malicious Code Protection

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SI-3(c); CCI-001241, CCI-002623}

For all computers installed under this project, provide malware protection software media, provide licenses, and install and configure malware protection software as indicated. Coordinate with the Government Computer Access Point of Contact as required.

- a. Provide malware protection software licenses.
- b. Provide malware protection software media.
- c. Install and configure malware protection software in accordance with the relevant STIGs.

3.13.2 Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity In MODERATE Impact Systems:

If there exists Integrity Verification Software that can check software, firmware, or information in the control system and verify its integrity, provide it. If no such software exists provide a statement to this affect in lieu of the software.

3.14 CONTROL SYSTEM CYBERSECURITY TESTING

{For Government Reference Only: For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-11(a), SA-11(b), SA-11(c), SA-11(d), SA-11(e); CCI-003171, CCI-003172, CCI-003173, CCI-003174, CCI-003175, CCI-003176, CCI-003177, CCI-003178.}

3.14.1 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures

Prepare Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures explaining step-by-step, the actions and expected results that will demonstrate that the control system meets the requirements of this Section.

Submit 4 copies of the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures. The Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.14.2 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Execution

Using the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures verify that the control system meets the requirements of this Section. UNLESS GOVERNMENT WITNESSING OF A TEST IS SPECIFICALLY WAIVED BY THE GOVERNMENT, PERFORM ALL TESTS WITH A GOVERNMENT WITNESS. If testing reveals deficiencies in the system, correct the deficiency and retest until successful.

3.14.3 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report

Prepare and submit a Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report documenting all tests performed and their results. Include all tests in the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures and any additional tests performed during testing. Document test failures and repairs conducted with the test results.

Submit four copies of the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report. The Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL, CYBERSECURITY VALIDATION SUPPORT

In addition to testing and testing support required by other Sections, provide a minimum of 32 hours of technical support for cybersecurity testing of control systems to support the DoD Risk Management Framework process Cybersecurity assessment of the control system. This support is independent of (and in addition to) the Control System Cybersecurity Testing specified in this section.

3.16 CYBERSECURITY TRAINING

Provide eight hours of classroom and hands-on training for six Government personnel on the cybersecurity operation and maintenance of the control system provided. This training is in addition to and must be coordinated with control system training specified in other Sections.

The Government will provide the training location. Training must cover, at a minimum: (a) applying software and firmware updates, (b) user account creation, modification and deletion, (c) audit log upload procedures and (d) identification of privileged user interfaces and system impact of those interfaces. Training session must include a question and answer period during which government staff questions about cybersecurity aspects of the control system are answered.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 25 10 10

UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEM (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION
02/19, CHG 1: 05/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Provide a Utility Monitoring and Control System (UMCS) which performs supervisory monitoring and supervisory control of base-wide building control systems and utility control systems using one or more of: CEA-709.1-D (LonWorks) with LonWorks Network Services (LNS), MODBUS Protocol, MODBUS TCP/IP, OPC DA, or the Niagara Framework with Fox protocol as indicated and shown. Integrate CEA-709.1-D field control systems installed per Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS into the UMCS as specified and maintain the LNS database(s) for the entire network at the UMCS Front End.

1.1.1 System Requirements

Provide a UMCS as specified and indicated, and in accordance with the following characteristics:

1.1.1.1 General System Requirements

- a. The system performs supervisory monitoring and control functions including but not limited to Scheduling, Alarm Handling, Trending, Overrides, Report Generation, and Electrical Demand Limiting as specified.
- b. The system includes a Graphical User Interface which allows for graphical navigation between systems, graphical representations of systems, access to real-time data for systems, ability to override points in a system, and access to all supervisory monitoring and control functions.
- c. All software used by the UMCS and all software used to install and configure the UMCS is licensed to and delivered to the installation.
- d. All necessary documentation, configuration information, configuration tools, programs, drivers, and other software is licensed to and otherwise remains with the Government such that the Government or their agents are able to repair, replace, upgrade, and expand the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor. Software licenses must not require periodic fees and must be valid in perpetuity.
- e. Provide sufficient documentation and data, including rights to documentation and data, such that the Government or their agents can execute work to repair, replace, upgrade, and expand the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor.
- f. The UMCS interfaces directly to ASHRAE 135, CEA-709.1-D, MODBUS Protocol, MODBUS TCP/IP, OPC DA, and Niagara Framework field control systems as specified and may interface to field control systems using other protocols via an M&C Software protocol driver or a

Gateway.

- g. For UMCS systems with Monitoring and Control Software functionality implemented in Monitoring and Control (M&C) Controller Hardware, provide sufficient additional controller hardware to support the full capacity requirements as specified.

1.1.1.2 LonWorks Requirements

- a. The UMCS must communicate using CEA-709.1-D over the Government furnished IP network in accordance with CEA-852-C as specified and must interface to CEA-709.1-D building control networks using LonWorks/IP Routers as specified.
- b. All communication between the UMCS and LonWorks field control networks must be via the CEA-709.1-D protocol over the IP network in accordance with CEA-852-C.
- c. Except for communication for device commissioning, configuration, and programming, all communication between the M&C Software and the field control system devices must be via SNVT.

1.1.2 Symbols, Definition and Abbreviations

Use symbols, definitions, and engineering unit abbreviations indicated in the contract drawings for displays, submittals and reports. For symbols, definitions and abbreviations not in the contract drawings use terms conforming at a minimum to IEEE Stds Dictionary and the ASHRAE FUN IP, as applicable.

1.1.3 System Units and Accuracy

Use English (inch-pound) units for displays, print-outs and calculations. Perform calculations with an accuracy of at least three significant figures. For displays and printouts present values to at least three significant figures.

1.1.4 Data Packages/Submittals Requirements

Technical data packages consisting of computer software and technical data (meaning technical data which relates to computer software) which are specifically identified in this project and which may be defined/required in other specifications must be delivered strictly in accordance with the CONTRACT CLAUSES and in accordance with the Contract Data Requirements List, DD Form 1423. Data delivered must be identified by reference to the particular specification paragraph against which it is furnished. All submittals not specified as technical data packages are considered shop drawings under the Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (FARS) and must contain no proprietary information and must be delivered with unrestricted rights.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Cybersecurity requirements related to this Section are specified in a separate cybersecurity specification derived from UFGS 25 05 11. Section 25 05 11.01 CYBERSECURITY FOR LOW IMPACT DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS specifies cybersecurity requirements related to this Section.

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI INCITS 154 (1988; R 2004) Office Machines and Supplies - Alphanumeric Machines - Keyboard Arrangement

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 135 (2020; Errata 1-2 2021) BACnet-A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks

ASHRAE FUN IP (2021) Fundamentals Handbook, I-P Edition

CONSUMER ELECTRONICS ASSOCIATION (CEA)

CEA-709.1-D (2014) Control Network Protocol Specification

CEA-709.3 (1999; R 2015) Free-Topology Twisted-Pair Channel Specification

CEA-852-C (2014) Tunneling Device Area Network Protocols Over Internet Protocol Channels

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 802.11 WARNING: Text in tags exceeds the maximum length of 300 characters

IEEE 1815 (2015; CORR 2016) Exchanging Information Between Networks Implementing IEC 61850 and IEEE Std 1815

IEEE C62.41 (1991; R 1995) Recommended Practice on Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits

IEEE Stds Dictionary (2009) IEEE Standards Dictionary: Glossary of Terms & Definitions

INTERNET ENGINEERING TASK FORCE (IETF)

IETF RFC 4361 (2006) Node-specific Client Identifiers for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Version Four (DHCPv4)

IETF RFC 7465 (2015) Prohibiting RC4 Cipher Suites

RFC 821 (2001) Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP)

LONMARK INTERNATIONAL (LonMark)

LonMark Interoperability Guide (2005) LonMark Application-Layer Interoperability Guide and LonMark Layer 1-6 Interoperability Guide; Version 3.4

LonMark SNVT List (2014) LonMark SNVT Master List; Version 15

LonMark XIF Guide (2001) LonMark External Interface File Reference Guide; Revision 4.402

MODBUS ORGANIZATION, INC (MODBUS)

MODBUS Protocol (2012) Modbus Application Protocol Specification; Version 1.1b3

MODBUS TCP/IP (2006) Modbus Messaging on TCP/IP Implementation Guide; Version V1.0b

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code

NFPA 262 (2019) Standard Method of Test for Flame Travel and Smoke of Wires and Cables for Use in Air-Handling Spaces

OPC FOUNDATION (OPC)

OPC DA (Ver 3.0; Errata) OPC Data Access (DA)

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

TIA-568.1 (2020e) Commercial Building Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard

TIA-606 (2021d) Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure

TIA-607 (2019d) Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises

TRIDIUM, INC (TRIDIUM)

Niagara Framework (2012) NiagaraAX User's Guide

U.S. FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC)

FCC EMC (2002) FCC Electromagnetic Compliance Requirements

FCC Part 15

Radio Frequency Devices (47 CFR 15)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1778

(2014; Reprint Sep 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Uninterruptible Power Systems

UL 60950

(2000; Reprint Oct 2007) Safety of
Information Technology Equipment

1.4 DEFINITIONS

The following list of definitions may contain terms not found elsewhere in this Section but are included here for completeness. Some terms are followed with a protocol reference in parenthesis indicating to which protocol the term and definition applies. Inclusion of protocol-specific definitions does not create a requirement to support that protocol, nor does it relax any requirements to support specific protocols as indicated elsewhere in this section.

1.4.1 Alarm Generation

The process of comparing a point value (the point being alarmed) with a pre-defined alarm condition (e.g. a High Limit) and performing some action based on the result of the comparison.

1.4.2 Alarm Handling

see Alarm Routing

1.4.3 Alarm Routing

Alarm routing is M&C software functionality that starts with a notification that an alarm exists (typically as the output of an Alarm Generation process) and sends a specific message to a specific alarm recipient or device.

1.4.4 Application Generic Controller (AGC)(LonWorks)

A device that is furnished with a (limited) pre-established application that also has the capability of being programmed. Further, the ProgramID and XIF file of the device are fixed. The programming capability of an AGC may be less flexible than that of a General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC).

1.4.5 Application Specific Controller (ASC)(LonWorks)

A device that is furnished with a pre-established built in application that is configurable but not re-programmable. An ASC has a fixed factory-installed application program (i.e Program ID) with configurable settings.

1.4.6 Binary

A two-state system or signal; for example one where an "ON" condition is represented by a high signal level and an "OFF" condition is represented by a low signal level. 'Digital' is sometimes used interchangeably with 'binary'.

1.4.7 Binding (LonWorks)

The act of establishing communications between CEA-709.1-D devices by associating the output of a device to the input of another so that information is automatically (and regularly) sent without being requested by the recipient.

1.4.8 Broadcast

Unlike most messages, which are intended for a specific recipient device, a broadcast message is intended for all devices on the network.

1.4.9 Building Control System (BCS)

One type of Field Control System. A control system for building electrical and mechanical systems, typically HVAC (including central plants) and lighting. A BCS generally uses Direct Digital Control (DDC) Hardware and generally does NOT include its own local front end.

1.4.10 Building Point of Connection (BPOC)

A FPOC for a Building Control System. (This term is being phased out of use in preference for FPOC but is still used in some specifications and criteria. When it was used, it typically referred to a piece of control hardware. The current FPOC definition typically refers instead to IT hardware)

1.4.11 Channel (LonWorks)

A portion of the control network consisting of one or more segments connected by repeaters. Channels are separated by routers. The device quantity limitation is dependent on the topology/media and device type. For example, a TP/FT-10 network with locally powered devices is limited to 128 devices per channel.

1.4.12 Configuration Property (LonWorks)

Controller parameter used by the application which is usually set during installation/testing and seldom changed. For example, the P and I settings of a P-I control loop. Also see 'Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT)'

1.4.13 Control Logic Diagram

A graphical representation of control logic for multiple processes that make up a system.

1.4.14 Explicit Messaging (LonWorks)

A non-standard and often vendor (application) specific method of communication between devices.

1.4.15 External Interface File (XIF) (LonWorks)

A file which documents a device's external interface, specifically the number and types of LonMark objects, the number, types, directions, and connection attributes of network variables, and the number of message tags.

1.4.16 Field Point Of Connection (FPOC)

The FPOC is part of the UMCS IP network and acts as the point of connection between the UMCS IP Network and the field control IP network. The FPOC is an IT device such as a switch, IP router, or firewall, typically managed by the site IT staff. (Note that the field control IP network may consist of a single IP device, or that integration may require installation of a field control network IP device.)

1.4.17 Field Control Network

The network used by a field control system.

1.4.18 Field Control System (FCS)

A building control system or utility control system.

1.4.19 Fox Protocol (Niagara Framework)

The protocol used for communication between components in the Niagara Framework. By default, Fox uses TCP port 1911

1.4.20 Functional Profile (LonWorks)

A standard description, defined by LonMark International, of a LonMark Object used to classify and certify devices.

1.4.21 Gateway

A device that translates from one protocol to another. Devices that change only the transport mechanism of the protocol - "translating" from LonWorks over TP/FT-10 to LonWorks over IP for example - are not gateways as the underlying protocol (data format) does not change. Gateways are also called Communications Bridges or Protocol Translators.

1.4.22 General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC) (LonWorks)

Unlike an ASC or AGC, a GPPC is not furnished with a fixed application program and does not have a fixed ProgramID or XIF file. A GPPC can be (re-)programmed, usually using vendor-supplied software. When a change to the program affects the external interface (and the XIF file) the ProgramID will change.

1.4.23 LonMark Object (LonWorks)

A collection of network variables, configuration properties, and associated behavior defined by LonMark International and described by a Functional Profile. It defines how information is exchanged between devices on a network (inputs from and outputs to the network).

1.4.24 LNS Plug-in (LonWorks)

Software which runs in an LNS compatible software tool, typically a network configuration tool. Device configuration plug-ins provide a 'user friendly' method to edit a device's configuration properties.

1.4.25 LonMark (LonWorks)

See LonMark International. Also, a certification issued by LonMark

International to CEA-709.1-D devices.

1.4.26 LonMark International (LonWorks)

Standards committee consisting of independent product developers, system integrators and end users dedicated to determining and maintaining the interoperability guidelines for LonWorks. Maintains guidelines for the interoperability of CEA-709.1-D devices and issues the LonMark Certification for CEA-709.1-D devices.

1.4.27 LonWorks (LonWorks)

The term used to refer to the overall technology related to the CEA-709.1-D protocol (sometimes called "LonTalk"), including the protocol itself, network management, interoperability guidelines and products.

1.4.28 LonWorks Network Services (LNS) (LonWorks)

A network management and database standard for CEA-709.1-D devices.

1.4.29 LonWorks Network Services (LNS) Database (LonWorks)

The standard database created and used by LonWorks Network Services (LNS) compatible tools, such as LNS Network Configuration tools.

1.4.30 Modbus

A basic protocol for control network communications generally used in utility control systems. The Modbus protocol standard is maintained by The Modbus Organization.

1.4.31 Monitoring and Control (M&C) Software

The UMCS 'front end' software which performs supervisory functions such as alarm handling, scheduling and data logging and provides a user interface for monitoring the system and configuring these functions.

1.4.32 Network Variable (LonWorks)

See 'Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT)'.

1.4.33 Network Configuration Tool (LonWorks)

The software used to configure the control network and set device configuration properties. This software creates and modifies the control network database (LNS Database).

1.4.34 Niagara Framework

A set of hardware and software specifications for building and utility control owned by Tridium Inc. and licensed to multiple vendors. The Framework consists of front end (M&C) software, web based clients, field level control hardware, and engineering tools. While the Niagara Framework is not adopted by a recognized standards body and does not use an open licensing model, it is sufficiently well-supported by multiple HVAC vendors to be considered a de-facto Open Standard.

1.4.35 Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway (Niagara Framework)

DDC Hardware component of the Niagara Framework. A typical Niagara architecture has Niagara specific supervisory gateways at the IP level and other (non-Niagara specific) controllers on field networks (TP/FT-10, MS/TP, etc.) beneath the Niagara supervisory gateways. The Niagara specific controllers function as a gateway between the Niagara framework protocol (Fox) and the field network beneath. These supervisory gateways may also be used as general purpose controllers and also have the capability to provide a web-browser based user interface.

Note that different vendors refer to this component by different names. The most common name is "JACE"; other names include "EC-BOS", "FX-40", and "UNC".

1.4.36 Node (LonWorks)

A device that communicates using the CEA-709.1-D protocol and is connected to a CEA-709.1-D network.

1.4.37 Node Address (LonWorks)

The logical address of a node on the network, consisting of a Domain number, Subnet number and Node number. Note that the "Node number" portion of the address is the number assigned to the device during installation and is unique within a subnet. This is not the factory-set unique Node ID (see Node ID).

1.4.38 Node ID (LonWorks)

A unique 48-bit identifier assigned (at the factory) to each CEA-709.1-D device. Sometimes called the Neuron ID.

1.4.39 Override

To change the value of a point outside of the normal sequence of operation where this change has priority over the sequence. An override can be accomplished in one of two ways: the point itself may be Commandable and written to with a priority or there may be a separate point on the controller for the express purpose of implementing the override.

Typically this override is from the Utility Monitoring and Control System (UMCS) Monitoring and Control (M&C) Software. Note that this definition is not standard throughout industry.

1.4.40 Point, Calculated

A value within the M&C Software that is not a network point but has been calculated by logic within the software based on the value of network points or other calculated points. Calculated points are sometimes called virtual points or internal points.

1.4.41 Point, Network

A value that the M&C Software reads from or writes to a field control network.

1.4.42 Polling

A requested transmission of data between devices, rather than an unrequested transmission such as Change-Of-Value (COV) or Binding where data is automatically transmitted under certain conditions.

1.4.43 Program ID (LonWorks)

An identifier (number) stored in the device (usually EEPROM) that identifies the node manufacturer, functionality of device (application & sequence), transceiver used, and intended device usage.

1.4.44 Repeater

A device that connects two control network segments and retransmits all information received on one side onto the other.

1.4.45 Router (LonWorks)

A device that connects two channels and controls traffic between the channels by retransmitting signals received from one subnet onto the other based on the signal destination. Routers are used to subdivide a control network and to control bandwidth usage.

1.4.46 Segment

A 'single' section of a control network that contains no repeaters or routers. There is generally a limit on the number of devices on a segment, and this limit is dependent on the topology/media and device type.

1.4.47 Service Pin (LonWorks)

A hardware push-button on a device which causes the device to broadcast a message containing its Node ID and Program ID. This broadcast can also be initiated via software.

1.4.48 Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT) (LonWorks)

Pronounced 'skip-it'. A standard format type (maintained by LonMark International) for Configuration Properties.

1.4.49 Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT) (LonWorks)

Pronounced 'snivet'. A standard format type (maintained by LonMark International) used to define data information transmitted and received by the individual nodes. The term SNVT is used in two ways. Technically it is the acronym for Standard Network Variable Type, and is sometimes used in this manner. However, it is often used to indicate the network variable itself (i.e. it can mean "a network variable of a standard network variable type"). In general, the intended meaning should be clear from the context.

1.4.50 Subnet (LonWorks)

Consists of a logical grouping of up to 127 nodes, where the logical grouping is defined by node addressing. Each subnet is assigned a number which is unique within the Domain. See also Node Address.

1.4.51 Supervisory Controller

A controller implementing a combination of supervisory logic (global control strategies or optimization strategies), scheduling, alarming, event management, trending, web services or network management. Note this is defined by use; many supervisory controllers have the capability to also directly control equipment.

1.4.52 Supervisory Gateway

A device that is both a supervisory controller and a gateway.

1.4.53 TP/FT-10 (LonWorks)

A Free Topology Twisted Pair network (at 78 kbps) defined by CEA-709.3. This is the most common media type for a CEA-709.1-D control network.

1.4.54 TP/XF-1250 (LonWorks)

A high speed (1.25 Mbps) twisted pair, doubly-terminated bus network defined by the LonMark Interoperability Guidelines. This media is typically used only as a backbone media to connect multiple TP/FT-10 networks.

1.4.55 UMCS Network

An IP network connecting multiple field control systems to the Monitoring and Control Software using one or more of: LonWorks (CEA-709.1-D and CEA-852-C), MODBUS Protocol, MODBUS TCP/IP or OPC DA.

1.4.56 User-defined Configuration Property Type (UCPT) (LonWorks)

Pronounced 'u-keep-it'. A Configuration Property format type that is defined by the device manufacturer.

1.4.57 User-defined Network Variable Type (UNVT) (LonWorks)

A network variable format defined by the device manufacturer. Note that UNVTs create non-standard communications (other vendor's devices may not correctly interpret it) and may close the system and therefore are not permitted by this specification.

1.4.58 Utility Control System (UCS)

One type of field control system. Used for control of utility systems such as an electrical substation, sanitary sewer lift station, water pump station, etc. Building controls are excluded from a UCS, however it is possible to have a Utility Control System and a Building Control System in the same facility, and for those systems to share components such as the FPOC. A UCS may include its own local front-end.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES and TABLE 1: PROJECT SEQUENCING:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

UMCS Contractor Design Drawings; G, AE

UMCS Contractor Design Drawings as a single complete package: 3 hard copies and 3 copies on CDROM. Submit hardcopy drawings on A3 17 by 11 inches sheets, and electronic drawings in PDF and format.

Draft As-Built Drawings; G

Draft As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 3 copies on CDROM. Submit electronic drawings in PDF format.

Final As-Built Drawings; G, AE

Final As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 3 hard copies and 3 copies on CDROM. Submit hardcopy drawings on A3 17 by 11 inches sheets, and electronic drawings in both PDF and AutoCAD format.

SD-03 Product Data

Product Data Sheets; G

Computer Software; G

The most recent versions of all computer software provided under this specification delivered as a Technical Data Package. Submit the user manuals for all software delivered for this project with the software.

Enclosure Keys; G

SD-05 Design Data

UMCS IP Network Bandwidth Usage Estimate; G

copies of the UMCS IP Network Bandwidth Usage Estimate.

SD-06 Test Reports

Pre-Construction QC Checklist; G

Four copies of the Pre-Construction QC Checklist.

Post-Construction QC Checklist; G

Four copies of the Post-Construction QC Checklist.

Factory Test Procedures; G

Four copies of the Factory Test Procedures. The Factory Test Procedures may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

Factory Test Report; G

Four copies of the Factory Test Report. The Factory Test Report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

Start-Up and Start-Up Testing Report; G

Four copies of the Start-Up and Start-Up Testing Report. The Start-Up and Testing report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

PVT Phase I Procedures; G

Four copies of the PVT Phase I Procedures. The PVT Procedures may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

PVT Phase I Report; G

Four copies of the PVT Phase I Report. The PVT Phase I Report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

PVT Phase II Report; G

Four copies of the PVT Phase II Report. The PVT Phase II Report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions; G

Four bound O&M Instructions and 2 copies of the Instructions in PDF format on optical disc. Index and tab bound instructions. Submit instructions in PDF form as a single PDF file, or as multiple PDF files with a PDF file table of contents containing links to the other files. O&M Instructions may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

Preventive Maintenance Work Plan; G

Four copies of the Preventive Maintenance Work Plan. The Preventive Maintenance Work Plan may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

Basic Training Documentation; G

Training manuals for Basic Training delivered for each trainee on the Course Attendance List with two additional copies delivered for archival at the project site. Submit two copies of the Course Attendance List with the archival copies. The Basic Training Documentation may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

Advanced Training Documentation; G

One set of training manuals delivered for each trainee on the Course Attendance List with two additional copies delivered for archival at the project site. Submit two copies of the Course Attendance List with the archival copies. The Advanced Training Documentation may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

Refresher Training Documentation; G

One set of training manuals delivered for each trainee on the Course Attendance List with two additional copies delivered for

archival at the project site. Submit two copies of the Course Attendance List with the archival copies. The Refresher Training Documentation may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Closeout QC Checklist; G

Four copies of the Closeout QC Checklist.

1.6 PROJECT SEQUENCING

TABLE I: PROJECT SEQUENCING specifies the sequencing of submittals as specified in paragraph SUBMITTALS (denoted by an 'S' in the 'TYPE' column) and activities as specified in PART 3 EXECUTION (denoted by an 'E' in the 'TYPE' column).

1.6.1 Sequencing for Submittals

The sequencing specified for submittals is the deadline by which the submittal must be initially submitted to the Government. Following submission there will be a Government review period as specified in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES. If the submittal is not accepted by the Government, revise the submittal and resubmit it to the Government within 14 business days of notification that the submittal has been rejected. Upon re-submittal there will be an additional Government review period. If the submittal is not accepted the process repeats until the submittal is accepted by the Government.

1.6.2 Sequencing for Activities

The sequencing specified for activities indicates the earliest the activity may begin.

1.6.3 Abbreviations

In TABLE I the abbreviation AAO is used for 'after approval of' and 'ACO' is used for 'after completion of'.

TABLE I. PROJECT SEQUENCING

ITEM	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY or DEADLINE FOR SUBMITTAL)
1		Acceptance of Factory Test Report	
3	S	Design Drawings	21 days after #1
4	S	Product Data Sheets and Certificate of Networkiness Documentation	21 days after #1

TABLE I. PROJECT SEQUENCING

ITEM	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY or DEADLINE FOR SUBMITTAL)
5	S	UMCS IP Network Bandwidth Usage Estimate	21 days after #1
6	S	Pre-construction QC Checklist	21 days after #1
7	E	Install UMCS	AAO #2 thru #6
8	E	Start-Up and Start-Up Testing	ACO #7
9	S	Post-Construction QC Checklist	21 days ACO #8
10	S	Computer Software	21 days ACO #8
11	S	Start-Up and Start-Up Testing Report	21 days ACO #8
12	S	Draft As-Built Drawings	21 days ACO #8
13	S	PVT Phase I Procedures	21 days before scheduled start of #14 and AAO #11
14	E	PVT Phase I	AAO #13 and #12
15	S	PVT Phase I Report	21 days ACO #14
16	S	Preventive Maintenance Work Plan	AAO #11
17	S	O&M Instructions	AAO #11
18	S	Basic Training Documentation	AAO #11 and 21 days before scheduled start of #19
19	E	Basic Training (PVT Phase II)	AAO #16, #17 and #18
20	S	PVT Phase II Report	21 days ACO #19
21	S	Final As-Built Drawings	21 days AAO #20
22	S	Advanced Training Documentation	21 days before schedule start of #23 and AAO #18
23	E	Advanced Training	ACO #19, 21 days AAO #22, and no later than 60 days ACO #19

TABLE I. PROJECT SEQUENCING

ITEM	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY or DEADLINE FOR SUBMITTAL)
24	S	Refresher Training Documentation	21 days before #25 and AAO #18 and #22
25	E	Refresher Training	between 21 and 21 days ACO #19 and AAO #24
26	S	Closeout QC Checklist	ACO #23

1.7 QUALITY CONTROL (QC) CHECKLISTS

The Contractor's Chief Quality Control (QC) Representative must complete the QC Checklist in APPENDIX A, and must submit the Pre-Construction QC Checklist, Post-Construction QC Checklist and Closeout QC Checklist as specified. The QC Representative must verify each item in the Checklist and initial in the provided area to indicate that the requirement has been met. The QC Representative must sign and date the Checklist prior to submission to the Government.

The APPENDIX A QC Checklist is available as an editable file at <http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-10-10>

1.8 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) INSTRUCTIONS

Provide UMCS Operation and Maintenance Instructions which include:

- a. Procedures for the UMCS system start-up, operation and shut-down.
- b. Final As-Built drawings.
- c. Routine maintenance checklist, arranged in a columnar format: The first column listing all installed devices, the second column stating the maintenance activity or stating that no maintenance required, the third column stating the frequency of the maintenance activity, and the fourth column providing any additional comments or reference.
- d. Qualified service organization list including points of contact with phone numbers.
- e. Start-Up and Start-Up Testing Report.
- f. Performance Verification Test (PVT) Procedures and Reports.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

2.1.1 Product Certifications

For computing devices, as defined in FCC Part 15, supplied as part of the UMCS provide devices which are certified to comply with the requirements of Class B computing devices.

2.1.2 Product Sourcing

For units of the same type of equipment, provide products of a single manufacturer. For each major component of equipment provide equipment with the manufacturer's name and the model and serial number in a conspicuous place. For materials and equipment, provide new standard unmodified products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such products.

2.1.3 General Requirements

Provide components that meet the following requirements:

- a. Portions of the data communications equipment system installed in unconditioned spaces must operate properly in an environment with ambient temperatures between 32 and 120 degrees F and ambient relative humidity between 10 percent and 90 percent noncondensing.
- b. Components must accept 100 to 125 volts AC (Vac), 60 Hz, single phase, three wire with a three-pronged, dedicated circuit outlet or be provided with a transformer to meet the component's power requirements.
- c. The equipment must meet the requirements of NFPA 70, UL 60950, NFPA 262, FCC EMC, and FCC Part 15.

2.1.4 Nameplates

Provide nameplates of laminated plastic identifying the function, network address, if applicable, and identifier of the device. Laminated plastic must be at least 0.125 inch thick, white with black center core. Nameplates must be a minimum of 1 by 3 inch with minimum 0.25 inch high engraved block lettering.

2.1.5 Product Data Sheets

For all products (equipment) specified in PART 2 and supplied under this contract, submit copies of all manufacturer catalog cuts and specification sheets to indicate conformance to product requirements.

2.2 CONTROL HARDWARE

2.2.1 Control Protocol Routers

2.2.1.1 LonWorks/IP Router

Provide LonWorks/IP Routers which perform layer 3 routing of CEA-709.1-D packets over an IP network in accordance with CEA-852-C. The router must provide the appropriate connection to the IP network and connections to the CEA-709.3 TP/FT-10 or TP/XF-1250 network. LonWorks/IP Routers must

support the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP; IETF RFC 4361) for IP configuration and the use of an CEA-852-C Configuration Server (for CEA-852-C configuration), but must not rely on these services for configuration. LonWorks/IP Routers must be capable of manual configuration via a console RS-232 port.

2.2.1.2 Modbus/IP Router

Provide Modbus/IP Routers which perform layer 3 routing of MODBUS Protocol/MODBUS TCP/IP packets over an IP network in accordance with MODBUS Protocol/MODBUS TCP/IP. The router must provide the appropriate connection to the IP network and connections to a non-IP MODBUS Protocol/MODBUS TCP/IP network. Modbus/IP Routers must support the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP; IETF RFC 4361) for IP configuration but must not rely on this service for configuration. Modbus/IP Routers must be capable of disabling the capability for remote configuration of Modbus routing information from the IP network.

2.2.2 Monitoring and Control (M&C) Controller Hardware

Provide Monitoring and Control (M&C) Controller Hardware which is a microprocessor-based direct digital control hardware and which communicates over the UMCS IP network using one of:

- a. CEA-709.1-D in accordance with CEA-852-C and using only Standard Network Variable Types (SNVTs) as defined by the LonMark SNVT List.
- b. ASHRAE 135 in accordance with ASHRAE 135 Annex J and using only Standard ASHRAE 135 services.

Monitoring and Control (M&C) Controller Hardware must either meet the requirements of the LonMark Interoperability Guide or be BTL Listed.

2.2.3 Control Protocol Gateways

Provide Control Protocol Gateways which perform bi-directional protocol translation between two of the following protocols, or between one of the following protocols and another protocol: CEA-709.1-D, ASHRAE 135, MODBUS Protocol, MODBUS TCP/IP, and OPC DA. Provide Control Protocol Gateways which also meet the following requirements.

- a. Gateways must have two or more separate network connections, each appropriate for the protocol and media used. A single network connection must not be used for both protocols.
- b. Gateways must be capable of being installed, configured and programmed through the use of instructions in the manual supplied by the Contractor.
- c. Provide and license to the Government all software required for gateway configuration.
- d. Gateways must retain their configuration after a power loss of an indefinite time, and must automatically return to their pre-power loss state once power is restored.
- e. Gateways must provide capacity for mapping all required points as indicated plus an additional 10 percent between the two protocols it uses.

- f. Gateways must, in addition, meet all requirements specified (in the following subparagraphs) for each of the two protocols it translates.

2.2.3.1 Gateway for CEA-709.1

For a gateways using CEA-709.1-D provide gateways which meet the following requirements in addition to the requirements for all gateways:

- a. It must allow bi-directional mapping of data in the Gateway to Standard Network Variable Types (SNVTs) according to the LonMark SNVT List.
- b. Gateways communicating CEA-709.1-D over an IP network must communicate in accordance with CEA-852-C.
- c. It must allow of its standard network variables (SNVTs) and support transmitting data using the "min, max, and delta" (throttling and heartbeat) methodology.
- d. It must provide the ability to label SNVTs.
- e. It must supply a LonMark external interface file (XIF) as defined in the LonMark XIF Guide for use with LNS tools and utilities.
- f. It must have a "service pin" which, when pressed, will cause the Gateway to broadcast its 48-bit NodeID and ProgramID over the network.
- g. It must provide a configurable self-documenting string.

2.2.3.2 Gateway for ASHRAE 135

For gateways using ASHRAE 135 provide gateways which meets the following requirements in addition to the requirements for all gateways:

- a. It must allow bi-directional mapping of data in the Gateway to Standard Objects as defined in ASHRAE 135.
- b. All ASHRAE 135 Objects must have a configurable Object_Name Property.
- c. It must be BTL Listed.
- d. Gateways communicating ASHRAE 135 over an IP network must communicate in accordance with ASHRAE 135 Annex J.
- e. Gateways communicating ASHRAE 135 to a field control systems must support the DS-RP-A (Data Sharing-Read Property-A) BIBB and the DS-WP-A (Data Sharing-Write Property-A) BIBB.
- f. Gateways communicating ASHRAE 135 to the M&C Software must support the DS-RP-B (Data Sharing-Read Property-B) BIBB for Objects requiring read access from the M&C Software and the DS-WP-B (Data Sharing-Write Property-B) BIBB for Objects requiring write access from the M&C Software

2.2.3.3 Gateway for Modbus

For gateways that use MODBUS Protocol/MODBUS TCP/IP provide gateways that meet the requirements specified for all gateways and which allow

bi-directional mapping of data in the Gateway to MODBUS Protocol/ MODBUS TCP/IP registers using the four standard Modbus register types (Discrete Input, Coil, Input Register, and Holding Register). Gateways communicating MODBUS Protocol/MODBUS TCP/IP to the M&C Software must communicate via MODBUS Protocol/MODBUS TCP/IP over TCP/IP.

2.2.3.4 Gateway for OPC

For gateways that use OPC DA, provide gateways that meet the requirements specified for all gateways and which allow bi-directional mapping of data in the Gateway using OPC DA tags and which communicate over an IP network in accordance with OPC DA.

2.2.3.5 Gateway for DNP3

For gateways that use DNP3, provide gateways that meet the requirements specified for all gateways and which allow bi-directional mapping of data in the Gateway to DNP3 object groups and variations as defined by IEEE 1815. Gateways communicating DNP3 over an IP network must communicate in accordance with the LAN/WAN Networking volume of IEEE 1815.

2.3 COMPUTER HARDWARE

For computer hardware furnished under this specification provide standard products of a single manufacturer which advertises service in all 48 contiguous states, and provide only model currently in production. Except for PCI-E cards installed into expansion slots provided in a desktop or server computer in order to meet the requirements of this specification, do not modify computer hardware from the manufacturer configuration.

2.3.1 Server Hardware

Computer Server Hardware (server) must be a desktop or server computer meeting the following minimum requirements:

2.3.1.1 Processor

Quad-core processor designed for server applications. Processor speed must be at least 50 percent of the speed of the fastest Intel server processor commercially available.

2.3.1.2 Random Access Memory (RAM)

300 percent of the recommended requirements of the software to be installed on the server and no less than 24GB.

2.3.1.3 Communications Ports

Four USB ports.

2.3.1.4 Hard Drives

2.3.1.4.1 Internal Hard Drives

Hard drives with SATA-3 Controller providing at least 2TB usable disk space. Hard drives must use RAID (Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks) at levels 1 or 5 (RAID-1 or RAID-5).

2.3.1.4.2 External Hard Drive

4TB disk space with a USB 3.0 interface.

2.3.1.5 Optical Drive

Blueray burner drive.

2.3.1.6 Video Output

32-bit color at a minimum resolution of 1920 by 1080 at a minimum refresh rate of 70 Hz and a DVI or display port output.

2.3.1.7 Network Interface

Two integrated 1000Base-T Ethernet with RJ45 connector.

2.3.1.8 Monitor

Widescreen flat panel LCD monitor sized as indicated but no less than 24 inch nominal with a minimum resolution of 1600 by 1050 pixels and a minimum refresh rate of 70Hz.

2.3.1.9 Keyboard

101 key wired USB keyboard having a minimum 64 character standard ASCII character set based on ANSI INCITS 154 and an integral smart card reader compatible with a Department of Defense Common Access Card (CAC).

2.3.1.10 Mouse

2-button wired USB optical scroll mouse with a minimum resolution of 400 dots per inch.

2.3.1.11 Power Supplies

Hot-swappable redundant power supplies.

2.3.2 Workstation Hardware (Desktop and Laptop)

Provide a standard desktop computer or a laptop meeting the following minimum requirements for the Computer Workstation Hardware (workstation) as indicated.

2.3.2.1 Processor

2.3.2.1.1 Desktop

Quad-core processor designed for desktop applications. Processor speed must be at least 75 percent of the speed of the fastest Intel desktop processor commercially available.

2.3.2.1.2 Laptop

Quad-core processor designed for laptop applications. Processor speed must be at least 50 percent of the speed of the fastest Intel laptop processor commercially available.

2.3.2.2 Random Access Memory (RAM)

300 percent of the recommended requirements of the software to be installed on the server and no less than 8GB.

2.3.2.3 Communications Ports

2.3.2.3.1 Desktop

Six USB ports.

2.3.2.3.2 Laptop

Two USB ports, plus a PCMCIA card slot or an additional USB port, plus an integral RS-232 serial port or an additional USB port and a USB to RS-232 serial adapter.

2.3.2.4 Hard Drive and Controller

2.3.2.4.1 Desktop

1.5TB or larger with a SATA-3 controller.

2.3.2.4.2 Laptop

250GB or larger solid state drive.

2.3.2.5 Optical Drive

DVD-RW drive

2.3.2.6 Video Output

2.3.2.6.1 Desktop

32-bit color with dual monitor support minimum resolutions of 1920 by 1080 at minimum refresh rates of 70 Hz and dual DVI or display port outputs.

2.3.2.6.2 Laptop

32-bit color with a minimum resolution of 1920 by 1080 at minimum refresh rates of 70 Hz and VGA or HDMI output.

2.3.2.7 Network Interface

2.3.2.7.1 Desktop

Integrated 1000Base-T Ethernet with RJ45 connector.

2.3.2.7.2 Laptop

Integrated 1000Base-T Ethernet with RJ45 connector and an integrated IEEE 802.11b/g/n wireless interface. The Laptop must have a physical switch for activation and deactivation of the wireless interface.

2.3.2.8 Monitor

2.3.2.8.1 Desktop

Dual widescreen flat panel LCD monitors sized as indicated but no less than 24 inch nominal with minimum resolutions of 1920 by 1080 pixels and a minimum refresh rate of 70Hz.

2.3.2.8.2 Laptop

LCD Screen sized as indicated but no less than 325 mm 13 inch nominal with a maximum supported resolution of no less than 1600 by 900 pixels.

2.3.2.9 Keyboard and Smart Card Reader

2.3.2.9.1 Desktop

101 key wired USB keyboard having a minimum 64 character standard ASCII character set based on ANSI INCITS 154 and an integral smart card reader compatible with a Department of Defense Common Access Card (CAC).

2.3.2.9.2 Laptop

Standard laptop keyboard. Internal smart card reader compatible with a Department of Defense Common Access Card (CAC).

2.3.2.10 Mouse

2.3.2.10.1 Desktop

2-button wired USB optical scroll mouse with a minimum resolution of 400 dots per inch.

2.3.2.10.2 Laptop

Integrated touch-pad plus a 2-button wired USB optical scroll mouse with a minimum resolution of 400 dots per inch.

2.4 COMPUTER SOFTWARE

2.4.1 Operating System (OS)

Provide the latest version of the Army Gold Master Windows Operating System. The Operating System media will be furnished by the Government. Provide the Operating System license.

2.4.2 Office Automation Software

Provide Office Automation Software consisting of the e-mail, spreadsheet and word processing portions of the project site's standard office automation software.

2.4.3 Virus Protection Software

Provide Virus Protection Software consisting of the project site's standard virus protection software complete with a virus definition update subscription .

2.4.4 Disk Imaging (Backup) Software

Provide Disk imaging (backup) software capable of performing a bare-metal restore (imaging and restoring to a new blank hard drive such that restoration of the image is sufficient to restore system operation to the imaged state without the need for re-installation of software).

2.4.5 M&C Controller Hardware Configuration Software

Provide M&C Controller Hardware Configuration Software consisting of the software required to configure, program, or configure and program each Monitoring and Control (M&C) Controller Hardware provided for the functions it performs.

2.4.6 CEA-852-C Configuration Server

Provide CEA-852-C configuration server software meeting the requirements of CEA-852-C.

2.4.7 CEA-709.1-D Network Configuration Tool

Provide a network configuration tool software which:

- a. Solely uses LonWorks Network Services (LNS) for all network configuration and management of CEA-709.1-D devices.
- b. Is capable of executing LNS plug-ins.
- c. Is capable of performing network database reconstruction of an CEA-709.1-D control network, such that if connected to an existing CEA-709.1-D network it has the ability to query the network and create an LNS database for that network.
- d. Allows configuration of the network while off-line such that an operator may set up changes to the network while disconnected from the network, and then execute all of them once connected.
- e. Includes the standard LNS Report Generator and is capable of generating and printing the following reports:
 - (1) A table containing domain/subnet/node address and node identifier for the entire network or any subset thereof, selected by the user.
 - (2) A table containing Standard Network Variable (SNVT) input and output details for any CEA-709.1-D device on the network.
 - (3) A table containing Standard and User-Defined Configuration Properties (SCPTs and UCPTs) for any CEA-709.1-D device on the network.
- f. Is capable of merging two existing standard LNS databases into a single standard LNS database.

2.4.8 Monitoring and Control (M&C) Software

Provide monitoring and control (M&C) software which is a client-server software package with a graphical user interface (GUI) using web-browser based clients. Provide M&C Software which communicates via CEA-709.1-D, and The M&C Software may support other field control protocols.

Provide a single software package which implements the Scheduling, Alarming, Trending, Graphical System Display, and System Display Editor functionality. Other specified M&C functionality may be implemented in the same software package or in additional software packages. As specified in PART 3 EXECUTION, the M&C Software must operate on Server hardware, except that software for Point Calculations and Demand Limiting may operate on M&C Controller Hardware.

2.4.8.1 M&C Software License

License the M&C Software as specified. Use of multiple copies of M&C Server software working in coordination and sharing data between them such that they function as, and appear to an operator as, a single M&C Server is permitted to meet these requirements.

2.4.8.1.1 Network Points

Provide M&C Software and licensing to support no less than 50,000 network points, and to be capable of expansion to support no less than 50,000 network points.

2.4.8.1.2 Web Clients

Provide M&C Software and licensing to support no less than 10 simultaneous web clients with no limit on the total number of web clients. M&C Software must be capable of expansion to support no less than 30 simultaneous web clients.

2.4.8.1.3 Calculations

Provide M&C Software and licensing to support no less than one calculated point for every ten network points (see "Network Points" above).

2.4.8.1.4 Other Points

For installations using M&C Software installed on M&C Controller Hardware (as opposed to Server hardware), provide additional licensing to support additional network points for the communications between portions of the M&C Software installed on different hardware. For example, if the Calculations requirement is performed by M&C Software installed on Controller hardware, the M&C Software must be licensed for additional network points to cover the network points required for communication between the Controller hardware and the Server hardware.

2.4.8.1.5 Alarming

Provide M&C Software and licensing to support alarm generation and the handling (routing) of alarms for no less than 10,000 points.

2.4.8.1.6 Trending

Provide M&C Software and licensing to support a minimum of 8,000 simultaneous trends.

2.4.8.1.7 Scheduling

Provide M&C Software and licensing to support a minimum of 200 user-definable schedules.

2.4.8.2 M&C Software Update Licensing

In addition to all other licensing requirements, provide M&C Software licensing which includes licensing of the following software updates for a period of no less than 5 years:

- a. Security and bug-fix patches issued by the M&C Software manufacturer.
- b. Security patches to address any vulnerability identified in the National Vulnerability Database at <http://nvd.nist.gov> with a Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) severity rating of MEDIUM or higher.

2.4.8.3 Supported Field Control Protocols

Provide M&C Software which supports field control protocols as follows:

- a. The M&C Software must include a driver to LNS, or a driver to an OPC interface to LNS, or a driver to CEA-852-C, and must be capable of reading and writing any SNVT on the CEA-852-C network. Software with a driver to LNS or a driver to an OPC interface to LNS must communicate with field control systems via LNS using this driver. Software with a driver to CEA-852-C must obtain all communication information (such as device addresses and network variable indices) from LNS and must automatically update this information whenever the LNS Database changes.
- b. The M&C Software may, in addition, include drivers to other protocols.

Provide M&C Software capable of reading values from and writing values to points via any supported field protocol, and capable of reading values from one field protocol and writing them to another. All points obtained from any field protocol must be available to all M&C Software functionality.

2.4.8.4 Supported Enterprise Protocols

Provide M&C Software which supports oBIX, OPC as an enterprise protocol and which meets the following requirements:

- a. It is able to read values from any point or collection of points (network point, internal point, trend log or schedule) and transmit these values via the enterprise protocol.
- b. It is able to receive data via the enterprise protocol and use this data to change the value of any point.
- c. License the enterprise protocol interface to the project site and document the interface such that any system capable of communicating with that protocol can be used to read and write data from the M&C Software.

2.4.8.5 Point Information

Every point, both network and internal, in the M&C Software must contain the following fields:

2.4.8.5.1 Name

A configurable name used for identification of the point within the M&C Software.

2.4.8.5.2 Description

A configurable description of no less than 80 alpha-numeric characters.

2.4.8.5.3 Value

A field containing the current point value.

2.4.8.5.4 Units

A field containing the engineering units.

2.4.8.5.5 Source

A field identifying the source of the point. For network points, this is generally the address or identification of the field device.

2.4.8.6 Point Calculations

Provide M&C software capable of performing calculations and computing the value of a calculated point based on the values of two or more network points and calculated points. Mathematical operators must include: addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, exponentiation (y^x , power), square root, reciprocal, natural logarithm, sin, cos, tan, arcsin, arccos, arctan, and parenthesis. Pi and e must be available as constants for use in calculations.

2.4.8.7 Browser-Based Graphical User Interface (GUI)

Provide M&C Software which includes a web-browser based (client-server) graphical user interface through which all M&C Software functionality, except for the Graphics Editor, System Display Editor, report configuration, point calculation configuration, and enterprise protocol configuration, is accessible.

Provide graphical user interface web server and web clients meeting the following requirements:

- a. The web server must use HTTPS based on the Transport Layer Security (TLS) Protocol in accordance with IETF RFC 7465 using a Government-furnished certificate.
- b. The graphical user interface must be Common Access Card (CAC) enabled: It must support web client authentication using certificates obtained from a Department of Defense Common Access Card (CAC) Smart Card.
- c. The web client must operate on any version of Windows currently supported by Microsoft.
- d. The web client must function in the most recent three version of Internet Explorer and the most recent three versions of Firefox.
- e. The web client must not require a connection to any server other than the M&C Server.

- f. The web client must function in a browser with Java, Shockwave, Silverlight, and Flash installed. The client may require a download of mobile code from the M&C Server, but must not require the download of additional browser plug-ins or add-ins and there must be no limit on the number of downloads. The client must not require ActiveX.

2.4.8.8 Passwords

Provide M&C software with user-based access control to M&C functionality. The M&C Software must recognize at least 100 separate users and have at least 4 levels of user permissions. User permission levels (from most restrictive to most permissive) must include:

- a. Permission Level 1: View-only access to the graphical user interface.
- b. Permission Level 2: Permission Level 1 plus acknowledge alarms and set up (configure) trends and reports.
- c. Permission Level 3: Permission Level 2 plus override points and set up (configure) alarms, schedules and demand limiting.
- d. Permission Level 4: Permission Level 3 plus create and modify Graphical System Displays using the System Display Editor.

Passwords must not be displayed and must not be logged. The system must maintain a disk file on the server hardware logging all activity of the system. This file must maintain, as a minimum, a record of all operators logged onto the system, alarm acknowledgments, commands issued and all database modifications. If the file format is not plain ASCII text, provide a means to export or convert the file to plain ASCII text. Provide a mechanism for archiving the log files for long term record storage.

2.4.8.9 Graphical System Displays

Provide graphical displays consisting of building system (air handler units, VAV boxes, etc.) graphic displays. Data associated with an active display must be updated at least once every 5 seconds.

2.4.8.9.1 Navigation Scheme

System graphic displays of building systems and points must be hierarchical displays using a building-to-equipment point-and-click navigation scheme which allows navigation from a garrison-wide display, through a building-wide display to the individual units. Each display must show the building name and number. Each display must show system wide data such as outside air temperature and humidity in the case of an HVAC system application.

- a. For each Building or Building Sub-Area display, show the building footprint and basic floor plan, and clearly show and distinguish between the individual zones and the equipment serving each zone and space. Show all space sensor and status readings, as applicable, for the individual zones such as space temperature, humidity, occupancy status, etc. Show the locations of individual pieces of monitored and controlled equipment.
- b. For each equipment display show a one-line diagram control schematic

representation of the individual pieces of equipment using the symbols and M&C point data types as specified. Use different colors and textures to indicate various components and real time data. Use consistent color and texture meanings across all displays.

- c. Provide displays which clearly distinguish between the following point data types and information:

- (1) Real-time data.
- (2) Other user-entered data.
- (3) Devices in alarm (unacknowledged).
- (4) Out-of-range, bad, or missing data.
- (5) Points which are overridden.

2.4.8.9.2 Navigation Commands

Provide system displays which support English language operator commands via point-and-click mouse or keyboard entry for defining and selecting points, parameters, graphics, report generation, and all other functions associated with operation. The operator commands must be usable from any operator workstation with individual operator passwords as specified.

2.4.8.10 Graphic Editor

Provide a fully featured graphics editor and capable of creating custom graphics and graphic symbols for use by the System Display Editor.

2.4.8.11 System Display Editor

Provide a system display editor which allows the user to create, modify, and delete graphic displays. The display editor may have a separate user interface and is not required to be accessible via the web browser interface. Provide a display editor which includes the following functions:

- a. Create and save displays. Save an existing or modified display as a new display (i.e. "save as")
- b. Group and ungroup graphics, where graphics include both alphanumeric and graphic symbols, and where a grouped graphic is manipulated as a single graphic.
- c. Place, locate, resize, move, remove, reposition, rotate and mirror a graphic on a display.
- d. Overlay graphics over other graphics and assign depths such that when there are coincident graphics the one on top is visible.
- e. Modify graphic properties based on the value of network points and create conditions governing the display of a graphics such that different graphics are visible based on the value of network points or calculated points
- f. Integrate real-time data with the display.

- g. Establish connecting lines.
- h. Establish sources of latest data and location of readouts.
- i. Display analog values as specified.
- j. Assign conditions which automatically initiate a system display.
- k. Include library of display symbols which include: Pump, Motor, Flow Sensing Element, Point and Averaging Temperature Sensors, Pressure Sensor, Humidity Sensor, Single and Double Deck Air Handling Unit, Fan, Ductwork, Unit Heater, Pressure Reducing Valve, Damper, Electric Meter, Limit Switch, Flow Switch, High- and Low- Point and Averaging Temperature Switches, High- and Low- Pressure Switches, Coil, Solenoid Valve, Filter, Condensing Unit, Variable Frequency Drive (VFD), Current Sensing Relays, Circuit Breaker, Transformer. Symbols must at a minimum conform to ASHRAE FUN IP where applicable.

2.4.8.12 Scheduling

- a. Provide M&C software capable of changing the value of any network point according to a schedule. The M&C Software must be capable of scheduling points to any value, including a "null" or invalid value if one is defined for the data type of the point.
- b. The specified scheduling functions must be operator accessible and adjustable via the graphical user interface. Each schedule must be able to change the value of multiple points. The M&C software must reinforce all schedules by transmitting the scheduled value no less than once every 30 minutes.
- c. The M&C Software must include a scheduling graphic display, accessible via the graphical user interface, with the following fields and functions:
 - (1) Current date and time.
 - (2) System identifier(s) and name(s), including location information such as Building name(s) and number(s).
 - (3) System group. Systems grouped by the user to perform according to a common schedule.
 - (4) Weekly schedules. For each system, a weekly schedule based on a seven day per week schedule with independent schedules for each day of the week including no less than 6 value changes per day.
 - (5) Holiday and special event schedules. Support for holiday and special event calendar schedules independent of the daily schedule. Special event schedules include one-time events and recurring events. Scheduling of one-time events include the beginning and ending dates and times of the event. Holiday and special event schedules must have precedence over device weekly schedules.

2.4.8.13 Alarms

Provide M&C Software meeting the following minimum requirements for alarms:

- a. The M&C software must be capable of generating alarms by comparing the value of any point from any connected system to user-configurable limits
- b. The M&C software must be capable of handling (routing) alarms generated by the M&C Software.
- c. The M&C software must support at least two alarm priority levels: critical and informational. Critical alarms must remain in alarm until acknowledged by an operator and the alarm condition no longer exists; informational alarms must remain in alarm until the alarm condition no longer exists or until the alarm is acknowledged.
- d. The creation, modification, and handling (routing) of alarms must be fully accessible and fully adjustable from the graphical user interface.
- e. Alarm Data. Alarm data to be displayed and stored must include:
 - (1) Identification of alarm including building, system (or sub-system), and device name.
 - (2) Date and time to the nearest second of occurrence.
 - (3) Alarm type:
 - (a) Unreliable: Indicates that the source device has failed due to the sensing device or alarm parameter being out-of-range or bad data.
 - (b) High Alarm.
 - (c) Low Alarm.
 - (4) Current value or status of the alarm point, including engineering units
 - (5) Alarm limits, including engineering units.
 - (6) Alarm priority.
 - (7) Alarm Message: A unique message with a field of at least 60 characters. Assignment of messages to an alarm must be an operator editable function.
 - (8) Acknowledgement status of the alarm including the time, date and user of acknowledgement.
- f. Alarm Notification and Routing: The M&C software must be capable of performing alarm notification and routing functions. Upon receipt of network variable of type SNVT_alarm or SNVT_alarm_2, or upon generation of an alarm the M&C software must immediately perform alarm notification and routing according to an assigned routing for that alarm. The M&C software must support at least 100 alarm routes, where an alarm route is a unique combination of any of the following activities:
 - (1) Generate a pop-up up active clients. The pop-up display must include the Alarm Data. Alarms must be capable of being

acknowledged from the pop-up display by operators with sufficient permissions. Pop-up must be displayed until acknowledged.

- (2) Send an e-mail message via simple mail transfer protocol (SMTP; RFC 821). The e-mail must contain a configurable message and all alarm data. The e-mail recipient and scripted message must be user configurable for each alarm route.
 - (3) Print alarms to designated alarm printers. The printed message must be the same as the pop-up message.
- g. Alarm Display and Acknowledgement. The M&C software must include an alarm display. Alarms must be available for display at each workstation as shown, along with all associated alarm data. Alarms must be capable of being acknowledged from this display. Multiple alarms must be capable of being acknowledged using a single command. Operator acknowledgment of one alarm must not automatically be considered as acknowledgment of any other alarm nor may it inhibit reporting of subsequent alarms.
- h. Alarm Storage and Reports: The M&C software must store each alarm and its associated alarm data to hard disk and retain this information after the alarm no longer exists. The stored data must be sortable, searchable, and printable.

2.4.8.14 Trending

Provide M&C software capable of performing real-time trending with a minimum trending rate of 100 points per second.

- a. The M&C Software must include a graphical display for trend configuration, creation and deletion accessible through the graphical user interface. Each trend must be user-configurable for:
- (1) Point to trend.
 - (2) Sampling interval: adjustable between 1 second and 1 hour.
 - (3) Start and Stop Time of Trend: Start and stop times determined by one or more of the following methods:
 - (a) Start time and stop time
 - (b) Start time and duration
 - (c) Start time and number of samples
- b. The M&C software must be capable of displaying and printing a graphical representation of each trend, and of multiple trended points on the same graph. The software must be capable of saving trend logs to a file. If the file format is not plain ASCII text in a Comma-Separated-Value (CSV) format, provide a means to export or convert the file to plain ASCII text in a CSV format.

2.4.8.15 Electrical Power Demand Limiting

Provide M&C software which includes demand limiting functionality capable of performing electrical demand limiting such that it can change the occupancy mode or setpoint of field control system hardware via a network

point based on a projected demand in order to maintain demand below a configured target. The demand target must incorporate real-time pricing data. The demand limiting algorithm must incorporate priority levels such that low priority equipment is adjusted before high-priority equipment. The demand limiting algorithm must generate a critical alarm when it begins to impact the system and a critical alarm if the demand target is exceeded.

2.4.8.16 Report Generation

Provide M&C Software capable of generating, saving and printing reports. Dynamic operation of the system must not be interrupted to generate a report. The report must contain the time and date when the samples were taken, and the time and date when the report was generated. The software must be capable of saving reports to a PDF file and to a file compatible with the provided Office Automation Software.

The software must allow for automatic and manual generation of reports. For automatic reports an operator must be able to specify the time the initial report is to be generated, the time interval between reports, end of period, and the output format for the report. Manual report generation must allow for the operator to request at any time the output of any report.

2.4.8.17 Custom Report Generation

Provide M&C software capable of generating custom reports, including but not limited to the following standard reports:

2.4.8.17.1 Electrical Power Usage Report

An electrical power Usage summary, operator selectable for substations, meters, or transducers, individual meters and transducers, any group of meters and transducers, and all meters for an operator selected time period. The report must include the voltage, current, power factor, electrical demand, electrical power consumption, reactive power (Kvar) for each substation, facility, system or equipment as selected by the operator. The report must be automatically printed at the end of each summary period and include:

- a. Total period consumption.
- b. Demand interval peak for the period, with time of occurrence.
- c. Energy consumption (kWh) over each demand interval.
- d. Time-of-use peak, semi-peak, off-peak, or baseline total kWh consumption.
- e. Reactive power during each demand interval.
- f. Power factor during each demand interval.
- g. Outside air (OA) temperature and relative humidity (RH) taken at the maximum and minimum of OA temperature of the report period with the time and dates of occurrence. At the installation's peak demand interval, the OA temperature and RH must also be recorded.
- h. Calculated heating and cooling degree days based on a 65 degrees F

balance point.

2.4.8.17.2 Electrical Peak Demand Prediction Report

A report based on the demand limiting program, which includes:

- a. Electrical Demand Target (EDT).
- b. Actual peak and predicted peak for each demand interval for that day.
- c. Predicted demand for the next demand interval.

2.4.8.17.3 Energy usage Report

An energy usage summary, operator selectable, for a unit, building, area, installation, and the entire UMCS. The report must be divided by utility, and must be capable of reporting on at least four separate utilities. The report must include the following information:

- a. Beginning and ending dates and times.
- b. Total energy usage for each utility for the current and previous day.
- c. Total energy usage for each utility for the current and previous month.
- d. Maximum 15-minute interval average rate of consumption for each utility for the current and previous day and current and previous month.
- e. Outside air (OA) temperature and OA humidity for current and previous month and current and previous day:
 - (1) Average temperature and humidity.
 - (2) Temperature and humidity at maximum and minimum OA temperature with time and date of occurrence.
 - (3) Temperature and humidity at maximum and minimum humidity with time and date of occurrence.
 - (4) Temperature and humidity at the installation's peak demand interval with the time and date of occurrence
- f. Calculated degree days. Reports which include humidity must be configurable to report either dewpoint or relative humidity.

2.4.8.17.4 Water Usage Report

A water usage summary, operator selectable, for a unit, building, area, installation, and the entire UMCS. The report must include the following information:

- a. Beginning and ending dates and times.
- b. Total energy water usage for the current and previous day.
- c. Total water usage for the current and previous month.

2.4.8.17.5 Alarm Report

Outstanding alarms by building or unit, including time of occurrence.

2.4.8.17.6 M&C Software Override Report

Points overridden by the M&C Software, including time overridden, and identification of operator overriding the point.

2.4.8.17.7 Run Time Reports

A report totalizing the accumulated run time of individual pieces of equipment. The operator must be able to define equipment groupings and to generate reports based on these groupings.

2.4.8.17.8 Device Offline Report

A report listing all offline devices in all CEA-709.1-D building control systems integrated to the M&C Software.

2.5 UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (UPS)

Provide uninterruptible power supplies (UPS) as self contained devices suitable for installation and operation at the location of Server and Workstation hardware and sized to provide a minimum of 20 minutes of operation of the connected hardware. Equipment connected to the UPS must not be affected in any manner by a power outage of a duration less than the rated capacity of the UPS. Provide the UPS complete with all necessary power supplies, transformers, batteries, and accessories. Provide UPS which include visual indication of normal power operation, UPS operation, abnormal operation and visual and audible indication of AC input loss and low battery power. Provide UL 1778 approved UPS. UPS powering Server Hardware must notify the server via USB interface of impending battery failure.

2.6 RACKS AND ENCLOSURES

2.6.1 Enclosures

Enclosures supplied as an integral (pre-packaged) part of another product are acceptable. Provide two Enclosure Keys for each lockable enclosure on a single ring per enclosure with a tag identifying the enclosure the keys operate. Provide enclosures meeting the following minimum requirements:

2.6.1.1 Outdoors

For enclosures located outdoors, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 4 requirements.

2.6.1.2 Mechanical and Electrical Rooms

For enclosures located in mechanical or electrical rooms, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 4 requirements.

2.6.1.3 Other Locations

For enclosures in other locations including but not limited to occupied spaces, above ceilings, and in plenum returns, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 1 requirements.

2.6.2 Equipment Racks

Provide standard 19 inch equipment racks compatible with the electronic equipment provided. Racks must be either aluminum or steel with bolted or welded construction. Steel equipment racks must be painted with a flame-retardant paint. Guard rails must be included with each equipment rack and have a copper grounding bar installed and grounded to the earth.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FACTORY TEST

Perform factory testing of the UMCS as specified. The Contractor is responsible for providing personnel, equipment, instrumentation, and supplies necessary to perform required testing. Provide written notification of planned testing to the Government at least 21 days prior to testing, and do not give this notice until after receiving written Government approval of the specific Factory Test Procedures. Provide Factory Test Procedures which define the tests required to ensure that the system meets technical, operational, and performance specifications. Within the Procedures define location of tests, milestones for the tests, and identify simulation programs, equipment, personnel, facilities, and supplies required. Provide procedures which test all capabilities and functions specified and indicated. Perform the Factory Test using equipment and software of the same manufacturer, model and revision as will be used for the specified project. Include detailed instructions for test setup, execution, and evaluation of test results in the Procedures. Upon completion of the test, prepare a Factory Test Report, documenting the results of the Test, and submit it as specified.

Perform the Factory Test and provide Factory Test Submittals as shown in TABLE II. FACTORY TEST SEQUENCING.

TABLE II. FACTORY TEST SEQUENCING

ITEM #	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING
		(START OF ACTIVITY or DEADLINE FOR SUBMITTAL)
1	Submit Factory Test Procedures	21 business days after notice to proceed
2	Perform Factory Test	After Approval Of #1
3	Submit Factory Test Report	21 business days After Completion Of #2

3.2 DRAWINGS AND CALCULATIONS

3.2.1 UMCS IP Network Bandwidth Usage Estimate

Provide a UMCS IP Network Bandwidth Usage Estimate for a small, medium or large systems. In this estimate account for field control systems using all M&C required protocols and the integration of field control system via gateways. Define all assumptions used to create the estimate, including but not limited to: trending, fast trends for commissioning, schedules, alarms, display of system graphics and load shedding.

3.2.2 UMCS Contractor Design Drawings

Revise and update the Contract Drawings to include details of the system design and all hardware components, including contractor provided and Government furnished components. Details to be shown on the Design Drawing include:

- a. The logical structure of the network, including but not limited to the location of all Control Hardware (including but not limited to each Control Protocol Gateway, Control Protocol Router, and Monitoring and Control (M&C) Controller).
- b. Manufacturer and model number for each piece of Computer Hardware and Control Hardware.
- c. Physical location for each piece of Computer Hardware and Control Hardware.
- d. Version and service pack number for all software and for all Control Hardware firmware.

3.2.3 As-Built Drawings

Prepare draft as-built drawings consisting of Points Schedule drawings for the entire UMCS, including Points Schedules for each Gateway, and an updated Design Drawing including details of the actual installed system as it is at the conclusion of Start-Up and Start-Up Testing. Provide As-Built Drawings which include details of all hardware components, including contractor provided and Government furnished components. In addition to the details shown in the design drawings, the as-built drawing must include:

- a. IP address(es) and Ethernet MAC address(es) as applicable for each piece of Control Hardware (including but not limited to each Control Protocol Gateway, Control Protocol Router, and Monitoring and Control (M&C) Controller).
- b. IP address and Ethernet MAC address for each computer server, workstation, and networked printer.
- c. Network identifier (name) for each printer, computer server and computer workstation.
- d. List of ports, protocols and network services for each device connected to an IP network.
- e. Network Addresses: CEA-709.1-D address (domain, subnet, node address) for all Control Hardware using CEA-709.1-D.

Prepare Draft As-Built Drawings upon the completion of Start-Up and Start-Up Testing and Final As-Built Drawings upon completion of PVT Phase II.

3.3 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

3.3.1 General

Install system components as shown and specified and in accordance with

the manufacturer's instructions and provide necessary interconnections, services, and adjustments required for a complete and operable system. Install communication equipment and cable grounding as necessary to preclude ground loops, noise, and surges from adversely affecting system operation. Install Fiber Optic cables and wiring in exposed areas, including low voltage wiring but not including network cable in telecommunication closets, in metallic raceways or EMT conduit as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Do not install equipment in any space which experiences temperatures or humidity outside of the rated operating range of the equipment.

3.3.2 Isolation, Building Penetrations and Equipment Clearance

Provide dielectric isolation where dissimilar metals are used for connection and support. Make all penetrations through and mounting holes in the building exteriors watertight. Drill or core drill holes in concrete, brick, steel and wood walls with proper equipment. Seal conduits installed through openings with materials which are compatible with existing materials. Seal openings with materials which meet the requirements of NFPA 70 and SECTION 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.3.3 Nameplates

Provide Nameplates for all Control Hardware and all Computer Hardware. Attach Nameplates to the device in a conspicuous location.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT

3.4.1 Wire and Cable Installation

Install system components and appurtenances in accordance with NFPA 70, manufacturer's instructions and as indicated. Provide necessary interconnections, services, and adjustments required for a complete and operable signal distribution system. Label components in accordance with TIA-606. Firestop Penetrations in fire-rated construction in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING. Install conduits, outlets and raceways in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Install wiring in accordance with TIA-568.1 and as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Mark wiring terminal blocks and outlets in accordance with TIA-606. Do not install non-fiber-optic cables in the same cable tray, utility pole compartment, or floor trench compartment with power cables. Properly secure and install neat in appearance cables not installed in conduit or raceways.

3.4.2 Grounding

Install signal distribution system ground in accordance with TIA-607 and Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Connect equipment racks to the electrical safety ground.

3.4.3 Power-Line Surge Protection

Protect equipment connected to ac circuits must be protected against or withstand power-line surges. Provide equipment protection which meets the requirements of IEEE C62.41. Do not use fuses for surge protection.

3.4.4 IP Addresses

For all Control Hardware requiring an IP address on the UMCS IP Network,

coordinate with the NEC to obtain IP addresses.

3.4.5 Computer Hardware and Software

3.4.5.1 Hardware Installation

Install Computer Hardware as specified and indicated. Power Computer Servers through a UPS, and install and configure them such that the server automatically undergoes a clean shutdown upon low battery signal from the UPS.

3.4.5.2 Software Installation

Install software as follows:

- a. CEA-852-C Configuration Server: Install and configure one CEA-852-C Configuration Server. Install the CEA-852-C Configuration Server on Server Hardware or on an CEA-709.1-D TP/FT-10 to IP Router.
- b. CEA-709.1-D Network Configuration Tool: Install the CEA-709.1-D Network Configuration Tool software as shown. Install the CEA-709.1-D Network Configuration Tool on workstation or server hardware.
- c. Monitoring and Control Software: Install the monitoring and control (M&C) software as shown. Except for M&C Software performing Point Calculations or Electrical Peak Demand Limiting, install M&C Software on server hardware. Install M&C Software performing Point Calculations or Electrical Peak Demand Limiting on either server hardware or Monitoring and Control (M&C) Controller Hardware.

Provide sufficient computer hardware and M&C Controller Hardware and install M&C Software to support the number of points required in PART 2 (PRODUCTS), regardless of the number of points integrated under this project specification. Note that meeting this requirement may entail the installation of unused hardware or spare point licenses to accommodate the full number of required points in order to allow for integration of future field control systems.

- d. M&C Controller Hardware Configuration Software: Install the M&C Controller Hardware Configuration Software on server hardware.
- e. Operating system: Install the OS on each Server and Workstation and configure user names and passwords. Coordinate with COR for user names and passwords.
- f. Office Automation Software: Install the office automation software on each server and workstation.
- g. Virus Protection software: Install the virus protection software on each server and workstation and configure weekly virus scans. Configure the virus protection software to update virus definitions automatically
- h. Disk Imaging (Backup) Software: Install the disk imaging (backup) software on each server and configure for imaging the internal hard drive to external hard drive.

Where software requires connection to an IP device outside of the UMCS, coordinate with the project site NEC to obtain access to a

Government-furnished server to provide the needed functionality. Do not connect to any device outside of the UMCS without explicit permission from the project site NEC.

3.4.5.3 Monitoring and Control (M&C) Software Configuration

Configure the Monitoring and Control (M&C) Software as specified, as indicated and as follows:

- a. Set up M&C Software user accounts and passwords. Coordinate user accounts, passwords and permissions with the Controls HVAC shop supervisor.
- b. Change the default password on all accounts. Remove or disable any accounts which do not require authentication (such as guest accounts).
- c. Configure e-mail capability to use the government furnished SMTP server using the following server information.
- d. Disable all ports, protocols, and network services other than those required or specifically permitted by this Section. Services to be disabled include but are not limited to: FTP, Telnet and SSH.
- e. Install web server certificate. Obtain certificate from the project site NEC.

3.4.5.4 Control Hardware Installation

Install Control Hardware in an enclosure and as specified. Configure Control Hardware as specified, as required to meet the functions for which the hardware is used and as follows:

- a. Disable all ports, protocols, and network services other than those required or specifically permitted by this Section. Services to be disabled include but are not limited to: FTP, Telnet, SSH, and HTTP. When disabling of ports, protocols and services is not supported by a product, obtain an exception from this requirement prior to using the product and document non-compliance on the Product Data Sheets and As-Built drawings.
- b. Change the default passwords in all Control Hardware which have passwords. Coordinate new passwords with the Controls HVAC shop supervisor.

3.5 INTEGRATION OF FIELD CONTROL SYSTEMS

Fully integrate the field control systems in accordance with the following three step sequence and as specified and shown.

STEP 1: Install and configure Control Hardware as necessary to connect the field control system to the FPOC, which is part of the UMCS IP network, and to provide control protocol translation and supervisory functionality.

STEP 2: Add Field Control System to M&C Software: Perform system discovery, system database merges, or any other actions necessary to allow M&C Software access to the field control system.

STEP 3: Configure M&C Software to provide monitoring and control of the

field control system, including but not limited to the creation of system displays and the configuration of scheduling, alarming, and trending.

3.5.1 Integration Step 1: Install Control Hardware

Install Control Hardware as specified at the FPOC location to connect the field control system to the UMCS IP network via the FPOC and, if necessary, to provide control protocol translation and supervisory functionality. Coordinate all connections and other activities related to an FPOC with COR. Depending on the field control system media and protocol this must be accomplished through one of the following:

- a. Connect the existing field control network hardware at the FPOC location to the FPOC.
- b. Install a Control Protocol Gateway connected to both the field control network and the FPOC.
- c. Install a Control Protocol Router connected to both the field control network and the FPOC.
- d. Install a Control Protocol Gateway connected to the field control network. Then install a Control Protocol Router connected to both the Control Protocol Gateway and the FPOC.

3.5.1.1 Installation of Control Protocol Gateway

If the field control system uses a protocol which is not supported by the M&C Software, install a gateway to convert the field control system protocol to CEA-709.1-D. Install additional field control system network media and hardware as needed to connect the Gateway to the field control system. Connect the Gateway according to one of the two following methods:

- a. Connect the Gateway to the field control network and to the FPOC.
- b. Connect the Gateway to the field control network and to a LonWorks/IP Router installed as specified.

Create and configure points and establish network communication between the Control Protocol Gateway and the field control system to provide points from the field control system to the M&C software.

3.5.1.2 Installation of Control Protocol Router

If there is not an existing connection between the FPOC and the field control network, install a LonWorks/IP Router to connect the field control network to the FPOC. Install additional field control system network media as needed to connect the Router to the field control system.

3.5.2 Integration Step 2: Add Field Control System to M&C Software

Perform system discovery, system database merges, or any other actions necessary to allow M&C Software access to points and data in the field control system.

3.5.2.1 Integration of Field Control Systems Via ANSI-709.1-C

- a. When a LNS Database of the field control system is not available, use

the Network Configuration Tool software to discover the field control system and create an LNS Database for the field control system.

- b. When the UMCS does not already contain an LNS Server, provide an LNS Server to support the UMCS LNS Database.
- c. When there is no existing UMCS LNS Database, use the field control system database as the UMCS Database.
- d. When there is an existing UMCS LNS Database, merge the field control system with the UMCS LNS database.

3.5.2.2 Integration of Field Control Systems Via Other (non-CEA-709.1-D) Protocols

Perform all actions necessary to make all points from the field control system available in the M&C Software.

3.5.3 Integration Step 3: Configure M&C Software

Configure M&C Software to provide monitoring and control of the field control system, including but not limited to the creation of system displays and the configuration of scheduling, alarming, and trending.

3.5.3.1 Configure M&C Software Communication

Create and configure points and establish network communication between M&C Software and Field Control Systems as specified to support M&C Software functionality:

- a. Update points on currently active displays via polling as necessary to meet M&C Software display refresh requirements.
- b. Send points used for overrides to the device receiving the override as shown on the Points Schedule. For LonWorks systems, for points used for overrides use the network variable and SNVT type indicated on the Points Schedule. For SNVTs for overriding schedules (via the Simple Scheduler) use SNVT type SNVT_occupancy and support the following values: OC_OCCUPIED, OC_UNOCCUPIED, OC_STANDBY and OC_NUL. For SNVTs used to override schedules or setpoints for Demand Limiting functions use the acknowledged service.
- c. Bind points from CEA-709.1-D field control systems used using acknowledged service or poll the point at 5 minute intervals.
- d. Update points used for currently active trends via polling as necessary to meet trend interval requirements.
- e. Send points used for scheduling to the field control system with a maximum time between subsequent transmissions of the point of 30 minutes. For LonWorks field control systems, send points used for scheduling to the appropriate System Scheduler using SNVTs of type SNVT_occupancy which support the following values: OC_OCCUPIED, OC_UNOCCUPIED and OC_STANDBY.

Edit the Description field of each point to include the Real Property Unique IDs (RPUID) associated with that point as shown on the Points Schedule

3.5.3.2 Configure M&C Software Functionality

Fully configure M&C Software functionality using the M&C Software capabilities specified in PART 2 of this Section.

- a. Create System Displays using the project site sample displays, including overrides, as shown on the Points Schedule and as specified. Label all points on displays with full English language description the point name as shown on the Points Schedule. Configure user permissions for access to and executions of action using graphic pages. Coordinate user permissions with the Controls HVAC shop supervisor
- b. Configure alarm generation and alarm handling as shown on the Points Schedule, as shown on the Alarm Routing Schedule, and as specified. For alarms requiring notification via text message or e-mail, configure the alarm notification to use the specified Government furnished SMTP server to send the alarm notification.
- c. Configure scheduling as indicated and as shown on the points schedule. Configure M&C Software scheduling functionality for LonWorks field control systems which do not use the Simple Scheduler Object. For LonWorks field control systems which do use the Simple Scheduler Object, configure the Simple Scheduler Objects in the field control system.

Create and configure displays for configuration of M&C Software schedules and Simple Scheduler Objects in the field control system. Label schedules and scheduled points with full English-language descriptors. Provide a separate configuration capability for each schedule. A single configuration display may be used to configured multiple schedules, provided that each schedule is separately configurable from the display.

- d. Create M&C Software trends for required points as shown on the Points Schedule and as specified. Trend points at 15 minute intervals.

Create and configure displays for creation and configuration of trends and for display of all trended points.

- e. Configure Demand Limiting as shown on the Demand Limit Schedule and Points Schedule and as specified.
- f. Configure M&C Software standard reports.

3.6 START-UP AND START-UP TESTING

Test all equipment and perform all other tests necessary to ensure the system is installed and functioning as specified. Prepare a Start-Up and Start-Up Testing Report documenting all tests performed and their results and certifying that the system meets the requirements specified in the contract documents.

3.7 PERFORMANCE VERIFICATION TEST (PVT)

3.7.1 PVT Phase I Procedures

Provide PVT Procedures which include:

- a. Network bandwidth usage and available bandwidth (throughput) measurements. Network bandwidth usage must reference the normal usage network Bandwidth Calculations.
- b. Test System Reaction during PVT: The total system response time from initiation of a control action command from the workstation, to display of the resulting status change on the workstation must not exceed 20 seconds under system normal heavy load conditions assuming a zero response time for operation of the node's control device.
- c. Verification of IP Connectivity.
- d. Verification of configuration of M&C Software functionality.

3.7.2 PVT Phase I

Demonstrate compliance of the control system with the contract documents. Using test plans and procedures previously approved by the Government, demonstrate all physical and functional requirements of the project. Upon completion of PVT Phase I and as specified, prepare and submit the PVT Phase I Report documenting all tests performed during the PVT and their results. In the PVT report, include all tests in the PVT Procedures and any other testing performed during the PVT. Document failures and repairs with test results.

3.7.3 PVT Phase II

Include Basic Training as part of PVT Phase II. Failures or deficiencies of the UMCS during Basic Training are considered PVT failures. Upon completion of PVT Phase II, and as specified, prepare and submit the PVT Phase II Report documenting any failures which occurred and repairs performed during PVT Phase II.

3.8 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Perform inspection, testing, cleaning, and part or component replacement as specified and as required to maintain the warranty. Work includes providing necessary preventive and unscheduled maintenance and repairs to keep the UMCS operating as specified, and accepted by the Government, and other services as specified. Perform work in compliance with manufacturer's recommendations and industry standards. Provide technical support via telephone during regular working hours.

3.8.1 Work Coordination

Schedule and arrange work to cause the least interference with the normal Government business and mission. In those cases where some interference may be essentially unavoidable, coordinate with the Government to minimize the impact of the interference, inconvenience, equipment downtime, interrupted service and personnel discomfort.

3.8.2 Work Control

Upon completion of work on a system or piece of equipment, that system or piece of equipment must be free of missing components or defects which would prevent it from functioning as originally intended and designed. Replacements must conform to the same specifications as the original equipment. During and at completion of work, do not allow debris to spread unnecessarily into adjacent areas nor accumulate in the work area.

itself.

3.8.3 Working Hours

Working hours are from 7:30 A.M. to 4:00 P.M. local time Mondays through Fridays except Federal holidays.

3.8.4 Equipment Repairs

Initiate and complete equipment repairs within the following time periods, where time periods are measured as actual elapsed time from first notification, including working and non-working hours:

- a. for non-redundant computer server hardware, initiate within 4 hours and complete within 8 hours.
- b. for non-redundant computer workstation hardware, initiate within 4 hours and complete within 8 hours.
- c. for redundant computer server hardware, initiate within 36 hours and complete within 5 days.
- d. for redundant computer workstation hardware, initiate within 2 days and complete within 5 days.
- e. for active (powered) control hardware, initiate within 4 hours and complete within 6 hours.
- f. for cabling and other passive network hardware, initiate within 16 hours and complete within 5 days.

Repair is the restoration of a piece of equipment, a system, or a facility to such condition that it may be effectively used for its designated purposes. Repair may be overhaul, reprocessing, or replacement of nonfunctional parts or materials or replacement of the entire unit or system.

3.8.5 Replacement, Modernization, Renovation

The Government may replace, renovate, or install new equipment as part of the UMCS at Government expense and by means not associated with this contract without voiding the system warranty. Replaced, improved, updated, modernized, or renovated systems and equipment interfaced to the system may be added to the Contractor's maintenance and service effort as a modification.

3.8.6 Access To UMCS Equipment

Access to UMCS equipment must be in accordance with the following:

- a. Coordinate access to facilities and arrange that they be opened and closed during and after the accomplishment of the work effort. For access to a controlled facility contact the Government for assistance.
- b. The Government may provide keys for access to UMCS equipment where the Government determines such key issuance is appropriate. Establish and implement methods of ensuring that keys issued by the Government are not lost or misplaced, are not used by unauthorized persons, and are not duplicated.

- c. The Government may provide passwords or issue Common Access Cards (CAC) for access to UMCS computer equipment where the Government determines such issuance is appropriate. Establish and implement methods of ensuring that passwords and Common Access Cards issued by the Government are not used by unauthorized persons.

3.8.7 Records, Logs, and Progress Reports

Keep records and logs of each task, and organize cumulative chronological records for each major component, and for the complete system. Maintain a continuous log for the UMCS. Keep complete logs and be available for inspection on site, demonstrating that planned and systematic adjustments and repairs have been accomplished for the UMCS.

3.8.8 Preventive Maintenance Requirements

Perform maintenance procedures as described below, or more often if required by the equipment manufacturer.

3.8.8.1 Preventive Maintenance Work Plan

Prepare a Preventive Maintenance Work Plan detailing all required preventive maintenance. Obtain Government approval of the Work Plan as specified in paragraph PROJECT SEQUENCING. Strictly adhere to the approved work plan to facilitate Government verification of work. If it is necessary to reschedule maintenance, make a written request to the Government detailing the reasons for the proposed change at least five days prior to the originally scheduled date. Scheduled dates will be changed only with the prior written approval of the Government.

3.8.8.2 Semiannual Maintenance

Perform the following Semiannual Maintenance as specified:

- a. Perform data backups on all Server Hardware.
- b. Run system diagnostics and correct diagnosed problems.
- c. Perform fan checks and filter changes for UMCS hardware.
- d. Perform all necessary adjustments on printers.
- e. Resolve all outstanding problems.
- f. Install new ribbons, ink cartridges and toner cartridges into printers, and ensure that there is at least one spare ribbon or cartridge located at each printer.

3.8.8.3 Maintenance Procedures

3.8.8.3.1 Maintenance Coordination

Coordinate any scheduled maintenance event that may result in component downtime with the Government as follows, where time periods are measured as actual elapsed time from beginning of equipment off-line period, including working and non-working hours:

- a. For non-redundant computer server hardware, provide 14 days notice,

components must be off-line for no more than 8 hours.

- b. For non-redundant computer workstation hardware, provide 7 days notice, components must be off-line for no more than 8 hours.
- c. for redundant computer server hardware, provide 7 days notice, components must be off-line for no more than 36 hours.
- d. For redundant computer workstation hardware, provide 4 days notice, components must be off-line for no more than 48 hours.
- e. For active (powered) control hardware, provide 14 days notice, components must be off-line for no more than 6 hours.
- f. For cabling and other passive network hardware, provide 21 days notice, components must be off-line for no more than 12 hours.

3.8.8.3.2 Software/Firmware

Software/firmware maintenance includes operating systems, application programs, and files required for the proper operation of the UMCS regardless of storage medium. User (project site) developed software is not covered by this contract, except that the UMCS software/firmware must be maintained to allow user creation, modification, deletion, and proper execution of such user-developed software as specified. Perform diagnostics and corrective reprogramming as required to maintain total UMCS operations as specified. Back up software before performing any computer hardware and software maintenance. Do not modify any parameters without approval from the Government. Properly document any approved changes and additions, and update the appropriate manuals.

3.8.8.3.3 Network

Network maintenance includes testing transmission media and equipment to verify signal levels, system data rates, errors and overall system performance.

3.8.9 Service Call Reception

- a. A Government representative will advise the Contractor by phone or in person of all maintenance and service requests, as well as the classification of each based on the definitions specified. A description of the problem or requested work, date and time notified, location, classification, and other appropriate information will be placed on a Service Call Work Authorization Form by the Government.
- b. Submit procedures for receiving and responding to service calls 24 hours per day, seven days a week, including weekends and holidays . Provide a single telephone number for receipt of service calls during regular working hours; service calls are to be considered received at the time and date the telephone call is placed by the authorized Government representative.
- c. Separately record each service call request, as received on the Service Call Work Authorization form and complete the Service Call Work Authorization form for each service call. Include the following information in the completed form: the serial number identifying the component involved, its location, date and time the call was received, nature of trouble, names of the service personnel assigned to the

task, instructions describing what has to be done, the amount and nature of the materials to be used, the time and date work started, and the time and date of completion.

- d. Respond to each service call request within two working hours. Provide the status of any item of work within four hours of the inquiry during regular working hours, and within 16 hours after regular working hours or as needed to meet the Equipment Repair requirements as specified.

3.8.10 Service Call Work Warranty

Provide a 1 year unconditional warranty on service call work which includes labor and material necessary to restore the equipment involved in the initial service call to a fully operable condition. In the event that service call work causes damage to additional equipment, restore the system to full operation without cost to the Government. Provide response times for service call warranty work equivalent to the response times required by the initial service call.

3.8.11 System Modifications

Make recommendations for system modification in writing to the Government. Do not make system modifications without prior approval of the Government. Incorporate any modifications made to the system into the Operations and Maintenance Instructions, and any other documentation affected. Make available to the Government software updates for all software furnished under this specification during the life of this contract. Schedule at least one update near the end of the contract period, at which time make available the latest released version of all software provided under this specification, and install and validate it upon approval by the Government.

3.9 TRAINING

Conduct training courses for designated personnel in the maintenance, service, and operation of the system as specified, including specified hardware and software. The training must be oriented to the specific system provided under this contract. Provide audiovisual equipment and other training material and supplies required for the training. When training is conducted at Government facilities, the Government reserves the right to record the training sessions for later use. A training day is defined as 8 hours of classroom instruction, excluding lunchtime, Tuesday through Thursday, during the daytime shift in effect at the training facility. For guidance in planning the required instruction, the Contractor should assume that attendees will be tradesmen such as electricians or boiler operators. Obtain approval of the training schedule from the Government at least 30 days prior to the first day of training.

3.9.1 Training Documentation

Prepare and submit one set of Training manuals for each of Basic Training Documentation, Advanced Training Documentation, and Refresher Training Documentation, where each set of documentation consists of:

3.9.1.1 Course Attendance List

Course Attendance List developed in coordination with and signed by the

Controls and HVAC shop supervisor.

3.9.1.2 Training Manuals

Include an agenda, defined objectives for each lesson, and a detailed description of the subject matter for each lesson in the training manuals. Where portions of the course material are presented by audiovisuals, include copies of those audiovisuals as a part of the printed training manuals.

3.9.2 Basic Training

Conduct a Basic Training course at the project site on the installed system for a period of no less than 5 training days during Phase 2 of the PVT. A maximum of ten personnel will attend this course. Design training targeted towards training personnel in the day-to-day operation and basic maintenance of the system. Upon completion of this course, each student, using appropriate documentation, should be able to start the system, operate the system, recover the system after a failure, perform routine maintenance and describe the specific hardware architecture and operation of the system. Include the following topics at a minimum:

- a. General system architecture.
- b. Functional operation of the system, including workstations and system navigation.
- c. System start-up procedures.
- d. Failure recovery procedures.
- e. Schedule configuration.
- f. Trend configuration.
- g. Perform point overrides and override release.
- h. Reports generation.
- i. Alarm reporting and acknowledgements.
- j. Diagnostics.
- k. Historical files.
- l. Maintenance procedures:
 - (1) Physical layout of each piece of hardware.
 - (2) Troubleshooting and diagnostic procedures.
 - (3) Preventive maintenance procedures and schedules.

3.9.3 Advanced Training

Conduct an Advanced Operator Training course at the project site for a period of not less than five days. A maximum of ten personnel will attend this course. Structure the course to consist of "hands-on" training under the constant monitoring of the instructor. Include training on the M&C

Software, and the CEA-709.1-D Network Configuration Tool . Upon completion of this course, the students should be fully proficient in the operation and management of all system operations and must be able to perform all tasks required to integrate a field control system into the UMCS. Report the skill level of each student at the end of this course. Include the following topics at a minimum:

- a. A review of all topics in Basic Training
- b. Using the CEA-709.1-D Network Configuration Tool for Network Management
- c. M&C Software configuration, including but not limited to: creating and editing system displays, alarms, schedules, trends, demand limiting and calculations.

3.9.4 Refresher Training

Conduct a Refresher Training course at the project site for a period of two training days when approved by the Government and as specified in paragraph PROJECT SEQUENCING. A maximum of ten personnel will attend the course. Structure the course to address specific topics that the students need to discuss and to answer questions concerning the operation of the system. Upon completion of the course, the students should be fully proficient in system operation and have no unanswered questions regarding operation of the installed UMCS. Correct any system failures discovered during the Refresher Training at no cost to the Government.

APPENDIX A

<u>QC CHECKLIST</u>		
This checklist is not all-inclusive of the requirements of this specification and should not be interpreted as such.		
This checklist is for (check one:)		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Pre-Construction QC Checklist Submittal (Items 1-2)	()
<input type="checkbox"/>	Post-Construction QC Checklist Submittal (Items 1-6)	()
<input type="checkbox"/>	Close-out QC Checklist Submittal (Items 1-14)	()
Instructions: Initial each item in the space provided (____) verifying that the requirement has been met.		
Verify the following items for Pre-Construction, Post-Construction and Closeout QC Checklist Submittals:		
1	Contractor Design Drawing Riser Diagram includes location and types of all Control Hardware and Computer Hardware.	____
2	M&C Software supports , and . M&C Software is LonWorks Network Services (LNS) based.	____
Verify the following items for Post-Construction and Closeout QC Checklist Submittal:		
3	Communication between the M&C Software and CEA-709.1-D field control systems uses only CEA-709.1-D.	____

<u>QC CHECKLIST</u>		
4	Connections to non-CEA-709.1-D field control systems are via a Gateway from the field control system to CEA-709.1-D or via a UMCS supported protocol without the use of a hardware Gateway.	___
5	Computer workstations and servers are installed as shown on the UMCS Riser Diagram.	___
6	Training schedule and course attendee lists have been developed and coordinated with shops and submitted.	___
Verify the following items for Closeout QC Checklists Submittal:		
7	LNS Database is up-to-date and accurately represents the final installed system. All points in field control systems are available at the M&C Software.	___
8	All software has been licensed to the Government.	___
9	M&C software monitoring displays have been created for all building systems, including all override and display points indicated on Points Schedule drawings.	___
10	Final As-built Drawings accurately represent the final installed system.	___
11	Default trends have been set up (per Points Schedule drawings).	___
12	Scheduling has been configured at the M&C Software (per Occupancy Schedule drawing).	___
13	O&M Instructions have been completed and submitted.	___

<u>QC CHECKLIST</u>		
14	Basic Operator and Advanced Training courses have been completed.	____

(QC Representative Signature) (Date)		

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK